00048108

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018

48108

Grammar of the Latin Language by Sir William Smith and T. D. Hall.

Lond. 1870

Ax L 34

ORI 475
Smi/Gra
48108

00048108

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech:

I. The NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, or simply SUBSTANTIVE, is the name (Nōmen) of a person or thing: as, Caesăr, *Caesar;* vĭr, *a man;* dŏmŭs, *a house;* virtūs, *valour.*

Obs. Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns;* all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives.*

II. The NOUN ADJECTIVE, or simply ADJECTIVE (Adjectīvum, *joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature: as, bŏnus vir, *a good man.*

III. The PRONOUN (Prōnōmen) is used instead of a Substantive: as, ĕgo, *I;* tū, *thou.*

IV. The VERB (Verbum, *word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something: as, ĕquus currit, *the horse runs;* vir sĕdet, *the man sits.*

V. The ADVERB (Adverbium) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning: as, cĕlĕrĭter currit, *he runs quickly;* măgĭs pius, *more dutiful;* sătĭs diū, *long enough.*

VI. The PREPOSITION (Praepŏsĭtio) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words: as, ĭn, *in;* hăbĭto ĭn urbĕ, *I dwell in the city.*

VII. The CONJUNCTION (Conjunctio) unites words and sentences: as, ĕt, *and;* ŭt, *in order that:* vir *et* fēmĭna, *the man and the woman;* ĕdĭmŭs *ŭt* vīvāmus, *we eat in order that we may live.*

VIII. The INTERJECTION (Interjectio) is a word of exclamation: as, heu, *alas!*

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language: thus dŏmus may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house.*

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (Dēclensio): the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (Conjŭgātio).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

§ 12. The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in trab-s, *a plank*, trăb-ĭs, *of a plank*, trăb-ī, *to a plank*, the Stem is trăb: and in lĕg-o, *I read*, lĕg-ĭs, *thou readest*, the Stem is lĕg. (See § 179.)

Chapter III.—The Substantive.

§ 13. There are three *Genders:* the *Masculine* (Masculīnum), the *Feminine* (Fēmininum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

Obs. Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common.* The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Numĕri): the *Singular* (Singŭlāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōmĭnātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, măgister docĕt, *the master teaches;* dŏmus est amplă, *the house is large.*

II. The *Genitive* (Gĕnĭtīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, măgistri dŏmus, *the master's house;* fŏlia arbŏrum, *the leaves of trees.*

III. The *Dative* (Dătīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom? To* or *for what?* as, do librum măgistro, *I give the book to the master.*

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, ămo măgistrum, *I love the master.* It also signifies motion *towards:* as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome.*

V. The *Vocative* (Vŏcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O măgistĕr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what? When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectŭs est, *he was killed with a spear;* aestātĕ, *in the summer.* It also signifies motion or separation *from:* as, ăbeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome.*

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called Declensions, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	is	ūs	ei
Gen. Plur.	ā-rum	o-rum	-um i-um	ŭ-um	ē-rum

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in:—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a	o	consonant or i	u	e

CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in ă.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Mens-ă,	*a table*	Mens-ae,	*tables*
Gen.	Mens-ae,	*of a table*	Mens-ārum,	*of tables*
Dat.	Mens-ae,	*to* or *for a table*	Mens-īs,	*to* or *for tables*
Acc.	Mens-am,	*a table*	Mens-ās,	*tables*
Voc.	Mens-ă,	*O table* [*table*	Mens-ae,	*O tables*
Abl.	Mens-ā,	*by, with,* or *from a*	Mens-īs,	*by, with,* or *from tables.*

Obs. The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, nauta (masc.), *a sailor.*

Examples for Declension.

āla,	*a wing.*	hōra,	*an hour.*	silva,	*a wood.*
bărba,	*a beard.*	poena,	*a punishment.*	stella,	*a star.*
causa,	*a cause.*	fēmĭna,	*a woman.*	vĭa,	*a way.*
coena,	*a supper.*	porta,	*a gate.*	victōria,	*a victory.*

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a.*

Obs. 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in fămĭlĭa, when compounded with păter, măter, fĭlius or fĭlia: as, păterfămĭlĭās, *the father of a family*; *Gen.* patris fămĭlĭās; *Dat.* patrī fămĭlĭās, &c. In poetry the old form of the Genitive *ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: as, aquāī, *of the water*; terrāī, *of the earth.*

Obs. 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *ārum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of cŏlă and gĕnă: as coelĭcŏlum from coelĭcŏla, *an inhabitant of heaven*; terrĭgĕnum from terrĭgĕna, *earth-born*: also in drachmum, amphŏrum, from drachma, amphŏra (with numerals): and in Greek patronymics: as, Aeneădum, from Aeneădēs, *a descendant of Aeneas.*

Obs. 4. The *Dative and Ablative Plural* of some words end in *ābus*: as, deābŭs from dea, *a goddess*; fĭlĭābus from fĭlia, *a daughter.* This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: as, deĭs from deus, *a god*; fĭlĭīs from fĭlius, *a son.* So likewise duābus from duae, *two*; ambābus from ambae, *both.* See § 68.

§ 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē*, *as*, *ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

	Feminine.	*Masculine.*	*Masculine.*
Nom.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē, *abridgment*	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ă, ă)
Abl.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ī).

Chapter V.—The Second or O Declension.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in ŭs and ĕr (ĭr), and of Neuter Substantives in um.

A. *Masculine.*

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dŏmĭn-ŭs, *a lord*	Dŏmĭn-ī,	*lords*
Gen.	Dŏmĭn-ī, *of a lord*	Dŏmĭn-ōrum,	*of lords*
Dat.	Dŏmĭn-ō, *to* or *for a lord*	Dŏmĭn-īs,	*to* or *for lords*
Acc.	Dŏmĭn-um, *a lord*	Dŏmĭn-ōs,	*lords*
Voc.	Dŏmĭn-ĕ, *O lord* [*a lord.*	Dŏmĭn-ī,	*O lords* [*lords.*
Abl.	Dŏmĭn-ō, *by, with,* or *from*	Dŏmĭn-īs,	*by, with,* or *from*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Măgistĕr, *a master*	Măgistr-ī,	*masters*
Gen.	Măgistr-ī, *of a master*	Măgistr-ōrum,	*of masters*
Dat.	Măgistr-ō, *to or for a master*	Măgistr-īs,	*to* or *for masters*
Acc.	Măgistr-um, *a master*	Măgistr-ōs,	*masters*
Voc.	Măgistĕr, *O master*	Măgistr-ī,	*O masters*
Abl.	Măgistr-ō, *by, with,* or *from a master.*	Măgistr-īs,	*by, with,* or *from masters.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Puĕr, *a boy*	Puĕr-ī,	*boys*
Gen.	Puĕr-ī, *of a boy*	Puĕr-ōrum,	*of boys*
Dat.	Puĕr-ō, *to* or *for a boy*	Puĕr-īs,	*to* or *for boys*
Acc.	Puĕr-um, *a boy*	Puĕr-ōs,	*boys*
Voc.	Puĕr, *O boy* [*boy.*	Puĕr-ī,	*O boys*
Abl.	Puĕr-ō, *by, with,* or *from a*	Puĕr-īs,	*by, with,* or *from boys.*

B. *Neuter.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Regn-um, *a kingdom*	Regn-ă, *kingdoms*
Gen.	Regn-ī, *of a kingdom*	Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*
Dat.	Regn-ō, *to or for a kingdom*	Regn-īs, *to* or *for kingdoms*
Acc.	Regn-um, *a kingdom*	Regn-ă, *kingdoms*
Voc.	Regn-um, *O kingdom*	Regn-ă, *O kingdoms*
Abl.	Regn-ō, *by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*	Regn-īs, *by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

Gender.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, pĭrus, *a pear-tree,* Cŏrinthus, *Corinth;* and a few other words: as, hūmus, *the ground,* alvus, *the belly,* cŏlus, *a distaff,* vannus, *a winnowing fan.*

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: vīrus, *poison;* pĕlăgus, *the ocean;* and vulgus, *the multitude.* The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. *All* Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in ă.

Examples for Declension like *dŏmĭnŭs.*

cĭbus,	*food.*	annus,	*a year.*	nĭdus,	*a nest.*
lŭpus,	*a wolf.*	rāmus,	*a branch.*	hortus,	*a garden.*
nŭmĕrus,	*a number.*	rīvus,	*a stream.*	cervus,	*a stag.*
mālus (*f.*),	*an apple-tree.*	ulmus (*f.*),	*an elm.*	prūnus (*f.*),	*a plum-tree.*

Examples for Declension like *măgistĕr.*

ăger,	*a field.*	cancer,	*a crab.*	făber,	*a smith.*
ăper,	*a boar.*	căper,	*a he-goat.*	lĭber,	*a book.*

Examples for Declension like *puĕr.*

sŏcer,	*a father-in-law.*	gĕner,	*a son-in-law.*	Lĭber,	*Bacchus.*
vesper,	*evening.*	ădulter,	*an adulterer.*	lĭbĕrī (plu.),	*children.*

Note 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, *Obs.* 1.

Note 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, *Obs.* 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum.*

dōnum,	*a gift.*	scūtum,	*a shield.*	bellum,	*war.*
tectum,	*a roof.*	vīnum,	*wine.*	templum,	*a temple.*

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as dŏmĭno, regno, puĕro, măgistĕro. The *Nominative Singular* originally ended in *ŏs*, and the *Accusative* in *om*: as, dŏmĭnŏ-s, dŏmĭno-m: puĕro-s, puĕro-m. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *v*: as servŏ-s, servo-m, *a slave.*

Obs. 2. When the *Genitive Singular* ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into ī. as, fīlī instead of fīlĭī, *of a son*; ōtī instead of ōtĭī, *of leisure.*

Obs. 3. The *Vocative Singular* of fīlius, *a son*, gĕnius, *a guardian spirit*, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in ī: as, fīlī, *O son*; gĕnī, *O guardian spirit*; Laelī, *O Laelius*; Tullī, *O Tullius.*

Obs. 4. The *Genitive Plural* of some words ends in *um* instead of *ōrum.* This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, nummum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertium from sestertius, *a sesterce, a silver coin* (about 2*d.*); mŏdium from mŏdius, *a Roman corn-measure, a peck*; fabrum, from făber, *a smith.*

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are vīr, *a man*, *Gen.* vīr-ī, &c., with its compounds, triumvīr, &c.; and lēvīr, ĭri, *a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.*

Obs. 6. Deŭs, *God*, is declined in the following manner:

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Deŭs, *God*		Deī, Dĭī, *or* Dī,	*Gods*
Gen.	Deī, *of God*		Deōrum *or* Deūm,	*of Gods*
Dat.	Deō, *to God*		Deīs, Dĭīs, *or* Dīs,	*to Gods*
Acc.	Deum, *God*		Deōs,	*Gods*
Voc.	Deŭs, *O God*	[*God.*	Deī, Dĭī, *or* Dī,	*O Gods* [*Gods.*
Abl.	Deō, *by, with,* or *from*		Deīs, Dĭīs, *or* Dīs,	*by, with,* or *from*

The forms *Dei* (*pl.*) and *Deis* are rarely used.

§ 20. Declension of Greek Substantives.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ŏs* frequently have the Greek endings *ŏs* and *ŏn* instead of the Latin *ŭs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (*ως*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen. i* as well as *o:*

Nom.	Dēlŏs	Andrŏgĕōs
Gen.	Dēlī	Andrŏgĕī, Andrŏgĕō
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕō
Acc.	Dēlŏn, Dēlum	Andrŏgĕōn, Andrŏgĕō
Voc.	Dēlĕ	Andrŏgĕōs
Abl.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕō

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnă:* as, *Andrŏgeōnă:* so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc. Athōnă.*

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*εύς*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

Nom.	Orphĕ͡ūs	Ŏrphĕ͡ūs
Gen.	Orphĕī, Orphe͡ī	Orphĕŏs
Dat.	Orphĕō	Orphe͡ī, Orphī
Acc.	Orphĕum	Orphĕa
Voc.	Orphe͡ū	Orphe͡ū
Abl.	Orphĕō	

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um:* as, Geōrgĭcōn librī, *the books of the Georgics.*

Chapter VI.—The Third or Consonant and I Declension.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or i.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives.*

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes p, b, and in the labial liquid m.

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Trab-s (f.), *a beam*	Trăb-ēs,	*beams*
Gen.	Trăb-īs, *of a beam*	Trăb-um,	*of beams*
Dat.	Trăb-ī, *to* or *for a beam*	Trăb-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for beams*
Acc.	Trăb-em, *a beam*	Trăb-ēs,	*beams*
Voc.	Trab-s, *O beam* [*beam.*	Trăb-ēs,	*O beams*
Abl.	Trăb-ē, *by, with,* or *from a*	Trăb-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from beams.*

2.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Princep-s (m.), *a chief*	Princĭp-ēs,	*chiefs*
Gen.	Princĭp-īs, *of a chief*	Princĭp-um,	*of chiefs*
Dat.	Princĭp-ī, *to* or *for a chief*	Princĭp-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for chiefs*
Acc.	Princĭp-em, *a chief*	Princĭp-ēs,	*chiefs*
Voc.	Princeps, *O chief* [*a chief.*	Princĭp-ēs,	*O chiefs* [*chiefs.*
Abl.	Princĭp-ē, *by, with,* or *from*	Princĭp-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from*

3.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Hiem-s (f.), *winter*	Hiĕm-ēs,	*winters*
Gen.	Hiĕm-īs, *of winter*	Hiĕm-um,	*of winters*
Dat.	Hiĕm-ī, *to* or *for winter*	Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for winters*
Acc.	Hiĕm-em, *winter*	Hiĕm-ēs,	*winters*
Voc.	Hiem-s, *O winter* [*winter.*	Hiĕm-ēs,	*O winters* [*ters.*
Abl.	Hiĕm-ē, *by, with,* or *from*	Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from win-*

4.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Urb-s (f.), *a city*	Urb-ēs,	*cities*
Gen.	Urb-is, *of a city*	Urb-ĭum,	*of cities*
Dat.	Urb-ī, *to* or *for a city*	Urb-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for cities*
Acc.	Urb-em, *a city*	Urb-ēs,	*cities*
Voc.	Urb-s, *O city* [*city.*	Urb-ēs,	*O cities*
Abl.	Urb-ē, *by, with,* or *from a*	Urb-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from cities.*

Obs. 1. When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ĭum*, not *um:* as urb-ium. So also below: arx, *Gen. Pl.* arc-ium; mons, *Gen. Pl.* mont-ium.

Obs. 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ĕ* in the last syllable, that *ĕ* is changed into *ĭ* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* princĕp, *Gen.* princĭp-is. So also below: *Stem* jūdĕc, *Gen.* jūdĭc-is; *Stem* mĭlĕt, *Gen.* mĭlĭt-is; *Stem* nōmĕn, *Gen.* nōmĭn-is.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes c, g.

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Dux (c. g.), *a leader*	Dŭc-ēs,	*leaders*
Gen.	Dŭc-īs, *of a leader*	Dŭc-um,	*of leaders*
Dat.	Dŭc-ī, *to* or *for a leader*	Dŭc-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for leaders*
Acc.	Dŭc-em, *a leader*	Dŭc-ēs,	*leaders*
Voc.	Dux, *O leader* [*leader.*	Dŭc-ēs,	*O leaders*
Abl.	Dŭc-ē, *by, with,* or *from a*	Dŭc-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from leaders.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), *a law*		Lēg-ēs, *laws*
Gen.	Lēg-īs, *of a law*		Lēg-um, *of laws*
Dat.	Lēg-ī, *to* or *for a law*		Lēg-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for laws*
Acc.	Lēg-em, *a law*		Lēg-ēs, *laws*
Voc.	Lex, *O law*	[*law.*	Lēg-ēs, *O laws*
Abl.	Lēg-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*		Lēg-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from laws.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Jūdex (c.), *a judge*		Jūdĭc-ēs, *judges*
Gen.	Jūdĭc-īs, *of a judge*		Jūdĭc-um, *of judges*
Dat.	Jūdĭc-ī, *to* or *for a judge*		Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for judges*
Acc.	Jūdĭc-em, *a judge*		Jūdĭc-ēs, *judges*
Voc.	Jūdex, *O judge*	[*judge.*	Jūdĭc-ēs, *O judges* [*judges.*
Abl.	Jūdĭc-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*		Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from*

4.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Arx (f.), *a citadel*		Arc-ēs, *citadels*
Gen.	Arc-īs, *of a citadel*		Arc-ium, *of citadels*
Dat.	Arc-ī, *to* or *for a citadel*		Arc-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for citadels*
Acc.	Arc-em, *a citadel*		Arc-ēs, *citadels*
Voc.	Arx, *O citadel*	[*citadel*	Arc-ēs, *O citadels*
Abl.	Arc-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*		Arc-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from citadels.*

Examples for Declension.

nux (*f.*),	nŭc-is,	*a nut.*	grex (*m.*),	grĕg-is,	*a flock.*
fax (*f.*),	făc-is,	*a torch.*	rēmex (*m.*),	rēmĭg-is,	*a rower.*
pax (*f.*),	păc-is,	*peace.*	pollex (*m.*),	pollĭc-is,	*the thumb.*
fornax (*f.*),	fornāc-is,	*an oven.*	index (*c.*),	indĭc-is,	*an informer.*
vox (*f.*),	vōc-is,	*a voice.*	vertex (*m.*),	vertĭc-is,	*an eddy.*
rādix (*f.*),	rādĭc-is,	*a root.*	falx (*f.*),	falc-is,	*a sickle.*
rex (*m.*),	rēg-is,	*a king.*	merx (*f.*),	merc-is,	*merchandise.*

Obs. Cs and *gs* are contracted into *x*: as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, *snow*, *Gen.* nĭv-is, *Dat.* nĭv-i, &c., the *Nom.* ends in *x*, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Aetās (f.), *an age*		Aetāt-ēs, *ages*
Gen.	Aetāt-īs, *of an age*		Aetāt-um, *of ages*
Dat.	Aetāt-ī, *to* or *for an age*		Aetāt-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for ages*
Acc.	Aetāt-em, *an age*		Aetāt-ēs, *ages*
Voc.	Aetās, *O age*	[*an age.*	Aetāt-ēs, *O ages*
Abl.	Aetāt-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from*		Aetāt-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from ages.*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lăpĭ-s (m.), *a stone*	Lăpĭd-ēs,	*stones*
Gen.	Lăpĭd-ĭs, *of a stone*	Lăpĭd-um,	*of stones*
Dat.	Lăpĭd-ī, *to* or *for a stone*	Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for stones*
Acc.	Lăpĭd-em, *a stone*	Lăpĭd-ēs,	*stones*
Voc.	Lăpĭ-s, *O stone* [*a stone.*	Lăpĭd-ēs,	*O stones*
Abl.	Lăpĭd-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from*	Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from stones.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Mīlĕ-s (c.), *a soldier*	Mīlĭt-ēs,	*soldiers*
Gen.	Mīlĭt-ĭs, *of a soldier*	Mīlĭt-um,	*of soldiers*
Dat.	Mīlĭt-ī, *to* or *for a soldier*	Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for soldiers*
Acc.	Mīlĭt-em, *a soldier*	Mīlĭt-ēs,	*soldiers*
Voc.	Mīlĕ-s, *O soldier* [*soldier.*	Mīlĭt-ēs,	*O soldiers* [*diers.*
Abl.	Mīlĭt-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*	Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from sol-*

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Mon-s (m.), *a mountain*	Mont-ēs,	*mountains*
Gen.	Mont-ĭs, *of a mountain*	Mont-ĭum,	*of mountains*
Dat.	Mont-ī, *to* or *for a mountain*	Mont-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for mountains*
Acc.	Mont-em, *a mountain*	Mont-ēs,	*mountains*
Voc.	Mon-s, *O mountain*	Mont-ēs,	*O mountains*
Abl.	Mont-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a mountain.*	Mont-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from mountains.*

Examples for Declension.

cīvĭtās (*f.*),	cīvĭtāt-ĭs,	*a state.*	
virtūs (*f.*),	virtūt-ĭs,	*virtue.*	
săcerdōs (*c.*),	săcerdōt-ĭs,	*a priest, priestess.*	
cassĭs (*f.*),	cassĭd-ĭs,	*a helmet.*	
cŏmĕs (*c.*),	cŏmĭt-ĭs,	*a companion.*	
obsĕs (*c.*),	obsĭd-ĭs,	*a hostage.*	
pars (*f.*),	part-ĭs,	*a part.*	
serpens (*c.*),	serpent-ĭs,	*a serpent.*	
ars (*f.*),	art-ĭs	*an art.*	
frons (*f.*),	front-ĭs,	*a forehead.*	

Obs. 1. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s:* as, aetās, lăpĭs, mīlĕs, mons, instead of aetats, lăpids, mīlets, monts.

Obs. 2. In nox, noct-ĭs, *night*, the *Stem* is noct: in the *Nom.* *t* is dropped before *s*, and the letters *cs* are contracted into *x:* noct-s = noc-s = nox.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids l, r, and the sibilant s.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Consŭl (m.), *a consul*	Consŭl-ēs,	*consuls*
Gen.	Consŭl-ĭs, *of a consul*	Consŭl-um,	*of consuls*
Dat.	Consŭl-ī, *to* or *for a consul*	Consŭl-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for consuls*
Acc.	Consŭl-em, *a consul*	Consŭl-ēs,	*consuls*
Voc.	Consŭl, *O consul*	Consŭl-ēs,	*O consuls*
Abl.	Consŭl-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a consul.*	Consŭl-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from consuls.*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Clāmŏr (m.), *a shout*		Clāmōr-ēs, *shouts*
Gen.	Clāmōr-ĭs, *of a shout*		Clāmōr-um, *of shouts*
Dat.	Clāmōr-ī, *to* or *for a shout*		Clāmōr-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for shouts*
Acc.	Clāmōr-em, *a shout*		Clāmōr-ēs, *shouts*
Voc.	Clāmŏr, *O shout* [*a shout.*		Clāmōr-ēs, *O shouts* [*shouts.*
Abl.	Clāmōr-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from*		Clāmōr-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Anser(m.), *a goose*		Anser-ēs, *geese*
Gen.	Anser-ĭs, *of a goose*		Anser-um, *of geese*
Dat.	Anser-ī, *to* or *for a goose*		Anser-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for geese*
Acc.	Anser-em, *a goose*		Anser-ēs, *geese*
Voc.	Anser, *O goose* [*a goose.*		Anser-ēs, *O geese*
Abl.	Anser-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from*		Anser-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from geese.*

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Păter, *a father*		Patr-ēs, *fathers*
Gen.	Patr-ĭs, *of a father*		Patr-um, *of fathers*
Dat.	Patr-ī, *to* or *for a father*		Patr-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for fathers*
Acc.	Patr-em, *a father*		Patr-ēs, *fathers*
Voc.	Păter, *O father* [*father.*		Patr-ēs, *O fathers*
Abl.	Patr-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*		Patr-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from fathers.*

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Flōs (m.), *a flower*		Flōr-ēs, *flowers*
Gen.	Flōr-ĭs, *of a flower*		Flōr-um, *of flowers*
Dat.	Flōr-ī, *to* or *for a flower*		Flōr-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for flowers*
Acc.	Flōr-em, *a flower*		Flōr-ēs, *flowers*
Voc.	Flōs, *O flower* [*flower.*		Flōr-ēs, *O flowers*
Abl.	Flōr-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*		Flōr-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from flowers.*

Examples for Declension.

sōl (*m.*),	sōl-is,	*the sun.*	aggĕr (*m.*),	aggĕr-is,	*a mound.*
exsŭl (*c.*),	exsŭl-is,	*an exile.*	carcĕr (*m.*),	carcĕr-is,	*a prison.*
cŏlŏr (*m.*),	cŏlōr-is,	*colour.*	mŭliĕr,	mŭliĕr-is,	*a woman.*
tĭmŏr (*m.*),	tĭmōr-is,	*fear.*	mātĕr,	mātr-is,	*a mother.*
mōs (*m.*),	mōr-is,	*a custom.*	frātĕr,	frātr-is,	*a brother.*

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in *ĕr*, the *ĕ* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as păter, māter, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* and *Nom.* flōs, *Gen.* flōr-is: *Stem* and *Nom.* pulvis, *dust*, *Gen.* pulvĕr-is.

§ 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

	Sing. 1.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (m.), *a lion*	Leōn-ēs, *lions*
Gen.	Leōn-ĭs, *of a lion*	Leōn-um, *of lions*
Dat.	Leōn-ī, *to* or *for a lion*	Leōn-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for lions*
Acc.	Leōn-em, *a lion*	Leōn-ēs, *lions*
Voc.	Leo, *O lion* [*lion.*	Leōn-ēs, *O lions*
Abl.	Leōn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*	Leōn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from lions.*

	Sing. 2.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgo, *a maiden*	Virgĭn-ēs, *maidens*
Gen.	Virgĭn-ĭs, *of a maiden*	Virgĭn-um, *of maidens*
Dat.	Virgĭn-ī, *to* or *for a maiden*	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for maidens*
Acc.	Virgĭn-em, *a maiden*	Virgĭn-ēs, *maidens*
Voc.	Virgo, *O maiden* [*maiden.*	Virgĭn-ēs, *O maidens* [*maidens.*
Abl.	Virgĭn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a*	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from*

Examples for Declension.

sermo (*m.*), sermōn-is, *a discourse.*		hŏmo (*c.*), hŏmĭn-is,	*a man* or *woman.*
pŭgio (*m.*), pŭgiōn-is, *a dagger.*		grando (*f.*), grandĭn-is,	*hail.*
lātro (*m.*), lātrōn-is, *a robber.*		ordo (*m.*), ordĭn-is,	*a rank.*
praeco (*m.*), praecōn-is, *a crier.*		ĭmāgo (*f.*), ĭmāgĭn-is,	*a likeness.*
ōrātio (*f.*), ōrātiōn-is, *a speech.*		hĭrundo (*f.*), hĭrundĭn-is,	*a swallow.*
pāvo (*m.*), pāvōn-is, *a peacock.*		ărundo (*f.*), ărundĭn-is,	*a reed.*

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ŏn (short), the *ŏ* is changed into *ĭ*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* virgŏn, *Gen.* virgĭn-is. Comp. § 21, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. Căro (*Stem* cărŏn) *flesh*, drops the *ŏ* in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as, *Nom.* căro, *Gen.* carn-is, *Dat.* carn-ī, &c.

§ 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

	Sing. 1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-ĭs (*c.*), *an enemy*	Host-ēs, *enemies*
Gen.	Host-ĭs, *of an enemy*	Host-ĭum, *of enemies*
Dat.	Host-ī, *to* or *for an enemy*	Host-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for enemies*
Acc.	Host-em, *an enemy*	Host-ēs, *enemies*
Voc.	Host-ĭs, *O enemy* [*enemy.*	Host-ēs, *O enemies* [*mies.*
Abl.	Host-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from an*	Host-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from ene-*

Examples for Declension.

cīvis (*c.*),	*a citizen.*	ŏvis (*f.*),	*a sheep.*	vestis (*f.*),	*a garment*
ăvis (*f.*),	*a bird.*	fēlis (*f.*),	*a cat.*	classis (*f.*),	*a fleet.*

Some Stems end in i or e, and are thus declined:—

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, *a cloud*	Nūb-ēs,	*clouds*
Gen.	Nūb-ĭs, *of a cloud*	Nūb-ĭum,	*of clouds*
Dat.	Nūb-ī. *to or for a cloud*	Nūb-ĭbŭs,	*to or for clouds*
Acc.	Nūb-em, *a cloud*	Nūb-ēs,	*clouds*
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, *O cloud* [*cloud.*	Nūb-ēs,	*O clouds*
Abl.	Nūb-ĕ, *by, with, or from a*	Nūb-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from clouds.*

Examples for Declension.

clādēs, *a defeat.* | rūpēs, *a rock.* | sēdēs, *a seat.*

B. *Neuter Substantives.*

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in ă, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in n, r, s, t.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Nōmĕn, *a name*	Nōmĭn-ă,	*names*
Gen.	Nōmĭn-ĭs, *of a name*	Nōmĭn-um,	*of names*
Dat.	Nōmĭn-ī, *to or for a name*	Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,	*to or for names*
Acc.	Nōmĕn, *a name*	Nōmĭn-ă,	*names*
Voc.	Nōmĕn, *O name* [*name.*	Nōmĭn-ă,	*O names* [*names.*
Abl.	Nōmĭn-ĕ, *by, with, or from a*	Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Fulgŭr, *lightning*	Fulgŭr-ă,	*lightnings*
Gen.	Fulgŭr-ĭs, *of lightning*	Fulgŭr-um,	*of lightnings*
Dat.	Fulgŭr-ī, *to or for lightning*	Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for lightnings*
Acc.	Fulgŭr, *lightning*	Fulgŭr-ă,	*lightnings*
Voc.	Fulgŭr, *O lightning*	Fulgŭr-ă,	*O lightnings*
Abl.	Fulgŭr-ĕ, *by, with, or from lightning.*	Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from lightnings.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Crūs, *a leg*	Crūr-ă,	*legs*
Gen.	Crūr-ĭs, *of a leg*	Crūr-um,	*of legs*
Dat.	Crūr-ī, *to or for a leg*	Crūr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for legs*
Acc.	Crūs, *a leg*	Crūr-ă,	*legs*
Voc.	Crūs, *O leg* [*leg.*	Crūr-ă,	*O legs*
Abl.	Crūr-ĕ, *by, with, or from a*	Crūr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from legs.*

	Sing.		4.	Plur.	
Nom.	ŏpŭs,	*a work*	ŏpĕr-ă,	*works*	
Gen.	ŏpĕr-ĭs,	*of a work*	ŏpĕr-um,	*of works*	
Dat.	ŏpĕr-ī,	*to* or *for a work*	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for works*	
Acc.	ŏpŭs,	*a work*	ŏpĕr-ă,	*works*	
Voc.	ŏpŭs,	*O work* [*work.*	ŏpĕr-ă,	*O works*	
Abl.	ŏpĕr-ĕ,	*by, with,* or *from a*	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from works.*	

	Sing.		5.	Plur.	
Nom.	Corpŭs,	*a body*	Corpŏr-ă,	*bodies*	
Gen.	Corpŏr-ĭs,	*of a body*	Corpŏr-um,	*of bodies*	
Dat.	Corpŏr-ī,	*to* or *for a body*	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for bodies*	
Acc.	Corpŭs,	*a body*	Corpŏr-ă,	*bodies*	
Voc.	Corpŭs,	*O body* [*body.*	Corpŏr-ă,	*O bodies* [*bodies.*	
Abl.	Corpŏr-ĕ,	*by, with,* or *from a*	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from*	

	Sing.		6.	Plur.	
Nom.	Căpŭt,	*a head*	Căpĭt-ă,	*heads*	
Gen.	Căpĭt-ĭs,	*of a head*	Căpĭt-um,	*of heads*	
Dat.	Căpĭt-ī,	*to* or *for a head*	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for heads*	
Acc.	Căpŭt,	*a head*	Căpĭt-ă,	*heads*	
Voc.	Căpŭt,	*O head* [*head.*	Căpĭt-ă,	*O heads*	
Abl.	Căpĭt-ĕ,	*by, with,* or *from a*	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from heads.*	

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, flāmĕn, ĭnis (*m.*), *a special priest;* Vĕnŭs, ĕris, *the goddess of love;* lĕpŭs, ŏris (*m.*), *a hare.*

Examples for Declension.

flūmĕn,	ĭnis,	*a river.*	fūnŭs,	ĕris,	*a funeral.*
carmĕn,	ĭnis,	*a song.*	lătŭs,	ĕris,	*a side.*
fulmĕn,	ĭnis,	*a thunderbolt.*	sīdŭs,	ĕris,	*a constellation.*
sēmĕn,	ĭnis,	*a seed.*	vulnŭs,	ĕris,	*a wound.*
murmŭr,	ŭris,	*a murmur.*	littŭs,	ŏris,	*a shore.*
guttŭr,	ŭris,	*a throat.*	pignŭs,	ŏris,	*a pledge.*
ōs,	ōris,	*a mouth.*	tempŭs,	ŏris,	*a time.*
gĕnŭs,	ĕris,	*a race.*	nĕmŭs,	ŏris,	*a grove.*
foedŭs,	ĕris,	*a treaty.*	pectŭs,	ŏris,	*a breast.*

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of crūs-is; ŏpĕs, ŏpĕr-is, instead of ŏpĕs-is; corpŏs, corpŏr-is, instead of corpŏs-is.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ŭs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only an euphonic change of the *ĕ* and *ŏ* of the *Stem:* as, *Stems* ŏpĕs, corpŏs; *Nom.* ŏpŭs, corpŭs.

Obs. 3. In căpŭt, căpĭt-ĭs, the *ŭ* of the Stem is changed into *ĭ* when another syllable follows, like the *ĕ* in nōmĕn, nōmĭn-is. *See* § 21, *Obs.* 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in **i** (the *Nom.* in **e, al, ar**).

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Măr-ĕ, *the sea*	Măr-ĭă,	*seas*
Gen.	Măr-ĭs, *of the sea*	Măr-ĭum,	*of seas*
Dat.	Măr-ī, *to* or *for the sea*	Măr-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for seas*
Acc.	Măr-ĕ, *the sea*	Măr-ĭă,	*seas*
Voc.	Măr-ĕ, *O sea* [*sea.*	Măr-ĭă,	*O seas*
Abl.	Măr-ī, *by, with,* or *from the*	Măr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from seas.*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Ănĭmăl, *an animal*	Ănĭmāl-ĭă,	*animals*
Gen.	Ănĭmāl-ĭs, *of an animal*	Ănĭmāl-ĭum,	*of animals*
Dat.	Ănĭmāl-ī, *to* or *for an animal*	Ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for animals*
Acc.	Ănĭmăl, *an animal*	Ănĭmāl-ĭă,	*animals*
Voc.	Ănĭmăl, *O animal*	Ănĭmāl-ĭă,	*O animals*
Abl.	Ănĭmāl-ī, *by, with,* or *from an animal.*	Ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from animals.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Calcăr, *a spur*	Calcār-ĭă,	*spurs*
Gen.	Calcār-ĭs, *of a spur*	Calcār-ĭum,	*of spurs*
Dat.	Calcār-ī, *to* or *for a spur*	Calcār-ĭbŭs,	*to* or *for spurs*
Acc.	Calcăr, *a spur*	Calcār-ĭă,	*spurs*
Voc.	Calcăr, *O spur* [*spur.*	Calcār-ĭă,	*O spurs*
Abl.	Calcār-ī, *by, with,* or *from a*	Calcār-ĭbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from spurs.*

Examples for Declension.

rētĕ,	*a net.*	mŏnīlĕ,	*a necklace.*	cervīcăl,	*a pillow.*
ŏvīlĕ,	*a sheepfold.*	vectīgăl,	*a tax.*	exemplăr,	*an example.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of *mărĕ* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ĕ* of the *Nom.* being only ăn euphonic change of the *i:* as, *Stem* mări, *Nom.* mărĕ.

Obs. 2. The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *ăl* ånd *ăr*, end in *āli* and *āri*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the Nom. Sing.: as, *Stem* ănĭmāli, *Nom.* ănĭmăl; *Stem* calcāri, *Nom.* calcăr. Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 32, 33.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined:

Bōs (*c.*), *an ox* or *cow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Bōs	Bŏv-ēs
Gen.	Bŏv-ĭs	Bŏv-um or bŏ-um
Dat.	Bŏv-ī	Bō-būs or bū-būs
Acc.	Bŏv-em	Bŏv-ēs
Voc.	Bōs	Bŏv-ēs
Abl.	Bŏv-ĕ	Bō-būs or būbŭs.

Sĕnex, *an old man.*	
Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Sĕnex	Sĕn-ēs
Gen. Sĕn-ĭs	Sĕn-um
Dat. Sĕn-ī	Sĕn-ĭbŭs
Acc. Sĕn-em	Sĕn-ēs
Voc. Sĕnex	Sĕn-ēs
Abl. Sĕn-ĕ	Sĕn-ĭbŭs

Jūpĭtĕr (=Jŏv-pĭtĕr, *i. e.* pătĕr), *the god.*	
Nom.	Jūpĭtĕr
Gen.	Jŏv-ĭs
Dat.	Jŏv-ī
Acc.	Jŏv-em
Voc.	Jūpĭtĕr
Abl.	Jŏv-ĕ.

Chapter VII.—Remarks on the Cases of the Third Declension (including Adjectives).

§ 31. *Accusative Singular in* im.

The *Acc. Sing.* of many Substantives, of which the *Nom.* ends in *is* has *im*, not *em*:

1. Always in the five words:—

ămussĭs, rāvĭs, sĭtĭs, tussĭs, vīs,

and in the names of cities and rivers; as, Hispălīs, *Seville;* Tĭbĕrĭs, *the Tiber.*

ămussĭs (*f.*), *a rule.*	tussĭs (*f.*), *a cough.*
rāvĭs (*f.*), *hoarseness.*	vĭs (*f.*), *violence.*
sĭtĭs (*f.*), *thirst.*	

2. Generally in the six words:

febrĭs, pelvĭs, puppĭs,
restĭs, turrĭs, sĕcūrĭs.

febrĭs (*f.*), *fever.*	restĭs (*f.*), *a rope.*
pelvĭs (*f.*), *a basin.*	turrĭs (*f.*), *a tower.*
puppĭs (*f.*), *the stern of a ship.*	sĕcūrĭs (*f.*), *an axe.*

3. Sometimes in the three words:

clāvĭs, messĭs, nāvĭs.

clāvĭs (*f.*), *a key.* | messĭs (*f.*), *a harvest.* | nāvĭs (*f.*), *a ship.*

§ 32. *Ablative Singular in* ī.

The *Abl. Sing.* has ī, not *ĕ*:

1. In all words of which the Accusative ends in *im* only: as, sĭtī, Tĭbĕrī.

2. In Neuters in *ĕ*, *ăl*, and *ăr*, (Gen. āris): as, mărī, ănĭmālī, calcārī.

Obs. 1. Sometimes, but very rarely, these Substantives have ĕ in the Ablative: as, mărĕ (Varr., Lucr.).

Obs. 2. Names of towns in *e* always have ĕ in the Abl.: as, Praenestĕ.

Obs. 3. Substantives in *ar*, the Gen. of which is not āris, have ĕ in the Abl.: as, fār, farris, *spelt;* baccăr, baccăris, *a sweet herb;* jūbăr, jūbăris, *a sun-beam;* nectăr, nectăris, *nectar.*

3. In Adjectives ending in *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e:* as, făcĭlī from făcĭlis, *easy;* ācrī from ācĕr, *sharp.*

§ 33. *Ablative Singular in* ī *and* ĕ.

The *Abl. Sing.* has both ī and ĕ:

1. In most words the Acc. of which ends both in *im* and *em:* as, puppī and puppĕ.

Also in ignis, āvis, imbĕr, vesper, sūpellex.

ignis (*m.*), *fire.*	sūpellex, *f.* (Abl. sūpellectīlī, or sūpellectīlĕ), *household utensils.*
āvis (*f.*), *a bird.*	
imbĕr, *n.* (Abl. imbrī & imbrĕ), *rain.*	vesper, *m.* (Abl. vespĕrī or vespĕrĕ), *evening.*

Obs. Restis has only restĕ; sĕcūris only sĕcūrī.

2. In Adjectives of one termination and in the Comparatives: as, prūdentī and prūdentĕ from prūdens, *experienced;* altiōrī and altiōrĕ from altiŏr, *higher.* The Comparatives usually have ĕ.

Obs. 1. The following Adjectives have ĕ only:

paupĕr, pūbĕs, dĕsĕs, compŏs, impŏs, caelebs, princeps and sūperstĕs.

paupĕr, ĕris,	*poor.*	impŏs, ŏtis,	*not master of.*
pūbĕs (ĕr), ĕris,	*an adult.*	caelebs, ĭbis,	*unmarried.*
dĕsĕs, ĭdis,	*lazy.*	princeps, ĭpis,	*chief.*
compŏs, ŏtis,	*having the mastery of.*	sūperstĕs, ĭtis,	*surviving.*

Obs. 2. Pār, *equal*, and mĕmŏr, *mindful*, have only ī. But pār, *a pair* (subst.), has ĕ also.

Obs. 3. The Participles in *ns* generally have ĭ when used as Adjectives, but otherwise ĕ.

§ 34. *Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in* ĭă.

The *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Plur.* of Neuter Nouns have ĭă:

1. In Substantives, the Nom. Sing. of which end in *e*, *al*, *ar* (Gen. *āris*): as, mărĭă, ănĭmālĭă, calcārĭă.

2. In Adjectives which have the Abl. Sing. either in ī alone, or in ī and ĕ, except the Comparatives: as, grăvĭă, ācrĭă, prūdentĭă; but altiōrĕ.

Obs. Except vĕtŭs, *old*, which has vĕtĕră. Complūrēs, *several*, has both complūră and complūrĭă.

§ 35. *Genitive Plural in* ĭum.

The *Gen. Plur.* has *ĭum*, not *um:*

1. In Substantives the Nom. Sing. of which ends in *is* or *es*, not increasing in the Gen.: as, hostis, hostĭum; aedēs, aedĭum.

Exceptions.

Ambāgēs, strucs, jŭvĕnĭs,
Vātēs, cănĭs, vŏlŭcrĭs,
In genitive have *um*,
While ăpĭs, mensĭs, sēdēs,
Have either *um* or *ĭum*.

ambāgēs* (*f.*),	*a winding.*	vŏlŭcrĭs (*f.*),	*a bird.*
strucs (*f.*),	*a heap.*	ăpĭs (*f.*),	*a bee.*
jŭvĕnĭs (*c.*),	*a youth.*	mensĭs (*m.*),	*a month.*
vātēs (*c.*),	*a prophet.*	sēdēs (*f.*),	*a seat.*
cănĭs (*c.*),	*a dog.*		

* See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

2. In the words:

Imbĕr, ūtĕr, lintĕr,
Insŭbĕr, cărō, ventĕr:

as, imbrĭum, carnĭum, &c.

imbĕr (*m.*),	*rain.*	Insŭbĕr (*m.*),	*name of a Gallic tribe.*
ūtĕr (*m.*),	*a bag made of leather.*	cărō (*f.*),	*flesh.*
lintĕr (*m.*),	*a wherry.*	ventĕr (*m.*),	*the belly.*

3. In monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants: as, urbs, urb-ium; arx, arc-ium; mons, mont-ium; so also os (*Stem* oss), *n.*, *a bone*, *Gen. Pl.* oss-ium; as (*Stem* ass), *m.*, *a small coin*, *Gen. Pl.* ass-ium.

4. Also in the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant:

Līs, glīs, and vīs,
Mūs, mās, and nix,
Add faux and strix.

lis (lītium), *f.*	*a lawsuit.*	mās (mărium),	*a male.*
glis (glīrium), *m.*	*a dormouse.*	nix (nĭvium), *f.*	*snow.*
vis (vīrium), *f.*	*force.*	faux (faucium), *f.*	*the throat.*
mūs (mūrium), *m.*	*a mouse.*	strix (strĭgium), *f.*	*an owl.*

Obs. The *Nom.* faux is not used. See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

5. In all neuter substantives which have the *Nom. Pl.* in *ia:* as, mărium; ănĭmālium; calcārium.

§ 36. *Genitive Plural in* ĭum (*rarely* um).

The *Gen. Plur.* generally ends in *ĭum*, rarely in *um:*

1. In words of more than one syllable, the Nom. Sing. of which

ends in *ns:* as, cliens (clientium, rarely clientum), *a client;* ădŏlescens (ădŏlescentium, rarely ădŏlescentum), *a young man;* prūdens (prūdentium, rarely prūdentum), *prudent.*

2. In national names: as, Quĭrīs (Quĭrītium), *a Roman;* Arpīnās (Arpīnātium), *a native of Arpinum.* Also Pĕnātēs (Pĕnātium), *the household gods;* optīmātēs (optīmātium), *the nobles.*

§ 37. *Accusative Plural in* īs *and* ēs.

The *Acc. Plur.* of most masculine and feminine nouns, the Gen. Pl of which ends in *ium*, has *īs* as well as *ēs* (old form *eis*): as, hostīs and hostēs; artīs and artēs; praesentīs and praesentēs.

Obs. The words which have in the *Sing.* the case-endings *im* and *i*, and in the *Plural* the case-endings *ia*, *ium*, and *is*, generally have Stems ending in i. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel: as,

Acc. Sing.	puppi-m	like	gradu-m;
Abl. Sing.	puppī	,,	gradū;
Nom. Pl.	mari-ă	,,	genu-ă;
Gen. Pl.	mari-um	,,	genu-um;
Acc. Pl.	puppī-s	,,	manū-s.

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant: thus we have also the forms puppem, puppĕ, puppes, &c. The i of the Stem is frequently dropped in the *Nom. Sing.:* see § 29, *Obs.* 2.

Chapter VIII.—Greek Substantives of the Third Declension.

§ 38. *Nominative Singular.*

The *Nom. Sing.* of many Proper Names ends in the Greek *ōn* (ων) as well as the Latin *ŏ:* as, Agămemnōn, rarely Agămemno.

§ 39. *Genitive Singular.*

1. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* ends in ī more frequently than in *ĭs:* as, *Nom.* Pĕriclēs, *Gen.* Pĕricl-ī and Pĕricl-ĭs.

2. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ŏs* (ος) instead of in the Latin *s:* as, Thĕtĭs, *Gen.* Thĕtĭdŏs; Pallās, *Gen.* Pallăd-ŏs.

3. The *Gen. Sing.* of Feminine Names in *ō* generally ends in the Greek *ūs* (οῦς) instead of in the Latin *ōnis:* as, Sapphō, *Gen.* Sapphūs. The *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* are usually Sapphō, rarely Sapphōn-ī,-em, -ĕ.

§ 40. *Accusative Singular.*

1. The *Acc. Sing.* frequently ends in the Greek *ă* instead of in the Latin *em:* as, āĕr, *Acc.* āĕr-ă; Agămemnōn, *Acc.* Agămemnŏn-ă.

2. The *Acc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is* (with the Stem in *i*) ends either in *im* or in the Greek *in* (ιν): as, poēsĭs, *Acc.* poēsim and poēsĭn; Chărybdĭs, *Acc.* Chărybdim and Chărybdĭn.

3. The *Acc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* frequently ends in the Greek *ēn* (ην), which is the *Acc.* of the first Greek Declension: as, Aeschĭnēs, *Acc.* Aeschĭnēn and Aeschĭnem.

§ 41. *Vocative Singular.*

1. The *Voc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is*, *ys* (υς), *eus* (ευς), and *as* (Gen. *antis*), ends, as in Greek, without *s*: as, Phyllĭs, *Voc.* Phyllĭ; Cōtўs, *Voc.* Cōtў; Orpheus, *Voc.* Orpheu (see § 20); Calchās, *Voc.* Calchā.

2. The *Voc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs*, Gen. *ĕ̄s*, ends in ēs, ĕs, and ē: as Sōcrătēs, Sōcrătĕs, and Sōcrătē.

§ 42. *Nominative Plural.*

The *Nom. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ĕ̄s* (ες) instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, Arcădĕs.

§ 43. *Genitive Plural.*

The *Gen. Plur.* in *ōn* (ων) is found in the titles of books only: as, Mĕtămorphōseōn librī.

§ 44. *Accusative Plural.*

The *Acc. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ăs* instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, Arcăd-ăs.

§ 45. *Dative and Ablative Plural.*

The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of Greek Substantives in *ma*, Gen. *mătĭs*, frequently end in *īs* (according to the Second Declension) instead of in *ĭbŭs*: as, poēmăt-īs from poēmă (ποίημα).

Examples.

Sing.		Sing.
Nom.	Pĕriclēs	Pallas
Gen.	Pĕriclĭs, Pĕriclī	Pallădĭs, Pallădos
Dat.	Pĕriclī	Pallădī
Acc.	Pĕriclem, Pĕriclēă	Pallădem, Pallădă
Voc.	Pĕriclēs, Pĕriclĕs, Pĕriclē	Pallas
Abl.	Pĕriclē.	Pallădĕ.
Nom.	Părĭs	Sapphō
Gen.	Părĭdĭs, Părĭdŏs	Sapphūs, Sapphōnĭs
Dat.	Părĭdī	Sapphō, Sapphonī
Acc.	Părĭdem, Părĭdă, Părin	Sapphō, Sapphōnem
Voc.	Parĭ	Sapphō
Abl.	Parĭdĕ.	Sapphōnĕ.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. chlămȳs, *a cloak.*	chlămȳdēs *or* -ēs
Gen. chlămȳdĭs, chlămȳdŏs	chlămȳdum
Dat. chlămȳdi	chlămȳdĭbŭs
Acc. chlămȳdem, chlămȳdă	chlămȳdēs, chlămȳdăs
Abl. chlămȳdĕ.	chlămȳdĭbŭs.

Chapter IX.—The Fourth or U Declension.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in ŭs, and of Neuter Substantives in u.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Grăd-ŭs, *a step*		Grăd-ūs, *steps*
Gen. Grăd-ūs, *of a step*		Grăd-uum, *of steps*
Dat. Grăd-uī, *to* or *for a step*		Grăd-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for steps*
Acc. Grăd-um, *a step*		Grăd-ūs, *steps*
Voc. Grăd-ŭs, *O step*	[*step.*	Grăd-ūs, *O steps*
Abl. Grăd-ū, *by, with,* or *from a*		Grăd-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from steps.*

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Gĕn-u, *a knee*		Gĕn-ŭă, *knees*
Gen. Gĕn-ūs, *of a knee*		Gĕn-ŭum, *of knees*
Dat. Gĕn-ū, *to* or *for a knee*		Gĕn-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for knees*
Acc. Gĕn-u, *a knee*		Gĕn-ŭă, *knees*
Voc. Gĕn-u, *O knee*	[*knee.*	Gĕn-ŭă, *O knees*
Abl. Gĕn-ū, *by, with,* or *from a*		Gĕn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from knees.*

Gender.—Substantives in us of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

Examples for Declension.

Masculine.

fructus, *fruit.*	mōtus, *a movement.*	passus, *a pace.*
currus, *a chariot.*	ūsus, *a use.*	cursus, *a running.*
sensus, *a sense.*	cāsus, *a fall.*	cantus, *a song.*

Feminine.

mănus, *a hand.*	nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law.*
trĭbus, *a tribe* (a division of the	socrus *a mother-in-law.*
ăcus, *a needle.* [Roman people.)	ănus, *an old-woman.*
portĭcus, *a portico.*	īdus (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the
dŏmus, *a house.*	Roman month).

Neuter.

cornu, *a horn.* | vĕru, *a spit.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.

Obs. 2. The *Gen. Sing. ūs* is a contraction of *uĭs :* as, grădūs from grăduĭs.

Obs. 3. The *Dat. Sing. uī* is often contracted into *ū :* as, grăduī, grăḍū.

Obs. 4. The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of the following words end in *ŭbŭs*, but portus and vĕru have also *ĭbŭs :*—

quercus, also ŭcus,
arcus, vĕru, lăcus,
spĕcus, trĭbus, artus,
portus, pĕcu, partus.

quercus (*f.*), *an oak.*	lăcus (*m.*), *a lake, tank.*	artus (*m.*), *a joint.*
ăcus (*f.*), *a needle.*	spĕcus (*m. f.* & *n.*), *a cave.*	portus (*m.*), *a harbour.*
arcus (*m.*), *a bow.*		pĕcu (*n.*), *cattle.*
vĕru (*n.*), *a spit.*	trĭbus (*f.*), *a tribe.*	partus (*m.*), *a birth.*

Obs. 5. Dŏmus, *a house*, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dŏm-ŭs	Dŏm-ūs
Gen. Dŏm-ūs	Dŏm-ŭum *or* dŏm-ōrum
Dat. Dŏm-uĭ	Dŏm-ĭbŭs
Acc. Dŏm-um	Dŏm-ōs (*rarely* dŏm-ūs)
Voc. Dŏm-ŭs	Dŏm-ūs
Abl. Dŏm-ō	Dŏm-ĭbŭs.

Hence the memorial line :

Tollĕ *mĕ, mū, mī, mīs,*
SI dēclīnārĕ *dŏmus* vIs.

i. e. leave out the endings *mĕ, mū, mī, mīs*, if you wish to decline *dŏmŭs.*

Dŏmī is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.

CHAPTER X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs.*

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dĭ-ēs, *a day*	Dĭ-ēs, *days*
Gen. Dĭ-ēī, *of a day*	Dĭ-ērum, *of days*
Dat. Dĭ-ēī, *to* or *for a day*	Dĭ-ēbŭs, *to* or *for days*
Acc. Dĭ-em, *a day*	Dĭ-ēs, *days*
Voc. Dĭ-ēs, *O day*	Dĭ-ēs, *O days*
Abl. Dĭ-ē, *by, with,* or *from a* [*day.*	Dĭ-ēbŭs, *by, with,* or *from days.*

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine: excepting dies, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine: also merīdies (*m.*), *noon*, which is a compound of dies.

Examples for Declension.

rēs, *a thing.*	effĭgiēs, *a likeness.*	spĕciēs, *appearance.*
ăciēs, *a point.*	fĭdēs, *faith.*	spēs, *hope.*
făciēs, *a face.*	sĕriēs, *a series.*	mĕridies (*m.*), *noon.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*.

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in eī is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dĭ-ēī, făcĭ-ēī; but, rĕī, fĭdĕī.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, dīē, fĭdē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and dīēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The words ăciēs, făciēs, effĭgiēs, sĕriēs, spĕciēs, and spēs occur in the Plural only in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* cases. No other words of the Declension have any Plural.

CHAPTER XI.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, fās, *permitted by divine law;* nĕfās, *opposed to divine law;* nĭhĭl, *nothing;* instăr, *resemblance.*

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, justĭtia, *justice;* fāmēs, *hunger;* aurum, *gold.*

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, nuptiae, *a marriage;* fēriae, *holidays;* tĕnebrae, *darkness;* lĭbĕrī, *children;* armă, *arms.*

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
Aedēs,	*a temple;*	aedēs,	*a house.*
Āqua,	*water;*	āquae,	*medicinal springs.*
Auxĭlium,	*help;*	auxĭlia,	*auxiliary forces.*
Carcĕr,	*a prison;*	carcĕrēs,	*a starting-place.*
Castrum,	*a fort;*	castră,	*a camp.*
Cŏmĭtium,	*the place of Assembly;*	Cŏmĭtiă,	*the Assembly itself.*
Cōpia,	*plenty;*	cōpiae,	*forces.*
Fortūna,	*fortune;*	fortūnae,	*the gifts of fortune,*
Grātia,	*favour;*	grātiae,	*thanks.* [*property.*
Impĕdīmentum,	*a hindrance;*	impĕdīmentă,	*baggage.*
Littĕra,	*a letter of the alpha-*	littĕrae,	*an epistle.*
Lūdus,	*play, school;* [*bet;*	lūdī,	*public games.*
ŏpĕra,	*exertion;*	ŏpĕrae,	*workmen.*
ŏpis (Gen.),	*help;*	ŏpēs,	*power, wealth.*
Pars,	*a portion;*	partes,	*a part in a play.*
Rostrum,	*a beak;*	rostră,	*the platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships),*
Tăbŭla,	*a board, picture;*	tăbŭlae,	*writing tablets.*

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases.

1. The following Substantives have no Nominative Singular:

(daps), dăpis (*f.*),	*a feast.*
(dītio) dītiōnis (*f.*),	*dominion.*
(frux) frūgis (*f.*),	*fruit.*
(internĕcio) internĕciōnis (*f.*),	*destruction.*

2. The following Substantives have only certain cases:

fors (*f.*), *chance.* Only *Nom.* and *Abl. Sing.* fortĕ (without Plural).

(ops) ŏpis (*f.*), *help.* Only *Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing.* ŏpis, ŏpem, ŏpĕ. Full Plural.

(prex, prĕcis) (*f.*), *prayer.* Only *Dat., Acc.*, and *Abl. Sing.* Full Plural.

(vicis), *change.* Only *Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing.* vicis, vicem, vicĕ. Full Plural, except *Gen.*

vis (*f.*), *force.* Only *Nom., Acc., Abl. Sing.* vis, vim, vī. Full Plural vīrēs, vīrium, vīribŭs, vīrēs, vīrēs, vīribŭs.

3. The following Substantives have in the Singular the Ablative only, but a full Plural:—

ambāgĕ (*f.*), *a circuit.* | faucĕ (*f.*), *the throat.* | verbĕrĕ (*n.*), *a stripe.*

4. One word has only the Ablative Singular, and no Plural:—spontĕ (*f.*), *by inclination.*

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Hĕtĕrŏclītă*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. In the Second Declension some Substantives end in *us* and *um:* as, callus and callum, *hardened skin;* commentārius and commentārium, *a note-book.*

2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Second Declensions: as, menda and mendum, *a fault.* Vespĕr (also vespĕra), *the evening*, has, according to the Second Declension, the *Acc.* vespĕrum, but the *Abl.* usually according to the Third Declension, vespĕrĕ, vespĕrī.

3. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Fifth Declensions: as, barbăria and barbăriēs, *barbarism;* mollĭtia and mollĭtiēs, *softness;* luxŭria and luxŭriēs, *luxury;* mātĕria and mātĕriēs, *timber.*

4. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: as, dŏmus, *a house* (see § 46, *Obs.* 5); laurus, *a bay-tree;* cŭpressus, *a cypress;* ficus, *a fig-tree;* pīnus, *a pine-tree;* ēventus (4) and ēventum, *an occurrence;* suggestŭs (4) and suggestum, *a platform for speakers.*

5. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbēī, *the commonalty;* rĕquiēs, rĕquiētis and rĕquiēī, *rest.*

6. Jūgĕrum, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.:* as, jūgĕrĭ, jūgĕrum, jūgĕribŭs. Vās, vāsis, *a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the Sing., but of the Second in the Plural: as, vāsă, vāsōrum, vāsīs.

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Hĕtĕrŏgĕnĕă*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural.

Sing.		Plur.
jŏcus (*m.*),	*a joke.*	jŏcī (*m.*), jŏcă (*n.*)
lŏcus (*m.*),	*a place.*	lŏcī (*m.*), lŏcă (*n.*)
carbăsus (*f.*),	*fine linen.*	carbăsă (*n.*), *sails.*
coelum (*n.*),	*heaven.*	coeli (*m.*) (rare).

Sing.		Plur.
frēnum (*n.*),	*a bit.*	frēnī (*m.*), frēnă (*n.*)
Tartărus (*m.*),	*the infernal regions.*	Tartără (*n.*)
dĭēs,*	*a day.*	dĭēs (*m.*)
rastrum (*n.*),	*a rake.*	rastrī (*m.*), rastră (*n.*)

Obs. Dies is feminine in the singular when *a set day* or *period of time* is indicated.

* See § 47, note.

Chapter XII.—Declension of Adjectives.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. Adjectives of Three Terminations are divided into Two Classes.

Adjectives of the first class end in ŭs, ă, um, or ĕr, ă, um, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

1.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Acc.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

2.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Voc.	Nĭg-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

	Sing.			3.	Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Voc.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

Examples for Declension.

mălus,	a,	um,	*bad.*	sŭpĕrbus,	a,	um,	*proud.*
cārus,	a,	um,	*dear.*	săcer,	cra,	rum,	*sacred.*
clārus,	a,	um,	*bright.*	aeger,	gra,	rum,	*sick.*
plēnus,	a,	um,	*full.*	măcer,	cra,	rum,	*lean.*
albus,	a,	um,	*white.*	pulcher,	chra,	rum,	*beautiful.*
magnus,	a,	um,	*great.*	rŭber,	bra,	rum,	*red.*
parvus,	a,	um,	*little.*	sĭnister,	tra,	rum,	*left.*

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like tĕnĕr are the following:—

asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *rough.*	lĭber, ĕra, ĕrum, *free.*
lăcer, ĕra, ĕrum, *torn.*	mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, *wretched.*
prosper, ĕra, ĕrum, *prosperous.*	

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger:* as,

lānĭger, ĕra, ĕrum, *wool-bearing.*	ŏpĭfer, ĕra, ĕrum, *help-bringing.*

All other Adjectives in *ĕr* drop the *ĕ*, and are declined like nĭger.

Dextĕr is declined in both ways, dextĕrĕ and dextrĕ, dextĕrum and dextrum.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in *ŭr;* sătŭr, sătŭrĕ, sătŭrum, *full of food, sated.*

§ 57. *Irregular Declension in us, a, um,* and *er, a, um.*

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

ūnŭs, sōlŭs, tōtŭs, ullŭs,
ŭtĕr, neutĕr, altĕr, nullŭs,
and ălĭŭs,

have in the Genitive Sing. *ius* and in the Dative *i*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ull-ŭs	ull-ă	ull-um	Ŭt-ĕr	utr-ă	utr-um
Gen.	Ull-īŭs			Utr-īŭs		
Dat.	Ull-ī			Utr-ī		
Acc.	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Ull-ō	ull-ā	ull-ō	Utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

ūnus,	*one.*	ullus,	*any.*	neuter,	*neither of two.*
sōlus,	*alone.*	nullus,	*none.*	alter,	*one of two.*
tōtus,	*whole.*	uter,	*which of two.*	ălĭus,	*one of any number, another.*

Obs. 1. In prose the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is always long, except in altĕrĭŭs. The Gen. ălĭŭs is a contraction of ăll-īŭs, and therefore always *long.* In the other words the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of ŭtĕr are declined in the same way: as, ŭterquĕ, ŭtervīs, ŭterlĭbĕt, ŭtercunquĕ: *Gen.* utriusque, utriusvīs, etc.

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in er, ris, re, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: as, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	Ācrĭs		—	Ācrium	—
Dat.	Ācrī		—	Ācrĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Ācrem		ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Voc.	Ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Abl.	Ācrī		—	Ācrĭbŭs	—

Obs. The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

ācer, ălăcer, campester,
cĕler, cĕlĕber, ĕquester,
pŭter, vŏlŭcer, terrester,
păluster, pĕdester,
sălŭber, silvester.

ălăcer,	*lively.*	vŏlŭcer,	*winged.*
campester,	*level.*	terrester,	*pertaining to the earth.*
cĕler,	*quick.*	păluster,	*marshy.*
cĕlĕber,	*crowded.*	pĕdester,	*pedestrian.*
ĕquester,	*equestrian.*	sălŭber,	*healthful.*
pŭter,	*rotten.*	silvester,	*woody.*

Obs. 1. Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the before the *r*. Cĕlĕr has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.* Terrestris is the usual form for both genders.

§ 59. II. Adjectives of Two Terminations are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, tristĭs, tristĕ *sad;* altior, altius, *higher* (§ 63).

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-iă
Gen.	Trist-ĭs	—	Trist-ium	—
Dat.	Trist-ī	—	Trist-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-iă
Voc.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-iă
Abl.	Trist-ī	—	Trist-ĭbŭs	—

Examples for Declension.

lĕvis,	*light.*	brĕvis,	*short.*	mollis,	*soft.*
lēvis,	*smooth.*	fortis,	*brave.*	făcĭlis,	*easy.*
grăvis,	*heavy.*	turpis,	*disgraceful.*	vĭlis,	*cheap.*
dulcis,	*sweet.*	sĭmĭlis,	*like.*	hŭmĭlis,	*low.*

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, fēlix, *fortunate;* prūdens, *prudent.*

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix		Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-iă
Gen.	Fēlīc-ĭs	—		Fēlīc-ĭum	—
Dat.	Fēlīc-ī	—		Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Fēlīc-em	fēlix		Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-iă
Voc.	Fēlix	—		Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-iă
Abl.	Fēlīc-ī *or* ĕ	—		Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	—

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Prūdens	prūdens		Prūdent-ēs	prūdent-iă
Gen.	Prūdent-ĭs	—		Prūdent-ĭum	—
Dat.	Prūdent-ī	—		Prūdent-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Prūdent-em	prūdens		Prūdent-ēs	prūdent-iă
Voc.	Prūdens	—		Prūdent-ēs	prūdent-iă
Abl.	Prūdent-ī *or* ĕ	—		Prūdent-ĭbŭs	—

Examples for Declension.

audax,	ācis,	*bold.*	pŏtens,	entis,	*powerful.*
vērax,	ācis,	*truthful.*	ingens,	entis,	*huge.*
lŏquax,	ācis,	*talkative.*	dĭlĭgens,	entis,	*diligent.*
vēlox,	ōcis,	*swift.*	săpĭens,	entis,	*wise.*
fĕrox,	ōcis,	*haughty.*	praesens,	entis,	*present.*

Obs. 1. On the *Abl. Sing.*, see §§ 32, 33. On the *Nom. Plur.* Neuter in *ia*, see § 34. On the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. DIVĔS, dīvĭtĭs, *rich*, has a contracted form: *Nom.* dīs, dītĕ; *Gen.* dīt-ĭs, &c.; *Nom. Plur.* Neut. dītĭă.

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, nēquam, *worthless;* frūgī, *honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, frūgī hŏmŏ, frūgī hŏmĭnem.

CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
altŭs, *high.*	altiŏr, *higher.*	altissĭmŭs, *highest.*

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding iŏr, and the Superlative by adding issĭmŭs, to the Stem, any final vowel which is dropped: as,

Posit. Nom.	Stem.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
altŭs,	alto,	*high,*	alt-iŏr,	alt-issĭmŭs.
lĕvĭs,	lĕvi,	*light,*	lĕv-iŏr,	lĕv-issĭmŭs.
fēlix,	fēlic,	*fortunate,*	fēlic-iŏr,	fēlic-issĭmŭs.
prūdens,	prūdent,	*prudent,*	prūdent-iŏr,	prūdent-issĭmŭs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having ior in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and ius in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows:

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Altiŏr	altiŭs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Gen.	Altiōr-ĭs	—	Altiōr-um	—
Dat.	Altiōr-ī	—	Altiōr-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Altiōr-em	altiŭs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Voc.	Altiŏr	altiŭs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Abl.	Altiōr-ē *rarely* -ī	—	Altiōr-ĭbŭs	—

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, us, a, um: as, altissĭmŭs, altissĭmă, altissĭmum.

§ 65. Exceptions.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rĭmŭs*: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
pulchĕr,	*beautiful,*	pulchr-iŏr,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.
lĭbĕr,	*free,*	lĭbĕr-iŏr,	lĭber-rĭmŭs.
ācĕr,	*sharp,*	ācr-iŏr,	ācer-rĭmŭs.
cĕlĕr,	*swift,*	cĕlĕr-iŏr,	cĕler-rĭmŭs.

Also vĕtŭs (*Gen.* vĕtĕr-is), *old,* has a Superlative, vĕter-rĭmŭs.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ĭlis* form the Superlative in *lĭmus*: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
făcĭlĭs,	*easy,*	făcĭl-iŏr,	făcil-lĭmŭs.
difficĭlĭs,	*difficult,*	difficĭl-iŏr,	difficil-lĭmŭs.
sĭmĭlĭs,	*like,*	sĭmĭl-iŏr,	sĭmil-lĭmŭs.
dissĭmĭlĭs,	*unlike,*	dissĭmĭl-iŏr,	dissĭmil-lĭmŭs.
grăcĭlĭs,	*thin,*	grăcĭl-iŏr,	grăcil-lĭmŭs.
hŭmĭlĭs,	*low,*	hŭmĭl-iŏr,	hŭmil-lĭmŭs.

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in -dĭcŭs, -fĭcŭs, and -vŏlŭs (derived from the verbs dīco, făcĭo, and vŏlo) form the Comparatives in *entiŏr*, and their Superlatives in *entissĭmŭs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
mălĕdĭcŭs,	*slanderous,*	mălĕdĭcentiŏr,	mălĕdĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕfĭcŭs,	*beneficent,*	bĕnĕfĭcentiŏr,	bĕnĕfĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕvŏlŭs,	*benevolent,*	bĕnĕvŏlentiŏr,	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

Obs. These Comparatives and Superlatives are formed as from the Participles, dicens, *saying;* faciens, *doing;* volens, *wishing.*

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb măgĭs, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most:* as, noxiŭs, *hurtful*, măgĭs noxiŭs, *more hurtful*, maxĭmē noxiŭs, *most hurtful.*

Obs. Adjectives ending in *quus* form the *Comp.* and *Sup.* regularly, since the *u* in *qu* is not regarded as a vowel: as, antĭquŭs, *ancient*, antĭquiŏr, *more ancient*, antĭquissĭmŭs, *most ancient.*

§ 66. Irregular Comparison.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
bŏnŭs,	*good,*	mĕlĭŏr,	optĭmŭs
mălŭs,	*bad,*	pējŏr,	pessĭmŭs
magnŭs,	*great,*	mājŏr,	maxĭmŭs
parvŭs,	*small,*	mĭnŏr,	mĭnĭmŭs
multŭs,	*much,*	plūs (*pl.* plūres, plūra),	plūrĭmŭs
nēquam,	*worthless,*	nēquĭŏr,	nēquissĭmŭs
frūgi (*indecl.*)	*frugal,*	frūgālior,	frūgālissĭmŭs

Obs. 1. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*		*Sup.*
jŭvĕnĭs,	*young,*	jūnĭŏr		(*mĭnĭmus natu*)
sĕnex,	*old,*	sĕnĭŏr		(*maxĭmus natu*)
—		dētĕrĭŏr,	*worse,*	dēterrĭmŭs
—		ōcĭŏr,	*swifter,*	ōcissĭmŭs
—		prĭŏr,	*former,*	prīmus, *first*
nŏvŭs,	*new,*	—		nŏvissĭmŭs.

Obs. 2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

Posit.	*Comp.*	*Sup.*
(citrā, *on this side*),	cĭtĕrĭŏr, *more on this side,*	cĭtĭmŭs, *most on this side.*
(ultrā, *on the farther side*),	ultĕrĭŏr, *farther,*	ultĭmŭs, *farthest.*
(extrā, *on the outside, without*),	extĕrĭŏr, *outer,*	extrēmŭs, *outermost.*

Note.—The Adjective extĕrī, ae, ă, signifies *foreign.*

(infrā, *below*),	infĕrĭŏr, *lower,*	infĭmŭs (īmus), *lowest.*

Note.—Infĕrus is used only in Infĕrum Mărĕ, *the Lower Sea*, i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural Infĕrī, ae, ă, *belonging to the lower world.*

Posit.	*Comp.*	*Sup.*
(intrā, *within*),	intĕrĭŏr, *inner*,	intĭmŭs, *or* īmŭs, *innermost.*
(prŏpĕ, *near*),	prŏpĭŏr, *nearer*,	proxĭmŭs, *nearest.*

Note.—In the Positive prŏpinquus is used, of which the Comparative prŏpinquiŏr is rare.

(post, *after*),	postĕrĭŏr, *later*,	postrēmŭs, *last.*

Note.—The Positive postĕrus signifies *the next* or *following* (in time), and the Substantive postĕrī, *descendants.*

(suprā, *above*),	sŭpĕrĭŏr, *upper*,	suprēmŭs, *or* summŭs, *uppermost.*

Note.—Sŭpĕrŭs is used only in Sŭpĕrum Mārĕ, *the Upper Sea*, i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural Sŭpĕrī, ae, ă, *belonging to the upper world.*

Chapter XIV.—The Numerals.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote numbers simply or absolutely: as, ūnŭs, *one;* duo, *two;* trēs, *three.*

§ 68. The first three Cardinal Numerals are declined as follows:

	1. Sing.			1. Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūn-ŭs	ūn-ă	ūn-um	Ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-ă
Gen.	Ūn-īŭs	—	—	Ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum
Dat.	Ūn-ī	—	—	Ūn-īs	—	—
Acc.	Ūn-ŭm	ūn-am	ūn-um	Ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ă
Abl.	Ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	Ūn-īs	—	—

Obs. Ūnus is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning: as, ūnă castrā, *one camp;* ūnae aedēs, *one house;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter.*

	2.			3.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trēs	trĭă
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trĭum	—
Dat.	Du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	Trĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs *or* trīs	trĭă
Abl.	Du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	Trĭbŭs	—

Obs. Ambo, *both*, is declined like duo.

§ 69. The Cardinal Numerals from quattuŏr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millĕ, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive: as, *Nom.* millĭă, *Gen.* millium, *Dat.* millĭbŭs, *Acc.* millĭă, *Abl.* millĭbŭs.

Obs. 1. Millĕ is sometimes, but rarely, used as a Substantive in the Singular: as, millĕ hŏmĭnum, *a thousand of men*, the common form being millĕ hŏmĭnēs. In the Plural millĭă is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, trĭă millĭă hŏmĭnum, *three thousand men*. But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, trĭă millĭă trĕcentī hŏmĭnēs, *three thousand three hundred men*.

Obs. 2. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *ĕt*, or by the smaller numeral first with *ĕt*: as, vīgintī ūnŭs, or ūnŭs et vīgintī, *twenty-one*. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first: as, centum ĕt sexāgintā sex, or centum sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six*.

Obs. 3. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction: as, duodēvīgintī, undēvīgintī, duodētrīgintā, undētrīgintā, &c.

§ 70. *Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; and hence they have a relative signification: as, prīmŭs, *first*; sĕcundŭs or altĕr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives; see § 56.

Obs. Dates of years are expressed by annŏ with the ordinal numeral: as, annŏ millēsĭmŏ octingentēsĭmŏ sexāgēsĭmŏ prīmŏ, *the year* 1861

§ 71. *Distributive Numerals* denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways: as, bīnī, *two each, two together, two by two*.

Obs. 1. Distributive Numerals are also used to give a plural signification to those Substantives the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning: as, bīnă castrā, *two camps*; bīnae aedēs, *two houses*; bīnae littĕrae, *two letters*. Duo castra would be two forts; duae aedēs, *two temples*, etc. See § 51.

Obs. 2. *Multiplicative Numerals* end in -plex, *Gen.* plĭcĭs (from the verb plĭco, *to fold*), and, as their name implies, denote *how many times* any number or quantity is to be taken. Only the following are in use:

1. Simplex, *onefold*	4. Quadruplex, *fourfold*	10. Dĕcemplex, *tenfold*
2. Dūplex, *twofold*	5. Quinquplex, *fivefold*	100. Centuplex, *a hundredfold*.
3. Triplex, *threefold*	7. Septemplex, *sevenfold*	

Obs. 3. *Proportional Numerals* end in -plŭs, plă, plum, and denote the number of times that one number or quantity contains another: as, tripla pars, *a part three times as great as another*. Only the following are in use, corresponding to the multiplicatives in the preceding list:

1. Simplŭs	4. Quadruplŭs	8. Octuplŭs
2. Duplŭs	5. Quinquiplŭs	10. Dĕcuplŭs
3. Triplŭs	7. Septuplŭs	100. Centuplŭs.

§ 72. *Numeral Adverbs* denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: as, sĕmĕl, *once*; bĭs, *twice*; tĕr, *three times*.

§ 73. NUMERALS.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus	*singŭlī*	sĕmĕl.
2	II	duo	sĕcundus *or* alter	bīnī.	bĭs.
3	III	trēs	tertĭus	ternī *or* trīnī	tĕr.
4	IV	quattuŏr, quātuor	quartus	quăternī	quătĕr.
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus	quīnī	quinquiĕs.
6	VI	sex	sextus	sēnī	*sexiĕs.*
7	VII	septem	septĭmus	septēnī	septiĕs.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octōnī	octiĕs.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus	nŏvēnī	nŏviĕs.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus	dēnī	dĕciĕs.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus	undēnī	undĕciĕs.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus	duŏdēnī	duŏdĕciĕs.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmus	ternī dēnī	terdĕciĕs *or* trĕdĕciĕs.
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus	quăternī dēnī	quattŭordĕciĕs.
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus	quīnī dēnī	quindĕciĕs.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus	sēnī dēnī	sēdĕciĕs.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus	septēnī dēnī	septiesdĕciĕs.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīgintī	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus	duŏdēvīcēnī	duŏdēvīciĕs.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvīcēsĭmus	undēvīcēnī	undēvīciĕs.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus	vīcēnī	vīciĕs.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus	vīcēnī singŭlī	sĕmĕl et vīciĕs.
22	XXII	duo et vīgintī *or* vīgintī duo	alter et vīcēsĭmus, *or*	vīcēnī bīnī	bĭs et vīciĕs.

23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertius et vīcēsimus, *or* vīcēsimus tertius	vīcēnī ternī	tēr et vīciēs.
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīgēsimus	duodētrīcēnī	duodētrīciēs.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsimus	undētrīcēnī	undētrīciēs.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsimus	trīcēnī	trīciēs.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus	quinquāgēnī	quinquāgiēs.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs.
100	C	centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs.
200	CC	ducentī	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs.
300	CCC	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs.
400	CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs.
500	D *or* Iↀ	quingentī	quingentēsimus	quingēnī	quingentiēs.
600	DC	sexcentī	sexcentēsimus	sexcēnī	sexcentiēs.
700	DCC	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs.
800	DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs.
900	DCCCC	nongentī	nongentēsimus	nongēnī	nongentiēs.
1000	M *or* CIↀ	millē	millēsimus	singŭlă millĭă	milliēs.
2000	MM	duŏ millĭă	bis millēsimus	bīnă millĭă	bīs milliēs.
5000	IↀↃ	quinquĕ millĭă	quinquiēs millēsimus	quīnă millĭă	quinquiēs milliēs.
10,000	CCIↀↃ	decem millĭă	deciēs millēsimus	dēnă millĭă	deciēs milliēs.
50,000	IↀↃↃ	quinquāgintā millĭă	quinquāgiēs millēsimus	quinquāgēnă millĭă	quinquāgiēs milliēs.
100,000	CCCIↀↃↃ	centum millĭă	centiēs millēsimus	centēnă millĭă	centiēs milliēs.
500,000	IↀↃↃↃ	quingentă millĭă	quingentiēs millēsimus	quingēnă millĭă	quingentiēs milliēs.
1,000,000	CCCCIↀↃↃↃ	deciēs centum millĭă	deciēs centiēs millēsimus	deciēs centēnă millĭă	deciēs centiēs milliēs.

Chapter XV.—The Pronouns.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are:

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

§ 75. I. Personal Pronouns.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Ĕgŏ,	*I*	Nōs,	*we*
Gen.	Meī,	*of me*	Nostrī *and* nostrum,	*of us*
Dat.	Mĭhi,	*to* or *for me*	Nōbīs,	*to* or *for us*
Acc.	Mē,	*me*	Nōs,	*us* [*from us*
Abl.	Mē,	*by, with,* or *from me.*	Nōbīs,	*by, with,* o

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Tū,	*thou*	Vōs,	*ye*
Gen.	Tuī,	*of thee*	Vestrī *and* vestrum,	*of you*
Dat.	Tĭbi,	*to* or *for thee*	Vōbīs,	*to* or *for you*
Acc.	Tē,	*thee*	Vōs,	*you*
Voc.	Tū,	*O thou*	Vōs,	*O ye* [*you.*
Abl.	Tē,	*by, with,* or *from thee.*	Vōbīs,	*by, with,* or *from*

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mĕt* or *tĕ*; as, ĕgŏmĕt, *I myself;* tūtĕ, tūtĕmet, *thou thyself;* nosmet, vosmet, *we ourselves, you yourselves.*

Obs. 2. The *Dat.* mĭhi is sometimes contracted into mī.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it,* the D terminative Pronoun ĭs, eă, ĭd is usually employed. See § 7

§ 76. II. Reflective Pronouns.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of th sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns; but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined:

Sing. and Plur.

Nom.	(wanting)	
Gen.	**Suī,**	*of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat.	**Sībi,**	*to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Acc.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*by himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

Obs. Sībi and sē are strengthened by the addition of *mĕt:* as, sībimĕt, sēmĕt.

§ 77. III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly:

M.	F.	N.	
Meŭs,	meă,	meum,	*my* or *mine.*
Tuŭs,	tuă,	tuum,	*thy* or *thine.*
Nostĕr,	nostră,	nostrum,	*our.*
Vestĕr,	vestră,	vestrum,	*your.*
Suŭs,	suă,	suum,	*his, her, its, their.*

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of meŭs is mi.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptĕ:* as, meoptĕ ingĕniō, *by my own ability.* Mĕt is added to suŭs: as, suămĕt scĕlĕră, *his own crimes.*

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative: as, cūjŭs, cūjă, cūjum, *whose?*

Obs. 4. From nostĕr, vestĕr, cūjŭs (ă, um) are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātis), which signify *belonging to a country:* as,

nostrās,	-ātis,	*of our country;*
vestrās,	-ātis,	*of your country;*
cūjās,	-ātis,	*of what country?*

§ 78. IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

These are of the *First, Second,* and *Third* Persons: namely, hic, haec, hoc, *this near me;* istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that near you;* illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him,* or *that yonder.*

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this near me.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Hīc**	**haec**	**hoc**	**Hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**Hŭjŭs**			**Hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**Huīc**			**Hīs**		
Acc.	**Hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**Hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**Hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**Hīs**		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that near you.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istĕ	istă	istŭd	Istī	istae	istă
Gen.	Istĭŭs			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Istī			Istīs		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istŭd	Istōs	istās	istă
Abl.	Istō	istā	istō	Istīs		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Illĕ	illă	illŭd	Illī	illae	illă
Gen.	Illĭŭs			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī			Illīs		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illŭd	Illōs	illās	illă
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs		

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *cĕ* or *c*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of hic, but may be added to others also: as, hūjuscĕ, hīcĕ, &c.

Istĕ with the particle *ce* or *c* is thus declined:

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istic	istaec	istuc	Istīcĕ	istaec	istaec
Gen.	Istiuscĕ			Istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	Istī			Istiscĕ		
Acc.	Istunc	istanc	istuc	Istoscĕ	istascĕ	istaec
Abl.	Istōc	istāc	istōc	Istiscĕ		

Illĕ with the particle *ce* or *c* is declined in the same way: as,

illic illaec illuc, etc.

Obs. 2. Ecce or en, *behold*, are sometimes prefixed to ille and iste: as, eccillum or ellum; eccistam; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses olli as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of illī. The stem was originally OL, which appears in ōl-im, *yonder*.

§ 79. V. Determinative Pronouns.

These are: ĭs, eă, ĭd, *this*, and *he, she, that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence; its compound, īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same;* and ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

1. Is, eă, ĭd, *this*, and *he, she, it.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭs	eă	ĭd	Ī	eae	eă
Gen.	Ējŭs			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī			Iīs *or* eīs		
Acc.	Eum	eam	ĭd	Eōs	eās	eă
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō	Iīs *or* eīs		

2. Idem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭdem	ĕădem	ĭdem	Iīdem	eaedem	eădem
Gen.	Ējusdem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eīdem			Iīsdem *or* eīsdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	ĭdem	Eosdem	easdem	eădem
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem	Iīsdem *or* eīsdem		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Gen.	Ipsĭŭs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsīs		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to is: as, ecca, eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas. See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of is sometimes loses the *i:* as, eumpse, eampse, eopse, eapse; also rēapse = rē ipsā or rē eā ipsā.

§ 80. VI. Relative Pronouns.

Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quŏd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cŭjŭs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī *or* cŭī			Quĭbŭs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quŏd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbŭs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* quōiŭs, in the *Dat. Sing.* quoi, in the *Abl. Sing.* quī (instead of quō), and in the *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.*, quīs (instead of quĭbŭs). The *Abl.* quī is usually found in combination with the preposition cum: as, quīcum instead of quōcum.

Obs. 2. From qui are formed the two indefinite relatives quīcunquĕ and quisquīs, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever.*

Quīcunquĕ, quaecunquĕ, quodcunquĕ is declined like quī, quae, quŏd, with the addition of the indeclinable cunque: as, *Gen.* cŭjuscunquĕ, &c.

Besides quisquīs, the Neut. quidquīd (or quicquīd) and *Abl.* quōquō are the only forms in use.

Quīcunquĕ is generally an Adjective; quisquīs always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative ŭtĕr, utră, utrum, *which of the two?* is used as a relative with cunquĕ; as, ŭtercunquĕ, utrăcunquĕ, utrumcunquĕ, *whichever of the two.*

§ 81. VII. Interrogative Pronouns.

Quīs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who, which? what?*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quīs *or* quī	quae	quĭd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cŭjŭs		[*or* quŏd	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī		[*or* quŏd	Quĭbŭs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quĭd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbŭs		

Obs. 1. Quīs is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; quĭd only as a Substantive; quī and quŏd as Adjectives: as, quĭd commīsīt, *what has he done?* quŏd făcĭnŭs commīsīt, *what deed has he done?*

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* quī is used only in the signification *how?* as, quī fīt? *how does it happen?*

Obs. 3. Quis and quī are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations: as, quisnam or quīnam, quaenam, quidnam or quodnam, *who then, what then?*

Obs. 4. When the question refers to one of two, ŭtĕr, utrā, utrum, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of ŭter and its compounds see § 57, Obs. 2.

Obs. 5. Some derivatives of quis are also capable of being used interrogatively; as, quantus, *how great?* quālis, *of what sort?* quŏt, *how many?* See § 83.

§ 82. VIII. Indefinite Pronouns.

Quis is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions si, *if*, and nĕ, *lest*. Thus, si quis is "*if any one*"; nē quis, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When quis is so used, it changes *quae* to qua wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative quis.

Obs. 1. Quĭd is used as a Substantive, quŏd as an Adjective: quis both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, quī usually as an Adjective.

Obs. 2. Ecquis (ecquī), ecquă (ecquae), ecquĭd (ecquŏd), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle nam, ecquisnam, is formed from quis, and declined in the same manner.

Obs. 3. Aliquis, ălĭquĭd, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and ălĭquī, ălĭquă, ălĭquŏd, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like quis (quī), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form ălĭquă is used.

Obs. 4. Quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen.* cūjusquam, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is ullus.

Obs. 5. The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative; the Neuters in quid being used Substantively, and those in quŏd Adjectively:—

Quīdam,	quaedam,	quoddam	or quiddam,	*a certain one.*
Quispiam,	quaepiam,	quodpiam	or quidpiam,	*any one.*
Quīvis,	quaevis,	quodvis	or quidvis,	*any one you please.*
Quīlĭbĕt,	quaelĭbĕt,	quodlĭbĕt	or quidlĭbĕt,	*any one you please.*
Quisquĕ,	quaequĕ,	quodquĕ	or quidquĕ,	*every one.*

Ūnusquisquĕ, ūnăquaequĕ, ūnumquodquĕ or ūnumquidquĕ, *Gen.* ūnīuscujusquĕ, &c., *each one.*

Obs. 6. The following form the *Gen.* in ĭŭs and the *Dat.* in ī: ullus, *any*; nullus, *none*; nonnullus (usu. in *pl.*) *some*; ălius, *one, another*; alter, *the one* or *other of two*; neuter, (a contraction of ne uter), *neither of two*. See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae*: as nulli consilii, nullo consilio, &c. The compound alterŭter is declined either in both words: as, *Gen.* altĕrīus utrīus: or only in the latter: as, *Dat.* alterutrō.

§ 83. IX. Correlative Pronouns.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
Tālĭs, *of such a kind.*	Quālĭs, *of such a kind as* (rel.); *of what kind?* (interr.)	Quālĭscunquĕ, Quālĭsquālis, *of what kind soever.*	Quālĭslĭbĕt, *of any kind you please.*
Tantŭs, *so great.*	Quantŭs, *so great as* (rel.); *how great?* (interr.)	Quantuscunquĕ, Quantusquantus, *how great soever.*	Ălĭquantŭs, *of a certain, considerable size.* Quantuslĭbĕt, Quantusvĭs, *of any size you please.*
Tŏt (indecl.), *so many.* Tŏtĭdem (indecl.), *just so many.*	Quŏt (indecl.), *so many as* (rel.); *how many?* (interr.)	Quotcunquĕ, Quotquŏt, *how many soever.*	Ălĭquŏt (indecl.), *some number.* Quotlĭbĕt (indecl.) *any number you please.*

Chapter XVI.—The Verbs.

§ 84. Verbs are of two kinds:

1. Transitive Verbs, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action: as, ămo puĕrum. *I love the boy.*

Obs. Certain Deponent Verbs are regarded as Transitives though they govern an Ablative: as, ūtor, *I use;* vescor, *I eat, feed on.* These occasionally take an Accusative: see § 315.

2. Intransitive Verbs, which do not govern an Accusative Case: as, sĕdeo, *I sit;* curro, *I run;* plăceo, *I please.*

Transitive Verbs have Two Voices:

(i.) The Active Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *actor* (from ăgo, actum, *to do*): as, pătĕr ămăt, *the father loves.*

(ii.) The Passive Voice, (from pătĭor, passŭs, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the *object* of the action: as, pătĕr ămātur, *the father is loved.*

Obs. 1. Some Verbs have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice: see § 633.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal: see § 234, *Obs.*

DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, hortŏr mīlĭtēs, *I exhort the soldiers;* mīlĕs mŏrĭtŭr, *the soldier is dying;* glōrĭŏr, *I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four MOODS (Mŏdī):

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, ămo, *I love;* scrībĭt, *he writes.*

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, scrībo ut lĕgăt, *I write that he may read;* lĕgăt ălĭquĭs, *let some one read.*

Obs. The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, ămā, *love;* nē occīdĭto, *thou shalt not kill*

IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person or time: as, ămārĕ, *to love.*

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles:

	Active.	
Imperfect.	Ămans,	*loving.*
Future.	Ămātūrus,	*about to love.*
	Passive.	
Perfect.	Ămātus,	*loved.*
Gerundive.	Ămandus,	*fit to be loved.*

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

Ămātum,	*to love.*
Ămātū,	*in loving, to be loved.*

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

Gen.	Ămandī,	*of loving*
Dat.	Ămando,	*for loving*
Acc.	Ămandŭm,	*a loving*
Abl.	Ămando,	*by loving.*

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempŏră) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

Imperfect Tenses.

1. *Present.*	Ămo,	*I love* or *I am loving.*
2. *Past.*	Ămābam,	*I was loving.*
3. *Future.*	Ămābo,	*I shall love.*

Obs. The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the Future Tense is never Imperfect: ămābo never signifies *I shall be loving.* Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

Perfect Tenses.

1. *Present.*	Ămāvī,	*I have loved.*
2. *Past.*	Ămāvĕram,	*I had loved.*
3. *Future.*	Ămāvĕro,	*I shall have loved.*

Obs. The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, Ămāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved;* and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist.* As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	Ămo, *I love*	Ămāmŭs,	*We love*
2.	Ămās, *thou lovest*	Ămātĭs,	*ye love*
3.	Ămăt, *he loves.*	Ămant,	*they love.*

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Imperfect Infinitive Active. (See further, Chap. XX.)

	I. or **A** Conjugation.	II. or **E** Conjugation.	III. or **Consonant** and **U** Conjugation.	IV. or **I** Conjugation.
Stem.	ăma,	mŏne,	rĕg, mĭnu,	audi,
Infinitive.	ămā-re, *to love.*	mŏnē-re, *to advise.*	rĕg-ĕre, mĭnŭ-ĕre, *to rule, to lessen.*	audi-re, *to hear.*

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

Chapter XVII.—The Verb Sum and the Four Conjugations.

§ 90. The Verb **Sum**, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

Sum, fŭī, fūtūrŭs, essĕ,—*to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing	**Sum,**	*I am*	*Plur.*	**Sŭmŭs,**	*We are*
	Ĕs,	*thou art*		**Estĭs,**	*ye are*
	Est,	*he is.*		**Sunt,**	*they are.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕram,**	*I was*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	*We were*
	Ĕrās,	*thou wast*		**Ĕrātĭs,**	*ye were*
	Ĕrăt,	*he was.*		**Ĕrant,**	*they were.*

3. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕro,**	*I shall be*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall be*
	Ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*		**Ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will be*
	Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*		**Ĕrunt,**	*they will be.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuī,**	*I have been,* or *I was*	*Plur.*	**Fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been,* or *we were*
	Fuistī,	*thou hast been,* or *thou wast*		**Fuistĭs,**	*ye have been,* or *ye were*
	Fuĭt,	*he has been,* or *he was.*		**Fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been,* or *they were.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕram,**	*I had been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been*
	Fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been*		**Fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been*
	Fuĕrăt,	*he had been.*		**Fuĕrant,**	*they had been.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕro,**	*I shall have been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been*
	Fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*		**Fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have been*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕs,**	*Be thou.*	*Plur.*	**Estĕ,**	*Be ye.*

2. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Esto,**	*Thou shalt be*	*Plur.*	**Estōtĕ,**	*Ye shall be*
	Esto,	*he shall be,* or *let him be.*		**Sunto,**	*they shall be,* or *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	Sim,	*I may be*	*P.*	Sīmŭs,	*We may be*
	Sīs,	*thou mayst be*		Sītĭs,	*ye may be*
	Sīt,	*he may be.*		Sint,	*they may be.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Essem or fōrem,	*I might be*	*P.*	Essēmŭs or fōrēmŭs,	*We might be*
	Essēs or fōrēs,	*thou mightst be*		Essētĭs or fōrētĭs,	*ye might be*
	Essĕt or fōrĕt,	*he might be.*		Essent or fōrent,	*they might be.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	Fŭtūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to be.*	*P.*	Fŭtūrī sīmŭs,	*We may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst*		Fŭtūrī sītĭs,	*ye may*
	Fŭtūrŭs sīt,	*he may*		Fŭtūrī sint,	*they may*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	Fuĕrim,	*I may have been*	*P.*	Fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been*
	Fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been*		Fuĕritĭs,	*ye may have been*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*		Fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Fuissem,	*I might have been.*	*P.*	Fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been.*
	Fuissēs,	*thou mightst*		Fuissētĭs,	*ye might*
	Fuissĕt,	*he might*		Fuissent,	*they might*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Essĕ,	*to be.*
Perfect.	Fuissĕ,	*to have been.*
Future.	Fŭtūrum essĕ, or fōrĕ,	*to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future. Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um, *about to be.*

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards '*sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds:

Absum,	*I am away.*	Obsum,	*I am in the way.*
Adsum,	*I am present.*	Praesum,	*I am before.*
Dēsum,	*I am wanting.*	Prōsum,	*I am serviceable.*
Insum,	*I am in.*	Subsum,	*I am under.*
Intersum,	*I am present at.*	Sŭpersum,	*I am surviving.*

Prōsum, however, takes *d* before *e*; as,

Sing.	Prōsum,	*Plur.*	Prōsŭmŭs,	*Past-Imp.*	Prōdĕram.
	Prōdĕs,		Prōdestis,	*Future.*	Prōdĕro.
	Prōdest,		Prōsunt.	*Imp. Inf.*	Prōdessĕ.

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pŏtis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

§ 91.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Amo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārĕ,—*to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Am-o,**	*I love*	*Plur.*	**Am-āmŭs,**	*We love*
	Am-ās,	*thou lovest*		**Am-ātĭs,**	*ye love*
	Am-ăt,	*he loves.*		**Am-ant,**	*they love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Am-ābam,**	*I was loving*	*Plur.*	**Am-ābāmŭs,**	*We were loving*
	Am-ābās,	*thou wast loving*		**Am-ābātĭs,**	*ye were loving*
	Am-ābăt,	*he was loving.*		**Am-ābant,**	*they were loving.*

3. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Am-ābo,**	*I shall love*	*Plur.*	**Am-ābĭmŭs,**	*We shall love*
	Am-ābĭs,	*thou wilt love*		**Am-ābĭtĭs,**	*ye will love*
	Am-ābĭt,	*he will love.*		**Am-ābunt,**	*they will love.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Am-āvī,**	*I have loved,* or *I loved*	*Plur.*	**Am-āvĭmŭs,**	*We have loved,* or *we loved*
	Am-āvistī,	*thou hast loved,* or *thou lovedst*		**Am-āvistĭs,**	*ye have loved,* or *ye loved*
	Am-āvĭt,	*he has loved,* or *he loved.*		**Am-āvērunt,** or **ăm-āvērĕ**	*they have loved* or *they loved*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Am-āvĕram,**	*I had loved*	*Plur.*	**Am-āvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had loved*
	Am-āvĕrās,	*thou hadst loved*		**Am-āvĕrātĭs,**	*ye had loved*
	Am-āvĕrăt,	*he had loved.*		**Am-āvĕrant,**	*they had loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Am-āvĕro,**	*I shall*	*Plur.*	**Am-āvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall*
	Am-āvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*		**Am-āvĕritĭs,**	*ye will*
	Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he will*		**Am-āvĕrint,**	*they will*

have loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	**Am-ā,**	*Love thou.*	*Plur.*	**Am-ātĕ,**	*Love ye.*

Future Tense.

Sing.	**Am-āto,**	*Thou shalt love*	*Plur.*	**Am-ātōtĕ,**	*Ye shall love*
	Am-āto,	*he shall love,* or *let him love.*		**Am-anto,**	*they shall love,* or *let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	Am-em,	*I may love*	*P.* Am-ēmŭs,	*We may love*
	Am-ēs,	*thou mayst love*	Am-ētĭs,	*ye may love*
	Am-ĕt,	*he may love.*	Am-ent,	*they may love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Am-ārem,	*I might love*	*P.* Am-ārēmŭs,	*We might love*
	Am-ārēs,	*thou mightst love*	Am-ārētĭs,	*ye might love*
	Am-ārĕt,	*he might love.*	Am-ārent,	*they might love*

3. Future Tense.

S.	Am-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may*	*P.* Am-ātūrī sīmŭs,	*We may*
	Am-ātūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst* *be about to love.*	Am-ātūrī sītĭs,	*ye may* *be about to love.*
	Am-ātūrŭs sĭt,	*he may*	Am-ātūrī sint,	*they may*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	Am-āvĕrim,	*I may*	*P.* Am-āvĕrimŭs,	*We may*
	Am-āvĕrīs,	*thou mayst* *have loved.*	Am-āvĕritĭs,	*ye may* *have loved.*
	Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he may*	Am-āvĕrint,	*they may*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Am-āvissem,	*I might*	*P.* Am-āvissēmŭs,	*We might*
	Am-āvissēs,	*thou mightst* *have loved.*	Am-āvissētĭs,	*ye might* *have loved.*
	Am-āvissĕt,	*he might*	Am-āvissent,	*they might*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperf.	Am-ārĕ,	*to love.*
Perfect.	Am-āvissĕ,	*to have loved.*
Future.	Am-ātūrum (am, um) essĕ,	*to be about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Am-andī,	*of loving*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*for loving*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*the loving*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*by loving.*

SUPINES.

Am-ātum,	*to love.*
Am-ātū,	*to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	Am-ans, antis, *loving.*
Future.	Am-ātūrŭs, a, um, *about to love.*

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*. as,

ămāvistī	becomes	ămastī	
ămāvistīs	,,	ămastīs	
ămāvērunt	,,	ămārunt:	
(but ămāvērĕ does not become ămārĕ, which would be confounded with the Imperf. Infin.).			
ămāvĕram	becomes	ămāram	
ămāvĕro	,,	ămāro	
ămāvĕrim	,,	ămārim	
ămāvissem	,,	ămassem	
ămāvissĕ	,,	ămassĕ.	

§ 92.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Mŏnĕo, mŏnŭī, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ,—*to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ĕo,**	*I advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēmŭs,**	*We advise*
	Mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest*		**Mŏn-ētĭs,**	*ye advise*
	Mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises.*		**Mŏn-ent,**	*they advise.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbam,**	*I was advising.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were advising*
	Mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*		**Mŏn-ēbātĭs,**	*ye were advising*
	Mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising.*		**Mŏn-ēbant,**	*they were advising.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbo,**	*I shall advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,**	*We shall advise*
	Mŏn-ēbĭs,	*thou wilt advise*		**Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,**	*ye will advise*
	Mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise.*		**Mŏn-ēbunt,**	*they will advise.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uī,**	*I have advised,* or *I advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ŭĭmŭs,**	*We have advised,* or *we advised*
	Mŏn-uistī,	*thou hast advised,* or *thou advisedst*		**Mŏn-uistĭs,**	*ye have advised,* or *ye advised*
	Mŏn-uĭt,	*he has advised,* or *he advised.*		**Mŏn-uērunt** or **-ŭērĕ,**	*they have advised,* or *they advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uĕram,**	*I had advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĕrāmŭs,**	*We had advised*
	Mŏn-uĕrās,	*thou hadst advised*		**Mŏn-uĕrātĭs,**	*ye had advised*
	Mŏn-uĕrăt,	*he had advised.*		**Mŏn-uĕrant,**	*they had advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense

S.	**Mŏn-uĕro,**	*I shall*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,**	*We shall*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*		**Mŏn-uĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	*he will*		**Mŏn-uĕrint,**	*they will*
		have advised.			*have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ē,**	*Advise thou.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ētĕ,**	*Advise ye.*

Future Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēto,**	*Thou shalt advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ētōtĕ,**	*Ye shall advise*
	Mŏn-ēto,	*he shall advise,* or *let him advise.*		**Mŏn-ento,**	*they shall advise,* or *let them advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-eam,**	*I may advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-eāmŭs,**	*We may advise*
	Mŏn-eās,	*thou mayst advise*		**Mŏn-eātĭs,**	*ye may advise*
	Mŏn-eăt,	*he may advise.*		**Mŏn-eant,**	*they may advise.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ērem,**	*I might advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ērēmŭs,**	*We might advise*
	Mŏn-ērēs,	*thou mightst advise*		**Mŏn-ērētĭs,**	*ye might advise*
	Mŏn-ērĕt,	*he might advise.*		**Mŏn-ērent,**	*they might advise.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sim,**	*I may be about to advise*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ĭtūrī sīmŭs,**	*We may be about to advise*
	Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to advise*		**Mŏn-ĭtūrī sītĭs,**	*ye may be about to advise*
	Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sĭt,	*he may be about to advise.*		**Mŏn-ĭtūrī sint,**	*they may be about to advise.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uĕrim,** *I may*	*have advised.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,** *We may*	*have advised.*
	Mŏn-uĕrīs, *thou mayst*			**Mŏn-uĕritĭs,** *ye may*	
	Mŏn-uĕrĭt, *he may*			**Mŏn-uĕrint,** *they may*	

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uissem,** *I might*	*have advised.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uissēmŭs,** *We might*	*have advised.*
	Mŏn-uissēs, *thou mightst*			**Mŏn-uissētĭs,** *ye might*	
	Mŏn-uissĕt, *he might*			**Mŏn-uissent,** *they might*	

Infinitive Mood.

Imperf.	**Mŏn-ērĕ,**	*to advise.*
Perfect.	**Mŏn-uissĕ,**	*to have advised.*
Future.	**Mŏn-ĭtūrum (am, um) essĕ,**	*to be about to advise.*

Gerund.

Gen.	**Mŏn-endī,**	*of advising*
Dat.	**Mŏn-endo,**	*for advising*
Acc.	**Mŏn-endum,**	*the advising*
Abl.	**Mŏn-endo,**	*by advising.*

Supines.

Mŏn-ĭtum,	*to advise.*
Mŏn-ĭtū,	*to be advised.*

Participles.

Imperf. **Mŏn-ens, entis,** *advising.*
Future. **Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs, a, um,** *about to advise.*

§ 93. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Rĕgo, rexī, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ,—*to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-o,**	*I rule*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭmŭs,**	*We rule*
	Rĕg-ĭs,	*thou rulest*		**Rĕg-ĭtĭs,**	*ye rule*
	Rĕg-ĭt,	*he rules*		**Rĕg-unt,**	*they rule*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ēbam,**	*I was ruling*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were ruling*
	Rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*		**Rĕg-ēbātĭs,**	*ye were ruling*
	Rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling.*		**Rĕg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-am,**	*I shall rule*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēmŭs,**	*We shall rule*
	Rĕg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*		**Rĕg-ētĭs,**	*ye will rule*
	Rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule.*		**Rĕg-ent,**	*they will rule*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rex-ī,**	*I have ruled,* or *I ruled*	*P.*	**Rex-ĭmŭs,**	*We have ruled,* or *we ruled*
	Rex-istī,	*thou hast ruled,* or *thou ruledst*		**Rex-istĭs,**	*ye have ruled,* or *ye ruled*
	Rex-ĭt,	*he has ruled,* or *he ruled.*		**Rex-ērunt** or **-ērĕ,**	*they have ruled,* or *they ruled.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rex-ĕram,**	*I had ruled*	*P.*	**Rex-ĕrāmŭs,**	*We had ruled*
	Rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst rul*		**Rex-ĕrātĭs,**	*ye had ruled*
	Rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrant,**	*they had ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rex-ĕro,**	*I shall have ruled*	*P.*	**Rex-ĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have ruled*
	Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have ruled*		**Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have ruled*
	Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he will have ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ĕ,**	*Rule thou.*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭtĕ,**	*Rule ye*

Future Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ĭto,**	*Thou shalt rule*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,**	*Ye shall rule*
	Rĕg-ĭto,	*he shall rule,* or *let him rule.*		**Rĕg-unto,**	*they shall rule,* or *let them rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	Rĕg-am,	*I may rule*	*P.*	Rĕg-āmŭs,	*We may rule.*
	Rĕg-ās,	*thou mayst rule*		Rĕg-ātĭs,	*ye may rule*
	Rĕg-ăt,	*he may rule.*		Rĕg-ant,	*they may rule.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Rĕg-ĕrem,	*I might rule*	*P.*	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,	*We might rule*
	Rĕg-ĕrēs,	*thou mightst rule*		Rĕg-ĕrētĭs,	*ye might rule*
	Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	*he might rule.*		Rĕg-ĕrent,	*they might rule.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	Rect-ūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to rule*	*P*	Rect-ūrī sīmŭs,	*We may be about to rule*
	Rect-ūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to rule*		Rect-ūrī sītĭs,	*ye may be about to rule*
	Rect-ŭ sĭt,	*he may be about to rule.*		Rect-ūrī sint,	*they may be about to rule.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	Rex-ĕrim,	*I may*	*P.*	Rex-ĕrimŭs,	*We may*
	Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*		Rex-ĕritĭs,	*ye may*
	Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he may*		Rex-ĕrint,	*they may*

have ruled.

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Rex-issem,	*I might*	*P.*	Rex-issēmŭs,	*We might*
	Rex-issēs,	*thou mightst*		Rex-issētĭs,	*ye might*
	Rex-issĕt,	*he might*		Rex-issent,	*they might*

have ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperf.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*to rule.*
Perfect.	Rex-issĕ,	*to have ruled.*
Future.	Rect-ūrum (am, um) essĕ,	*to be about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Rĕg-endī,	*of ruling*
Dat.	Rĕg-endo,	*for ruling*
Acc.	Rĕg-endum,	*the ruling*
Abl.	Rĕg-endo,	*by ruling.*

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	*to rule.*
Rec-tū,	*to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	Rĕg-ens, entis,	*ruling.*
Future.	Rec-tūrŭs, a, um,	*about to rule.*

§ 94. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Audĭo, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ,—*to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-io,**	*I hear*	*P.*	**Aud-īmŭs,**	*We hear*
	Aud-īs,	*thou hearest*		**Aud-ītĭs,**	*ye hear*
	Aud-it,	*he hears.*		**Aud-iunt,**	*they hear.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-iēbam,**	*I was hearing*	*P*	**Aud-iēbāmŭs,**	*We were hearing*
	Aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing.*		**Aud-iēbātĭs,**	*ye were hearing*
	Aud-iēbăt,	*he was hearing.*		**Aud-iēbant,**	*they were hearing.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Aud-iam,**	*I shall hear*	*P.*	**Aud-iēmŭs,**	*We shall hear*
	Aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*		**Aud-iētĭs,**	*ye will hear*
	Aud-iĕt,	*he will hear.*		**Aud-ient,**	*they will hear.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvī,**	*I have heard,* or *I heard*	*P.*	**Aud-īvĭmŭs,**	*We have heard,* or *we heard*
	Aud-īvistī,	*thou hast heard,* or *thou heardst*		**Aud-īvistĭs,**	*ye have heard,* or *ye heard*
	Aud-īvĭt,	*he has heard,* or *he heard.*		**Aud-īvērunt** or **-īvērĕ,**	*they have heard,* or *they heard.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕram,**	*I had heard*	*P.*	**Aud-īvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had heard*
	Aud-īvĕrās,	*thou hadst heard*		**Aud-īvĕrātĭs,**	*ye had heard*
	Aud-īvĕrăt,	*he had heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrant,**	*they had heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕro,**	*I shall*	*P.*	**Aud-īvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall*
	Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*		**Aud-īvĕritĭs,**	*ye will*
	Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he will*		**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they will*

have heard.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-ī,**	*Hear thou.*	*P.*	**Aud-ītĕ,**	*Hear ye.*

Future Tense.

S.	**Aud-īto,**	*Thou shalt hear*	*P.*	**Aud-ītōtĕ,**	*Ye shall hear*
	Aud-īto,	*he shall hear,* or *let him hear*		**Aud-iunto,**	*they shall hear,* or *let them hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-iam,**	*I may hear*	*P.*	**Aud-iāmŭs,**	*We may hear*
	Aud-iās,	*thou mayst hear*		**Aud-iātĭs,**	*ye may hear*
	Aud-iăt,	*he may hear.*		**Aud-iant,**	*they may hear.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īrem,**	*I might hear*	*P.*	**Aud-īrēmŭs,**	*We might hear*
	Aud-īrēs,	*thou mightst hear*		**Aud-īrētĭs,**	*ye might hear*
	Aud-īrĕt,	*he might hear.*		**Aud-īrent,**	*they might hear.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Aud-ītūrŭs sim,**	*I may be about to hear*	*P.*	**Aud-ītūrī sīmŭs,**	*We may be about to hear*
	Aud-ītūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to hear*		**Aud-ītūrī sītĭs,**	*ye may be about to hear*
	Aud-ītūrŭs sĭt,	*he may be about to hear.*		**Aud-ītūrī sint,**	*they may be about to hear.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕrim,**	*I may have heard.*	*P.*	**Aud-īvĕrimŭs,**	*We may have heard.*
	Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have heard.*		**Aud-īvĕritĭs,**	*ye may have heard.*
	Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he may have heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they may have heard.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvissem,**	*I might have heard.*	*P.*	**Aud-īvissēmŭs,**	*We might have heard.*
	Aud-īvissēs,	*thou mightst have heard.*		**Aud-īvissētĭs,**	*ye might have heard.*
	Aud-īvissĕt,	*he might have heard.*		**Aud-īvissent,**	*they might have heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperf.	**Aud-īrĕ,**	*to hear.*
Perfect.	**Aud-īvissĕ,**	*to have heard.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrum (am, um) essĕ,**	*to be about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Aud-iendī,**	*of hearing*
Dat.	**Aud-iendo,**	*for hearing*
Acc.	**Aud-iendum,**	*the hearing*
Abl.	**Aud-iendo,**	*by hearing.*

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	*to hear.*
Aud-ītū,	*to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	**Aud-iens, ientis,**	*hearing.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrŭs, a, um,**	*about to hear.*

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *i's* are often contracted into *i*: as,

audīvistī	becomes	audiistī *or* audistī	audīvĕrim	becomes	audiĕrim
audīvistĭs	,,	audiistĭs *or* audistĭs	audīvissem	,,	audiissem *or* audissem
audīvīt	,,	audiīt	audīvissĕ	,,	audiissĕ *or* audissĕ.
audīvērunt	,,	audiērunt			
audīvĕram	,,	audiĕram			
audīvĕro	,,	audiĕro			

§ 95. FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmŏr, ămātŭs sum or fuī, ămārī,—*to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Am-ŏr,	*I am loved*	*P.*	Am-āmŭr,	*We are loved*
	Am-ārĭs or ăm-ārĕ,	*thou art loved*		Am-āmĭnī,	*ye are loved*
	Am-ātŭr,	*he is loved.*		Am-antŭr,	*they are loved.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	Am-ābăr,	*I was being loved*	*P.*	Am-ābāmŭr,	*We were being loved*
	Am-ābārĭs or ăm-ābārĕ,	*thou wast being loved*		Am-ābāmĭnī,	*ye were being loved*
	Am-ābātŭr,	*he was being loved.*		Am-ābantŭr,	*they were being loved.*

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.	Am-ābŏr,	*I shall be loved*	*P.*	Am-ābĭmŭr,	*We shall be loved*
	Am-ābĕrĭs or ăm-ābĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be loved*		Am-ābĭmĭnī,	*ye will be loved*
	Am-ābĭtŭr,	*he will be loved.*		Am-ābuntŭr,	*they will be loved.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Am-ātŭs sum or fuī	*I have been loved, or was loved*	*P.*	Am-ātī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	*We have been loved, or were loved*
	Am-ātŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been loved, or wast loved*		Am-ātī estĭs or fuistĭs,	*ye have been loved, or were loved*
	Am-ātŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been loved, or was loved.*		Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	*they have been loved, or were loved.*

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Am-ātŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been loved*	*P.*	Am-ātī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been loved*
	Am-ātŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been loved*		Am-ātī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been loved*
	Am-ātŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been loved.*		Am-ātī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been loved.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Am-ātŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved*	*P.*	Am-ātī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall have been loved*
	Am-ātŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been loved*		Am-ātī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have been loved*
	Am-ātŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been loved.*		Am-ātī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ārĕ,	*Be thou loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-āmĭnī,	*Be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŏr, Ăm-ātŏr,	*Thou shalt be loved* *he shall be loved*, or *let him be loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-antor,	*They shall be loved*, or *let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ĕr, Ăm-ērĭs or ăm-ērĕ, Ăm-ētŭr,	*I may be loved* *thou mayst be loved* *he may be loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-ēmŭr, Ăm-ēmĭnī, Ăm-entŭr,	*We may be loved* *ye may be loved* *they may be loved.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ārĕr, Ăm-ārērĭs or ăm-ārērĕ, Ăm-ārētŭr,	*I might be loved* *thou mightst be loved* *he might be loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-ārēmŭr, Ăm-ārēmĭnī, Ăm-ārentŭr,	*We might be loved* *ye might be loved* *they might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŭs sim or fuĕrim, Ăm-ātŭs sīs or fuĕrīs, Ăm-ātŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*I may have been loved* *thou mayst have been loved* *he may have been loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-ātī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs, Ăm-ātī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs, Ăm-ātī sint or fuĕrint,	*We may have been loved* *ye may have been loved* *they may have been loved.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŭs essem or fuissem, Ăm-ātŭs essēs or fuissēs, Ăm-ātŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*I might have been loved* *thou mightst have been loved* *he might have been loved.*	*P.*	Ăm-ātī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs, Ăm-ātī essētĭs, or fuissētĭs, Ăm-ātī essent or fuissent,	*We might have been loved* *ye might have been loved* *they might have been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Ăm-ārī,	*to be loved.*
PERFECT.	Ăm-ātum (am, um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been loved.*
FUTURE.	Ăm-ātum īrī,	*to be about to be loved.*

Obs. The form *ămātum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Ăm-ātŭs (a, um),	*loved* or *having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE.	Ăm-andŭs (a, um),	*fit to be loved.*

§ 96. SECOND CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Mŏnĕŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum or fuī, mŏnērī,—*to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-eŏr,**	*I am advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēmŭr,**	*We are advised*
	Mŏn-ērĭs or mŏn-ērĕ,	*thou art advised*		**Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**	*ye are advised*
	Mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised.*		**Mŏn-entŭr,**	*they are advised.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbăr,**	*I was being advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being advised*
	Mŏn-ēbārĭs or mŏn-ēbārĕ,	*thou wast being advised*		**Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being advised*
	Mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised.*		**Mŏn-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being advised.*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbŏr,**	*I shall be advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,**	*We shall be advised*
	Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or Mŏn-ēbĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be advised*		**Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,**	*ye will be advised*
	Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised.*		**Mŏn-ēbuntŭr,**	*they will be advised.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ĭtŭs sum or fuī,**	*I have been advised, or was advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been advised, or were advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been advised, or wast advised*		**Mŏn-ĭtī estĭs or fuistĭs,**	*ye have been advised, or were advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been advised, or was advised.*		**Mŏn-ĭtī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,**	*they have been advised, or were advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram or fuĕram,**	*I had been advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been advised*		**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been advised.*		**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant or fuĕrant,**	*they had been advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense

S.	**Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro or fuĕro,**	*I shall have been advised*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been advised*		**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have been advised*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been advised.*		**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,**	*they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mŏn-ērĕ,	*Be thou advised.*	*P.* Mŏn-ēmĭnī,	*Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mŏn-ētŏr, Mŏn-ētŏr,	*Thou shalt be advised* / *he shall be advised*, or *let him be advised.*	*P.* Mŏn-entŏr,	*They shall be advised*, or *let them be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mŏn-eăr,	*I may be advised*	*P.* Mŏn-eāmŭr,	*We may be advised*
Mŏn-eārĭs or mŏn-eārĕ,	*thou mayst be advised*	Mŏn-eāmĭnī,	*ye may be advised*
Mŏn-eātŭr,	*he may be advised.*	Mŏn-eantŭr,	*they may be advised.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mŏn-ērĕr,	*I might be advised*	*P.* Mŏn-ērēmŭr,	*We might be advised*
Mŏn-ērērĭs or mŏn-ērērĕ,	*thou mightst be advised*	Mŏn-ērēmĭnī,	*ye might be advised*
Mŏn-ērētŭr,	*he might be advised.*	Mŏn-ērentŭr,	*they might be advised.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mŏn-ĭtŭs sim or fuĕrim,	*I may have been advised*	*P.* Mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs or fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been advised.*	Mŏn-ĭtī sint or fuĕrint,	*they may have been advised.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mŏn-ĭtŭs essem or fuissem,	*I might have been advised*	*P.* Mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs or fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been advised*	Mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs or fuissētĭs,	*ye might have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*he might have been advised.*	Mŏn-ĭtī essent or fuissent,	*they might have been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Mŏn-ērī,	*to be advised.*
PERFECT.	Mŏn-ĭtum (am, um), essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been advised.*
FUTURE.	Mŏn-ĭtum īrī,	*to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs (a, um),	*advised* or *having been advised.*
GERUNDIVE.	Mŏn-endŭs (a, um),	*fit to be advised.*

§ 97. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum or fuī, rĕgī,—*to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ŏr,**	*I am ruled*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭmŭr,**	*We are ruled*
	Rĕg-ĕrĭs or **rĕg-ĕrĕ,**	*thou art ruled*		**Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,**	*ye are ruled*
	Rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled.*		**Rĕg-untŭr,**	*they are ruled.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ēbăr,**	*I was being ruled*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being ruled*
	Rĕg-ēbārĭs or **rĕg-ēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being ruled*		**Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being ruled*
	Rĕg-ēbātŭr,	*he was being ruled.*		**Rĕg-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being ruled*

3. Future Tense.

S.	**Rĕg-ăr,**	*I shall be ruled*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēmŭr,**	*We shall be ruled*
	Rĕg-ērĭs or **rĕg-ērĕ,**	*thou wilt be ruled*		**Rĕg-ēmĭnī,**	*ye will be ruled*
	Rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled.*		**Rĕg-entŭr,**	*they will be ruled.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rec-tŭs sum or fuī,**	*I have been ruled, or was ruled*	*P.*	**Rec-tī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been ruled, or were ruled*
	Rec-tŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled*		**Rec-tī estĭs or fuistĭs,**	*ye have been ruled, or were ruled*
	Rectŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been ruled, or was ruled.*		**Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,**	*they have been ruled, or were ruled.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rec-tŭs ĕram or fuĕram,**	*I had been ruled*		**Rec-tī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been ruled*		**Rec-tī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been ruled.*		**Rec-tī ĕrant or fuĕrant,**	*they had been ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Rec-tŭs ĕro or fuĕro,**	*I shall have been ruled.*	*P.*	**Rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been ruled*		**Rec-tī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs,**	*ye will have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been ruled.*		**Rec-tī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,**	*they will have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*Be thou ruled.*	*P.*	Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,	*Be ye ruled.*

Future Tense.

S.	Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*Thou shalt be ruled*	*P.*	Rĕg-untŏr,	*They shall be ruled,* or *let them be ruled.*
	Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*he shall be ruled,* or *let him be ruled.*			

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	Rĕg-ăr,	*I may be ruled*	*P.*	Rĕg-āmŭr,	*We may be ruled*
	Rĕg-ārĭs or rĕg-ārĕ,	*thou mayst be ruled*		Rĕg-āmĭnī,	*ye may be ruled*
	Rĕg-ātŭr,	*he may be ruled.*		Rĕg-antŭr,	*they may be ruled.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	*I might be ruled*	*P.*	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,	*We might be ruled*
	Rĕg-ĕrērĭs or rĕg-ĕrērĕ,	*thou mightst be ruled*		Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī,	*ye might be ruled*
	Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	*he might be ruled.*		Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,	*they might be ruled.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S.	Rec-tŭs sim or fuĕrim,	*I may have been ruled*	*P.*	Rec-tī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs sīs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been ruled*		Rec-tī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye may have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been ruled.*		Rec-tī sint or fuĕrint,	*they may have been ruled.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Rec-tŭs essem or fuissem,	*I might have been ruled*	*P.*	Rec-tī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs essēs or fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been ruled*		Rec-tī essētĭs or fuissētĭs,	*ye might have been ruled*
	Rec-tŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*he might have been ruled.*		Rec-tī essent or fuissent,	*they might have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Rĕg-ī,	*to be ruled.*
Perfect.	Rec-tum (am, um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been ruled.*
Future.	Rec-tum īrī,	*to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Rec-tŭs (a, um),	*ruled* or *having been ruled.*
Gerundive.	Rĕg-endŭs (a, um),	*fit to be ruled.*

§ 98. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audĭŏr, audītŭs sum or fuī, audīrī,—*to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Aud-iŏr,	*I am heard*	*P.*	Aud-īmŭr,	*We are heard*
	Aud-īrĭs or aud-īrĕ,	*thou art heard*		Aud-īmĭnī,	*ye are heard*
	Aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard.*		Aud-iuntŭr,	*they are heard.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	Aud-iēbăr,	*I was being heard*	*P.*	Aud-iēbāmŭr,	*We were being heard*
	Aud-iēbārĭs or aud-iēbārĕ,	*thou wast being heard*		Aud-iēbāmĭnī,	*ye were being heard*
	Aud-iēbātŭr,	*he was being heard.*		Aud-iēbantŭr,	*they were being heard.*

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.	Aud-iăr,	*I shall be heard*	*P.*	Aud-iēmŭr,	*We shall be heard*
	Aud-iērĭs or aud-iērĕ,	*thou wilt be heard*		Aud-iēmĭnī,	*ye will be heard*
	Aud-iētŭr	*he will be heard.*		Aud-ientŭr,	*they will be heard.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Aud-ītŭs sum or fuī,	*I have been heard, or was heard*	*P.*	Aud-ītī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	*We have been heard, or were heard*
	Aud-ītŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been heard, or wast heard*		Aud-ītī estĭs or fuistĭs,	*ye have been heard, or were heard*
	Aud-ītŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been heard, or was heard.*		Aud-ītī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	*they have been heard, or were heard.*

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Aud-ītŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been heard*	*P.*	Aud-ītī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been heard*
	Aud-ītŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been heard*		Aud-ītī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been heard*
	Aud-ītŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been heard.*		Aud-ītī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been heard.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Aud-ītŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard*	*P.*	Aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We shall have been heard*
	Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been heard*		Aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye will have been heard*
	Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been heard.*		Aud-ītī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been heard.*

PERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	Aud-īrĕ,	*Be thou heard.*	*P.*	Aud-īmĭnī,	*Be ye heard.*

Future Tense.

S.	Aud-ītŏr, Aud-ītŏr,	*Thou shalt be heard* *he shall be heard, or let him be heard.*	*P.*	Aud-iuntŏr,	*They shall be heard, or let them be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. Present Tense.

S.	Aud-iăr, Aud-iārĭs or aud-iārĕ, Aud-iātŭr,	*I may be heard* *thou mayst be heard* *he may be heard.*	*P.*	Aud-iāmŭr, Aud-iāmĭnī, Aud-iantŭr,	*We may be heard* *ye may be heard* *they may be heard.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Aud-īrĕr, Aud-īrērĭs or aud-īrērĕ, Aud-īrētŭr,	*I might be heard* *thou mightst be heard* *he might be heard.*	*P.*	Aud-īrēmŭr, Aud-īrēmĭnī, Aud-īrentŭr,	*We might be heard* *ye might be heard* *they might be heard.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S.	Aud-ītŭs sim or fuĕrim, Aud-ītŭs sīs or fuĕrīs, Aud-ītŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*I may have been heard* *thou mayst have been heard* *he may have been heard.*	*P.*	Aud-ītī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs, Aud-ītī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs, Aud-ītī sint or fuĕrint,	*We may have been heard* *ye may have been heard* *they may have been heard.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Aud-ītŭs essem or fuissem, Aud-ītŭs essēs or fuissēs, Aud-ītŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*I might have been heard* *thou mightst have been heard* *he might have been heard.*	*P.*	Aud-ītī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs, Aud-ītī essētĭs or fuissētĭs, Aud-ītī essent or fuissent,	*We might have been heard* *ye might have been heard* *they might have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Aud-īrī,	*to be heard.*
Perfect.	Aud-ītum (am, um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been heard.*
Future.	Aud-ītum īrī,	*to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Aud-ītŭs (a, um),	*heard or having been heard.*
Gerundive.	Aud-iendŭs (a, um)	*fit to be heard.*

§ 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *ămo*. (See also § 149.)

accūso,	*I accuse.*	hŏnōro,	*I honour.*	opto,	*I wish.*
ăro,	*I plough.*	laudo,	*I praise.*	orno,	*I adorn.*
clāmo,	*I cry out.*	lĭbĕro,	*I set free*	păro,	*I prepare.*
hăbĭto,	*I dwell.*	nōmĭno,	*I name.*	rŏgo,	*I ask.*

Examples for Conjugation like *mŏneo*. (See also § 150.)

adhĭbeo,	*I apply.*	hăbeo,	*I have.*	plăceo,	*I please.*
cōhĭbeo,	*I restrain.*	mĕreo,	*I deserve.*	praebeo,	*I present.*
dēbeo,	*I owe.*	nŏceo,	*I injure.*	prōhĭbeo,	*I prevent.*
exerceo,	*I exercise*	pāreo,	*I obey.*	terreo,	*I frighten.*

Examples for Conjugation like *rĕgo*. (See also §§ 157, sqq.)

cingo,	*I gird.*	dūco,	*I lead.*	plango,	*I beat.*	tĕgo,	*I cover.*
dīco,	*I say.*	jungo,	*I join.*	sūgo,	*I suck.*	tingo,	*I dye.*

Obs. Dīco, *speak*, dūco, *lead*, have dīc, dūc, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 69).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 168.)

custōdio,	*I guard.*	fīnio,	*I end.*	mūnio,	*I fortify.*
dormio,	*I sleep.*	impĕdio,	*I hinder.*	nūtrio,	*I nourish.*
ērŭdio,	*I train.*	mollio,	*I soften.*	pūnio,	*I punish.*

§ 100. THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH.

Căpio, cēpī, captum, căpĕrĕ,—*to take.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	**Căp-io,** *I take*	**Căp-ĭmŭs,** *We take*
	Căp-ĭs, *thou takest*	**Căp-ĭtĭs,** *ye take*
	Căp-ĭt, *he takes.*	**Căp-iunt,** *they take.*

Past-Imperf.	**Căp-iēbam,**	*I was taking,*	like	**aud-iēbam.**
Future.	**Căp-iam,**	*I shall take,*	,,	**aud-iam.**

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	**Căp-iam,**	*I may take,*	like	**aud-iam.**
Past-Imperf.	**Căp-ĕrem,**	*I might take,*	,,	**rĕg-ĕrem.**

Imperative Mood.

Present.	**Căp-ĕ,**	*take thou,*	like	**rĕg-ĕ.**
Future.	**Căp-ĭto,**	*thou shalt take,*	,,	**rĕg-ĭto.**
	Căp-iunto,	*they shall take,*	,,	**aud-iunto.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*to take,*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ.**

PARTICIPLE.

Imperfect.	**Căp-iens,**	*taking,*	like	**aud-iens.**

GERUND.

	Căp-iendi,	*of taking,*	like	**aud-iendi.**

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-ĭŏr,**	*I am taken*	**Căp-ĭmŭr,**	*We are taken*
	Căp-ĕrĭs or **-ĕrĕ,**	*thou art taken*	**Căp-ĭmĭnī,**	*ye are taken*
	Căp-ĭtŭr,	*he is taken.*	**Căp-iuntŭr,**	*they are taken.*
Past-Imperf.	**Căp-iēbăr,**	*I was being taken,*	like	**aud-iēbăr.**
Future.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I shall be taken,*	„	**aud-iăr.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I may be taken,*	like	**aud-iăr.**
Past-Imperf.	**Căp-ĕrĕr,**	*I might be taken,*	„	**rĕg-ĕrĕr.**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*be thou taken,*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ.**
Future.	**Căp-ĭtŏr,**	*thou shalt be taken,*	„	**rĕg-ĭtŏr.**
	Căp-iuntor,	*they shall be taken,*	„	**aud-iuntŏr.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ī,**	*to be taken,*	like	**rĕg-ī.**

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-ī, cēp-ĕram, cēp-ĕro, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The Verbs conjugated like căpio are:

făcio,	fēcī,	factum,	făcĕrĕ,	*make.*
jăcio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jăcĕrĕ,	*throw.*
fŭgio,	fūgī,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕrĕ,	*flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fŏdĕrĕ,	*dig.*
răpio,	răpuī,	raptum,	răpĕrĕ,	*seize.*
părio,	pĕpĕrī,	partum,	părĕrĕ,	*bring forth.*
quătio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quătĕrĕ,	*shake.*
cŭpio,	cŭpīvī,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕrĕ,	*desire.*
săpio,	săpīvī,		săpĕrĕ,	*taste.*
lăcio,			lăcĕrĕ,	*draw* } rare, except in
spĕcio,			spĕcĕrĕ,	*look* } composition.

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grădiŏr	gressŭs sum,	grădī,	*walk.*
mŏriŏr,	mortŭŭs sum,	mŏrī,	*die.*
pătiŏr,	passŭs sum,	pătī,	*suffer.*

Obs. 3. Ŏrior, ortus sum, ŏrīrī, *to rise*, follows the Third Conjugation only in the Present Indicative and in the Imperative.

§ 101. **I. Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī,** *to exhort*, like **ămŏr.**
II. Vĕrĕŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī, *to fear*, „ **mŏnĕŏr.**

		I.		II.	
Indicative Mood.	*Present.*	Hortŏr,	*I exhort.*	Vĕr-eŏr,	*I fear.*
		Hort-ārĭs (ārĕ), &c.	*thou exhortest, &c.*	Vĕr-ērĭs (ērĕ), &c.	*thou fearest, &c.*
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ābăr,	*I was exhorting.*	Vĕr-ēbăr,	*I was fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ābŏr,	*I shall exhort.*	Vĕr-ēbŏr,	*I shall fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sum,	*I have exhorted, or I exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sum,	*I have feared, or I feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕram,	*I had exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	*I had feared.*
	Fut.-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕro,	*I shall have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	*I shall have feared.*
Subjunctive Mood.	*Present.*	Hort-ĕr,	*I may exhort.*	Vĕr-eăr,	*I may fear.*
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ārĕr,	*I might exhort.*	Vĕr-ērĕr,	*I might fear.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sim,	*I may have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	*I may have feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs essem,	*I might have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕssem,	*I might have feared.*
Imperative.	*Present.*	Hort-ārĕ,	*Exhort thou.*	Vĕr-ērĕ,	*Fear thou.*
	Future.	Hort-ātŏr,	*thou shalt exhort.*	Vĕr-ētŏr,	*thou shalt fear.*
Infinitive.	*Imperf.*	Hort-ārī,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ērī,	*to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātum essĕ,	*to have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtum essĕ,	*to have feared.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrum essĕ,	*to be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭm essĕ,	*to be about to fear.*
Participles.	*Imperf.*	Hort-ans,	*exhorting.*	Vĕr-ens,	*fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs,	*about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	*about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs,	*having exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs,	*having feared.*
	Gerundive.	Hort-andŭs,	*fit to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-endŭs,	*fit to be feared.*
Supines.		Hort-ātum,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtum,	*to fear.*
		Hort-ātū,	*to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtū,	*to be feared.*
Gerund.		Hort-andi,	*of exhorting.*	Vĕr-endi,	*of fearing.*

Examples for Conjugation.

I.			II.		
	Cōnŏr,	*I endeavour.*		Intueŏr,	*I behold.*
	Consōlŏr,	*I console.*		Mĕrĕŏr,	*I deserve.*
	Mīrŏr,	*I wonder.*		Pollĭcĕŏr,	*I promise.*

Obs. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortātŭs, *having exhorted.*

The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandŭs, *fit to be exhorted;* ădeptus, *having obtained*, or *having been obtained.* See

III. Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtŭs sum, lŏquī, *to speak*, like rĕgŏr.
IV. Partiŏr, partītŭs sum, partīrī, *to divide*, „ audiŏr.

	III.		IV.		
Present.	Lŏquŏr,	*I speak.*	Partiŏr,	*I divide.*	Indicative Mood.
	Lŏqu-ĕrĭs, (ĕrĕ), &c.	*thou speakest, &c.*	Part-īrĭs (īrĕ), &c.	*thou dividest, &c.*	
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ēbăr,	*I was speaking.*	Part-iēbăr,	*I was dividing.*	
Future.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I shall speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I shall divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sum,	*I have spoken, or I spoke.*	Part-ītŭs sum,	*I have divided, or I divided.*	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕram,	*I had spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕram,	*I had divided.*	
Fut.-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕro,	*I shall have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕro,	*I shall have divided.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I may speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I may divide.*	Subjunctive Mood.
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	*I might speak.*	Part-īrĕr,	*I might divide.*	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sim,	*I may have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs sim,	*I may have divided.*	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs essem,	*I might have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs essem,	*I might have divided.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	*Speak thou.*	Part-īrĕ,	*Divide thou.*	Imperative.
Future.	Lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	*thou shalt speak.*	Part-ītŏr,	*thou shalt divide.*	
Imperf.	Lŏqu-ī,	*to speak.*	Part-īrī,	*to divide.*	Infinitive.
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tum essĕ,	*to have spoken.*	Part-ītum essĕ,	*to have divided.*	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrum essĕ,	*to be about to speak.*	Part-ītūrum essĕ,	*to be about to divide.*	
Imperf.	Lŏqu-ens,	*speaking.*	Part-iens,	*dividing.*	Participles.
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs	*about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs,	*about to divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs,	*having spoken.*	Part-ītŭs,	*having divided.*	
Gerundive.	Lŏqu-endŭs,	*fit to be spoken.*	Part-iendŭs,	*fit to be divided.*	
Supines.	Lŏcū-tum,	*to speak.*	Part-ītum,	*to divide.*	
	Lŏcū-tū,	*to be spoken.*	Part-ītū,	*to be divided.*	
Gerund.	Lŏqu-endi,	*of speaking.*	Part-iendi,	*of dividing.*	

Examples for Conjugation.

III.			IV		
	Fruŏr, fruĭtŭs sum,	*I enjoy*		Blandiŏr,	*I flatter.*
	Fungŏr, functŭs sum,	*I perform.*		Largiŏr,	*I give money.*
	Lābŏr, lapsŭs sum,	*I slip.*		Mentiŏr,	*I lie.*

§ 525 for a list of the Principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense. (See §§ 169-172.)

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. A few Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents* or *Neuter-Passives*: see § 524.

Chapter XIX.—Periphrastic Conjugation.

§ 102. I. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation consists of the Future Participle in *turus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Āmātūrŭs sum,	*I am about to love.*
Past-Imperf.	Āmātūrŭs ĕram,	*I was about to love.*
Future.	Āmātūrŭs ĕro,	*I shall be about to love.*
Perfect.	Āmātūrŭs fuī,	*I have been* or *was about to love.*
Past-Perfect.	Āmātūrŭs fuĕram,	*I had been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	Āmātūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to love.*
Past-Imperf.	Āmātūrŭs essem,	*I might be about to love.*
Perfect.	Āmātūrŭs fuĕrim,	*I may have been about to love.*
Past-Perfect.	Āmātūrŭs fuissem,	*I might have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Āmātūrum essĕ,	*to be about to love.*
Perfect.	Āmātūrum fuissĕ,	*to have been about to love.*

II. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which *is to be*, *should be*, or *ought to be done*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Āmandŭs sum,	*I am to be loved.*
Past-Imperf.	Āmandŭs ĕram,	*I was to be loved.*
Future.	Āmandŭs ĕro,	*I shall be to be loved.*
Perfect.	Āmandŭs fuī,	*I have been* or *was to be loved.*
Past-Perfect.	Āmandŭs fuĕram,	*I had been to be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	Āmandŭs sim,	*I may be to be loved.*
Past-Imperf.	Āmandŭs essem,	*I might be to be loved.*
Perfect.	Āmandŭs fuĕrim,	*I may have been to be loved.*
Past-Perfect.	Āmandŭs fuissem,	*I might have been to be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Āmandum essĕ,	*to be fit to be loved.*
Perfect.	Āmandum fuissĕ,	*to have been fit to be loved.*

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: as, mĭhi eundum est, *I must go;* oblīviscendum tĭbi injūrĭārum essĕ censeo, *I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

CHAPTER XX.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. STEMS.—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: as, ămа, *love*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: as, mŏne, *advise*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a *consonant* or *u*: as, rĕg, *rule*; mĭnu, *lessen*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: as, audi, *hear*.

§ 104. UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

III CONJUGATION.

Sing.	1. rĕg-o	mĭnu-o
	2. rĕg-ĭs	mĭnu-ĭs
	3. rĕg-ĭt	mĭnu-ĭt
Plur.	1. rĕg-ĭmŭs	mĭnu-ĭmŭs
	2. rĕg-ĭtĭs	mĭnu-ĭtĭs
	3. rĕg-unt	mĭnu-unt

	I CONJUGATION.	II CONJUGATION.	IV CONJUGATION.
Sing.	1. ămа-o = ămo	mŏne-o	audi-o
	2. ămа-is = ămās	mŏne-is = mŏnēs	audi-ĭs = audīs
	3. ămа-ĭt = ămăt	mŏne-ĭt = mŏnĕt	audi-ĭt = audĭt
Plur.	1. ămа-ĭmŭs = ămāmŭs	mŏne-ĭmŭs = mŏnēmŭs	audi-ĭmŭs = audīmŭs
	2. ămа-ĭtĭs = ămātĭs	mŏne-ĭtĭs = mŏnētĭs	audi-ĭtĭs = audītĭs
	3. ămа-unt = ămant	mŏne-unt = mŏnent	audi-unt

§ 105. PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	-m	-mus	as in	rĕgēba-m	rĕgēbā-mŭs
2.	-s	-tis	,,	rĕgēba-s	rĕgēbā-tĭs
3.	-t	-nt	,,	rĕgēbă-t	rĕgēba-nt.

Or with a vowel prefixed:

	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	o-(m)	ĭ-mŭs	as in	rĕg-o	rĕg-ĭ-mŭs
2.	ĭ-s	ĭ-tĭs	„	rĕg-i-s	rĕg-ĭ-tĭs
3.	ĭ-t	u-nt	„	rĕg-ĭ-t	rĕg-u-nt.

Obs. I. *Active Voice.*—1. The **-m** is the 1st personal pronoun, which appears in mĕ, mĭhi, mē. It disappears in the 1st person singular of the present indicative of all verbs except sum, *I am*, inquam, *I say*. In the plural **-mus** the letter **s** is the sign of plurality.

2. The **-s** is the 2nd personal pronoun, and represents the *t* in tu, tui, tibi, te (Gr. σύ). In the 2nd person of the perfect indicative (rexis-ti) the *t* appears. Also in the plural **-tis** the *t* represents the 2nd person, the *s* being the sign of plurality, as in the 1st person.

3. The **-t** is the 3rd personal pronoun, and is the same root as appears in the Greek article, and in the English pronouns *this* and *that*. In the plural **-nt** the letter *n* is the sign of plurality. The letter *n*, as well as *s*, is a sign of plurality in other languages akin to the Latin. Thus in English we have ox-*en* as well as dog-*s*.

II. *Passive Voice.* 1. The 1st personal termination singular always disappears before **-r**, the sign of the passive: as, rĕgēbă-r from rĕgēba-m; rĕgă-r from rĕga-m; rĕgĕrĕ-r from rĕgĕre-m, &c. In the plural in like manner *s*, the sign of plurality, disappears before the *r*: as, rĕgēbāmu-r from rĕgēbāmus; rĕgāmu-r from rĕgāmŭs; rĕgĕrēmŭ-r from rĕgĕrēmŭs.

2. The 2nd personal termination singular is **-ris** (more rarely **-re**), in which *r* represents the *s* of the Active, and *is* is the sign of the Passive: as, ămā-r-ĭs from ăma-s, ămābā-r-is from ămāba-s.

Note.—On the interchange of *s* and *r* we have examples in crūs, crūr-is, instead of crus-is, and similar words. (See § 28, Obs. 1, p. 15.)

The 2nd personal termination plural is **-mĭnĭ** or **-mĭnĭ** (as rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ, ămā-mĭnĭ), and has no connexion with the singular termination. It is, perhaps, a participial termination (Gr. μενοι).

3. The 3rd personal termination, singular and plural, is formed from the Active Voice by adding **-ur**, the sign of the Passive: as, rĕgĭt-ŭr, rĕgunt-ŭr, from rĕgĭt, rĕgunt; rĕgēbāt-ŭr, rĕgēbant-ur, from rĕgēbāt, rĕgēbant.

§ 106. Formation of the Imperfect Tenses.—1. *Present Tenses.*—*The Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the Imperative the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains: as, rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtĕ in the contracted conjugations, ămā = ăma-ĕ; mŏnē = mŏne-ĕ; audī = audi-ĕ.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **-a**: as, rĕg-a-m, mŏne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the a of the tense suffix into *e*: as, ăma-a-m = ăme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix **ĕrĕ**: as, rĕg-ĕrĕ; in the contracted conjugations, ămā-rĕ = ăma-ĕrĕ; mŏnē-re = mŏne-ĕrĕ; audī-rĕ = audi-ĕrĕ. The *Participle* has the suffix **-ens** (stem **-ent**). as, rĕg-ens, audi-

ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, ămа-ns = ămа-ens; mŏne-ns = mŏne-ens.

Obs. The *e* of the Imperative is dropped in dīc, *speak*, from dīco; dūc, *lead*, from dūco; fac, *make*, from făcio; fer, *bring*, from fĕro.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses.* — The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **ēba**: as, rĕg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, ămā-ba-m = ămа-ēba-m; mŏnē-ba-m = mŏne--ēba-m. The Subjunctive has the tense suffix **ĕre**: as, rĕg-ĕre-m: in the contracted conjugations ămā-re-m = ămа-ĕre-m; mŏnē-re-m = mŏne-ĕre-m; audī-re-m = audi-ĕre-m.

Obs. The suffix **eba**, originally *ba*, is the same as FU, the root of *fu-i*.

3. *Future Tenses.* — The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **b** in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, ămā-b-o; monē-b-o: and the tense suffix **a** or **e** in the 3rd and 4th conjugations; **a** being used in the first person, and **e** in all the other persons: as, rĕg-a-m, rĕg-ē-s, rĕg-ĕ-t, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ĕ-t, &c.

Obs. The suffix **b** is also the same as FU, which has a future meaning in fore. The futures in the 3rd and 4th conjugations are allied to the Subjunctive; but these conjugations, in all probability, originally formed their futures in **b**: the forms *ibo* and *scibo*, from *eo* and *scio*, were in common use.

The annexed Table exhibits the above Tense Terminations with the Contractions:

		III.	I.	II.	IV.
ACTIVE VOICE.	INDICATIVE.				
	Present.	rĕg-o	ămа-o = ămo	mŏne-o	audi-o
	Past-Imperf.	rĕg-ēbam	ămа-ēbam = ămābam	mŏne-ēbam = mŏnēbam	audi-ēbam
	Future.	rĕg-am	ămā-bo	mŏnē-bo	audi-am
	SUBJUNCTIVE.				
	Present.	rĕg-am	ămа-am = ămem	mŏne-am	audi-am
	Past-Imperf.	rĕg-ĕrem	ămа-ĕrem = ămārem	mŏne-ĕrem = mŏnērem	audi-ĕrem = audīrem
	IMPERATIVE.				
	Present.	rĕg-ĕ	ămа-ĕ = ămā	mŏne-ĕ = mŏnē	audi-ĕ = audī
	Future.	rĕg-ĭto	ămа-ĭto = ămāto	mŏne-ĭto = mŏnēto	audi-ĭto = audīto
	INFINITIVE.	rĕg-ĕrĕ	ămа-ĕrĕ = ămārĕ	mŏne-ĕrĕ = mŏnērĕ	audi-ĕrĕ = audīrĕ
	PARTICIPLE.	rĕg-ens	ămа-ens = ămans	mŏne-ens = mŏnens	audi-ens

PASSIVE VOICE.

	III.	I.	II.	IV.
INDICATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ŏr	ăma-ŏr = ămŏr	mŏne-ŏr	audi-ŏr
Past-Imperf.	rĕg-ēbăr	ăma-ēbăr = ămābăr	mŏne-ēbăr = mŏnēbar	audi-ēbăr
Future.	rĕg-ăr	ămā-bor	mŏnē-bŏr	audi-ăr
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ăr	ăma-ăr = ămĕr	mŏne-ăr	audi-ăr
Past-Imperf.	rĕg-ĕrĕr	ăma-ĕrĕr = ămārĕr	mŏne-ĕrĕr = mŏnērĕr	audi-ĕrĕr = audīrĕr
IMPERATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ĕrĕ	ăma-ĕrĕ = ămārĕ	mŏne-ĕrĕ = mŏnērĕ	audi-ĕrĕ = audīrĕ
Future.	rĕg-ĭtŏr	ăma-ĭtŏr = ămātŏr	mŏne-ĭtŏr = mŏnētŏr	audi-ĭtŏr = auditŏr
INFINITIVE.	rĕg-ī	ăma-ĕrī = ămārī	mŏne-ĕrī = mŏnērī	audi-ĕrī = audīrī
GERUNDIVE.	rĕg-endŭs	ăma-endŭs = ămandŭs	mŏne-endŭs = mŏnendŭs	audi-endŭs

Obs. The Stems of some Verbs are strengthened in the Imperfect Tenses in the following ways :—

1. By the insertion of *n* or *m before* the final consonant : as,

Stem.	*Imperfect Tenses.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
scĭd	scindo scindēbam scindam	scĭdī	*tear*
tăg	tango tangēbam tangam	tĕ-tĭgī	*touch.*
rŭp	rumpo rumpēbam rumpam	rūpī	*burst.*

n is inserted before the dental and guttural letters : as, scindo, frango ; *m* before the labial letters : as, cumbo.

2. By the insertion of *n after* the final consonant : as,

Stem.	*Imperfect Tenses.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
spĕr	sperno spernēbam spernam	sprē-vī	*despise.*
cĕr	cerno cernēbam cernam	crē-vī	*distinguish.*
pŏs	pōno pōnēbam pōnam	pŏs-uī	*place.*

Pōno is instead of pos-no, the *s* being dropped before *n*.

3. By adding *t* or doubling the final consonant: as,

Stem.	*Imperfect Tenses.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
flĕc	flecto flectēbam flectam	flexī	*bend.*
pĕl	pello pellēbam pellam	pĕ-pŭlī	*drive.*

4. By *reduplication*, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant with the connecting vowel *i*: as,

Ste	*Imperfect Tenses.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
gĕn	gi-gno gi-gnēbam gi-gnam	gĕn-uī	*produce.*
sta	si-sto si-stēbam si-stam	stĭ-tī	*cause to stand.*

Obs. Gigno is a contraction for gigĕno.

5. By adding *sc*, which is the termination of the inceptive verbs. See § 164.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed:

1. By adding v to the Stem; as, ămā (ămo), ămā-v-ī; audi (audio), audī-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding u to the Stem: as, mŏnĕ (mŏneo), mŏn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. 1. The terminations v and u are the same, and are derived from fu-i, the Perfect of the verb *to be.*

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v*: as, mĭnu-o, mĭnu-ī, *lessen;* volv-o, volv-ī, *roll;* vert-o, vert-ī, *turn.*

3. By adding s to the Stem: as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rexi = reg-s-i.

Obs. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

(i) *cs, gs, qus, hs* are contracted into *x*: as, dūco, duxi, *lead;* cŏquo, coxi, *cook;* trăho, traxi, *drag.*

(ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s*: as, scrībo, scripsī, *write;* nūbo, nupsī, *marry* (of women).

(iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, mitto, mīsī, *send;* laedo, laesī, *injure.*

4. By reduplication: as,

tend (tendo), tĕ-tendī, *stretch.*
căd (cădo), cĕ-cĭdī, *fall.*
morde (mordeo), mŏ-mordī, *bite.*

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem: as,

jăc or jăci (jăcio), jēcī, *throw.*
vĕni (vĕnio), vēnī, *come.*
mŏve (mŏveo), mōvī, *move.*

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted: as, tundo, tŭtŭdī, *beat,* but contundo, contŭdī, *beat small, bruise;* pello, pĕpŭlī, *drive,* but compello, compŭlī, *drive together.*

1. *Present-Perfect* or *Aorist Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **is**; *2nd pers.* ămāv-is-tī, ămāv-is-tis; *3rd pers.* ămāv-ēr-unt; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **eri**: as, ămāv-ĕri-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix **issĕ**: as, ămāv-issĕ.

Obs. 1. In the *Indicative* **is** is probably the same as *es*, the stem of 's-um. The change of *is* into *er* in the 3rd person plural (ămāv-ēr-unt) is also found in pulvis, pulvĕr-is, *dust.*

Obs. 2. In the *Subjunctive* **eri-m** is the same as esi-m or 'si-m, the present subjunctive of sum.

Obs. 3. In the *Infinitive* **isse** is the same as essĕ, the present Infinitive of sum.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **ĕra**: as, ămāv-ĕra-m. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **isse**: as, ămāv-isse-m.

Obs. The suffixes **era-m** and **isse-m** are the same as era-m and esse-m, the past Indicative and Subjunctive of sum.

The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix **ĕr**: as, ămāv-ĕr-o.

Obs. The suffix **er-o** is the future of sum.

§ 108. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: as,

I. Āmā-tum, āmā-tū.	III. Rec-tum, rec-tū.
II. Mŏnĭ-tum, mŏnĭ-tū.	IV. Audī-tum, audī-tū.

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

(i) *g, qu, h* become *c* before *t*: as, rĕgo, rectum; cŏquo, coctum; trăho, tractum.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: as, scrībo, scriptum; nūbo, nuptum.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: as, laedo, laesum, *injure*; claudo, clausum, *shut.* In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s*: as, cēdo, ces-sum, *yield*; mitto, mis-sum, *send.*

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrŭs* to the Stem: as,

āmā-tūrŭs; mŏnĭ-tūrŭs; rec-tūrŭs; audī-tūrŭs.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine: as,

tractūrŭs, scriptūrŭs, laesūrŭs.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations: as,

	Stem.	*Supine.*	*Fut. Part.*	
jŭvo	(jŭva)	jūtum	jŭvātūrŭs,	*help.*
sĕco	(sĕca)	sectum	sĕcātūrŭs,	*cut.*
sŏno	(sŏna)	sŏnĭtum	sŏnātūrŭs,	*sound.*
mŏrĭŏr	(mŏr and mŏri)	mortŭs (*part.*)	mŏrĭtūrŭs,	*die.*

§ 110. Remarks upon certain Forms.

1. *Perfect Active.*—(i). On the omission of *v, vi,* and *ve,* in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

Obs. Sometimes the *iit* in the Third Person Singular is contracted into *īt*: as pĕtĭt (in Virg. *Aen.* ix. 9) = pĕtīvit: ăbĭt = ăbiit, ŏbĭt = ŏbiit, pĕrĭt = pĕriit (Juv. vi. 128, 559, 295). Even *ĭī* in the First Person is sometimes contracted into *ī*: as, sĕpĕlī = sĕpĕlĭi (Pers. iii. 97).

(ii). In poetry *is* and *iss* are often omitted after *s* or *x* in the Perfect and Past Perfect of the Third Conjugation: as, ēvasti = ēvāsisti; dixti = dixisti; dīvisse = dīvisisse; surrexe = surrexisse; consumpse = consumpsisse; abscessem = abscessissem.

(iii). The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets: as, dedĕrunt, *they gave.* The suffix *ēre* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The form of the Second Person Singular Passive in *rĕ* rarely occurs in the Present Indicative, because it might be confounded with the Imperfect Infinitive Active.

3. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus*: as, făciundum from făcio, *make* or *do*; pŏtiundum from pŏtiŏr, *obtain possession of.*

4. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus,* with an intensive signification: as, laetābundus, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy*; lacrĭmābundus, *weeping profusely*; fŭrĭbundus, *full of rage*; mŏrĭbundus, *in the very article of death.*

Obs. 1. Words in *bundus* come chiefly from verbs of the First Conjugation. Pŭdĭbundus, *full of modesty,* is the only one from a verb of the Second Conjugation; and lascĭvĭbundus, *full of wantonness,* the only one from a verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Obs. 2. These words *generally* govern no case: but we find in Livy vĭtābundus castra, *avoiding the camp* (25, 13), and similar expressions.

§ 111. Ancient Forms.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier*: as, ămārĭĕr instead of ămārī; rĕgĭĕr, instead of rĕgī.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im, is, it*: as, sim, sīs, sĭt from sum; vĕlim from vŏlo, *be willing*; nōlim from nōlo, *be unwilling*; mālim from mālo, *be more willing.* Also ĕdim instead of ĕdam from ĕdo, *eat*; and duim from do, *give,* and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations: as, dī duint, *may the gods grant*; dī tē perduint, *may the gods destroy thee.*

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim,* the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim,* instead of *ero* and *erim*: hence the forms levasso, faxo, faxim, are contractions of lĕvāvĕso, făcĕso, făcĕsim. In like manner ausim is formed from the old Perfect ausi (from audeo), which has become obsolete.

CHAPTER XXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given:

I. Possum, pŏtuī, possĕ,—*to be able.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	Pos-sum	Pos-sim
	Pŏt-ĕs	Pos-sīs
	Pŏt-est	Pos-sĭt
P.	Pos-sŭmŭs	Pos-sīmŭs
	Pŏt-estĭs	Pos-sītĭs
	Pos-sunt	Pos-sint
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Pŏt-ĕram	Pos-sem
	Pŏt-ĕrās	Pos-sēs
	Pŏt-ĕrăt	Pos-sĕt
P.	Pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	Pos-sēmŭs
	Pŏt-ĕrātĭs	Pos-sētĭs
	Pŏt-ĕrant	Pos-sent
	3. *Future.*	
S.	Pŏt-ĕro	(wanting.)
	Pŏt-ĕrĭs	
	Pŏt-ĕrĭt	
P.	Pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs	
	Pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs	
	Pŏt-ĕrunt	

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Pŏt-uī	Pŏt-uĕrim
	Pŏt-uistī	Pŏt-uĕrĭs
	Pŏt-uĭt	Pŏt-uĕrĭt
P	Pŏt-uĭmŭs	Pŏt-uĕrimŭs
	Pŏt-uistĭs	Pŏt-uĕritĭs
	Pŏt-uĕrunt (ērĕ)	Pŏt-uĕrint
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Pŏt-uĕram	Pŏt-uissem
	Pŏt-uĕrās	Pŏt-uissēs
	Pŏt-uĕrăt	Pŏt-uissĕt
P.	Pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	Pŏt-uissēmŭs
	Pŏt-uĕrātĭs	Pŏt-uissētĭs
	Pŏt-uĕrant	Pŏt-uissent
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Pŏt-uĕro	(wanting.)
	Pŏt-uĕrĭs	
	Pŏt-uĕrĭt	
P.	Pŏt-uĕrimŭs	
	Pŏt-uĕritĭs	
	Pŏt-uĕrint	

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect—Possĕ. *Perfect*—Pŏtuissĕ. *Future*—wanting.

The *Imperative*, *Gerund*, and *Supine* are wanting.
The *Imperfect Participle* pŏtens is used only as an Adjective, *powerful.*

Obs. Possum is compounded of 'pot' (pŏtis, *able*) and sum: hence pos-sum is a contraction of pŏt-sum; pos-sim of pŏt-sim; pos-sem of pŏt-essem; pŏt-uī of pot-fuī; and pos-sĕ of pŏt-essĕ.

§ 113. II. Vŏlo, vŏluī, vellĕ, — *to be willing.*
III. Nōlo, nōluī, nollĕ, — *to be unwilling.*
IV. Mālo, māluī, mallĕ, — *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	Vŏlo	Nōlo	Mālo
	Vīs	Non vīs	Māvīs
	Vult	Non vult	Māvult
P.	Vŏlŭmŭs	Nōlŭmŭs	Mālŭmŭs
	Vultĭs	Non vultĭs	Māvultĭs
	Vŏlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vŏl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
	Vŏl-ēbās	Nōl-ēbās	Māl-ēbās
	Vŏl-ēbăt	Nōl-ēbăt	Māl-ēbăt
P.	Vŏl-ēbāmŭs	Nōl-ēbāmŭs	Māl-ēbāmŭs
	Vŏl-ēbātĭs	Nōl-ēbātĭs	Māl-ēbātĭs
	Vŏl-ēbant	Nōl-ēbant	Māl-ēbant

3. *Future.*

S.	Vŏl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
	Vŏl-ēs	Nōl-ēs	Māl-ēs
	Vŏl-ĕt	Nōl-ĕt	Māl-ĕt
P.	Vŏl-ēmŭs	Nōl-ēmŭs	Māl-ēmŭs
	Vŏl-ētĭs	Nōl-ētĭs	Māl-ētĭs
	Vŏl-ent	Nōl-ent	Māl-ent

4. *Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uī	Nōl-uī	Māl-uī
	Vŏl-uistī	Nōl-uistī	Māl-uistī
	Vŏl-uĭt	Nōl-uĭt	Māl-uĭt
P.	Vŏl-uĭmŭs	Nōl-uĭmŭs	Māl-uĭmŭs
	Vŏl-uistĭs	Nōl-uistĭs	Māl-uistĭs
	Vŏl-uērunt or -uērĕ	Nōl-uērunt or -uērĕ	Māl-uērunt or -uērĕ

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕram	Nōl-uĕram	Māl-uĕram
	Vŏl-uĕrās	Nōl-uĕrās	Māl-uĕrās
	Vŏl-uĕrăt	Nōl-uĕrăt	Māl-uĕrăt
P.	Vŏl-uĕrāmŭs	Nōl-uĕrāmŭs	Māl-uĕrāmŭs
	Vŏl-uĕrātĭs	Nōl-uĕrātĭs	Māl-uĕrātĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrant	Nōl-uĕrant	Māl-uĕrant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕro	Nōl-uĕro	Māl-uĕro
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭs	Māl-uĕrĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nōl-uĕrĭt	Māl-uĕrĭt
P.	Vol-uĕrimŭs	Nōl-uĕrimŭs	Māl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	Nōl-uĕritĭs	Māl-uĕritĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nōl-uĕrint	Māl-uĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	Vĕl-im	Nōl-im	Māl-im
	Vĕl-īs	Nōl-īs	Māl-īs
	Vĕl-ĭt	Nōl-ĭt	Māl-ĭt
P.	Vĕl-īmŭs	Nōl-īmŭs	Māl-īmŭs
	Vĕl-ītĭs	Nōl-ĭtĭs	Māl-ītĭs
	Vĕl-int	Nōl-int	Māl-intĭ

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vel-lĕt	Nol-lĕt	Mal-lĕt
P.	Vel-lēmŭs	Nol-lēmŭs	Mal-lēmŭs.
	Vel-lētĭs	Nol-lĕtĭs	Mal-lĕtĭs
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕrim	Nōl-uĕrim	Māl-uĕrim
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭs	Māl-uĕrĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nōl-uĕrĭt	Māl-uĕrĭt
P.	Vŏl-uĕrimŭs	Nōl-uĕrimŭs	Māl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭtĭs	Māl-uĕrĭtĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nōl-uĕrint	Māl-uĕrint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uissem	Nōl-uissem	Māl-uissem
	Vŏl-uissēs	Nōl-uissēs	Māl-uissēs
	Vŏl-uissĕt	Nōl-uissĕt	Māl-uissĕt
P.	Vŏl-uissēmŭs	Nōl-uissēmŭs	Māl-uissēmŭs
	Vŏl-uissētĭs	Nōl-uissĕtĭs	Māl-uissētĭs
	Vŏl-uissent	Nōl-uissent	Māl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nōl-ī	(wanting.)
	Nōl-ītĕ	

Future.

Nōl-īto
Nōl-ito
Nōl-ītōtĕ
Nōl-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

Vel-lĕ	Nol-lĕ	Mal-lĕ

Perfect.

Vŏl-uissĕ	Nōl-uissĕ	Māl-uissĕ

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Vŏlens	Nōlens	(wanting.)

Obs. 1. Nōlo is a contraction of ne, *not*, and vŏlo; mālo of măg (magis), *more*, and vŏlo.

Obs. 2. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the *r* of the terminations is changed into *l*: thus, vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vĕl-ĕrem, nōl-ĕrem, māl-ĕrem; and vel-lĕ, nol-lĕ, mal-lĕ, of vĕl-ĕrĕ, nōl-ĕrĕ, māl-ĕrĕ.

Obs. 3. SĪ VĪS, *if you will, if you please*, is sometimes contracted into SĪS.

§ 114. V. Fĕro, tŭlī, ferrĕ, lātum,—*to bear.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	Fĕr-o	Fĕr-am
	Fer-s	Fĕr-ās
	Fer-t	Fĕr-ăt
P.	Fĕr-īmŭs	Fĕr-āmŭs
	Fer-tĭs	Fĕr-ātĭs
	Fĕr-unt	Fĕr-ant
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Fĕr-ēbam	Fer-rem
	Fĕr-ēbās	Fer-rēs
	Fĕr-ēbăt	Fer-rĕt
P.	Fĕr-ēbāmŭs	Fer-rēmŭs
	Fĕr-ēbātĭs	Fer-rētĭs
	Fĕr-ēbant	Fer-rent
	3. *Future.*	
S.	Fĕr-am	Lātūrŭs sim
	Fĕr-ēs	Lātūrŭs sīs
	Fĕr-ĕt	Lātūrŭs sĭt
P.	Fĕr-ēmŭs	Lātūrī sīmŭs
	Fĕr-ētĭs	Lātūrī sītĭs
	Fĕr-ent	Lātūrī sint

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Tŭl-ī	Tŭl-ĕrim
	Tŭl-istī	Tŭl-ĕrĭs
	Tŭl-ĭt	Tŭl-ĕrĭt
P.	Tŭl-ĭmŭs	Tŭl-ĕrimŭs
	Tŭl-istĭs	Tŭl-ĕritĭs
	Tŭl-ērunt *or* ērĕ	Tŭl-ĕrint
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Tŭl-ĕram	Tŭl-issem
	Tŭl-ĕrās	Tŭl-issēs
	Tŭl-ĕrăt	Tŭl-issĕt
P.	Tŭl-ĕrāmŭs	Tŭl-issēmŭs
	Tŭl-ĕrātĭs	Tŭl-issētĭs
	Tŭl-ĕrant	Tŭl-issent
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Tŭl-ĕro	(wanting.)
	Tŭl-ĕrĭs	
	Tŭl-ĕrĭt	
P.	Tŭl-ĕrimŭs	
	Tŭl-ĕritĭs	
	Tŭl-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Fĕr
	Fer-tĕ
Future.	Fer-to
	Fer-to
	Fer-tōtĕ
	Fĕr-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect	Fer-rĕ
Perfect.	Tŭl-issĕ
Future.	Lātūrum essĕ

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect.	Fĕrens
Future.	Lātūrŭs (ă, um)

SUPINES.

Lātum
Lātū

GERUND.

Gen.	Fĕr-end
	&c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	Fĕr-ŏr	Fĕr-ăr
	Fer-rĭs	Fĕr-ārĭs
	Fer-tŭr	Fĕr-ātŭr
P.	Fĕr-ĭmŭr	Fĕr-āmŭr
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī	Fĕr-āmĭnī
	Fĕr-untŭr	Fĕr-antŭr
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Fĕr-ēbăr	Fer-rer
	Fĕr-ēbārĭs	Fer-rērĭs
	Fĕr-ēbātŭr	Fer-rētŭr
P.	Fĕr-ēbāmŭr	Fer-rēmŭr
	Fĕr-ēbāmĭnī	Fer-rēmĭnī
	Fĕr-ēbantŭr	Fer-rentŭr
	3. *Future.*	
S.	Fĕr-ăr	(wanting.)
	Fĕr-ērĭs	
	Fĕr-ētŭr	
P.	Fĕr-ēmŭr	
	Fĕr-ēmĭnī	
	Fĕr-entŭr	

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Lātŭs sum	Lātŭs sim
	Lātŭs ĕs	Lātŭs sīs
	Lātŭs est	Lātŭs sĭt
P.	Lātī sŭmŭs	Lātī sīmŭs
	Lātī estĭs	Lātī sītĭs
	Lātī sunt	Lātī sint
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Lātŭs ĕram	Lātŭs essem
	Lātŭs ĕrās	Lātŭs essēs
	Lātŭs ĕrăt	Lātŭs essĕt
P.	Lātī ĕrāmŭs	Lātī essēmŭs
	Lātī ĕrātĭs	Lātī essētĭs
	Lātī ĕrant	Lātī essent
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Lātŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
	Lātŭs ĕrĭs	
	Lātŭs ĕrĭt	
P.	Lātī ĕrĭmŭs	
	Lātī ĕrĭtĭs	
	Lātī ĕrunt	

Imperative.	
Present.	Fer-rĕ
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī
Future.	Fer-tŏr
	Fer-tŏr
	Fĕr-untŏr

Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	Fer-rī
Perfect.	Lātum (am, um) essĕ
Future.	Lātum īrī
Participles.	
Perfect.	Lātŭs (ă, um)
Gerundive.	Fĕr-endŭs (ă, um)

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of fĕro the only irregularity is the omission of ĕ and l in some of the terminations: thus, fer-s = fer-ls; fer-t = fĕr-lt; fer-rem = fĕr-ĕrem; fer-rĕ = fĕr-ĕrĕ, &c.

Obs. 2. The compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way:

Affĕro	(ad, fero),	attŭlī,	afferrĕ,	allātum,	*bring to.*
Aufĕro	(ab, fero),	abstŭlī,	auferrĕ,	ablātum,	*carry away.*
Effĕro	(ex, fero),	extŭlī,	efferrĕ,	ēlātum,	*carry out.*
Inffĕro	(in, fero),	intŭlī,	inferrĕ,	illātum,	*carry into.*
Offĕro	(ob, fero),	obtŭlī,	offerrĕ,	oblātum,	*present.*
Prōffĕro	(prō, fero),	prōtŭlī,	prōferrĕ,	prōlātum,	*carry forward.*
Rĕffĕro	(re, fero),	rĕttŭlī / rettŭlī,	rĕferrĕ,	rĕlātum,	*bring back.*

§ 115. VI. Ĕdo, ēdī, ēdĕrĕ or essĕ, ēsum,—*to eat.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*	
Ĕd-o	Ĕd-am *or* ĕd-im
Ĕd-īs *or* ēs	Ĕd-ās *or* ĕd-īs
Ĕd-ĭt *or* est	Ĕd-ăt *or* ĕd-ĭt
Ĕd-ĭmŭs	Ĕd-āmŭs *or* ĕd-īmŭs
Ĕd-ītĭs *or* estĭs	Ĕd-ātĭs *or* ĕd-ītĭs
Ĕd-unt	Ĕd-ant *or* ĕd-int
2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
Ĕd-ēbam	Ĕd-ĕrem *or* essem
Ĕd-ēbās	Ĕd-ērēs *or* essēs
Ĕd-ēbăt	Ĕd-ĕrĕt *or* essĕt
Ĕd-ēbāmŭs	Ĕd-ĕrēmŭs *or* essēmŭs
Ĕd-ēbātĭs	Ĕd-ĕrētĭs *or* essētĭs
Ĕd-ēbant	Ĕd-ĕrent *or* essent
3. *Future.*	
Ĕd-am	Ēsūrŭs sim
Ĕd-ēs	Ēsūrŭs sīs
Ĕd-ĕt	Ēsūrŭs sĭt
Ĕd-ēmŭs	Ēsūrī sīmŭs
Ĕd-ētĭs	Ēsūrī sītĭs
Ĕd-ent	Ēsūrī sint

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
4. *Perfect.*	
S. Ēd-ī	Ēd-ĕrim
Ēd-istī	Ēd-ĕrīs
Ēd-ĭt	Ēd-ĕrĭt
P. Ēd-ĭmŭs	Ēd-ĕrimŭs
Ēd-istĭs	Ēd-ĕritĭs
Ēd-ērunt *or* -ērĕ	Ēd-ĕrint
5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S. Ēd-ĕram	Ēd-issem
Ēd-ĕrās	Ēd-issēs
Ēd-ĕrăt	Ēd-issĕt
P. Ēd-ĕrāmŭs	Ēd-issēmŭs
Ēd-ĕrātĭs	Ēd-issētĭs
Ēd-ĕrant	Ēd-issent
6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. Ēd-ĕro	(wanting.)
Ēd-ĕrīs	
Ēd-ĕrĭt	
P. Ēd-ĕrimŭs	
Ēd-ĕritĭs	
Ēd-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.	
Present.	Ēd-ĕ *or* es
	Ēd-ītĕ *or* estĕ
Future.	Ēd-īto *or* esto
	Ēd-īto *or* esto
	Ēd-ītōtĕ *or* estōtĕ
	Ēd-unto
INFINITIVE.	
Imperfect.	Ēd-ĕrĕ *or* essĕ
Perfect.	Ēd-issĕ
Future.	Ēsūrum (am, um) esse

PARTICIPLES.	
Imperfect.	Ēd-ens
Future.	Ēsūrŭs (ă um)
SUPINES.	
	Ēsum
	Ēsū
GERUND.	
Gen.	Ēd-endī, &c.

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular: only *estŭr* is used instead of ēdĭtŭr, and *essētŭr* instead of ēdĕrētŭr. The Perfect Participle is ēsus.

Obs. 2. The compound cŏmĕdo, *eat up*, is conjugated in the same way: as, cŏmĕdĭs or cŏmēs; cŏmĕdĭt or cŏmest, &c.

§ 116. VII. Ĕo, īvī, ītĕ, ĭtum,—*to go.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	Ĕ-o	E-am
	Ī-s	E-ās
	Ĭ-t	E-ăt
P	Ī-mŭs	E-āmŭs
	Ī-tis	E-ātis
	E-unt	E-ant
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Ī-bam	Ī-rem
	Ī-bās	Ī-rēs
	Ī-băt	Ī-rĕt
P.	I bāmŭs	Ī-rēmŭs
	Ī-bātis	Ī-rētis
	Ī-bant	Ī-rent
	3. *Future.*	
S.	Ī-bo	Ĭ-tūrŭs sim
	Ī-bĭs	Ĭ-tūrŭs sīs
	Ī-bĭt	Ĭ-tūrŭs sĭt
P.	Ī-bĭmŭs	Ĭ-tūrī sīmŭs
	Ī-bĭtis	Ĭ-tūrī sītis
	Ī-bunt	Ĭ-tūrī sint

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Ī-vī *or* I-ī	Ī-vĕrim *or* I-ĕrim
	Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vĕrīs &c.
	Ī-vĭt &c.	Ī-vĕrĭt &c.
P.	Ī-vĭmŭs &c.	Ī-vĕrimŭs &c.
	Ī-vistis &c.	Ī-vĕritis &c.
	Ī-vērunt &c. *or* Ī-vērĕ	Ī-vĕrint &c.
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Ī-vĕram *or* I-ĕram	Ī-vissem, I-issem *or* I-ssem
	Ī-vĕrās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.
	Ī-vĕrăt &c.	Ī-vissĕt &c.
P.	Ī-vĕrāmŭs &c.	Ī-vissēmŭs &c.
	Ī-vĕrātis &c.	Ī-vissētis &c.
	Ī-vĕrant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Ī-vĕro *or* I-ĕro	(wanting)
	Ī-vĕrĭs &c.	
	Ī-vĕrĭt &c.	
P.	Ī-vĕrimŭs &c.	
	Ī-vĕritis &c.	
	Ī-vĕrint &c.	

Imperative.	
Present.	Ī
	Ī-tĕ
Future.	Ī-to
	Ī-to
	Ī-tōtĕ
	Ĕ-unto
Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	Ī-rĕ
Perfect.	Ī-vissĕ, iissĕ *or* issĕ
Future.	Ĭ-tūrum (am, um) essĕ

Participles.	
Imperfect	I-ens (*Gen.* e-untĭs)
Future.	Ĭ-tūrŭs (ă, um)
Gerund.	
Gen.	E-undi, &c.

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: as, eo, eunt, eam, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. Indic.: ītŭr, ībātur, ībĭtŭr, ĭtum est, &c. Subj.: eātŭr, īrētŭr, ĭtum sĭt, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of eo usually take *ii*, rarely *ivi*, in the Perfect Tenses: as, ădeo, *I approach*, makes ădii, ădiĕram, ădiissem, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of eo, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: as, ădeo, *I approach*; Pass.: ădeŏr, ădīrĭs, ădītŭr, ădīmŭr, ădīmĭnī, ădeuntŭr, &c.

Obs. 5. Ambio, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find ambiēbam, but occasionally ambībam (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund ambiendi, &c. The Perf. Participle is ambītus (Ov. Met. i. 37), though the Verbal Substantive is ambĭtus.

§ 117. VIII. Queo, quīvī, quīrĕ, quĭtum,—*to be able.*

§ 118. IX. Nĕqueo, nĕquīvī, nĕquīrĕ, nĕquĭtum,—*to be unable.*

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like ĕo, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative non quīs, non quīt are used instead of nĕquīs, nĕquĭt.

§ 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—**Fīo**, *to become*, or *be made*, **vāpulo**, *to be beaten*, **vēneo**, *to be sold*, are Passive in their *signification* and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives.*

1. Fīo, factŭs sum, fĭĕrī,—*to become* or *be made.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	Fī-o	Fī-am
	Fī-s	Fī-ās
	Fī-t *or* fĭ-t	Fī-ăt
P.	[Fī-mŭs]	Fī-āmŭs
	[Fī-tĭs]	Fī-ātĭs
	Fī-unt	Fī-ant
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Fī-ēbam	Fī-ĕrem
	Fī-ēbās	Fī-ĕrēs
	Fī-ēbăt	Fī-ĕrĕt
P.	Fī-ēbāmŭs	Fī-ĕrēmŭs
	Fī-ēbātĭs	Fī-ĕrētĭs
	Fī-ēbant	Fī-ĕrent
	3. *Future.*	
S.	Fī-am	(wanting).
	Fī-ēs	
	Fī-ĕt	
P.	Fī-ēmŭs	
	Fī-ētĭs	
	Fī-ent	

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Factŭs sum	Factŭs sim
	Factŭs ĕs	Factŭs sīs
	Factŭs est	Factŭs sĭt
P.	Factī sŭmŭs	Factī sīmŭs
	Factī estĭs	Factī sītĭs
	Factī sunt	Factī sint
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Factŭs ĕram	Factŭs essem
	Factŭs ĕrās	Factŭs essēs
	Factŭs ĕrăt	Factŭs essĕt
P.	Factī ĕrāmŭs	Factī essēmŭs
	Factī ĕrātĭs	Factī essētĭs
	Factī ĕrant	Factī essent
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Factŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
	Factŭs ĕrĭs	
	Factŭs ĕrĭt	
P.	Factī ĕrĭmŭs	
	Factī ĕrĭtĭs	
	Factī ĕrunt	

Imperative.	
Present.	Fī, fī-tĕ
Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	Fī-ĕrī
Perfect.	Factum (am, um) essĕ
Future.	Factum īrī

Participles.	
Perfect.	Factŭs (ă, um)
Gerundive.	Făciendŭs (ă, um)

Obs. 1. Fīo is used as the Passive of făcio.

Obs. 2. The *i* in fīo is always long, except in fit and when not followed by *r.*

Obs. 3. The forms fīmŭs and fītĭs are doubtful.

2. **Vāpŭlo, vāpŭlāvi,** *to be beaten,* is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of Verbĕro. Hence vāpŭlo can be used in the Passive only as an impersonal: vāpŭlandum (ĕrit mĭhi), *I shall have to undergo a beating.* (Ter.)

3. **Vēneo, venīvi, vēnitum** (*or* **vēnum**), *to be sold,* is a compound of the supine vēnum and the verb eo, and is used as the passive of Vendo.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives,* because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in *form.* They are likewise called *Semi-deponents,* because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,	*to dare, venture.*
Fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre,	*to trust.*
Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo, sŏlĭtus sum, sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

Obs. A few other verbs also use the Perfect Participle Passive in an active sense: see § 524.

Chapter XXII.—Defective Verbs.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. Coepī,	*I began.*
II. Mĕmĭnī,	*I remember.*
III. Ōdī,	*I hate.*
IV. Nōvi,	*I know.*

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepī**	**Mĕmĭnī**	**Ōdī**	**Nōvi**
Past Perfect.	**Coepĕram**	**Mĕmĭnĕram**	**Ōdĕram**	**Nōveram**
Future-Perfect.	**Coepĕro**	**Mĕmĭnĕro**	**Ōdĕro**	**Nōvĕro**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepĕrim**	**Mĕmĭnĕrim**	**Ōdĕrim**	**Nōvĕrim**
Past-Perfect.	**Coepissem**	**Mĕmĭnissem**	**Ōdissem**	**Nōvissem**

IMPERATIVE.

Future.	(wanting.)	**Mĕmento** **Mĕmentōtŏ**	(wanting.)

INFINITIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepissĕ**	**Mĕmĭnissĕ**	**Ōdissĕ**	**Nōvisse**

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	**Coeptūrŭs**	(wanting.)	**Ōsūrŭs**

Obs. 1. Instead of coepi and its Tenses, the Passive coeptus sum, &c., is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, urbs aedĭfĭcārī coepta est, *the city began to be built.*

Obs. 2. *Novi* is properly the perfect of Nosco, *to learn to know*

§ 121. V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms:—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present.		*Past-Imperfect.*	
S. Aio	—	*S.* Aiēbam	—
Aīs	Aiās	Aiēbās	—
Aīt	Aiāt	Aiēbăt	—
P. —	—	*P.* Aiēbāmŭs	—
—	—	Aiēbātĭs	—
Aiunt	Aiant	Aiēbant	—

Imperfect Participle.

Aiens.

Obs. The form aisnĕ, *sayest thou?* is often contracted into ain'.

§ 122. VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Inquam	*Past-Imperfect.*	Inquiēbam
	Inquĭs		Inquiēbās
	Inquĭt		Inquiēbăt
	Inquĭmŭs		Inquiēbāmŭs
	Inquĭtĭs		Inquiēbātĭs
	Inquĭunt		Inquiēbant
Future.	—	*Perfect*	—
	Inquiēs		Inquistī
	Inquiĕt		Inquīt

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Inquĕ	*Future.*	2 *Pers.* Inquĭto

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he,* is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
Present.		*Present. S.* Fārĕ	Fārī
Fātŭr	—		
Future.		Participles.	
Fābŏr, fābĭtŭr	—	*Imperfect.* Fantĭs &c.	(without a *Nom.*)
Perfect.		*Perfect.* Fātŭs (ă, um)	
Fātus sum &c.	Fātus sim &c.	*Gerundive.* Fandŭs (ă, um)	
Past-Perfect.		Supine — Fātū.	
Fātŭs ĕram	Fātŭs essem	Gerund—Fandī &c.	

§ 124. VIII. Salvē, *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* salvē, salvetĕ, salvēto; in the *Infin.* salvērĕ; and in the *Future* salvēbis.

IX. Āvē (hāvē), *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* āvē, āvētĕ, āvēto; and in the *Infin.* āvērĕ.

X. Āpāgĕ, *begone!* (the only form).

XI. Cĕdo, *pl.* (cĕdītĕ) cettĕ, *give me, tell me,* are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. Quaeso, *I entreat,* quaesŭmŭs, *we entreat,* are the only forms used in this sense.

CHAPTER XXIII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

Dĕcĕt, dĕcŭit, dĕcērĕ,	*it is seemly.*
Dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcŭit, dēdĕcērĕ,	*it is unseemly.*
Lĭbĕt, lĭbŭit & lĭbĭtum est, lĭbērĕ,	*it pleases.*
Lĭcĕt, lĭcŭit & lĭcĭtum est, lĭcērĕ,	*it is lawful.*
Lĭquĕt, lĭquērĕ,	*it is clear.*
Mĭsĕrĕt *or* **mĭsĕrētŭr, mĭsĕrĭtum est, mĭsĕrērĕ,**	*it excites pity.*
Ŏportĕt, ŏportŭit, ŏportērĕ,	*it behoves.*
Pĭgĕt, pĭgŭit & pĭgĭtum est, pĭgērĕ,	*it vexes.*
Plăcĕt, plăcŭit *or* **plăcĭtum est, plăcērĕ,**	*it pleases.*
Poenĭtĕt, poenĭtŭit, poenĭtērĕ,	*it causes sorrow*
Pŭdĕt, pŭdŭit *or* **pŭdĭtum est, pŭdērĕ,**	*it shames.*
Taedĕt, (pertaesum est,) taedērĕ,	*it disgusts.*

Obs. All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandĭnăt, grandĭnāre,	*it hails.*
Ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ,	*it snows.*
Plŭĭt, plŭit *or* **plūvĭt, pluĕrĕ,**	*it rains.*

Tŏnăt, tŏnuĭt, tŏnārĕ,	*it thunders.*
Lūcescĭt, (illuxĭt,) lūcescĕrĕ,	*it becomes light.*
Vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕrĕ,	*evening approaches.*

Obs. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally: as, accĭdĭt, *it happens;* expĕdĭt, *it is advantageous,* &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently pŭdĕt, for example, has only the following forms:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE
Present.	**Pŭdĕt**	**Pŭdeăt**	**Pŭdērĕ**
Past-Imperfect.	**Pŭdēbăt**	**Pŭdērĕt**	
Future.	**Pŭdēbĭt**	—	—
Perfect.	**Pŭduĭt**	**Pŭduĕrĭt**	**Pŭduissĕ**
Past-Perfect.	**Pŭduĕrăt**	**Pŭduissĕt**	
Future-Perfect.	**Pŭduĕrĭt**	—	—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

Pŭdĕt mē,	*it shames me,* or *I am ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt tē,	*it shames thee,* or *thou art ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eum,	*it shames him,* or *he is ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt nōs,	*it shames us,* or *we are ashamed*
Pŭdĕt vōs,	*it shames you,* or *you are ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eōs,	*it shames them,* or *they are ashamed.*

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally: as,

Currĭtŭr, ītŭr, ventum est &c. (*They*) *run,* (*they*) *go,* (*they*) *came, etc.*

CHAPTER XXIV.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in **ē, ō, tĕr, ĭtŭs, tim.** Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in **ē, ō, tĕr,** have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in **ius.**

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super-

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into ē.

Adjectives.		Adverbs.		
		Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus,	*learned,*	doctē	doctius	doctissĭmē
aeger,	*sick,*	aegrē (*with difficulty*)	aegrius	aegerrĭmē
fortis,	*brave,*	fortĭter	fortius	fortissĭmē
sīmĭlis,	*like,*	sīmĭlĭter	sīmĭlius	sīmillĭmē
ācĕr,	*keen,*	ācrĭter	ācrius	ācerrĭmē
fēlix,	*lucky,*	fēlīcĭter	fēlīcius	fēlīcissĭmē
prūdens,	*prudent,*	prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissĭmē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

Adjectives.		Adverbs.		
		Positive.	*Comparative.*	
bŏnus,	*good,*	bĕnĕ	mĕlius	optĭmē
mălus,	*bad,*	mălĕ	pējus	pessĭmē
multus,	*much,*	multum	plūs	plūrĭmum
magnus,	*great,*	——	măgis	maxĭmē
prŏpinquus,	*near,*	prŏpĕ	prŏpius	proxĭmē
(prō) prior,	*before,*	——	prius	prīmum & prīmō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared :—

Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
diū,	*for a long time,*	diūtius	diūtissĭmē
nūper,	*lately,*	——	nūperrĭmē
saepĕ,	*often,*	saepius	saepissĭmē
sĕcus,	*otherwise,*	sēcius	——
tempĕrī (tempŏrī),	*timely,*	tempĕrius	——

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns: as,

tempŏri, tempĕri, from	tempus,	*seasonably* (see § 131).
grātīs (grātiīs),	grātia,	*for thanks,* i. e. *for nothing.*
ingrātiīs (ingrātīs), „	ingrātia,	*without thanks, against any* [*one's will.*
fŏrās, fŏrīs,	fŏra (*obs.*) = fŏris,	*abroad.*
noctū, „	noctus (*obs.*) = nox,	*by night.*
dĭū, old *abl.* of	dĭēs,	*by day.**
perpĕram, *acc. sing. f.* of	perpĕrus,	*wrongly.*

* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (rare).

Some are compounded of two or more words: as of an Adjective and Substantive; or a Preposition and a Substantive; or two Verbs: as,

hŏdĭē,	from	**hōc dĭē,**	*on this day.*
quŏtĭdĭē,	„	**quŏt dĭes,**	*every day.*
magnŏpĕrĕ,	„	**magnō ŏpĕrĕ,**	*greatly.*
tantŏpĕrĕ,	„	**tantō ŏpĕrĕ,**	*greatly.*
obvĭam,	„	**ŏb vĭam,**	*in the way of.*
quamobrem,	„	**quam ob rem,**	*wherefore.*
invĭcem,	„	**in vĭcem,**	*in turn.*
scīlĭcĕt,	„	**scīre lĭcĕt,**	*doubtless, of course.*
vīdēlĭcĕt,	„	**vīdērĕ lĭcĕt,**	*manifestly, to wit.*
quamvīs	„	**quam vīs (vŏlo),**	*however much.*

With many others.

§ 133. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into the following classes :—

I. Adverbs of Interrogation, Affirmation, and Negation.

(*a*) *Of Interrogation.*

-nĕ,	*is it so?*	**utrum ... ne, an,**	*is this the case,*
num,	*it is not so, is it?*	**quārē, cur,**	*why?* [or *that?*
nonnĕ,	*is it not so?*	**quŏtiēs,**	*how often?*

Note. Concerning the use of these Particles, see Syntax.

(*b*) *Of Affirmation.*

sānē, vērō, ŭtĭquĕ,	*indeed.*	**ēcastor,**	*by Castor.*
ĕdĕpōl, pol,	*by Pollux, truly.*	**mĕdĭusfĭdĭus**	*by the god of faith*
mĕhercle,	*by Hercules, in truth.*	**(me dius fidius),**	*in very truth.*

Obs. There is no word in Latin precisely equivalent to the English *yes*. Instead of it some part of the question is generally repeated. Tu ita dicis? Ego vero dico. *Do you say so? Yes, I do.*

(*c*) *Of Negation.*

nōn, haud,	*not.*	**mĭnĭmē,**	*by no means.*

Obs. **Immo** (ĭmo) is equivalent to *nay, nay rather:* and may sometimes be rendered by *yes* or *no:* as,

Fătĕtur? *Immo* pernĕgat. *Does he confess? No, he denies outright.* Plaut.
Causa igitur non bŏna est? *Immo* optima. *Is our cause then not good? Yes, exceedingly good.* Cic.

II. Adverbs of Place.

1. Derived from Pronouns, with one or two exceptions.

(1.) *Rest in a Place.*	(2.) *Motion from a Place.*	(3.) *Motion by a Way.*	(4.) *Motion to a Place.*	(5 *Motion towards a Place.*
hīc, *here, near me*	**hinc**, *from the place near me.*	**hāc**, *by this road, near me.*	**(hōc) hūc**, *to the place near me.*	**horsum**, *towards where I am, hitherwards.*
istīc, *there, near you.*	**istinc**, *from the place near you.*	**istā, istāc**, *by that road, near you.*	**istō, istūc**, *to the place near you.*	**istorsum**, *towards where you are.*
illīc, *near him, yonder.*	**illinc**, *from the place near him, from yonder place.*	**illā, illāc**, *by that road near him, by yonder road.*	**illō, illūc**, *to the place near him, to yonder place.*	**illorsum**, *towards where he is, to yonder place.*
ĭbī, *there.*	**indĕ**, *thence.*	**eā**, *by this way.*	**eō**, *thither.*	
ĭbīdem, *in the same place.*	**indĭdem**, *from the same place.*	**eādem**, *by the same way.*	**eōdem**, *to the same place.*	
ŭbī, *where.*	**undĕ**, *whence.*	**quā**, *by which way.*	**quō**, *whither?*	**quorsum (-us)**, *towards, whither.*
ŭbīquĕ, *everywhere.*	**undĭque**, *from every side.*			
ŭbicunquĕ, ŭbiŭbi, *wheresoever.*	**undĕcunquĕ, undeundĕ**, *from whatever side.*	**quācunquĕ, quāquā**, *by which way soever.*	**quōcunquĕ, quōquō**, *whithersoever.*	**quōquōversum (-us)**, *in whatever direction.*
ălĭbi, *elsewhere.*	**ălĭundĕ**, *from elsewhere.*	**ălĭā**, *by another way.*	**ălĭō**, *to another place.*	**ălĭorsum (-us)**, *towards another place.*
ălĭcŭbi, *somewhere.*	**ălicŭndĕ**, *from some place or another*	**ălĭquā**, *by some way.*	**ălĭquō**, *to some place.*	**ălĭquorsum -us**, *towards some place.*
uspiam, usquam, *anywhere.*				
nusquam, nullĭbi, *nowhere.*				
ŭbĭvīs, ŭbīquĕ, ŭbilĭbet, *in any place you will, everywhere.*	**undĕlĭbĕt**, *from which side you please.*	**quāvīs, quālĭbĕt**, *by which way you will.*	**quōvīs, quōlĭbĕt**, *whither you will.*	
utrŏbīquĕ, *in both places.*				
utrimquĕ, *on both sides.*	**utrinquĕ**, *from both sides.*	**utrācunquĕ, utrāquĕ**, *by which of the two ways you will.*	**utrōvīs**, *to which of two places you will.*	
			utrōquĕ, *to both places.*	**utrōquĕversum (-us)**, *towards both places.*
		rectā, *by a straight way.*	**fŏras**, *abroad.*	

2. *Adverbs of Rest*, derived from Prepositions and other Words.

intŭs, intrinsĕcŭs,	*within.*	fōrīs,	*out of doors, abroad.*
extrinsĕcŭs,	*without.*	pĕregre,	*abroad.*
prŏpĕ,	*near.*	subtŭs,	*beneath.*
prŏcŭl,	*at a distance.*	sŭpernē,	*above.*
passim,	*here and there, everywhere.*	infernē,	*below.*
		praesto,	*at hand.*

3. *Motion from a Place*, derived from other Words.

coelĭtŭs,	*from heaven.*	rādīcĭtŭs, stirpĭtŭs,	*from the roots.*
dīvĭnĭtŭs,	*from the gods.*	ēmĭnŭs (ex mănŭs),	*from a distance* (of skirmishing with *missiles*).
fundĭtŭs,	*from the ground, utterly.*		

Obs. With ēmĭnus, compare cōmĭnŭs, *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

4. *Motion towards a Place*, derived from other Words.

(All compounds of the Preposition versŭs (versum), *towards*).

introrsum (-us),	*inwards.*	adversŭs (-um),	*towards, against.*
dĕorsum (-us),	*downwards.*	sĕorsum (-us),	*apart.*
sursum (-us), i.e. subversum,	*upwards.*	dextrorsum (-us),	*towards the right.*
retrorsum (-us),	*backwards.*	sĭnistrorsum (-us),	*towards the left.*
prorsŭs,	*straight-forwards, outright.*		

III. Adverbs of Time.

1. *When?*

quandō,	*when? at any time.*	cĭto,	*quickly.*
nunc,	*now.*	stătim, confestim, prōtĭnŭs, ĭlĭcĕt, illĭco,	*immediately, forthwith.*
jam,	*now, presently.*		
mŏdŏ,	*just now.*		
tunc, tum,	*then.*		
nūpĕr,	*lately.*	post, posteā, posthāc,	*afterwards after that.*
dūdum, prīdem, jamdūdum, jamprīdem,	*some time ago.*	intĕrim, intĕrĕā,	*meanwhile.*
		ălĭās,	*at another time.*
mox,	*soon.*	tandem,	*at length.*
		jamdĭū,	*long since.*

interdum, nonnunquam, ălĭquando, quandoque,	*sometimes.*
quondam, ōlim,	*formerly, hereafter.*
nondum,	*not yet.*
vixdum,	*hardly yet.*
nunquam,	*never.*
sempĕr	*always.*
hŏdĭē,	*to-day.*
crās,	*to-morrow.*
hĕrī (hĕrĕ),	*yesterday.*
prīdĭē,	*the day before.*
nūdĭustertius,	*three days since.*
postrīdĭē,	*the following day.*
pĕrendĭē,	*the next day but one.*

2. *How long?*

dĭū,	*long.*
quamdĭū,	*how long, as long as.*
ălĭquamdĭū, ălĭquantispĕr,	*for a while.*
tamdĭū,	*so long.*
tantispĕr,	*so long.*
părumpĕr, paulispĕr,	*for a little while.*
ădhuc,	*hitherto.*
sempĕr,	*always.*

3. *How often?*

sĕmĕl,	*once.*
bĭs, tĕr, &c.	*twice, thrice, &c.*
tŏtiēs,	*so often.*
quŏtiēs,	*how often; as often as.*
ălĭquŏtiēs,	*several times.*
plĕrumquĕ,	*usually.*
interdum, sŭbindĕ,	*now and then.*
saepĕ, saepĕnŭmĕro,	*often.*
crēbro,	*frequently.*
rāro,	*seldom.*
ĭdentĭdem,	*repeatedly*
rursŭs, ĭtĕrum,	*again.*
dēnŭo,	*afresh.*
quŏtīdiē,	*every day.*
quŏtannis,	*every year.*

IV. Adverbs of Comparison, or Order, Manner, Degree.

ădĕo,	*to such a degree.*
admŏdum,	*exceedingly.*
ălĭtĕr,	*in another way.*
aequē (ac),	*equally.*
ĭtă,	*in that way, so.*
ĭtem,	*likewise.*
măgĭs,	*more, rather.*
mĭnŭs,	*less.*
mŏdŏ,	*only.*
omnīno,	*altogether.*
paenĕ,	*almost.*
părĭtĕr,	*equally, side by side.*
pĕrindĕ (prŏindĕ),	*just as.*
perquam,	*very.*
pŏtiŭs,	*rather.*
pŏtissĭmum,	*in preference to all others.*
praecĭpŭē,	*chiefly.*
prŏpĕ,	*nearly.*
prorsŭs,	*altogether*
quam,	*as, than.*
quantŏpĕrĕ,	*how greatly, as greatly as.*
quăsĭ,	*as if.*
quātĕnŭs,	*how far, as far as.*
eātĕnŭs,	*in so far*
hactĕnŭs,	*thus far.*
ălĭquātĕnŭs,	*to a certain point.*
saltem,	*at least.*
sānē,	*truly, very.*
sătĭs,	*enough.*
sĕcŭs, sēcius,	*otherwise.*
sīc,	*so, in this way.*
sīcŭti,	*as.*
sōlum,	*only.*
tanquam,	*as, as if.*
tantŏpĕrĕ,	*so greatly*
tantum, tantummŏdŏ,	*only.*
ŭt,	*as, how.*
valdē,	*very, greatly.*
vĕlŭt, vĕlŭti,	*just as.*
vix,	*hardly, with difficulty.*

Chapter XXV.—Prepositions.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ad,	*to.*	**Ŏb,**	*on account of.*
Adversŭs, Adversum,	*opposite, towards.*	**Pĕnes,**	*in the power of.*
		Per,	*through.*
Antĕ,	*before.*	**Pōnĕ,**	*behind.*
Apŭd,	*near.*	**Post,**	*after.*
Circā, circum,	*around.*	**Praetĕr,**	*beside.*
Circĭtĕr,	*about.*	**Prŏpĕ,**	*near.*
Cĭs & citrā,	*on this side of.*	**Proptĕr,**	*on account of*
Contrā,	*against.*	**Sĕcundum,**	*following, along, in accordance with.*
Ergā,	*towards* (of the mind).		
Extrā,	*outside of.*	**Suprā,**	*above.*
Infrā,	*below.*	**Trans,**	*across.*
Intĕr,	*between, among.*	**Ultrā,**	*on the farther side of.*
Intrā,	*inside of, within.*	**Versŭs, Versum,**	*towards.*
Juxtā,	*hard by, beside.*		

Obs. *Versŭs* is always placed *after* the Accusative: as, Rōmam versŭs, *towards Rome.*

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

A, ăb, *or* **abs,**	*by* or *from.*	**Ex** *or* **ē,**	*out of.*
Absquĕ (rare),	*without.*	**Prae,**	*before.*
Cōram,	*in the presence of.*	**Prō,**	*in front of, before.*
Cum	*with.*	**Sīnĕ,**	*without.*
Dē,	*down from, from.*	**Tĕnŭs,**	*reaching to, as far as.*

Obs. 1. *Ab* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ā* and *ăb* before consonants, *abs* very seldom except in the phrase *abs te.*

Obs. 2. *Ex* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ex* and *ē* before consonants.

Obs. 3. *Tĕnŭs* is always placed after its case: as, pectŏrĕ tĕnŭs, *as far as the breast.*

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

In,	*in, into.*	**Sŭpĕr,**	*over.*
Sŭb,	*up to, under.*	**Subtĕr,**	*under.*

Clam, *without the knowledge of.*

In and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

§ 138. *Obs.* 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antĕ, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praeter, propter.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the Preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, allŏquor from ad and lŏquor.

Ab, abs. *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants, Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a:* as, ā-moveo, ā-vĕho. *Ab* becomes *au* in au-fĕro, au-fŭgio. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, abs-cĕdo, abs-tĭneo.

Ad remains unchanged before *d, j, m, v:* as, ad-do, ad-jăceo, ad-mĭror, ad-vĕho. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, ac-cĕdo, af-fĕro, ag-gĕro, ap-pōno, ac-quīro, as-sisto, as-sūmo. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn:* as, a-spĭcio, a-gnosco.

Com (instead of **cum**) remains unchanged before the labials *p, b, m:* as, com-pōno, com-bibo, com-mitto. The *m* is assimilated before *l, n, r:* as, col-lĭgo, con-necto, cor-rĭpio. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, con-fĕro, con-gĕro, con-trăho. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h:* as, co-ălesco, co-eo, co-haereo.

Ex remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c, p, q, s, t:* as, ex-eo, ex-cĭpio, ex-pōno, ex-quīro, ex-solvo, ex-trăho. The *x* is assimilated before *f:* as, ef-fĕro. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, ē-lĭgo, ē-jĭcio.

In becomes *im* before the labials *p, b, m:* as, im-pōno, im-buo, im-mitto. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r:* as, il-lūdo, ir-rumpo. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

Inter undergoes assimilation only in the verb intel-lĭgo and its derivatives.

Ob undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, p:* as, oc-curro, of-fĕro, og-gĕro, op-pōno.

Per undergoes assimilation only in pel-lĭcio and its derivatives.

Sub undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p,* and often before *r:* as, suc-curro, suf-fĭcio, sug-gĕro, sum-mitto, sup-pōno, sur-rĭpio.

Trans is frequently shortened into trā: as, trā-dūco, trā-jĭcio.

Obs. 3. *Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

Amb, *around:* as, amb-io, *to go around;* amb-ĭgo, *to wander around.* The *b* is dropped before *p:* as, am-pŭto, *to cut around* or *away;* am-plector, *to twine around* or *embrace. Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f:* as, an-ceps, *two-headed;* an-quīro, *to seek around;* an-fractus, *a bending.*

Dis or **di,** *in different directions:* as, dis-pōno, *to set in different parts;* dĭ-rĭpio, *to tear in pieces.* Before *f, dis* becomes *dif:* as, dif-fundo, *to pour in different directions.*

Rĕ or **rĕd,** *back:* as, rĕ-mitto, *to send back;* rĕd-eo, *to go back.*

Sŏ or **sĕd,** *aside:* as, sē-dūco, *to lead aside;* sē-cūrus, *free from care;* sĕdĭtio, *a going apart; sedition.*

CHAPTER XXVI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes:

I. CONNECTIVE.

Ĕt, Atquĕ, āc, Quĕ,	*and.*	Nĕquĕ, nĕc, Nēvĕ, neu,	*neither, nor.*
Aut, Vĕl, vĕ,	*either, or.*	Sīvĕ, seu,	*or if.*
		Necnōn, Etiam, Quŏque,	*also.*

Obs. 1. **Quĕ** and **vĕ** are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mărīquĕ, *by land and by sea;* plūs mīnusvĕ, *more or less.* Such words are called enclitics.

Obs. 2. **Ac, vĕ, nĕc, neu, seu** are contractions respectively of atquĕ, vĕl, nĕquĕ, nēvĕ, sĕ.

Obs. 3. **Ac** is never used before vowels or *h:* atquĕ occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mŏdo (sōlum) .... sed (vērum) ĕtiam, *not only .... but also;* quum (tum) .... tum, *both .... and.*

II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sĕd, Autem, Ast, at,	*but.*	Tămĕn,	*yet, nevertheless.*
		Vērum, vēro,	*but, indeed.*
		Ĕnimvēro,	*but indeed*
Atque,	*and yet.*	Attămĕn,	*but yet.*

III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī,	*if.*	Dum, Mŏdŏ,	*provided that.*
Nīsi, nī,	*if not.*		
Sin,	*if not; but if.*	Dummŏdo,	

IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi, Ĕtiamsi, Tămetsi, Lĭcĕt, Quanquam	*although*	Quamvīs, Quum, Quĭdem, Ŭt,	*however much, although. [though. indeed. granting that, although.*

V. CAUSAL.

Quum,	*whereas, since.*	Nam, Ĕnim.	*for.*
Quĭă, quŏd,	*because.*		
Quŏniam,	*since.*	Ĕtĕnim,	*and in fact.*
Quandŏquĭdem,	*seeing that.*		

VI. Conclusive.

Ergo,	*therefore.*	**Ĭtăquĕ,**	*and so, accordingly.*
Idcirco,		**Quocircă,**	*wherefore.*
Ĭdeo,		**Quārē,**	
Ĭgĭtŭr,		**Quāproptĕr,**	

VII. Final.

Ŭt,	*that, in order that.*	**Nĕ,**	*that not, lest.*
Quō,		**Nēvĕ, neu,**	*and that . . . not.*
Quĭn,	*that not.*		
Quōmĭnŭs,			

VIII. Temporal.

Antĕquam,	*before that.*	**Donec,**	*so long as, until.*
Prĭusquam,		**Quoad,**	
Postquam,	*after that.*	**Dum,**	

Sĭmulatque (ac), *as soon as.*

Note.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

Chapter XXVII.—Interjections.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise: **ō! eu! eccĕ! păpae! ătat!** etc.
2. Of grief: **ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae!** etc.
3. Of joy: **īo! ha! ēvoe: eu (eugĕ)!** etc.
4. Of disgust: **phuī! ăpăgĕ!** etc.
5. Of adjuration: **prō (proh)!** To this may be added the abbreviated oaths **mehercle (mehercŭle, hercle,** etc.), **pol, ēdĕpol, mĕdĭusfīdĭus,** and the like.

APPENDIX A.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. *Males*, *Mountains*, *Months*, *Winds*, and *Rivers* are *Masculine*.

2. *Females*, *Countries*, *Islands*, *Towns*, and *Trees* are *Feminine*.

Obs. In the case of some animals sex is disregarded: thus, ăquĭla, *eagle*, and vulpes, *fox*, are always *feminine*; while lĕpus, *hare*, mus, *mouse*, and passer, *sparrow*, are always masculine. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. Indeclinable Substantives, as,

Fās, nĕfās, nĭhĭl, instăr,

are *Neuter*.

fās,	*permitted by heaven.*	nĭhĭl,	*nothing.*
nĕfās,	*not permitted by heaven.*	instăr,	*resemblance.*

4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as

Cīvis, conjux, săcerdōs, testis

are *Common*.

cīvis,	*a citizen* (male or female).	săcerdōs,	*a priest* or *priestess.*
conjux,	*a husband* or *wife.*	testis,	*a witness* (male or female).

SPECIAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

§ 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

A and **ē** are Feminine,
As and **ēs** are Masculine.

Exceptions.

1. Names of Males in a are Masculine: as,
scrība, *a clerk.*
nauta, *a sailor.*
incŏla, *an inhabitant.*

2. Most Rivers in a are Masculine (§ 141, 1): as,
Addua, *the Adda.*
Garumna, *the Garonne.*
Sĕquăna, *the Seine.*
Also *Hădria*, the Adriatic Sea.

But the following are Feminine:
Albŭla, *ancient name of Tiber.*
Allia, in Latium.
Matrŏna, *the Marne.*

§ 143. II. Second Declension.

Principal Rule.

Us and er are Masculine,
Um is Neuter.

Exceptions.

1. *Trees* and *Towns* in us follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2): as,
ulmus, *an elm-tree*
Cŏrinthus, *Corinth.*

2. The following are also Feminine:
alvus, *the belly.*
cŏlus, *a distaff.*
hŭmus, *the ground.*
vannus, *a winnowing fan.*

And some Greek words: as,
mĕthŏdus, *method.*
arctos, *the constellation Bear.*
carbăsus, *fine flax.*

3. The following are Neuter:
vīrus, *poison.*
pĕlăgus, *the sea.*
vulgus, *the common people.*

Obs. Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.

§ 144. III. Third Declension.

Preliminary Rules.

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions: thus, pătĕr, *a father;* Tĭbĕris, *the Tiber;* Libs, *a S. W. wind*, are Masculine: while mŭlier, *a woman;* sŏror, *a sister;* Vĕnus, *the goddess of beauty and grace*, are Feminine.

2. All *Abstract* Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine: as,

hŭmĭlĭtas,	*lowness, humility,*	from	hŭmĭlis.
suāvĭtas,	*sweetness,*	,,	suāvis.
altĭtūdo,	*height,*	,,	altus.
fortĭtūdo,	*bravery,*	,,	fortis.
virtūs,	*manliness, virtue,*	,,	vir.

3. Substantives in io (tio, sio), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine: as,

expugnātio,	*taking by storm,*	from	expugno.
mūnītio,	*the act of fortifying,*	,,	mūnio.
dēcessio,	*departure,*	,,	dēcēdo.
largītio,	*bribery,*	,,	largior.
ŏpĭnio,	*thinking, opinion,*	,,	ŏpīnor.
contāgio,	*touching, contagion,*	,,	contango (root TAG).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as rĕgio, *a district* (from rĕgo); lĕgio, *a legion* (from lĕgo).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent* action or condition, in *go* and *do*: as,

prūrīgo,	*itching,*	from	prūrio.
cŭpīdo,	*a desire, passion,*	,,	cŭpio.
vertīgo,	*giddiness,*	,,	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

First Principal Rule (*Masculine*).

O, or (ōris), os, and er,
Es, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are *Masculine*.—EXAMPLES: Leo, ōnis, *a lion*; dŏlŏr, ōris, *pain*; flōs, flōris, *a flower*; anser, ĕris, *a goose*; pēs, pĕdis, *a foot*.

Exceptions.

1. In o.
Feminine are **do, go, io,**
To these add *căro, ēcho,*
But Masculine are *harpăgo,*
Ordo, cardo, scīpio,
Stellio, septentrio,
Margo, līgo, pūgio
Tĭtio, pāpĭlio,
Unio, curcŭlio,
Lastly *vespertĭlio.*

căro,	carnis,	*flesh.*
ēcho,	ēchūs,	*an echo.*
harpăgo,	ōnis,	*a grappling-hook.*
ordo,	ĭnis,	*a row.*
cardo,	ĭnis,	*a hinge.*
scīpio,	ōnis,	*a staff.*
stellio,	ōnis,	*a lizard.*
septentrio,	ōnis,	*the north.*
margo,	ĭnis,	*a border or edge.*
līgo,	ōnis,	*a spade.*
pūgio,	ōnis,	*a dagger.*
tĭtio,	ōnis,	*a fire-brand.*
pāpĭlio,	ōnis,	*a butterfly.*
ūnio,	ōnis,	*a pearl.*
curcŭlio,	ōnis,	*a weevil.*
vespertīlio,	ōnis,	*a bat.*

2. In **or.** Neuter Nouns which end in **or** Are only four:	*Marmor, aequor, ădor, cŏr.* Fēmĭnĭni gĕnĕris Is only *arbor* (*arbŏris*).

marmor,	ŏris,	*marble.*	ădor,	ŏris,	*spelt.*
aequor,	ŏris,	*the level surface of the sea.*	cor,	cordis,	*the heart.*
			arbor,	ŏris,	*a tree.*

3. In **os.** Feminine are *cōs* and *dōs.*	Neuter Nouns are *ŏs* and *ōs.*

cōs,	cōtis,	*a whetstone.*	ŏs,	ossis,	*a bone.*
dōs,	dōtis,	*a dowry.*	ōs,	ōris,	*the mouth.*

4. In **er.** Many Neuters end in **er**: *Vēr, cădāver, ĭter, tūber,* *Cĭcer, pĭper, sĭser, ūber,*	*Zingĭber, păpāver, sūber,* *Acer, sĭler, verber, spinther* Feminine is only *linter.*

vēr,	vēris,	*the spring.*	zingĭber,	ĕris,	*ginger.*
cădāver,	ĕris,	*a corpse.*	păpāver,	ĕris,	*the poppy.*
ĭter,	ĭtĭnĕris,	*a journey.*	sūber,	ĕris,	*the cork-tree*
tūber,	ĕris,	*a swelling.*	ăcer,	ĕris,	*the maple.*
cĭcer,	ĕris,	*the chick-pea.*	sĭler,	ĕris,	*a withy.*
pĭper,	ĕris,	*pepper.*	verber,	ĕris,	*a whip, scourge.*
sĭser,	ĕris,	*a plant (skirret).*	spinther,	ĕris,	*a kind of bracelet.*
ūber,	ĕris,	*an udder.*	linter,	tris (*f.*),	*a wherry.*

5. In **es,** increasing in the Genitive. Feminine are *rĕquiēs,*	*Quiēs, mercēs, mergĕs, tĕgĕs,* *Compes, inquiēs,* and *sĕgĕs.*

quiēs,	ētis,	*rest.*	mergĕs,	ĭtis,	*a sheaf of corn.*
rĕquiēs,	ētis,		tĕgĕs,	ĕtis,	*a mat.*
inquiēs,	ētis,	*restlessness.*	compes,	ĕdis,	*a fetter.*
mercēs,	ēdis,	*wages*	sĕgĕs,	ĕtis,	*standing corn.*

§ 145. *Second Principal Rule (Feminine).*

X, as, aus, and is,
S preceded by a consonant,
Es not increasing in Genitive,

are *Feminine.*—EXAMPLES: Pax, pācis, *peace;* lĭbertās, ātis, *liberty;* laus, laudis, *praise;* nāvis, is, *a ship;* urbs, urbis, *a city;* nūbēs, is, *a cloud.*

Exceptions.

1. In x.

Masculine are words in **ex**:
Feminine alone are *lex, Sŭpellex, cārex, īlex, nex,*

Masculine are *trādux, călix, Phoenix* too, as well as *fornix.*

lex,	lēgis,	*a law.*
sŭpellex,	lectīlis,	*furniture.*
cārex,	ĭcis,	*a kind of rush.*
īlex,	ĭcis,	*the scarlet oak.*
nex,	nĕcis,	*violent death.*
trādux,	ŭcis,	*a vine-branch.*
călix,	ĭcis,	*a cup.*
phoenix,	īcis,	*a fabulous bird.*
fornix,	ĭcis,	*an arch.*

2. In as.

Six Masculīna end in **as**:
As (assis), mās, and *ĕlĕphās, Vās (vădis), gĭgās, ădămās.*

The Neuter Nouns which end in **as**
Are *Vās (vāsis), fās* and *nĕfās.*

ās,	assis,	*a Roman coin.*
mās,	măris,	*a male.*
ĕlĕphās,	antis,	*an elephant.*
vās,	vădis,	*a surety.*
gĭgās,	antis,	*a giant.*
ădămās,	antis,	*a diamond.*
vās,	vāsis,	*a vessel.*
fās	(indecl.),	*permitted by heaven.*
nĕfās	(indecl.),	*not permitted by heaven.*

3. In is.

Many Nouns which end in **is**
Are Mascŭlīni gĕnĕris:
Pānis, piscis, crīnis, fīnis, Ignis, lăpis, pulvis, cĭnis, Orbis, amnis, and *cănālis, Sanguis, unguis, glis, annālis,*

Fascis, axis, fūnis, ensis, Fustis, vectis, vōmis, mensis, Vermis, torris, cŭcŭmis, Postis, follis, mūgĭlis, Cassis, caulis, callis, collis, Sentis, torquis, pēnis, pollis.

pānis,	is,	*bread.*
piscis,	is,	*a fish.*
crīnis,	is,	*hair.*
fīnis,	is,	*an end.*
ignis,	is,	*fire.*
lăpis,	ĭdis,	*a stone*
pulvis,	ĕris,	*dust.*
cĭnis,	ĕris,	*ashes.*
orbis,	is,	*a circle.*
amnis,	is,	*a river.*
cănālis,	is,	*a conduit.*
sanguis,	ĭnis,	*blood.*
unguis,	is,	*a finger- or toe-nail.*
glīs,	ĭris,	*a dormouse.*
annālis (usu. plur.),		*a year-book.*
fascis,	is,	*a bundle.*
axis,	is,	*an axle.*
fūnis,	is,	*a rope.*
ensis,	is,	*a sword.*
fustis,	is,	*a cudgel.*
vectis,	is,	*a lever.*
vōmis,	(more freq. vōmer) ris,	*a ploughshare.*
mensis,	is,	*a month.*
vermis,	is,	*a worm.*
torris,	is,	*a firebrand.*
cŭcŭmis,	is, and ĕris,	*a cucumber.*
postis,	is,	*a doorpost.*
follis,	is,	*a pair of bellows.*
mūgĭlis (usu. mūgil),		*a mullet.*
cassis (plur. ium),		*a net.*
caulis,	is,	*a stalk.*
callis,	is,	*a path.*
collis,	is,	*a hill.*
sentis,	is,	*a bramble.*
torquis (also es),	is,	*a chain for the neck.*
pēnis,	is,	*a tail.*
pollis,	ĭnis,	*fine flour, meal.*

4. In **s** preceded by a consonant:

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*, *Hydrops*, *torrens*, *gryps*, & *mons*, | *Adeps*, *rŭdens*, *ŏriens*, *Dens* and *trĭdens*, *occĭdens*.

pons,	tis,	*a bridge.*	ădeps,	ĭpis,	*fat.*
fons,	tis,	*a fountain.*	rŭdens,	entis,	*a cable.*
hydrops,	ōpis	*dropsy.*	ŏriens,	tis,	*the east.*
torrens,	tis,	*a torrent*	dens,	tis,	*a tooth.*
gryps,	grўphis,	*a griffin.*	trĭdens,	tis,	*a trident*
mons,	tis,	*a mountain.*	occĭdens,	tis,	*the west.*

5. In **ēs.**

Masculines which end in ēs Are *verrēs* and *ăcĭnăcēs*. | verrēs, is, *a boar-pig.* ăcinăcēs, is, *a scimitar.*

§ 146. *Third Principal Rule (Neuter)*

A, e, and c,
L, n, and t,
Ar, ur, and us,

are *Neuter*.—Examples: Poēmă, ătis, *a poem;* mărĕ, is, *the sea;* lac, lactis, *milk;* ănĭmăl, ālis, *an animal;* nōmĕn, ĭnis, *a name;* căpŭt, căpĭtis, *a head;* fulgŭr, ŭris, *lightning;* corpŭs, ŏris, *a body.*

Exceptions.

1. In **l.**

Masculines in l are *mūgĭl*, *Sōl* and *consŭl*, *săl* and *pŭgĭl*. | mūgil, lis, *a mullet.* sōl, sōlis, *the sun.* consŭl, lis, *a consul.* | săl, sālis, *salt.* pŭgil, lis, *a boxer.*

2. In **n.**

Masculines in n are *rēn*, *splēn*, *Pectĕn*, *lĭēn*, *attăgēn*. | rēn, rēnis (usu. in pl.), *the kidney.* splēn, ēnis, *the spleen.* pectĕn, ĭnis, *a comb.* lĭēn, ēnis, *the spleen.* attăgen, ēnis, *a heathcock.*

3. In **ur.**

Masculines in ur are *furfur*, *Astur*, *vultur*, *fūr*, and *turtur*. | furfur, ŭris, *bran.* astur, ŭris, *a hawk.* vultur, ŭris, *a vulture.* | fūr, ŭris, *a thief.* turtur, ŭris, *a turtle-dove.*

4. In **us.**

The Masculines which end in us Are *lĕpus* (*lĕpŏris*) and *mūs*. | lĕpus, ŏris, *a hare.* mūs, mūris, *a mouse.*

5. In **us**.

The Feminines which end in **us**	*Sĕnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sălūs,*
Are *Jŭventūs, virtūs, servĭtūs,*	Add *pĕcūs* (*pĕcŭdis*) and *pălūs.*

jŭventūs,	ūtis,	*youth.*	incūs,	ūdis,	*an anvil.*
virtūs,	ūtis,	*virtue.*	sălūs,	ūtis,	*safety.*
servĭtūs,	ūtis,	*slavery.*	pĕcūs,	ŭdis,	*cattle.*
sĕnectūs,	ūtis,	*old-age.*	pălūs,	ūdis,	*a marsh.*
tellūs,	ūris,	*the earth.*			

§ 147. IV. Fourth Declension.

Principal Rule.

Us is Masculine
U is Neuter.

Exceptions.

Feminines which end in **us**:	*Dŏmus, nŭrus, socrus, ănus,*
Trĭbus, ăcus, porticus,	*Idūs* (*idŭum*) and *mănus.*

trĭbus,	*a tribe* (a division of the Roman people).	socrus,	*a mother-in-law.*
ăcus,	*a needle.*	ănus,	*an old-woman.*
porticus	*a portico.*	idūs (*pl.*),	*the Ides* (a division of the Roman month).
dŏmus,	*a house.*	mănŭs,	*a hand.*
nŭrus,	*a daughter-in-law.*		

§ 148. Fifth Declension.

Rule.

All are Feminine except *dies* (*mĕrĭdies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

48108

APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXIX.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in āvi, ātum: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

Perfect—ui. *Supine*—tum.

NOTE. Some of these verbs have likewise Perfects and Supines in ĕvi, ātum.

1.	Crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
2.	Cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie.*
3.	Dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
4.	Sŏno,	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
5.	Vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
6.	Tŏno,	tŏnui,	—	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
7.	Mĭco,	mĭcŭi,	—	mĭcāre,	*to glitter.*
8.	Plĭco,	plĭcui, / plĭcāvi,	plĭcĭtum, / plĭcātum,	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
9.	Frĭco,	frĭcui,	frĭcātum, / frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
10.	Sĕco,	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
11.	Nĕco (regular). / Enĕco,	ēnĕcui, / ēnĕcāvi,	ēnectum, / ēnĕcātum,	ēnĕcāre,	*to kill.*

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

Obs. Only those compound verbs are inserted which differ from the simple verbs.

1. Discrĕpo,	discrĕpui, / discrĕpāvi,	discrĕpĭtum, / discrĕpātum,	discrĕpāre,	*to differ.*
Increpo,	increpui, / increpāvi,	increpĭtum, / increpātum.	increpāre,	*to chide.*

But the forms in *āvi* and *ātum* are rare.

2. *Cŭbo.* Some of the compounds are of the Third Conjugation:

accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbĭtum, accumbĕre, *to recline at table.*

In like manner incumbo, *lie* or *lean upon*; prōcumbo, *lie down*; succumbo, *lie* or *fall under*; occumbo (supply mortem), *die*, &c.

4. *Sŏno.* *Future Part.* sŏnātūrus.

7. ēmĭco,	ēmĭcŭi,	ēmĭcātum,	ēmĭcāre,	*to spring out.*
dīmĭco,	dīmĭcāvi,	dīmĭcātum,	dīmĭcāre,	*to fight.*

8. *Plĭco* is used only in composition:

explĭco,	explĭcui, explĭcāvi,	explĭcĭtum, explĭcātum,	explĭcāre,	*to unfold.*
implĭco,	implĭcui, implĭcāvi,	implĭcĭtum, implĭcātum,	implĭcāre,	*to fold in, entangle.*

10. *Sĕco.* *Future Part.* sĕcātūrus.

2. *Perfect*—**i** (vi)—**tum.**

1.	Jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
2.	Lăvo,	lāvi,	lăvātum, lautum, lōtum,	lăvāre,	*to wash.*

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Jŭvo.* *Future Part.* jūvātūrus.

2. *Lăvo.* There is also an infinitive lăvĕre of the Third Conjugation. In composition lŭo, of the Third Conjugation, is used: as,

abluo, ablui, ablūtum, abluĕre, *to wash away.*

3. *Perfect with Reduplication. Supine*—**tum.**

1.	Do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dăre,	*to give.*
2.	Sto,	stĕti,	stătum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Do.* In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same: as,

circumdo, circumdĕdi, circumdătum, circumdăre, *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation: as,

addo, addĭdi, addĭtum, addĕre, *to put to, to add.*

See § 159, No. 18.

2. *Sto.* In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same: as,

circumsto, circumstĕti, circumstāre, *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stĭti:*

adsto, adstĭti, adstāre, *to stand near.*

II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in **ŭi** and **ĭtum**: as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise.* The following are exceptions:

1. *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum.**

1.	Dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
2.	Tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
3.	Misceo,	miscui,	mixtum, mistum,	miscēre,	*to mix.*

4.	Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
5.	Sorbeo,	sorbui, sorpsi,	—	sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
6.	Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

COMPOUND VERBS.

2.	Rĕtĭneo,	rĕtĭnui,	rĕtentum,	rĕtĭnēre,	*to hold back.*

So also the other compounds of teneo.

6.	Rĕcenseo,	rĕcensui,	rĕcensĭtum, rĕcensum,	rĕcensēre,	*to review.*

§ 151.—2. *Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

1.	Dēleo.	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy.*
2.	Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
3.	Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
4.	Pleo only in composition. Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*
	Oleo only in composition.				
5.	Abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*
	Adŏleo, (Adolesco,)	ădŏlēvi,	adultum,	—	*to grow up.*
	Exŏleo (Exolesco,)	exŏlēvi,	exŏlētum,	—	*to grow old.*
	Obsŏleo, (Obsolesco,)	obsolēvi,	obsŏlētum,	—	*to grow out of use.*

To this class may be added:

6.	Cieo,	cīvi,	cĭtum,	cīēre,	*to stir.*

c. Cieo in composition is either the same, or a verb of the Fourth Conjugation:

	concieo,	concīvi,	concītum,	concīēre,	*to rouse thoroughly.*
	concio,	concīvi,	concītum,	concīre,	

But accio, accīvi, accītum, accīre, *to summon*, is of the Fourth Conjugation only. Excio has both excītus and excĭtus.

§ 152.—3. *Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

1.	Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
2.	Sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
3.	Vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
4	Strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdēre,	*to creak.*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
6.	Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
7.	Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
8.	Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Prandeo.* The Participle pransus has an active meaning: *one who has breakfasted.* § 119, *Obs.*

2. *Sĕdeo* in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same: circumsĕdeo, circumsēdi, circumsessum, circumsĕdēre, *to sit around.*

But with prepositions of one syllable the first *e* of the stem becomes *i* in the imperfect tenses: as,

assĭdeo, assēdi, assessum, assĭdēre, *to sit by.*

5, 6, 7, 8. In composition the reduplication is dropped: as,

admordeo,	admordi,	admorsum,	admordēre,	*to bite at.*
prŏpendeo,	prŏpendi,	(prŏpensum),	prŏpendēre,	*to hang down.*
respondeo,	respondi,	responsum,	respondēre,	*to answer.*
attondeo,	attondi,	attonsum,	attondēre,	*to shear closely.*

§ 153.—4. *Perfect*—**i** (vi). *Supine*—**tum.**

1.	Căveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard one's self.*
2.	Făveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favour.*
3.	Fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish*
4.	Mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre	*to move.*
5.	Vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

Without Supine.

6.	Păveo,	pāvi,	—	păvēre,	*to fear.*
7.	Ferveo,	fervi, / ferbui,	—	fervēre,	*to boil.*
8.	Connīveo,	connīvi, / connixi,	—	connīvēre,	*to wink.*

Of all verbs ending in *-veo* the Perfects are formed by lengthening vowels of the Stems.

§ 154.—5. *Perfect*—**si.** Supine—**tum** and **sum.**

1.	Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	*to increase.*
2.	Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	*to indulge.*
3.	Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	*to twist.*
4.	Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	*to blaze.*
5.	Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	*to stick.*
6.	Jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	*to order.*
7.	Măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	*to remain.*
8.	Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	*to stroke.*
9.	Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	*to milk.*
10.	Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
11.	Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	*to advise.*
12.	Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	*to wipe.*
13.	Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	*to be cold.*
14.	Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
15.	Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	*to shine.*
16.	Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	*to be light.*
17.	Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	*to grieve.*
18.	Turgeo,	(tursi),		turgēre,	*to swell.*
19.	Urgeo,	ursi,		urgēre,	*to press.*

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents* or *Neuter-Passives.*

1.	Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	*to dare.*
2.	Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	—	gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
3.	Sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	—	sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

§ 156. *Obs.* 1. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines:

1.	Arceo,	arcui,	arcēre,	*to keep off.*
2.	Calleo,	callui,	callēre,	*to be skilful.*
3.	Ĕgeo,	ĕgui,	ĕgēre,	*to want.*
4.	Flŏreo,	flōrui,	flōrēre,	*to flourish.*
5.	Horreo,	horrui,	horrēre,	*to shudder.*
6.	Lăteo,	lătui,	lătēre,	*to lie hid.*
7.	Nĭteo,	nĭtui,	nĭtēre,	*to shine.*
8.	Ŏleo,	ŏlui,	ŏlēre,	*to smell.*
9.	Păteo,	pătui,	pătēre,	*to lie open.*
10.	Rĭgeo,	rĭgui,	rĭgēre,	*to be stiff.*
11.	Sĭleo,	sĭlui,	sĭlēre,	*to be silent.*
12.	Stŭdeo,	stŭdui,	stŭdēre,	*to pay attention to.*
13.	Tĭmeo,	tĭmui,	tĭmēre,	*to fear.*
14.	Vĭgeo,	vĭgui,	vĭgēre,	*to thrive.*
15.	Vĭreo,	vĭrui,	vĭrēre,	*to be green.*

Arceo has the compounds coerceo, *to restrain*, and exerceo, *to exercise*, with Supines coercĭtum and exercĭtum.

Obs. 2. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have neither Perfect Tenses nor Supines:

1.	Ăveo,	ăvēre,	*to desire.*
2.	Calveo,	calvēre,	*to be bald.*
3.	Căneo,	cānēre,	*to be grey.*
4.	Flăveo,	flāvēre,	*to be yellow.*
5.	Foeteo,	foetēre,	*to stink.*
6.	Hĕbeo,	hĕbēre,	*to be blunt.*
7.	Hūmeo,	hūmēre,	*to be damp.*
8.	Lĭveo,	lĭvēre,	*to be livid.*
9.	Maereo,	maerēre,	*to mourn.*
10.	Polleo,	pollēre,	*to be powerful.*
11.	Rĕnĭdeo,	rĕnĭdēre,	*to shine.*
12.	Scăteo,	scătēre,	*to gush forth.*
13.	Squăleo,	squālēre,	*to be dirty.*

III. The Third Conjugation.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* B, P.

(*a.*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

Note.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1	Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	*to pluck.*
2.	Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	*to peel.*
3.	Nubo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	*to marry.*
4.	Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpĕre,	*to creep.*
5.	Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	*to scratch.*
6.	Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	*to write.*
7.	Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	*to crawl.*

(*b.*) *Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum** or **ĭtum**.

8.	Răp-io,	răpui,	raptum,	răpĕre,	*to seize.*
9.	{Cumbo, Incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	*to lie upon.*
10.	Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	*to make a noise.*

(*c.*) *Perfect*—**i**. *Supine*—**tum**, or wanting.

11.	Căp-io,	cēpi,	captum,	căpĕre,	*to take.*
12.	Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	*to burst.*
13.	Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	—	bĭbĕre,	*to drink.*
14.	Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambĕre,	*to lick.*
15.	Scăbo,	scābi,	—	scăbĕre,	*to scratch.*

(*d.*) *Perfect*—**ĭvi**. *Supine*—**ĭtum**, or wanting.

16.	Căp-io,	căpīvi,	căpītum,	căpĕre,	*to desire.*
17.	Săp-io,	{săpīvi, *or* săpii,	—	săpĕre,	*to taste.*

Remarks and Compound Verbs.

1. Dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum, dēcerpĕre, *to pluck off.*
8. Arrĭpio, arrīpui, arreptum, arrīpĕre, *to snatch.*
9. *Cumbo* occurs only in compounds. The simple Verb is *cŭbo* of the First Conjugation. See § 149.
11. Accĭpio, rĕcĭpio, etc. (see § 206, 1).
17. Dēsĭpio, — — dēsĭpĕre, *to be foolish.*

§ 158.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals* C, G, H, Q, X.

(*a.*) *Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Note.—*Cs*, *hs*, and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

1.	Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	*to say.*
2.	Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	*to lead.*
3.	Cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	*to cook.*
4.	Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	*to surround.*
5.	{(Flīgo, not used.) Afflīgo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre	*to strike.* *to strike to the ground.*
6.	Frīgo,	frixi,	frictum, frixum,	frīgĕre,	*to parch, to fry.*
7	Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	*to join.*
8.	Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	*to lick.*
9.	{(Mungo, not used.) Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	*to blow the nose.*
10.	Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	*to beat.*
11.	Rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	*to direct, rule.*
12.	{(Spĕcio, very seldom used.) Aspĭc-io,	aspexi,	aspectum,	aspĭcĕre,	*to behold.*
13.	Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕre,	*to suck.*
14.	Tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	*to cover.*
15.	{Tingo, Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{tingĕre, tinguĕre,	*to dip.*

16.	{Ungo, Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	{ungĕre, ungŭĕre,	*to anoint.*
17.	{(Stinguo, not used.) Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
18.	Trăho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
19.	Vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	*to carry.*
20.	{(Lăc-io, very seldom used.) Allĭc-io,	allexi,	allectum,	allĭcĕre,	*to entice.*
21.	Ango,	anxi,	—	angĕre,	*to vex.*
22.	Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningĕre,	*to snow.*
23.	Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to form, to invent.*
24.	Mingo,	minxi,	minctum,	mingĕre,	*to make water.*
25.	Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
26.	Stringo,	strinxi	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(*b.*) *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**sum** and **xum.**

27.	Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
28.	Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
29.	Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
30.	Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
31.	Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
32.	Necto,	nexi (*and*-ui),	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
33.	Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
34.	Plecto,	plexi (*and*-ui),	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(*c.*) *Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*) *Supine*—**sum** *and* **tum.**

35.	Pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
36.	Parco,	{pĕperci, parsi,	{parcĭtum, parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
37.	Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
38.	Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
39.	Disco,	dĭdĭci,	—	discĕre,	*to learn.*
40.	Posco,	pŏposci,	—	poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(*d.*) *Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened*).

41.	Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
42.	Făc-io,	fēci,	factum,	făcĕre,	*to make, to do.*
43.	Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
44.	Fŭg-io,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	fŭgĕre,	*to flee, to fly.*
45.	Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike* (a treaty).
46.	Jăc-io,	jēci,	jactum,	jăcĕre,	*to throw.*
47.	Lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to read.*
48.	Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum,)	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
49.	Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(*e.*) *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum.**

50.	Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(*f.*) *Guttural Stem disguised.*

51.	Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
52.	Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
53.	Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

Remarks and Compound Verbs.

11. *Obs. Rĕgo* in composition becomes *rĭgo*, as,

Arrĭgo,	arrexi,	arrectum,	arrigĕre,	*to raise.*

So also corrĭgo, ērĭgo, &c. *Pergo* (a contraction of per and rego) and *surgo* (a contraction of sub and rego) make

Pergo,	perrexi,	perrectum,	pergĕre,	*to go straight on.*
Surgo,	surrexi,	surrectum,	surgĕre,	*to rise up.*

12. The other compounds of specio, as conspĭcio, despĭcio, etc., are conjugated like aspĭcio.

23—26. In *fingo, pingo, stringo* the *n* is a strengthening letter, and the Stem appears in the Supine.

28. Conspergo, conspersi, cōnspersum, conspergĕre, *to sprinkle.*

31—34. In *flecto, necto, pecto, plecto,* the *t* is a strengthening letter and not a part of the Stem.

35. Compingo, compēgi, compactum, compingĕre, *to fix together.*

36. { Comparco, comparsi, comparsum, comparcĕre, *to save.*
(Comperco,)

37. Compungo, compunxi, compunctum, compungĕre, *to prick.*

38. Attingo, attĭgi, attactum, attingĕre, *to touch,* and the like.

41. *Ago* in composition changes the *a* into *i* in *ăbĭgo, ădĭgo, exĭgo, sŭbĭgo, transĭgo:*

Ăbĭgo,	ăbēgi,	ăbactum,	ăbĭgĕre,	*to drive away.*

It preserves the *a* in *perăgo, circumăgo.* In *cōgo* (a contraction of con and ăgo) we have—

Cōgo,	cōēgi,	cōactum,	cōgĕre,	*to drive together, to force.*

42. Făcio in compos. with other verbs and with adverbs remains unaltered:

Călĕfăcio,	călĕfēci,	călĕfactum,	călĕfăcĕre, *to make warm.*
Sătisfăcio,	sătisfēci,	sătisfactum,	satisfăcĕre, *to give satisfaction.*

But in compos. with prepositions we have—

Perfĭcio,	perfēci,	perfectum,	perfĭcĕre, *to complete,* and the like: v. § 206, 1.

Also, mellĭfĭco, *I make honey;* and nĭdĭfĭco, *I build a nest,* are of the First Conjugation (v. § 205, *Obs.*).

43. Perfringo, perfrēgi, perfractum, perfringĕre, *to break through.*

46. Abjĭcio, conjĭcio, dējĭcio, etc.: v. § 206, 1.

47. *Lĕgo* preserves the *e* in *allĕgo, perlĕgo, praelĕgo, rĕlego:* as,

Allĕgo,	allēgi,	allectum,	allĕgĕre,	*to choose in addition*

It changes the *e* into *i* in *colligo, dēligo, ēligo, sēligo:* as,

Colligo,	collēgi,	collectum,	colligĕre,	*to collect.*

The Present-Perfect is different in

Dĭligo,	dĭlexi,	dĭlectum,	dĭligĕre,	*to love.*
Intellĭgo,	intellexi,	intellectum,	intellĭgĕre,	*to understand.*
Neglĭgo,	neglexi,	neglectum,	neglĭgĕre,	*to neglect.*

51—53. In *fluo* and *struo* the root is *fluo* and *struc,* the *c* being dropped in the Imperfect Tenses. In *vivo* the second *v* represents a guttural.

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(*a.*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

NOTE—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

1.	Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	*to shut.*
2.	Dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvīdĕre,	*to divide.*
3.	Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	*to strike, to injure.*
4.	Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	*to play.*
5.	Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre,	*to clap the hands.*
6.	Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	*to scrape.*
7.	Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	*to gnaw.*
8.	Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	*to thrust.*
9.	{Vādo, / Invādo,	— / invāsi,	— / invāsum,	vādĕre, / invādĕre,	*to go.* / *to go against.*
10.	Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdĕre,	*to yield.*
11.	Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	*to send.*
12.	Quăt-io,	—	quassum,	quătĕre,	*to shake.*

(*b.*) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13.	Cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cădĕre,	*to fall.*
14.	Caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caedĕre,	*to strike.*
15.	Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh.*
16.	Tendo,	tĕtendi,	{tensum, / tentum,	tendĕre,	*to stretch.*
17.	Tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	{tunsum, / tūsum,	tundĕre,	*to beat.*
18	Do in composition.				*to put.*
	Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	*to put away, to hide.*
	Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	*to put to, to add.*
	Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	condĕre	*to put together, to build, hide.*
	Dēdo	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēdĕre,	*to put down, to surrender.*
	Ēdo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēdĕre,	*to put forth, to publish.*
	Indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	*to put on.*
	Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	*to ruin, to lose.*
	Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	*to betray.*
	Reddo	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	reddĕre,	*to put back, to restore.*
	Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	*to put under, to substitute.*
	Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	*to put across, to deliver up.*
	Crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēdĕre,	*to believe, trust.*
	Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	*to sell.*
19.	Sisto,	stĭti,	stātum,	sistĕre,	*to cause to stand.*

(*c.*) *Perfect*—i. *Supine*—sum.

20.	{(Cando) / Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	*to set on fire.*
21.	Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdĕre,	*to hammer.*
22.	Ĕdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ĕdĕre,	*to eat.*

23.	(Fendo not used,				*to strike.*)
	Dēfendo,	dēfendī,	dēfensum,	dēfendĕre,	*to ward off, to defend.*
	Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	*to strike against, to assault.*
24.	Fŏdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fŏdĕre,	*to dig.*
25.	Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	*to pour.*
26.	Mando,	mandi, (rare,)	mansum,	mandĕre,	*to chew.*
27.	Pando,	pandi,	pansum, / passum,	pandĕre,	*to spread.*
28.	Prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	*to grasp.*
29.	Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	*to climb.*
30.	Strīdo, / Strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdĕre,	*to creak.*
31.	Vĕrto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	*to turn.*
32.	Findo,	fīdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	*to cleave.*
33.	Scindo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	*to tear.*
34.	Frendo, / Frendeo,	— / —	frcssum, / frēsum,	frendĕre,	*to gnash the teeth.*

(*d.*) *Other Forms.*

35.	Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	*to mow.*
36.	Pĕto,	pĕtīvi *or* pĕtii,	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	*to seek.*
37.	Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	—	sīdĕre,	*to settle down.*
38.	Sterto,	stertui,	—	stertĕre,	*to snore.*
39.	Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdĕre,	*to trust.*

Remarks and Compound Verbs.

1. The compounds of claudo change *au* into *ū;* as conclūdo, occlūdo, etc.
2. The compounds of laedo change *ae* into *ī;* as, allīdo, collīdo, etc.: v. § 206, 3.
6. *Plaudo* in compos. *Applaudo* is the same, but the others are like
   Explōdo, explōsi, explōsum, explōdĕre, *to hiss off.*
12. The compounds of quătio change quă into cŭ; as,
   Concŭtio, concussi, concussum, concŭtĕre, *to shake together.*
13. Occīdo, occīdi, occāsum, occīdĕre, *to fall down, to set,* and the like.
14. The compounds of caedo change ae into ī, and drop the reduplication; as
   Occīdo, occīdi, occīsum, occīdĕre, *to slay.*
15. No reduplication in the compounds.
16. *Tendo* in compos. generally has only *tentum*; but a few Compounds have both *tensum* and *tentum:* as,
   Extendo, extendi, extensum, / extentum, extendĕre, *to stretch out.*
17. No reduplication in the compounds.
19. The compounds take stĭtum for stătum; as,
   Subsisto, substĭti, substĭtum, subsistĕre, *to halt.*
29. Ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, ascendĕre, *to climb up.*

§ 160.— *Verbs the Stems of which end in* L, M, N.

(*a.*) *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—ĭtum or tum.

		ălui,	ălĭtum or altum,	ălĕre,	*to nourish.*
2.	Cŏlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	*to till.*
3.	Consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	*to consult.*
4.	Mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	*to grind.*
5.	Occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	*to conceal.*
6.	Vŏlo,	vŏlui,	—	velle,	*to wish.*
7.	Frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕre,	*to roar.*
8.	Gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	*to groan.*
9.	Trĕmo,	trĕmui,	—	trĕmĕre,	*to tremble.*
10.	Vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	*to vomit.*
11.	Gigno,	gĕnui,	gignĕre,	gĕnĭtum,	*to produce.*

(*b.*) *Perfect with Reduplication.*

12.	Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	*to deceive.*
13.	Pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	*to drive.*
14.	Căno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	*to sing.*

(*c.*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

15.	Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	*to adorn.*
16.	Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	*to take away.*
17.	Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	*to take out.*
18.	Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	*to take up.*
19.	Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	*to despise.*

(*d.*) *Other forms.*

20.	Percello	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	*to strike down.*
21.	Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	*to play on a stringed instrument.*
22.	Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	*to pluck.*
23.	Tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	*to raise up.*
24.	Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	*to buy or take*
25.	Prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	*to press.*
26.	Lĭno,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	*to smear.*
27.	Sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	*to permit.*

COMPOUND VERBS.

12.	Rĕfello,	rĕfelli,	—	rĕfellĕre,	*to refute.*
13.	Expello,	expŭli,	expulsum,	expellĕre,	*to drive out.*
14.	Occĭno,	occĭnui,	occentum,	occĭnĕre,	*to sing against.*

15—19. *Cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo* are compounds of *con, dē, prō, sŭb,* and *ĕmo.*

§ 161.— *Verbs the Stems of which end in* R.

1.	Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	*to sift, to divide.*
2.	Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	*to despise.*
3.	Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	*to strew.*

4.	Gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	*to carry.*
5.	Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	*to burn.*
6.	Curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	*to run.*
7.	Fĕro,	tŭli,	lātum,	ferre,	*to bear, carry.*
8.	Părio,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	părĕre,	*to produce.*
9.	Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	*to seek.*
10.	Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	*to put in rows, to plait.*
11.	Sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	*to sow.*
12.	Tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	*to rub.*
13.	Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	*to sweep.*

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS

1—3. In *cerno, sperno, sterno,* the Stems are *cer, sper, ster,* the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, *Obs.* 2.

6. *Curro* in compos. sometimes retains but generally drops the reduplication: as, accurro, accurri, rarely accŭcurri.

8. *Părio. Fut. Part.* părĭtūrus.

9. *Quaero* has the Stem ending in *s* as well as *r*. Hence we find not only quaesīvi, quaesītum, but also quaeso, quaesumus, *I pray, we pray.* See § 124. Quaero in compos. becomes quīro: as,

Conquīro, conquīsīvi, conquīsītum, conquīrĕre, *to collect.*

162.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* S, X.

1.	Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	*to knead.*
2.	Pinso,	{pinsui, pinsi,	{pinsĭtum, pinsum,	pinsĕre,	*to pound.*
3.	Pīso,	—	pistum,	pīsĕre,	*to pound.*
4.	Vīso,	vīsi,	—	vīsĕre,	*to visit.*
5.	Pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	*to place.*
6.	Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	*to send for.*
7.	Căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	*to take in hand.*
8.	Făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessītum,	făcessĕre,	*to make, to cause.*
9.	Lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	*to provoke.*

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

5. In *pōno* the root is *pŏs*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, *Obs.* 2.

6—9. *Arcesso, căpesso, făcesso, lăcesso* are formed respectively from *arcio* (an old verb, the root of which is seen in *cieo*), *căpio, făcio, lăcio.* There was also an old verb pĕtesso, *to seek*, from pĕto.

Arcesso sometimes has an Infin. Pass. *arcessīri.*

§ 163.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* U, V.

Perfect—i *Supine*—tum.

1.	Acuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	*to sharpen.*
2.	Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	*to prove.*
3.	Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	*to soak.*
4.	Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	*to put on.*
5.	Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	*to put off.*

6.	Mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	*to lessen.*
7.	Rŭo,	rui,	rūtum,	ruĕre,	*to rush.*
8.	Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	*to spit.*
9.	Stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	*to set up.*
10.	Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	*to sew.*
11.	Trĭbuo,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	*to distribute.*
12.	Lăvo,	lāvi,	{lautum, lōtum,	lăvĕre,	*to wash.*
13.	Solvo,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,	solvĕre,	*to loosen.*
14.	Volvo,	volvi,	vŏlūtum,	volvĕre,	*to roll.*
15.	Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruĕre,	*to agree.*
16.	Luo,	lui,	—	luĕre,	*to atone.*
17.	{(Nuo, Abnuo, Annuo,	abnui, annui,	— —	abnuĕre, annuĕre,	*to nod.) to refuse. to assent.*
18.	Mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	—	mĕtuĕre,	*to fear.*
19.	Pluit,	pluit or plūvit,	—	pluĕre,	*to rain.*
20.	Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuĕre,	*to sneeze.*

Obs. In *fluo, struo, vivo,* the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158.

REMARKS.

7. *Ruo. Fut. Part.* ruitūrus.
12. *Lavo* is also of the First Conjugation. See § 149, 2.
16. *Luo. Fut. Part.* luitūrus.

§ 164.—*Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* SCO.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines :- as, incălesco, incălui, incălescĕre, *to grow warm*, from căleo, călui, călēre, *to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines :—

1.	Abŏlesco,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlescĕre,	*to grow out of use.*
2.	Adŏlesco,	ădŏlēvi,	ădultum,	ădŏlescĕre,	*to grow up.*
3.	Exŏlesco,	exŏlēvi,	exŏlĭtum,	exŏlescĕre,	*to grow old.*
4.	Cŏălesco, (ălo)	cŏălui,	cŏălĭtum,	cŏălescĕre,	*to grow together.*
5.	Concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	*to desire.*
6.	Convălesco, (văleo)	convălui,	convălĭtum,	convălescĕre,	*to grow strong.*
7.	Exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	*to take fire.*
8.	Invĕtĕrasco, (invĕtĕro)	invĕtĕrāvi,	invĕtĕrātum,	invĕtĕrascĕre,	*to grow old.*
9.	Obdormisco, (dormio)	obdormīvi,	obdormītum,	obdormiscĕre,	*to fall asleep.*

10.	Rĕvīvisco, (vīvo)	rĕvixi,	rĕvictum,	rĕvīviscĕre,	*to come to life again.*
11.	Scisco, (scio)	scīvi,	scītum,	sciscĕre,	*to seek to know, to enact.*

Obs. Ăbŏlesco, ădŏlesco, exŏlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ŏleo, *to grow.*

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

1.	Consĕnesco, (sĕnex)	consĕnui,	—	consĕnescĕre,	*to grow old.*
2.	Ingrăvesco, (grăvis)	—		ingrăvescĕre,	*to grow heavy.*
3.	Jŭvenesco, (jŭvĕnis)	—	—	jŭvenescĕre,	*to grow young.*
4.	Mātūresco, (mātūrus)	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescĕre,	*to grow ripe.*
5.	Obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,	—	obmūtescĕre,	*to grow dumb.*

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:

1.	Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescĕre,	*to grow.*
2.	Glisco,	—	—	gliscĕre,	*to swell.*
3.	Hisco, (hio),	—	—	hiscĕre,	*to gape.*
4.	Nosco,	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscĕre,	*to learn, to know.*
5.	Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascĕre,	*to feed.*
6.	Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescĕre,	*to become quiet.*
7.	Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescĕre,	*to grow accustomed.*

REMARKS.

4. *Nosco.* The Perfect signifies *I know;* the Past-Perfect, *I knew.* The Stem is *gno:* in compos. we have

Agnosco,	agnōvi,	agnĭtum,	agnoscĕre,	*to recognise.*
Cognosco,	cognōvi,	cognĭtum,	cognoscĕre,	*to learn, to know.*

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in īvi, the Supine in ītum: as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear.* The following are exceptions:

1.	Farcio,	farsi,	{fartum, (farctum,)	farcīre,	*to cram.*
2.	Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	*to prop.*

3.	Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	*to draw* (water).
4.	Sancio,	sanxi,	{sancītum, sanctum,	sancīre,	*to ratify.*
5	Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	*to patch.*
6.	Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	*to feel, to think.*
7.	Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	*to fence in.*
8.	Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincīre,	*to bind.*
9.	Eo,	īvi,	ĭtum,	īre,	*to go.*
10.	Sălio,	sălui *or* sălii,	saltu	săl.	*to leap.*
11.	Sĕpĕlio,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	sĕpĕlīre,	*to bury.*
12.	Vĕnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vĕnīre,	*to come.*
13.	Amĭcio,	{ămĭcui, amixi,	ămictum,	ămĭcīre,	*to clothe.*
14.	Apĕrio,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	ăpĕrīre,	*to open.*
15.	Opĕrio.	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	ŏpĕrīre,	*to cover.*

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Farcio takes *e* in the compounds: as, confercio, rĕfercio, etc.: v. § 206, 1.

10. Dēsĭlio, dēsĭlui, dēsultum, dēsĭlīre, *to leap down.*

V. DEPONENTS.

§ 169. *First Conjugation* (all regular).

NOTE.—The words to which an asterisk is prefixed occur also in the active form.

*Admĭnĭcŭlor, *to aid.*
Abōmĭnor, *to express abhorrence.*
Adversor, *to oppose myself.*
*Adūlor, *to flatter.*
Aemūlor, *to rival.*
*Altercor, *to quarrel.*
Ālūcĭnor (also alluc. and halluc.), *to dote, talk idly.*
Amplexor, *to embrace.*
Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*
Aprīcor, *to sun oneself.*
Aquor, *to fetch water.*
Arbitror, *to think.*
Architector, *to build* (architectus).
Argūmentor, *to argue.*
Argūtor, *to chatter* (*to be* argutus).
Aspernor, *to despise.*
Assentor, *to agree, flatter.*
Astĭpūlor, *to agree.*
Auctiōnor, *to sell at auction.*
Aucūpor, *to catch birds* (*to be* auceps.)
Augŭror (augur),
*Auspĭcor (auspex),
Hărĭŏlor (hariolus),
Vaticĭnor (vates),
} *to practise soothsaying.*
Auxĭlior, *to aid.*
Āversor, *to dislike, avoid with horror.*
Bacchor, *to revel as a Bacchanal.*
Călumnior, *to cavil.*
Cāvillor, *to banter.*
Caupōnor, *to deal in retail.*
Causor, *to allege.*
Circŭlor, *to form a circle around one.*
Cōmissor, *to revel.*
*Cōmĭtor, *to accompany* (active only in the poets).
Commentor, *to reflect upon, dispute.*
Contiōnor, *to harangue.*
*Conflictor, *to contend.*
Cōnor, *to attempt.*
Consĭlior, *to advise.*
Conspĭcor, *to get sight of.*
Contemplor, *to contemplate.*
Convĭcior, *to revile.*
Convīvor, *to feast* (conviva).
Cornĭcor, *to chatter as a crow.*
Crīmĭnor, *to accuse.*
Cunctor, *to delay.*

Dēpĕcŭlor, *to plunder.*
Despĭcor, *to despise;* but despĭcātus is passive, *despised.*
Dēversor, *to lodge.*
Diglădior, *to fight.*
Dignor, *to think worthy* (Cicero sometimes uses it as a passive, *to be thought worthy*).
Dēdignor, *to disdain.*
Dŏmĭnor, *to rule* (dominŭs).
*Ēlūcubror, *to produce by dint of labour.*
Ĕpŭlor, *to feast.*
Exsecror, *to execrate.*
*Fabrĭcor, *to fashion.*
Fābŭlor, confābŭlor, *to talk*
Fămŭlor, *to serve* (famulus).
*Fēnĕror, *to lend at interest,* (the active, "*to restore with interest,*" occurs in Terence; in later writers the active has the same sense as the deponent).
Fērior, *to keep holiday.*
Frūmentor, *to collect corn.*
Frustror, *to disappoint.*
Fūror, suffūror, *to steal.*
Glōrior, *to boast.*
Graecor, *to live in the Greek style,* i.e., *luxuriously.*
Grassor, *to advance, attack*
Grātŭlĭcor, *to comply with.*
Grātor and grātŭlor, *to give thanks, to present gratulations.*
Grăvor, *to think burdensome; to grudge.*
Helluor, *to gluttonise.*
Hortor, *to exhort;* adhortor, exhortor, dēhortor (*to dissuade*).
Hospĭtor, *to be a guest; lodge.*
Ĭmāgĭnor, *to imagine.*
Ĭmĭtor, *to imitate.*
Indignor, *to be indignant, spurn.*
Infĭtior, *to deny.*
Insĭdior, *to plot.*
Interprĕtor, *to explain* (*to be an* interpres).
Jăcŭlor, *to throw, dart.*
Jōcor, *to jest.*
Laetor, *to rejoice.*
Lāmentor, *to lament.*
Latrōcĭnor, *to rob.*
Lēnōcĭnor (alicui), *to flatter.*
Lĭbīdĭnor, *to be voluptuous.*
Lĭcĭtor, *to bid at an auction.*
Lignor, *to collect wood.*
Lucror, *to gain.*
Luctor, *to strive, wrestle* (obluctor and reluctor, *to resist*).
*Lūdĭfĭcor, *to ridicule.*
Māchĭnor, *to devise.*
Mātĕrior, *to fell timber.*
*Mĕdĭcor, *to heal.*
Mĕdĭtor, *to meditate.*
Mercor, *to buy.*
*Mĕridior, *to repose at noon.*
Mētor, *to measure out.*
Mĭnor and mĭnĭtor, *to threaten.*
Mīror, *to wonder* (dēmīror, admīror).
Mĭsĕror, commĭsĕror, *to pity.*
Mŏdĕror, *to restrain, temper.*
Mŏdŭlor, *to modulate.*
Mōrĭgĕror, *to comply.*
Mŏror, *to delay;* trans. and intrans. (commŏror).
Mūnĕror, rĕmūnĕror (aliquem aliquā re), *to reward.*
Mūtuor, *to borrow.*
Nĕgōtior, *to carry on business.*
Nīdŭlor, *to build a nest.*
Nūgor, *to trifle.*
Nundĭnor, *to deal in buying and selling.*
Ŏdōror, *to smell out.*
Ōmĭnor, *to prophesy* (ăbōmĭnor, *to abominate*).
Ŏpĕror, *to bestow labour on.*
Ŏpīnor, *to think.*
Opĭtŭlor, *to lend help.*
*Oscĭtor, *to yawn.*
Oscŭlor, *to kiss.*
Ōtior, *to have leisure.*
Pābŭlor, *to forage.*
Pālor, *to wander.*
*Palpor, *to stroke, flatter.*
Părăsītor, *to act the parasite* (parasītus).
Patrōcĭnor, *to patronize.*
Percontor, *to inquire.*
Pĕregrīnor, *to dwell as a stranger.*
Pĕrīclĭtor, *to try, to be in danger.*
Philŏsŏphor, *to philosophize.*
*Pignĕror, *to take a pledge, to bind by a pledge.*
Pigror, *to be idle* (piger).
Piscor, *to fish.*
*Pŏpŭlor, *to lay waste.*
Praedor, *to plunder.*
Praestolor, *to wait for* (with the dat. or accus.).

Praevāricor, *walk with crooked legs, act dishonestly,* as a praevaricator, that is, *as a false accuser.*
Prĕcor, *to pray;* compr*ĕ*cor, *invoke;* dēpr*ĕ*cor, *deprecate;* impr*ĕ*cor, *imprecate.*
Proelior, *to fight a battle.*
Rătiōcĭnor, *to reason.*
Rĕcordor, *to call to mind.*
Refrăgor, *to oppose.*
Rīmor, *to examine minutely.*
Rixor, *to wrangle.*
Rustĭcor, *to live in the country.*
Scītor and sciscĭtor, *to inquire.*
Scortor, *to live unchastely.*
Scurror, *to play the buffoon.*
Sector, *to follow* (the frequentative of sĕquor); assector, consector, insector.
Sermōcĭnor, *to hold discourse.*
Sōlor, consōlor, *to comfort.*
Spătior, exspătior, *to walk.*
Spĕcŭlor, *to keep a look out.*
Stĭpŭlor, *to make a bargain;* adstĭpŭlor, *to agree.*
Stŏmăchor, *to be indignant.*
Suāvior, *to kiss.*
Suffrăgor, *assent to.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Tergĭversor, *to shuffle.*
Testor and testĭfĭcor, *to bear witness.*
Trīcor, *to make unreasonable difficulties* (tricae).
Tristor, *to be sad.*
Trūtĭnor, *to weigh.*
Tūmultuor, *to make uproar.*
Tūtor, *to defend.*
Ūrīnor, *to dip under water* (*to void urine* is ūrīnam făcĕre or reddere).
Văd*o*r, *to let go on bail.*
Văgor, *to wander.*
*Vēlĭfĭcor, *to steer towards* (fig. *to gain a purpose;* with dat.).
Vēlĭtor, *to skirmish with light troops.*
Vĕnĕror, *to venerate.*
Vēnor, *to hunt.*
Vĕrēcundor, *to feel shame at doing.*
Versor (properly passive of verso), *to dwell, be occupied in;* āversor, conversor, obversor.
Vōcĭfĕror, *to vociferate.*

§ 170. *Second Conjugation.*

1.	Fătĕor,	fassus sum,	fătēri,	*to confess.*
2.	Lĭcĕor,	lĭcĭtus sum,	lĭcēri,	*to bid* (*at a sale*).
3.	Mĕdĕor,	—	mĕdēri,	*to heal.*
4.	*Mĕreor,	mĕrĭtus sum,	mĕrēri,	*to earn, to deserve.*
5.	Mĭsĕreor,	mĭsĕrĭtus sum *or* mĭsertus sum,	mĭsĕrēri,	*to take pity on.*
6.	Pollĭceor,	pollĭcĭtus sum,	pollĭcēri,	*to promise.*
7.	Reor,	rătus sum,	rēri,	*to think.*
8.	Tueor,	tuĭtus sum,	tuēri,	*to look upon, protect.*
9.	Vĕreor,	vĕrĭtus sum,	vĕrēri,	*to fear.*

Compound Verbs.

1.	Confĭteor,	confessus sum,	confĭtēri,	*to confess.*
	Prŏfĭteor,	prŏfessus sum,	prŏfĭtēri,	*to avow.*
	Diffĭteor,	—	diffĭtēri,	*to deny.*

2. *Pollĭceor* is a compound of pro and lĭceor.
4. Commĕreor, Dēmĕreor, Prōmĕreor, *to deserve.*
8. Contueor, Intueor, Obtueor, *to look upon, to look at.*
9. Rĕvĕreor, *to reverence;* Subvĕreor, *to fear slightly.*

§ 171. *Third Conjugation.*

1.	Fruor,	(fructus sum,) fruĭtus sum,	frui,	*to enjoy.*
2.	Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	*to perform.*
3.	Grădior,	gressus sum,	grădi,	*to step.*
4.	Lăbor,	lapsus sum,	lăbi,	*to slip.*
5.	Līquor,	(līquefactus sum,)	līqui,	*to melt.*
6.	Lŏquor,	lŏcūtus sum,	lŏqui,	*to speak.*
7.	Mŏrior,	mortuus sum,	mŏri,	*to die.*
8.	Nītor,	nixus sum, nīsus,	nīti,	*to strain.*
9.	Pătior,	passus sum,	păti,	*to suffer.*
10.	Quĕror,	questus sum,	quĕri,	*to complain.*
11.	Ringor,	—	ringi,	*to show the teeth, to snarl.*
12.	Sĕquor,	sĕcūtus sum,	sĕqui,	*to follow.*
13.	Utor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	*to use.*
14.	(Verto) Rĕvertor,	(rĕversus sum),	rĕverti,	*to return.*
15.	(Plecto) Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	*to embrace.*
	Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	
16.	Apiscor,	aptus sum,	ăpisci,	*to obtain.*
	Adĭpiscor,	ădeptus sum,	ădĭpisci,	*to obtain.*
17.	Commĭniscor,	commentus sum,	commĭnisci,	*to devise.*
18.	Rĕmĭniscor,	—	rĕmĭnisci,	*to remember.*
19.	Dēfĕtiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfĕtisci,	*to grow weary.*
20.	Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	*to wake up.*
21.	Īrascor,	—	īrasci,	*to be angry.*
22.	Nanciscor	nactus sum,	nanciscī,	*to obtain by chance.*
23.	Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	*to be born.*
24.	Oblīviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	*to forget.*
25.	Păciscor,	pactus sum,	păcisci,	*to make an agreement.*
26.	Prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfectus sum,	prŏfĭcisci,	*to set out.*
27.	Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	*to avenge.*
28.	Vescor,	—	vesci,	*to eat.*

Compound Verbs.

1. *Fruor. Fut. Part.* fruĭtūrus.
   Perfruor, perfructus sum, perfrui, *to enjoy completely.*
3. Aggrĕdior, aggressus sum, aggrĕdi, *to attack.*
7. *Morior. Fut. Part.* mŏrĭtūrus.
9. Perpĕtior, perpessus sum, perpĕti, *to endure.*
19. *Dēfĕtiscor*, from fătisco, *to crack, to grow weary.*
20. *Expergiscor*, from ex and pergo.
21. *Irascor* has no Perf. In Irātus sum, *I am angry*, iratus is an Adjective.
26. *Prŏfĭciscor*, from pro and facio.

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1.	*Assentior	assensus sum,	assentīri,	*to agree to.*
2.	Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri	*to flatter*
3.	Expĕrior,	expertus sum,	expĕrīri,	*to try.*
4.	Oppĕrior,	oppertus sum, / oppĕrītus,	oppĕrīri,	*to wait for.*
5.	Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	*to give bountifully.*
6.	Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	*to lie.*
7.	Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	*to measure.*
8.	Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	*to labour.*
9.	Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	*to begin.*
10.	Orior,	ortus sum,	ŏrīri,	*to rise.*
11.	*Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	*to divide.*
12.	*Pŏtior,	pŏtītus sum,	pŏtīri,	*to obtain possession of.*
13.	*Pūnior,	pūnītus sum,	pūnīri,	*to punish.*
14.	*Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	*to take by lot*

Remarks and Compound Verbs.

4. Compĕrior, *to find out*, is used only as a Deponent in the Present. The usual form is compĕrio, compĕri, compertum, compĕrīre.

10. *Orior.* The *Fut. Pass.* is ŏrītūrus. The *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation: ŏrĕris, ŏrītur, ŏrīmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ŏrĕrer and ŏrīrer are found. The compounds cŏŏrior and exŏrior, *to arise*, are conjugated like *ŏrior:* but ădŏrior, *to attack*, has ădŏrīris, ădŏrītur.

11. *Partior.*

*Dispertior,	dispertītus sum,	dispertīri,	*to distribute.*
Impertior,	impertītus sum,	impertīri,	*to communicate.*

13. The active form *punio* is the usual one.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Chapter XXX.—Formation of Words. Derivation of Substantives.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. *A Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) A Pure Root, without any addition whatever: as, **ăd, ăb sŭb: nē** or **nōn**; with some other indeclinable words.

Obs. Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, **fĕr**, *bear thou*; **dīc**, *say thou*; **fūr**, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) A word derived from a Single Root by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, **dīc-o, dic-tio, dīc-ax**, from **dic**.

§ 175. *A Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, **hŏmĭcīda**, *a manslayer*, from **hŏm-o**, *a man*, and **caed-o**, *to kill*.

§ 176. *A Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. *A Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the **s** of the Nominative Case Singular in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations **-ōsus, -īnus, -ĭlis**, etc.

Obs. For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. A *Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, amb-io, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, te-tĭg-i (Root, **-tag**), mo-mord-i (Root, **mord**), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, **ăgīlis** (Stem, **ăgīli**) *active*; **vŏlens** (Stem, **vŏlent**), *willing*; from the Roots **ag** (*act*), **vol** (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

ăg-o,	Stem and Root		AG,	*set in motion, act.*
dūc-o, dux (duc-s),	,,	,,	DUC,	*lead.*
rĕg-o, rex (reg-s),	,,	,,	REG,	*rule.*
lĕg-o, lex (leg-s),	,,	,,	LEG,	*read.*
pēs, pĕd-is,	,,	,,	PED,	*the foot.*
sōl, sōlis,	,,	,,	SOL,	*the sun.*
săl, sălis,	,,	,,	SAL,	*salt.*

§ 181. I. Substantives derived from Verbs.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes:-

1. **or** (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive: as,

ămor,	*love,*	from ămo
clāmor,	*a shout,*	„ clāmo
căl-or,	*warmth,*	„ căleo
tĭm-or,	*fear,*	„ tĭmeo
făv-or,	*favour,*	„ făveo
fūr-or,	*madness,*	„ fūro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. **tor** (*m.*) denotes the doer: as,

ămā-tor,	*a lover,*	from ămo
audī-tor,	*a hearer,*	„ audio
mŏnĭ-tor,	*an adviser,*	„ mŏneo
vic-tor,	*a conqueror*	„ vinco (root VIC)
vēnā-tor,	*a hunter,*	„ vēnor
lec-tor,	*a reader,*	„ lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in trix: as,

victor,	victrix,	*conqueress.*
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	*huntress.*

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine: as, cursor, *a runner*, from curro (cursum).

3. **io** and **tio** (*Gen.* ōnis, *f.*) denote the action: as,

obsĭd-io,	*a siege,*	from obsĭdeo
oblīv-io,	*forgetfulness,*	„ oblīviscor
contāg-io,	*a touching, contagion,*	„ contingo, root (con)TAG
ac-tio,	*doing,*	„ ăgo
lec-tio,	*reading,*	„ lĕgo
scrip-tio,	*writing,*	„ scrībo.

4. **tus** (*Gen.* tūs, *m.*) also denotes the action: as,

ac-tus,	*doing,*	from ăgo
audī-tus,	*hearing,*	„ audio
auc-tus,	*an increase,*	„ augeo
can-tus,	*singing,*	„ căno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine: as, versio and versus from verto; vīsio and vīsus from vīdeo.

5. **tūra** also usually denotes the action: as,

mercā-tūra,	*trading,*	from mercor
ăper-tūra,	*an opening,*	„ ăpĕrio
cinc-tūra,	*a girding,*	„ cingo
junc-tūra,	*a joining,*	„ jungo.

6. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an act or state: as,

gaud-ium,	*joy,*	from gaudeo
ŏd-ium,	*hatred,*	„ ōdi
incend-ium,	*a conflagration,*	„ incendo
aedĭfĭc-ium,	*a building,*	„ aedĭfĭco.

7. **mĕn** (*Gen.* mĭnis, *n.*) usually denotes an instrument: as,

flū-men,	*a river,*	from fluo
lū-men,	*a light,*	„ lūceo
sōlā-men	*a consolation,*	„ sōlor
teg-men,	*a covering,*	„ tĕgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force: as, agmen, *that which is led, an army marching;* gestāmen, *that which is carried,* etc.

8. **mentum** (*n.*) frequently denotes an instrument; as,

dŏcŭ-mentum,	*a proof,*	from dŏceo
impĕdi-mentum,	*a hindrance,*	„ impĕdio
mō-mentum,	*a moving force,*	„ mŏveo
ornā-mentum,	*an ornament,*	„ orno.

9. **bŭlum, and cŭlum** (*n.*) (**brum** and **crum** after *l*), and **trum**, also denote an instrument: as,

vēnā-bŭlum,	*a hunting-spear,*	from vēnor
pā-bŭlum,	*fodder,*	„ pascor
gŭbernā-cŭlum,	*a rudder,*	„ gŭberno
fer-cŭlum,	*a tray,*	„ fĕro
lāvācrum,	*a bath,*	„ lāvo
fulcrum,	*a prop,*	„ fulcio
ventĭlābrum,	*a winnowing-fork,*	„ ventĭlo.

Obs. 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is **ŭlum** only: as,

jăc-ŭlum,	*a dart,*	from jăcio
cing-ŭlum,	*a girdle,*	„ cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix bŭlum signifies a place: as, stă-bŭlum, *a standing-place* or *stall,* from sto (sta-re).

10. **ies** (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action: as,

făcies,	*figure,*	from făcio
effĭgies,	*image,*	„ effĭngo (root EX-FIG.
congĕries,	*a heap,*	„ congĕro.

§ 182. II. Substantives derived from Substantives.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **ārius** (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation: as,

argent-ārius,	*a silversmith,*	from argentum
stătŭ-ārius,	*a statuary,*	„ stătua
aer-ārius,	*a coppersmith,*	„ aes
sīc-ārius,	*an assassin,*	„ sīca.

2. **ārium** (*n.*) denotes the place where anything is kept: as,

arm-ārium	*a cupboard,*	from arma, orum
āvi-ārium,	*an aviary,*	,, āvis
cŏlumb-ārium,	*a dove-cote,*	,, cŏlumba
aer-ārium,	*a treasury,*	,, aes.

Obs. *ārius* and *ārium* are properly the Suffixes of Adjectives. See § 187, 9.

3. **īna** (*f.*) denotes an employment, and also the place where the employment is carried on: as,

mĕdĭc-īna,	*the healing art,*	from mĕdĭcus
offĭc-īna,	*a workshop,*	,, offĭcium
sutr-īna,	*a shoemaker's shop,*	,, sūtor.

Obs. Offĭcīna is a contraction for ŏpĭfĭcīna (ŏpus, făcio).

Sometimes *īna* denotes simply the female: as,

rĕg-īna,	*a queen,*	from rex
gall-īna,	*a hen,*	,, gallus.

Obs. *īna* is properly a feminine Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 7.

4. **ātus** (*Gen.* ūs, *m.*) and **ūra** (*f.*), added to Substantives designating public officers, denote the office: as,

consŭl-ātus,	*consulship,*	from consul
trĭbūn-ātus,	*tribuneship,*	,, trĭbūnus
cens-ūra,	*censorship,*	,, censor
praet-ūra,	*praetorship,*	,, praetor.

5. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c.: as,

săcerdōt-ium,	*priesthood,*	from săcerdōs (-dōtis)
mĭnistĕr-ium,	*service,*	,, mĭnister
exsŭl-ium,	*exile,*	,, exsul
hospĭt-ium,	*hospitality,*	,, hospes (-pĭtis).

6. **ăl** (*n.*) and **ăr** (*n.*) denote a material object: as,

ănĭm-al,	*an animal,*	from ănĭma,	*life.*
calcăr,	*a spur*	,, calx (calc-s),	*the heel.*

7. **ētum** (*n.*) affixed to names of trees or plants denotes the place where they grow in a quantity, and also the trees themselves collectively: as,

myrt-ētum,	*a myrtle-grove,*	from myrtus
querc-ētum,	*an oak-plantation,*	,, quercus
ŏlīv-ētum,	*an olive-yard,*	,, ŏlīva
vīn-ētum,	*a vineyard,*	,, vīnea.

8. **īle** (*Gen.* is, *n.*) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them: as,

bŏv-īle,	*an ox-stall,*	from bos, bŏvis
ĕqu-īle,	*a stable for horses,*	,, ĕquus
ŏv-īle,	*a sheep-fold,*	,, ŏvis.

Obs. *īle* is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 4.

§ 183. Diminutives.

Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endearment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. **ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum**, added to substantives of the First and Second Declensions; as,

nīd-ŭlus,	*a little nest,*	from nīdus
hort-ŭlus,	*a little garden,*	„ hortus
rīv-ŭlus,	*a little river,*	„ rīvus
mens-ŭla,	*a little table,*	„ mensa
silv-ŭla,	*a little wood,*	„ silva
virg-ŭla,	*a little twig,*	„ virga
căpĭt-ŭlum,	*a small head,*	„ căpŭt
sax-ŭlum,	*a small rock,*	„ saxum
scūt-ŭlum,	*a small shield,*	„ scūtum.

2. **cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum**, added to substantives of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions: as,

frāter-cŭlus,	*a little brother,*	from frāter
flos-cŭlus,	*a little flower,*	„ flos
versĭ-cŭlus,	*a little verse,*	„ versus
māter-cŭla,	*a poor mother,*	„ māter
nāvĭ-cŭla,	*a small ship,*	„ nāvis
ăvĭ-cŭla,	*a small bird,*	„ ăvis
rē-cŭla,	*a small matter,*	„ rēs
corpus-cŭlum,	*a small body,*	„ corpus
mūnus-cŭlum,	*a small present,*	„ mūnus
rētĭ-cŭlum,	*a little net,*	„ rēte

Obs. 1. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, they become *ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum:* as,

fīli-ŏlus,	*a little son,*	from fīlius
malle-ŏlus,	*a small hammer,*	„ malleus
fīli-ŏla,	*a little daughter,*	„ fīlia
līne-ŏla,	*a little line,*	„ līnea
nĕgōti-ŏlum,	*a little business,*	„ nĕgōtium
ingĕni-ŏlum,	*a little talent,*	„ ingĕnium.

Obs. 2. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l*, *n*, or *r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illus, illa, illum:* as,

ŏcellus,	*a little eye,*	from ŏcŭlus	(Stem, ŏcŭlo)
lĭbellus,	*a little book,*	„ lĭber	(„ libro)
lăpillus,	*a little stone,*	„ lăpis	(„ lăpid)
cătella,	*a little chain,*	„ cātēna	(„ cătēna)
anguilla,	*a little snake,*	„ anguis	(„ angui)
sĭgillum,	*a little figure,*	„ signum	(„ signo).

Obs. 3. If the Stem of the primitive ends in *c* or *g*, *t* or *d*, the diminutives are generally formed by adding *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum:* as,

rēg-ŭlus,	*a petty king,*	from rex (reg-s)
rādīc-ŭla,	*a little root,*	„ rādix (rādic-s)

§ 184. Patronymics.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in:

1. **ĭdes**: as, Priăm-ĭdes, *a son of Priamus.*
2. **īdes**: as, Atr-īdes, *a son of Atreus.*
3. **ădes** and **iădes**: as, Aene-ădes, *a son of Aeneas;* Atlant-iades, *a son of Atlas.*

Obs. Patronymics in Ides (ίδης) are only formed from Proper Names in eus (εύς).

Feminine Patronymics end in:

1. **is**, *Gen.* **ĭdis**: as, Tantal-is, *a daughter of Tantalus.*
2. **ēis**, *Gen.* **ēĭdis**: as, Nel-ēis, *a daughter of Neleus.*
3. **ias**, *Gen.* **iădis**: as, Laert-ias, *a daughter of Laertes.*
4. **īne**: as, Neptūn-īne, *a daughter of Neptunus.*
5. **ōne**: as, Acrĭsi-ōne, *a daughter of Acrisius.*

§ 185. III. Substantives derived from Adjectives.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes:—

1. **ia** (*f.*): as,

grāt-ia,	*favour,*	from grātus
īnsān-ia,	*madness,*	„ īnsānus
mĭsĕr-ia,	*wretchedness,*	„ mĭser
prūdent-ia,	*prudence,*	„ prūdens.

2. **tia** (*f.*): as,

laetĭ-tia,	*joy,*	from laetus
justĭ-tia,	*justice,*	„ justus
mollĭ-tia,	*softness,*	„ mollis
pigrĭ-tia,	*sloth,*	„ pĭger.

3. **tās** (*Gen.* tātis, *f.*): as,

bŏnĭ-tas,	*goodness,*	from bŏnus
vērĭ-tas,	*truth,*	„ vērus
crūdēlĭ-tas,	*cruelty,*	„ crūdēlis
atrōcĭ-tas,	*fierceness,*	„ atrox.

4. **tūdo** (*Gen.* tūdĭnis, *f.*): as,

altĭ-tūdo,	*height,*	from altus
aegrĭ-tūdo,	*sickness,*	„ aeger
fortĭ-tūdo,	*bravery,*	„ fortis
sĭmĭlĭ-tūdo,	*likeness,*	„ sĭmĭlis.

5. **mōnia** (*f.*): as,

sanctĭ-mōnia,	*sanctity,*	from sanctus
castĭ-mōnia,	*purity,*	„ castus
ācrĭ-mōnia	*sharpness,*	„ ācer.

Chapter XXXI.—Derivation of Adjectives.

§ 186. I. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **bundus**, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle. See § 110, 3.

2. **ĭdus** denotes the quality expressed by a verb: as,

frĭg-ĭdus,	*cold*,	from frīgeo
măd-ĭdus,	*wet*,	„ mădeo
tĭm-ĭdus,	*fearful*,	„ tīmeo
văl-ĭdus,	*strong*,	„ văleo.

3. **ĭlis** and **bĭlis** denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense: as,

dŏc-ĭlis,	*teachable*,	from dŏceo
făc-ĭlis,	*doable (easy)*,	„ făcio
ămā-bĭlis,	*loveable*,	„ ămo
mō-bĭlis, (=mŏvĭ-bĭlis)	*moveable*,	„ mŏveo.

4. **ax** denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one: as,

aud-ax,	*daring*,	from audeo
ĕd-ax,	*gluttonous*,	„ ĕdo
lŏqu-ax,	*talkative*,	„ lŏquor
vŏr-ax,	*voracious*,	„ vŏro.

Obs. The following Suffixes are less common:

1. **cundus**: as,	īrā-cundus,	*angry*,	from īra-scor
	fā-cundus,	*eloquent*	„ fārī
2. **ŭlus**: as,	quĕr-ŭlus,	*querulous*,	„ quĕror.

§ 187. II. Adjectives derived from Substantives.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. **ĕus** denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance: as,

aur-eus,	*golden*,	from aurum

Also **-nus**, *made of*; appended to stems of nouns denoting *trees*; as ăcernus, *made of maple*, from ăcer, *a maple tree*; quer-nus [querc-nus], *oaken*; from quercus.

virgĭn-eus,	*maidenlike*,	„ virgo, -ĭnis.

2. **ĭcius** or **ĭtius** denotes the material, or relation to something: as,

lătĕr-ĭcĭus,	*made of bricks*,	from lăter
trĭbūn-ĭcius,	*relating to a tribune*,	„ trĭbūnus
aedīl-ĭcius,	*relating to an aedile*,	„ aedīlis.

Obs. 1. **āceus** has the same meaning, but is rare: as, argill-āceus, *made of clay*, from argilla.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in **īcius** derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind: as, commentīcius, *feigned*.

3. **ĭcus** denotes belonging or relating to a thing: as,

bell-ĭcus,	*relating to war,*	from bellum
cīv-ĭcus,	*relating to a citizen,*	,, cīvis
class-ĭcus,	*relating to a fleet,*	,, classis.

Obs. The following Adjectives in **icus** have **ī**:

ămīcus,	*friendly,*	from	ămo, ămor
antīcus,	*front,*	,,	antĕ
postīcus,	*hinder,*	,,	post.
aprīcus,	*sunny,*	,,	ăpĕrio (?)

4. **īlis** has the same meaning: as,

host-īlis,	*hostile,*	from hostis
serv-ĭlis,	*slavish,*	,, servus
puĕr-ĭlis,	*childish,*	,, puer.

5. **ālis** has the same meaning: as,

fāt-ālis,	*fatal,*	from fātum
rēg-ālis,	*kingly,*	,, rex
vīt-ālis,	*vital,*	,, vīta.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is **āris** (comp. § 181, 9): as,

pŏpŭl-āris,	*pertaining to the people,*	from pŏpŭlus
sălūt-āris,	*salutary,*	,, *sălūs, sălūtis.*

6. **ius** has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names: as,

patr-ius,	*pertaining to a father,*	from *păter*
sŏrŏr-ius,	*pertaining to a sister,*	,, sŏror
ōrātōr-ius,	*pertaining to an orator,*	,, ōrātor.

7. **īnus** has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals: as,

căn-īnus,	*pertaining to a dog,*	from cănis
ĕqu-īnus,	*pertaining to a horse,*	,, ĕquus
dīv-īnus,	*pertaining to the gods,*	,, dīvus.

8. **ānus** has the same meaning: as,

urb-ānus,	*pertaining to a city,*	from urbs
font-ānus,	*pertaining to a fountain,*	,, fons, fontis
mont-ānus,	*pertaining to a mountain,*	,, mons, montis.

9. **ārius** has the same meaning: as,

agr-ārius,	*pertaining to land,*	from ăgĕr
grĕg-ārius,	*belonging to a flock,*	,, grex, grĕgis
lĕgĭon-ārius,	*belonging to a legion,*	,, lĕgio.

Obs. *ārius* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives. See § 182.

10. **ōsus** denotes fulness: as,

lăpĭd-osus,	*full of stones,*	from lăpis
pĕrīcŭl-ōsus,	*full of dangers,*	,, pĕrīcŭlum
ănĭm-ōsus,	*full of courage,*	,, ănĭmus.

11. **lentus**, usually preceded by the vowel **ŭ** or **ŏ**, also denotes fulness: as,

fraud-ŭlentus,	*full of deceit*,	from fraus (fraud-s)
vi-ŏlentus,	*full of violence*,	„ vis

12. **ātus**, sometimes **ītus** and **ūtus**, denote having something or provided with something: as,

ālā-tus,	*furnished with wings, winged*,	from	āla
tŏg-ātus,	„ *a toga*,	„	tŏga
aur-ītus,	„ *ears*,	„	auris
corn-ūtus,	„ *horns, horned*,	„	cornu.

§ 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix **ānus** or **iānus**: as,

Mărī-ānus,	from Mărius
Sull-ānus,	„ Sulla
Gracch-ānus,	„ Gracchus
Cĭcĕrōn-iānus,	„ Cĭcĕro.

The Suffix **īnus** is rare: as,

Verr-īnus (punningly), from Verres (or verres, *a hog*).

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes **ēus** or **īus** and **ĭcus**: as,

Epĭcūr-ēus,	from Epĭcūrus
Aristŏtĕl-īus	„ Aristŏtĕles
Plătōn-ĭcus,	„ Plăto.

The poets form Adjectives in **ĕus** from Roman names: as,

Rōmŭl-eus, from Rōmŭlus.

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **ensis**: as,

Cann-ensis,	from Cannae
Cōm-ensis,	„ Cōmum
Sulmōn-ensis	„ Sulmo (Sulmōn-is).

2. **īnus**, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium*: as,

Amĕr-īnus,	from Amĕria
Caud-īnus,	„ Caudium.

3. **ānus**, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i*: as,

Rōm-ānus,	from Rōma
Thēb-ānus,	„ Thēbae
Tuscŭl-ānus,	„ Tuscŭlum
Fund-ānus,	„ Fundi.

4. ās, *Gen.* ātis, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae*: as,

Arpīnās,	from Arpīnum
Cāpēnās,	„ Cāpēna
Fĭdēnās,	„ Fĭdēnae.

Obs. 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

Obs. 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: as,

Cŏrinth-ius, from Cŏrinthus.

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in ĭcus are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: as,

Gall-ĭcus, *Gallic*,	from Gallus, *a Gaul.*
Arăb-ĭcus, *Arabic*,	„ Arabs, *an Arab.*

Obs. The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: as, Hispānia, *Spain*, from Hispānus. Adjectives in ensis derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: as, exercĭtus Hispāniensis, *an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards; but, on the other hand, spartum Hispānĭcum is a plant growing in Spain; similarly Gallicānus from Gallĭcus.

CHAPTER XXXII.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

mātūro,	*I make ripe*,	from mātūrus
lībĕro,	*I make free*,	„ lĭber
rōbŏro,	*I make strong, I strengthen*,	„ rōbŭr (rōbŏr-is).

Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: as,

fīnio,	*I finish*,	from fīnis
mollio,	*I soften*,	„ mollis.

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

ancillor,	*I am a maid-servant*,	from ancilla
ăquor,	*I fetch water*,	„ ăqua
laetor,	*I am joyful*,	„ laetus
phĭlŏsŏphor,	*I am a philosopher*,	„ phĭlŏsŏphus.

§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo,	*I am bald,*	from calvus
albeo,	*I am white,*	„ albus.

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, dūresco (dūreo), *I grow hard,* from dūrus.

§ 194. II. Verbs derived from Verbs.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding ĭto to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clām-ĭto,	*I cry out often,*	from clāmo
rŏg-ĭto,	*I ask often,*	„ rŏgo
mĭn-ĭtor,	*I threaten often,*	„ mĭnor
lect-ĭto,	*I read often,*	„ lĕgo, lectum
script-ĭto,	*I write often,*	„ scrībo, scriptum
vent-ĭto,	*I come often,*	„ vĕnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso,	*I run hither and thither,*	from curro, cursum
salto,	*I dance,*	„ sălio, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding sco (asco, esco, isco), 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lăb-asco,	*I begin to totter,*	from lăbo
căl-esco,	*I grow warm,*	„ căleo
trĕm-isco,	*I begin to tremble,*	„ trĕmo
obdormi-sco,	*I fall asleep,*	„ dormio
sĕn-esco,	*I grow old,*	„ sĕnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding ŭrio, and dropping the um of the termination: as,

ēs-ŭrio,	*I long to eat,*	from ĕdo, ēsum
script-ŭrio,	*I long to write,*	„ scrībo, scriptum.

Obs. By analogy is formed Sullatŭrio, *I long to play the part of Sulla.*

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in illo (illāre, 1): as,

cant-illo,	*I warble,*	from canto
sorb-illo,	*I sip,*	„ sorbeo
conscrīb-illo,	*I scribble,*	„ conscrībo.

§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state: as,

jăcio,	jăcĕre,	*to throw,*	jăceo,	jăcēre,	*to lie.*
pendo,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh,*	pendeo,	pendēre,	*to be hanging.*
părio,	părĕre,	*to bring forth,*	păreo,	pārēre,	*to be visible.*
(cando, incendo,	candĕre), incendĕre,	*to set on fire,*	candeo,	candēre,	*to be burning.*

Chapter XXXIII.—Derivation of Adverbs.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive: as,

mŏdestē,	*modestly,*	from	mŏdestus
pulchrē,	*beautifully,*	,,	pulcher
doctē,	*learnedly,*	,,	doctus.

Obs. 1. From bŏnus comes bĕnĕ, from mălus comes mălĕ, both with the final *e* short. From vălĭdus, *strong,* comes valdē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tĕr as well as in ē: as,

dūrē,	dūrĭtĕr,	*severely,*	from	dūrus
firmē,	firmĭtĕr,	*firmly,*	,,	firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvĭtĕr,	*actively,*	,,	gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmānĭtĕr,	*courteously,*	,,	hūmānus
largē,	largĭtĕr,	*bounteously,*	,,	largus
lūcŭlentē,	lūcŭlentĕr,	*splendidly,*	,,	lūcŭlentus.

From viŏlentus, *vehement,* there is only viŏlentĕr; the form viŏlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular: as,

falsō,	*falsely,*	from	falsus
tutō,	*safely,*	,,	tutus
crēbrō,	*frequently,*	,,	crēber.

Obs. The form in o is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning: as, certō, *certainly,* and certē, *at any rate;* vērō, *in truth, indeed,* and vērē, *truly.*

§ 198. Adverbs in tĕr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension: as,

grăvĭ-tĕr,	*heavily,*	from	grăvis
fēlīcĭ-tĕr,	*fortunately,*	,,	fēlix.

Obs. If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

sāpienter, *wisely*, from sapiens (sāpient-s).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

făcĭlĕ, *easily*; rĕcens, *lately*; multum, *much*.

§ 200. Adverbs in ĭtŭs are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from* something: as,

coel-ĭtŭs,	*from heaven*,	from coelum
rādīc-ĭtŭs,	*rom the roots*,	„ rādix (rādic-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in tim are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

cătervā-tim,	*in troops*,	from cătervа
prīvā-tim,	*as a private person*,	„ prīvātŭs
stā-tim,	*immediately*,	„ sto (stare)
punc-tim,	*with the point*,	„ pungo.

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

Obs. Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are written together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

respublĭca,	*Gen.* rĕīpublĭcae,	*the commonwealth.*
jusjūrandum,	*Gen.* jūrisjūrandi,	*an oath.*
sĕnātus-consultum,		*a resolution of the senate.*
ăquae-ductus,		*water-channel.*

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when făcio is in the second: as,

ārĕfăcio,	*to make dry.*
călĕfăcio,	*to make warm.*
lĭquĕfăcio,	*to cause to melt.*
mădĕfăcio,	*to make wet.*
pătĕfăcio,	*to throw open.*

Obs. Such apparent compounds as nĭdĭfĭco, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, nĭdĭfĭcus, *nest-building.*

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

căpio,	*to take,*	accĭpio
răpio,	*to seize,*	arrĭpio
pătior,	*to suffer*	perpĕtior
grădior,	*to walk,*	congrĕdior.

Obs. Pĕrăgo, *to complete,* perplăceo, *to please greatly,* and făcio compounded with adverbs, as sătisfăcio, *to satisfy,* are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	*to pluck,*	concerpo
damno,	*to condemn,*	condemno
scando,	*to climb,*	conscendo
spargo,	*to scatter*	conspergo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

salto,	*to dance,*	insulto
calco,	*to tread,*	conculco
quătio,	*to shake,*	concŭtio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ĕgĕo,	*to want,*	indĭgeo
sĕdeo,	*to sit,*	insĭdeo
tĕneo,	*to hold,*	abstĭneo.

Obs. Perlĕgo, *to read through,* praelĕgo, *to read to others,* rĕlego, *to read again,* are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	*to cut,*	occīdo
quaero,	*to seek,*	inquīro
laedo,	*to strike,*	collīdo.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *ē*: as,

plaudo,	*to clap the hands,*	explōdo
claudo,	*to shut,*	conclūdo
audio,	*to hear,*	ŏbēdio.

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 138

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel ĭ, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pĕdĭsĕquus,	*a follower on foot,*	from	pes (pĕd) and sĕquor
mūnĭfĭcus,	*bountiful,*	„	mūnus and făcio
causĭdĭcus,	*an advocate,*	„	causa and dīco
agrĭcŏla,	*a husbandman,*	„	ăgĕr and cŏlo
ăquĭlĭfĕr,	*a standard-bearer,*	„	q uĭla and fĕro.

§ 208. The *quantity* of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fĕro, affĕro; hăbeo, prŏhĭbeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

BOOK I.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

CHAPTER XXXV.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (praedĭcāre, *to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

Obs. 1. In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, Alexander Magnus rex Măcĕdŏnum ĕrat, *Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians*, *Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Macedonum* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the enlargement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, Caesar vīcit Gallos, *Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is an enlargement of the predicate *vicit*.

Obs. 2. The term Predicate is by an extension of its original meaning applied to sentences which contain a question or a command instead of an affirmation: as,

Quis crēdat? *who would believe?* Tu ne quaesiĕris, *inquire not thou*: where the Predicates are *credat* and *quaesieris*.

§ 211 THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

India mittit ĕbur, *India sends ivory.*—Virg.
Hos *ĕgo* versĭcŭlos fēci, *I made these little verses.*

Obs. The Subject is often only indicated by the termination of a Verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word; as, vīcīmus, *we have conquered*; fuērunt, *they have been, have ceased to exist.*

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

Pulchrum est dĭgĭto monstrāri, *It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.*—Pers. (Subject, digito monstrari.)

Obs. Any word, or even letter, when spoken of *as a word*, may become the Subject of a sentence: as,

Atque partĭcŭla conjunctio esse dīcĭtur connexīva, *The particle* atque *is said to be a connective conjunction.*—Gell.

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

Omnia jam *fient*, *All the things will now come to pass*—Ov.

Sōcrătes Graecōrum *săpientissĭmus* (ĕrat), *Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks*.—Cic.

Hannĭbal Hămilcăris *fīlius* (fuit), *Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar*.—Nep.

(N.B. For the Syntax of the Predicate, see §§ 219-227.)

Obs. 1. When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (cōpŭla, *tie* or *band*).

Obs. 2. Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb esse: as, *bĕne, recte* est, *it is well*.

§ 214. APPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is defined by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

Thĕmistocles, *impĕrātor* Persĭco bello, Graeciam servītūte lĭbĕrāvit, *Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage*.—Cic.

Scĕlĕrum *inventor* Ŭlysses, *Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds*.—Virg.

Ŏleae Mĭnerva *inventrix*, *Minerva, inventor of the olive*.—Virg.

Ut ŏmittam illas omnium doctrīnarum *inventrīces* Athēnas, *To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of every branch of learning*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the case of Substantives possessing a twofold form, as *măgister, măgistra; mĭnister, mĭnistra; inventor, inventrix;* and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

Obs. 2. Two Substantives often come together in the same case by Apposition, when a person or place is indicated at once by its name: as, *Rex Tullius, urbs Roma*. (Never urbs Romae.)

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tullĭŏla, *dēlĭcĭŏlae nostrae*, mūnuscŭlum tuum *flāgĭtat*, *Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present*.—Cic.

Obs. Not always, however: comp. Cic. Manil. 4, 11, Corinthum (*fem.*) Graeciae lumen *exstinctum* esse voluerunt, *They would have Corinth, the light of Greece, put out*.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs, oppĭdum, cīvĭtas* or a similar word, the Predicate is regularly made to agree therewith: as,

Cŏrĭŏli *oppĭdum* captum (est), *The town of Corioli was taken*.—Liv.

§ 216. Adjectives and Participles can also be used in Apposition; when of course (§ 223), they agree with the Substantives to which they refer in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Cătīlīna, nōbĭlī gĕnĕre *nātus*, fuit magnā vī et ănĭmi et corpŏris, *Catiline, born of a distinguished family, was possessed of great strength of mind and body.*—Sall.

Artes sunt innŭmĕrābĭles, ad victum *nĕcessăriae*, *There are innumerable arts necessary for living.*—Cic.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words "as" or "when:" as,

Dēfendi rempublĭcam *jŭvĕnis*, *I defended the commonwealth as* (or *when*) *a young man.*—Cic.

Nēmo fĕre saltat *sōbrius*, nĭsi forte insānit, *Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

Obs. But when *as* denotes something supposed or presumed (e.g. he was taken up as a thief), it must be expressed by *tamquam*, *quăsi* or *ŭt*; and when *as* denotes a comparison, it must be expressed by ŭt, sīc—ŭt, tanquam: as,

Cicĕro ea, quae nunc ūsū vĕniunt, cĕcĭnit ŭt vātes, *Cicero predicted, like a prophet, those things which are now happening.*—Nep.

Chapter XXXVI.—Concord and Government.

§ 218. Syntax may be divided into two parts: Syntax of Concord and Syntax of Government.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

Alexander vīcit Darīum, *Alexander conquered Darius*,

the Verb *vicit* corresponds ("agrees") with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be "governed." [Syntax of Government.]

First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

Cŏnon magnas res *gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.

Magnus hoc bello *Thĕmistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.*—Nep.

Athēnienses omnium cīvium suōrum pŏtentiam *extĭmescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

Castor et Pollux ex ĕquis pugnāre *visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

Sўphax regnumque ējus in pŏtestāte Rōmānōrum *ĕrant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv.

Vīta, mors, dīvĭtiae, paupertas, omnes hŏmĭnes vĕhĕmentissĭme *permŏvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus *intellĭgit, The senate and people of Rome are* (lit. *is*) *aware.*—Cic.

Tempus nĕcessĭtasque *postŭlat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

Orgĕtŏrĭgis fĭlia et *ūnus* e fĭliis *captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons* was *taken prisoner.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. Occasionally a Plural Verb is used when an Ablative is connected by the Preposition *cum* with a Nominative Case in the Singular: as,

Bocchus cum pĕdĭtĭbus . . . postrēmam ăciem Rōmānōrum *invādunt, Bocchus along with the infantry fall* (s) *upon the rear of the Romans.*—Sall.

Obs. 4. When the Subject consists of two Substantives connected by *aut*, the Verb may be in the Plural as well as the Singular: as,

Si Socrătes aut Antisthĕnes dĭcĕret *or* dĭcĕrent, *If Socrates or Antisthenes were to speak.* (See Zumpt, L. G. § 374.)

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural

(= vos): thus ĕgo et tu, or ĕgo et frāter meus, both = nos; while tu et ille, tu et frāter, = vos: as,

Si tu et Tullia lux nostra *vălētis*, ego et suāvissĭmus Cĭcĕro *vălēmus*, *If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).*—Cic

Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, ĕgo et rex, *I and the king.*

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

Tūra *fĕrant plācentque* nŏvum pia *turba* Quĭrīnum, *Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.*—Ov.

Dēsectam sĕgĕtem magna *vis hŏmīnum* sĭmul immissa corbĭbus *fŭdĕre* in Tĭbĕrim, *A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. This construction is far less common in Latin than in English, and is rarely used when the Collective Substantive stands quite by itself. In the following passage the Singular and Plural are combined:—

Pars stŭpet innuptae dōnum exĭtiāle Mĭnervae
Et *mīrantur* ĕqui mōlem,

Part are awe-struck at unwedded Minerva's fatal offering, and wonder at the massy bulk of the horse.—Virg.

Obs. 2. A Plural Verb is sometimes used after *ŭterque, quisque* (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars—pars* (for *ălii—ălii*), *ălius—ălium*, and *alter—alterum*, since these words contain the idea of plurality: as,

Eōdem die ŭterque eōrum ex castris stătīvis exercĭtum dūcunt, *On the same day both of them lead out the army from the stationary camp.*—Caes.

Missi (sunt) hŏnōrātissĭmus quisque ex patrĭbus, *All the most distinguished* (lit. *every most distinguished man*) *from the fathers were sent.*—Liv.

Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Jam *pauca* ărātro *jūgĕra rēgiae*
Mōles rĕlinquent,

Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.—Hor.

—— Nec te [sĭlĕbo] *mĕtuende certâ*
Phoebe săgittâ,

Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unerring shaft.—Hor.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a Predicate: as, vĭr bŏnus, *a good man*; or vĭr est bŏnus, *the man is good.*

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in

forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice, agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Omnium assensu *comprŏbāta ōrātio* est, *The speech was approved by the assent of all.*—Liv.

Neglectum Anxŭri *praesīdium* (est), *The garrison at Anxur was not looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

Păter mĭhi et māter *mortui sunt*, *My father and mother are dead.*—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Sĕcundae rēs, hŏnōres, impĕria, victōriae *fortuĭta* sunt, *Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

Lăbor vŏluptasque sŏcĭĕtāte quādam inter sē *conjuncta* sunt, *Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

Ira et *ăvārĭtia* impĕrio *pŏtentiōra* ĕrant, *Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as, omnes agri et mări*a*, *all seas and lands*; or the Adjective is repeated, as, agri omnes omniaque mări*a*.

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

Duo *millia* Tўrĭōrum crŭcĭbus *affixi* sunt, *Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.*—Curt.

Căpĭta conjūrātiōnis virgis *caesi* ac sĕcūrī *percussi* sunt, *The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv.

Obs. In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *căpĭta* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word "*thing*:" as,

Triste lŭpus stăbŭlis, *The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.*—Virg.

Turpĭtūdo *pējus* est quam dŏlor, *Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.*—Cic.

Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Ĕgo, *qui* te confirmo, ipse me non possum, *I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.*—Cic.

Nullum ănīmal, *quod* sanguĭnem hăbet, sīne corde esse pŏtest, *No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

Obs. The *Case* of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

Arbŏres sĕret dĭlĭgens agrĭcŏla, *quārum* adspĭciet baccam ipse nunquam, *The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

Note.—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive baccam in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 265.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate: as,

Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, *quod* est (not *qui sunt*) *oppĭdum* Boeōtiae. *Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

Lĕvis est ănīmi, justam glōriam, *qui* (not *quae*) est *fructus* vērae virtūtis hŏnestissĭmus, rĕpŭdiāre, *It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The same construction is used when the Relative is the Subject of a Passive Verb of naming (§ 232), or the object of an Active one (§ 234): as,

Pĕrōrātio, *qui ĕpĭlŏgus* dĭcĭtur, *The conclusion of a speech, which is called the epilogue.*—Cic.

Dŏmĭcĭlĭa conjuncta, *quas urbes* dĭcĭmus, *Dwelling-houses connected together, which we call cities.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. The same construction is found in the case of the demonstrative and determinative Pronouns: as,

Ĭdem velle et ĭdem nolle, *ea* (not *id*) dēmum vēra ămīcĭtia est, *To have the same wishes and the same fears, that and nothing short of it is true friendship.*—Sall.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive: as,

Săpientes sōli, *quod* est proprium dīvĭtiārum, contenti sunt rēbus suis, *Wise men only—what properly belongs to wealth—are content with what is their own.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the simple relative, *id quod* (sometimes *quae res*) may be used: as,

Tīmŏleon, *id quod* difficĭlĭus pūtātur, multo săpientius tŭlit sĕcundam, quam adversam fortūnam, *Timoleon—what is thought the more difficult—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

Chapter XXXVII.—The Nominative Case.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence: as,

Ego rēges ējēci, *vos* tȳrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Her.

See also § 219.

Obs. Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, as in the *Oblīqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject after the following classes of Verbs:—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become*: as, sum, existo, fīo, ēvādo (*to issue, turn out*) nascor (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence*; also, *gesture*: as, mănео (*to remain*), dūro (*to endure*), incēdo (*to walk*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing*: as, nōmĭnor, dīcor, appellor [also audio, in sense of *to be called*]; creor, fīo, dēsignor, instĭtuor, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying to *seem* or *be thought*: as, vĭdeor, hăbeor, existĭmor, dūcor, etc.: as,

(1.) Nēmo rĕpente fit *turpissĭmus*, *No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv.

(2.) Mūnītiōnes *integrae* mănēbant, *The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes.

Dīvum incēdo *rēgīna*, *I walk queen of the gods.*—Virg.

(3.) Nŭma Pompĭlius *rex* creātus est, *Numa Pompilius was made king.*—Eutr.

Justĭtia erga deos *relĭgio* dīcĭtur, *Justice towards the gods is called religion.*—Cic.

(4.) Sătis altĭtūdo mūri *exstructa* vĭdēbātur, *The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

In rēbus angustis *ănĭmōsus* et *fortis* appārē, *In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor.

Obs. *Vĭdeor* is generally used as a personal verb, though more frequently translated in English as an impersonal: as,

Ne Alpes vĭcisse Hannĭbălem vĭdeantur, *Lest it should seem that the Alps have conquered Hannibal.*—Liv.

§ 233. The Nominative is used even after the Infinitive of the above-mentioned Verbs, when they follow possum,

vŏlo, mālo, nōlo, cŭpio; incĭpio, coepi; dēsīno; vĭdeor, existĭmor, and the like: as,

Beātus esse sīne virtūte nēmo *pŏtest, No one can be happy without virtue.*—Cic.

Cāto *bŏnus* esse quam vĭdēri mālēbat, *Cato preferred being good to seeming so.*—Sall.

Miltĭādes non vĭdēbātur posse esse *prīvātus, Miltiades did not seem to be capable of being a (mere) private citizen.*—Nep.

Dēsīnant nĭmium esse *tĭmĭdi, Let them cease to be (so) excessively fearful.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative (see, however, § 84, 1, *Obs.*).

Deus *mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, God built the world.*—Cic.

Glōria *virtūtem* tanquam umbra *sĕquĭtur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*—Cic.

Nulla ars *ĭmĭtāri sollertiam* nātūrae pŏtest, *No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, măgister puerum laudat, *The master praises the boy*, becomes in the Passive, puer a măgistro laudātur, *The boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only *impersonally:* as,

Invĭdētur praestanti flōrentique fortūnae, *Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.*—Cic. (Lit., *Envy is felt* by men *for eminent fortune.*)

Non *parcētur* lăbōri, *Labour shall not be spared.*—Cic. (Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour.*)

The Dative still indicates the *Object* no less after the Passive than after the Active Verb.

Obs. 3. The principal *apparent* exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

Hac nocte mīrum *somnĭāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.*—Plaut.

Vērissimum *jusjūrandum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.*—Cic.

Obs. The Intransitive Verb has in such cases a transitive force: thus, *to dream* a dream = *to have* a dream; *to swear* an oath = *to use* or *utter* an oath. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed, as in examples given.

§ 236. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus, sĭtio, *I thirst (for) = I desire eagerly;* contrĕmo, *I tremble (at) = I fear;* horreo, *I shudder (at) = I dread;* fleo, *I weep (for) = I lament;* rīdeo, *I laugh (at) = I ridicule;* dēpĕreo, *I am dying (for) = I desperately love:* as,

Sanguĭnem nostram sĭtiēbat, *He was thirsting for our blood.*—Cic.

Sĕquăni Ariovisti *crūdēlĭtātem* horrēbant, *The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.*—Caes.

Nemo illic vĭtia rīdet, *No one there laughs at vice.*—Tac.

Contrĕmĕre hastam, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.

Obs. 1. This construction is widely used in the poets and later writers: as, pallēre pontum, *to turn pale at (the sight of) the sea* (Hor.); ērubescĕre jūra, *to blush at,* i.e. *to respect rights* (Virg.).

Obs. 2. But such Verbs, not being real Transitives, are not often used as Personal Passives (§ 234, *Obs.* 1): thus such forms as *dŏleor, horreor,* are never found.

Rīdeo, *to ridicule,* takes a personal passive: as, mĕrĭto rīdēri, *to be deservedly laughed at.*—Quint.

§ 237. In like manner Verbs signifying *to taste of* and *to smell of* (*to yield* a savour, *emit* an odour) are used as Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Ŏlet unguenta, He smells of perfumes.—Ter.

Piscis ipsum *măre săpit, The fish tastes of the very sea.*—Sen.

And in a figurative sense:—

Ŏlet pĕrĕgrīnum, It has a foreign smell.—Cic.

Rĕdŏlet antiquĭtātem, It smacks of antiquity.—Cic.

§ 238. *All* Intransitive verbs of *motion* compounded with the Prepositions circum, per, praeter, trans, sŭper, and subter, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Tĭmŏtheus *Pĕlŏponnēsum circumvĕhens* Lăcōnĭam pŏpŭlātus est, *Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.*—Nep.

Hannĭbal *Alpes* cum exercĭtu *transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.*—Nep.

Obs. Such verbs are regarded as real Transitives, and sometimes become Personal Passives, the object of an Active Verb becoming the subject of the Passive (§ 234, *Obs.* 1): as,

Rhŏdănus nonnullis lŏcis vădo *transītur, The Rhone is crossed in some places by a ford.*—Caes.

§ 239. *Many* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions **ad** and **in**, and *some* verbs compounded with **ante**, **con**, **ex**, and **prae**, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Nāves *Gĕnuam accessērunt, The ships reached Genoa.*—Liv.

Urbem invādunt, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg.

Nēmĭnem convēni, *I have met no one.*—Cic.

Societātem coīre, *To form a partnership.*—Cic.

Mŏdum excēdĕre, *To exceed the limit.*—Cic.

Quantum Galli virtūte *cētĕros mortāles praestārent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv.

Nēmo *eum* in ămīcĭtiā *antecessit, no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. After Verbs compounded with **ex**, the Ablative is more common (see § 306); and after those compounded with **con**, **prae**, **ante**, the Dative (§ 292).

Obs. 2. With many of these verbs the Preposition is very often repeated: as, *accēdo ad, invādo in, excēdo ex.*

§ 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (as sĕdeo, sto, sisto), compounded with **circum**, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Ĕquĭtes Rōmāni *sĕnātum circumstant, Roman knights stand around the senate.*—Cic.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, **pŭdet**, *it shameth;* **taedet**, *it wearieth;* **poenĭtet**, *it repenteth;* **pĭget**, *it grieveth;* and **mĭsĕret**, *it pitieth (affects with pity);* take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as

Mē pĭget stultĭtiae meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Timŏthei post mortem *pŏpŭlum* jūdĭcii sŭi *poenĭtuit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

Obs. The Object (or *cause*) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive mood or clause: as,

Non me *vixisse* poenĭtet, *I repent not having lived.*—Cic.

Quintum poenĭtet, *quod ănĭmum tuum offendit, Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic.

§ 242. In like manner **dĕcet**, *it is becoming*, and **dēdĕcet**, *it is unbecoming*, take an Accusative of the Person: but, unlike the above-named Impersonals, they may have an Impersonal Nominative as their subject: as,

Orātōrem mĭnĭme dĕcet īrasci, *It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

Trux *dĕcet īra* fĕras, *Savage anger becomes wild-beasts.*—Ov.

Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *ŏportet, it behoves; jŭvat, it delights; lătet, fallit, fŭgit, practĕrit, it escapes (notice);* take an Accusative of the Person. *Ŏportet* takes also an Infinitive Mood, but never a Nominative of the subject.

2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, dŏceo, *I teach* (with its compounds); cēlo, *I conceal, hide from:* as,

Quis *mūsĭcam* dŏcŭĕrit *Epămīnondam, Who taught Epaminondas music.*—Nep.

Non cēlāvi *te sermōnem* hŏmĭnum, *I have not kept from you the men's discourse.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The reason of this double Accusative is that we may say, for example, both dŏcuit mūsĭcam, *he taught music;* and dŏcuit Ĕpămĭnondam, *he taught Epaminondas;* hence blending the two, *musicam docuit Epaminondam.*

Obs. 2. Dŏceo, *to inform,* takes the Ablative with *de:* as,

Praemittit ad Boios qui *de suo adventu* dŏcĕant, *He sends forward men to the Boii to inform them of his arrival.*—Caes. (It may also be followed by a relative clause, or by the Accusative and Infinitive.)

Obs. 3. Cēlo, *to conceal,* takes the Ablative with *de* in the Passive, and sometimes in the Active: as,

Est *de* illo *vēnēno* cēlāta māter, *The mother was kept in ignorance of that poisoning.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. *Accusative after a Passive Verb.* When a Verb of *teaching* is turned into the Passive, the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

L. Marcius *omnes* mīlĭtiae *artes* ēdoctus fuĕrat, *Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.*—Liv.

Obs. 5. With verbs of teaching, the instrument on which an art is practised is put in the Ablative: as,

Sōcrătem *fĭdĭbus* dŏcuit nōbĭlissĭmus fĭdĭcen, *A most noble lyrist taught Socrates the lyre* (i.e. *to play on the lyre*).—Cic.

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking, entreating,* and *demanding,* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, rōgo, *I ask;* ōro, *I entreat;* posco (rĕposco), flāgĭto, *I demand:* as,

Lēgāti *Verrem sĭmŭlācrum* Cĕrĕris rĕposcunt, *The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.*—Cic.

Caesar *frūmentum Aeduos* flāgĭtābat, *Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. *Pĕto, postŭlo,* and *quaero* are not used with a double Accusative. *Postŭlo* takes the Ablative of the person with *ab* or *de; quaero* and *pĕto* the Ablative of the person with *ex, ab,* or *de.*

Obs. 2. Verbs of *inquiring* or *asking* often take the Ablative of the thing with *de* (interrŏgo, percontor ălĭquem de ălĭqua re). The double Accusa-

tive is most frequently used when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective (comp. § 253): as,

Hoc te ōro, *I entreat you this; multa* me interrŏgāvit, *He asked me many questions.*

Obs. 3. When a verb of *asking*, &c., is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative: as,

Primus rŏgātus est *sententiam*, *He was first asked for his opinion.*—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative.*—Verbs signifying, *to make* or *appoint*, *to name*, *to reckon* or *esteem*, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object: as,

Ancum Martium *rēgem* (*Fact. Acc.*) pŏpŭlus crĕāvit, *The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv.

Cĭcĕrōnem ūnĭversa cĭvĭtas *consŭlem* (*Fact. Acc.*) dēclārāvit, *The whole state declared Cicero consul.*—Cic.

Rōmŭlus urbem ex nōmine suo *Rōmam* (*Fact. Acc.*) vŏcāvit, *Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

Contempsit Sĭcŭlos, non duxit (eos) *hŏmĭnes* (*Fact. Acc.*), *He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

§ 246. Some Transitive Verbs compounded with trans and circum, as transjĭcio, transdūco, transporto, *to carry across*, and circumdūco, *to lead around*, take after them a double Accusative: as,

Ăgēsĭlāus *Hellespontum cōpias* trājēcit, *Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Hannĭbal nōnāginta *millia* pĕdĭtum *Ibērum* trāduxit, *Hannibal led ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.*—Liv.

Pompēius *Roscillum* omnia sua *praesĭdia* circumduxit, *Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. In such cases, one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition. Thus the first of the above examples might be read, Agesilaus *trans* Hellespontum copias *jecit.*

Obs. 2. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives may remain: as,

Mājor multĭtūdo Germānōrum *Rhēnum* transdūcĭtur, *A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. Transitive Verbs compounded with *circum* take more frequently an Accusative and a Dative (see § 292, *obs.* 4).

3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards*, *proximity*, or *relation to*: as, ad, in for *into*, inter, prŏpĕ, &c. See the Chapter on Prepositions.

4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick?* as,

Quaedam bestiŏlae *unum diem* vīvunt, *Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

Pĕricles *quadrāginta annos* praefuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Pĕdem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sŭmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.

Campus Mărăthon ab Athēnis circĭter *millia* passuum dĕcem ăbest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

Mīlĭtes aggĕrem lātum *pĕdes trĕcentos trīginta*, altum *pĕdes octōginta* exstruxērunt, *The soldiers constructed a mound* 330 *feet broad and* 80 *feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus*, *altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

Obs. 1. Duration of Time is also expressed emphatically by *per*: as,

Lūdi dĕcem *per dies* facti sunt, *The games were celebrated through ten entire days.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Duration of time is sometimes, but rarely, expressed by the Ablative in the best writers: as,

Pugnātum est continenter *hōris* quinque, *They fought for five hours incessantly.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. In the same manner in answer to the question, *how old?* the Accusative is used with nātus, *born*, (so many years): as,

Alcĭbiădes *annos* circĭter quadrāginta *nātus* diem ŏbĭit suprēmum, *Alcibiades died when about forty years old.*—Nep.

5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: as,

Me caecum, qui haec ante non vīdĕrim, *My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic

O *vim maxĭmam* errōris, *O the enormous power of error!*—Cic.

Eheu *mĕ* mĭsĕrum, *O hapless me!*

Pro dĕōrum atque hŏmĭnum *fĭdem! In the name of gods and men!*—Cic.

En quattuor *ārās*, *Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative: as,

Ecce *tuae litterae* (sc. *sunt*) de Varrōne, *There is your letter about Varro!*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative (*Dativus incommodi*): as,

Vae *victis*, *Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

Hei mĭsĕro *mihi*, *Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

Hannĭbal, *adversum fĕmur* grăvĭter ictus, cĕcĭdit, *Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

Equus trĕmit artūs, *The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

Fēmĭnae nūdae *brāchia* et *lăcertos*, *Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac.

Trājectus *pĕdes*, *With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

Pĕdĭbus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.

Capti *ŏcŭlis* talpae, *Moles maimed in the eyes* (i.e. *blind*).—Virg.

7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, induor, ămĭcior, *I clothe, put on myself*; exuor, *I strip off (from myself)*; cingor, accingor, *I gird on myself*; and the like: as,

Inūtĭle *ferrum cingĭtur*, *He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

Andrŏgei *găleam indŭitur*, *He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg.

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi *ŏcŭlos tăbŭlamque* lăcerto, *With their satchels and tablet swinging at their elbow.* (Suspensi, *having fastened to themselves*: ἀπηρτημένοι.) But the construction is confined to the poets.

8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (quid, quod, id, hoc, illud, ĭdem, &c.), and of Adjectives implying number (unum, multa, pauca, &c.), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

Idem glōriāri, *To make the same boast.*—Cic.

Omnes mŭlĭĕres *eădem* stŭdent, *All women have the same inclinations.*—Ter.

Id ŏpĕram do, *I strive after this.*—Ter.

Utrumque laetor, *I rejoice at both things.*—Cic.

Quid ŏpus facto sit, *What it may be necessary to do.*—Ter. (Phor. 5, 1, 35.)

Discĭpŭlos *id ūnum* mŏneo, *I remind pupils of this one thing.*—Cic.

Saepe non audīmus ea, *quae* ab nātūrā mŏnēmur, *We often do not listen to those admonitions which we receive from nature.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

Obs. 2. The same construction is used even without verbs: as,

Id tempŏris, *At that time.*—Cic.

Hŏmo id aetātis, *A man of that age.*—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions, magnam (maxĭmam) partem, *for the most part;* vĭcem, *on account of, in the manner of;* sĕcus, *sex;* cētĕra, *in other respects;* nĭhil, *not at all:* as,

Suēvi *maxĭmam partem* lacte atque pĕcŏre vīvunt, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

Tuam vĭcem saepe dŏleo, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

Hūmānam vĭcem, *After the manner of men.*—Hor.

Lībĕrōrum cāpĭtum *vīrile sĕcus* ad dĕcem millia capta, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

Vir cētĕra ēgrĕgius, *A man admirable in other respects.*—Liv.

Sĕnātus nĭhil sānē intentus, *The senate (was) not at all on the alert.*—Sall.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see the Syntax of Verbs (§ 507).

APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where? Whither? Whence?*

1. Answer to the Question Where?

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Rōmae Consŭles, *Athēnis* Archontes, *Carthāgĭne* Suffētes, sive jūdĭces, quŏtannis creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*—Nep.

Tibŭre Rōmam ămo, *When at Tivoli I am in love with Rome.*—Hor.

Thēbis, Argis, Ulubris, At Thebes, Argos (Argi), Ulubrae.—Hor.

Diŏnўsius *Cŏrinthi* pŭeros dŏcēbat, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. There can be no doubt that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case which exists in Sanscrit, with the termination i in the Singular. This accounts for the form *ae* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *ai*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as Carthāgini,

Lacedaemŏni, in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence ruri rather than rūre, *in the country.* See § 258.

Obs. 2. When the name of a town is qualified by an Adjective, the Ablative is used either with or without the preposition *in*: as,

In ipsā Alexandriā, *At Alexandria itself.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. If the Substantive *urbs*, *oppĭdum* or *cīvĭtas*, be added in apposition, it is put in the *Ablative* usually with *in*: as, Mīlĭtes *Albae* constĭtērunt, in *urbe* opportūnā, *The soldiers halted at Alba, (in) a suitable city.*—Cic.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives. dŏmi, *at home;* hūmi, *on the ground;* rūri, less frequently rūre, *in the country;* mīlĭtiae, belli, *in the field:* as,

Vir *dŏmi* non sōlum sed etiam Rōmae clārus, *A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.*—Liv.

Non eădem *dŏmi* quae *mīlĭtiae* fortūna ĕrat plēbi Rōmānae, *The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

Vir *dŏmi bellĭ*que fortissĭmus, *A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

Forte ēvēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, *It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

Obs. Domi is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae,* and *alienae;* but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dŏmo; in dŏmo publĭcā; in dŏmo Caesăris.*

2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

Cūrius prīmus ĕlĕphantos quattuor *Rōmam* duxit, *Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pausāniam cum classe commūni *Cyprum atque Hellespontum* mīsērunt, *They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. If *urbs* or *oppĭdum* be added in Apposition, the Preposition *in* must be used: as,

Consul pervēnit *in* oppĭdum Cirtam, *The consul arrived in the town of Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

Itāliam vēnit, *To Italy he came.*—Virg.

Verba rĕfers *aures* non pervĕnientia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

Obs. 3. Even in prose writers the preposition is frequently omitted with *Aegyptus, Chersŏnēsus,* and *Hellespontus.* (See the second example.)

§ 260. The Accusatives dŏmum, *home;* and rus, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Sĕmel ēgressi, nunquam *dŏmum* rĕvertēre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego *rus* ībo, atque ĭbi mănēbo, *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

3. Answer to the Question Whence.

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Diŏnўsius Plătōnem *Athēnis* arcessīvit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmărātus, Tarquĭnii rēgis păter, Tarquĭnios *Cŏrintho* fūgit, *Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

Similarly dŏmo, *from home;* rūre, *from the country;* are used in the Ablative without a Preposition.

Obs. When *urbs* or *oppĭdum* are used in Apposition or before the name of towns, they follow their ordinary construction and take a Preposition (comp. § 259, *Obs.* 1): as,

Expellĭtur *ex oppĭdo* Gergovia, *He is driven out of the town of Gergovia.*—Caes.

Chapter XXXIX.—The Genitive.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

Obs. 1. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of:* it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also found after the Preposition *tĕnus:* see the Chapter on Prepositions.

A. Genitive after Substantives.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *The war of* or *with Pyrrhus.*
Sĭmŭlātio ămīcĭtiae, *The pretence of friendship.*
Nāvis auri, *A ship of*, i.e. *laden with gold.*

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon causā, grātiā, ergō, *for the sake (of)*, which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands *before* these words: as,

Vŏluptātes ŏmittuntur *mājōrum vŏluptātum ădīpiscendārum* causā, *Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.*—Cic.

Dŏlōres suscīpiuntur *mājōrum dŏlōrum effŭgiendōrum* grātiā, *Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.*—Cic.

Sī quĭd contrā ălias lēges *hŭjus lēgis* ergō factum est, *If anything has been done contrary to other laws for the sake of this law.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. **Causā** is commonly used, **grātiā** less frequently, and **ergō** (Gr. ἕργῳ) rarely, chiefly in law phrases.

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with causā and grātiā: as, meā causā, *for my sake;* tuā causā, *for thy sake.*

Obs. 3. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable substantive **instăr**, (*in*) *the likeness* (*of*); *on the scale of:* as,

Instăr *montis* ĕquus, *A horse like a mountain.*—Virg.

Plăto mĭhi ūnus instăr est *omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.*—Cic.

1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

Grăves *Cyclōpum* offĭcīnae, *The heavy forges of the Cyclops.*—Hor.

In umbrōsis *Hĕlĭcōnis* ōris, *In the shady regions of Helicon.*—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb **sum**, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed:—

Omnia sunt *victōris*, *All things are the* (*property of the*) *conqueror* (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

Mīlĭtum est dūci pārēre, *It is* (*the duty*) *of soldiers to obey the general.*

Nĭhĭl est tam *angusti ănĭmi* quam ămāre dīvĭtias, *Nothing is* (*the characteristic*) *of so petty a mind as the love of riches.*—Cic.

Cūjusvis hŏmĭnis est errāre, *It is* (*the part*) *of any man to err.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Substantive or Adjective (as officium, munus, proprium) is sometimes expressed: as,

Sĕnātūs *offĭcium* est cīvĭtātem consĭlio jŭvāre, *It is the business of the senate to aid the state with counsel.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns: thus we must say, meum est, *it is mine* or *my duty;* tuum est, *it is thine* or *thy duty;* not mei, tui est.

Obs. 3. The words "wife," "son," or "daughter," are sometimes omitted before the Possessive Genitive: as,

Verānia *Pisōnis*, *Piso's Verania*, that is, *Verania the wife of Piso.*—Plin.

Hasdrūbal *Gisgōnis*, *Gisgo's Hasdrubal*, that is, *Hasdrubal the son of Gisgo.*—Liv.

Obs. 4. The word "temple" (aedes or templum) is frequently omitted after the preposition ad, and before the Genitive of the name of the deity: as, Ventum erat *ad Vestae*, *We had come to* (*the temple*) *of Vesta*—Hor.

2. Subjective Genitive.

§ 267. The Subjective Genitivė denotes the *Subject* of the action expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the subject of a verb: thus ămor Dei, *the love of God* (= Deus ămat nos): as,

Cătōnis nōbĭle lētum, *Cato's noble death.*—Hor.

Cūra *patrum, Care on the part of senators.*—Hor.

Flūmĭnum lapsūs, *The gliding courses of rivers.*—Hor.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronouns are used instead of the Subjective Genitive of the personal pronouns: as, consŭlātus meus, *my consulate;* mors tua, *thy death.*

Obs. 2. Hence a Genitive may stand in apposition to a possessive pronoun: as,

Meā *ūnīus* ŏpĕrā respublĭca salva est, *The republic was saved by my exertions alone.*—Cic.

Hi ad vestram *omnium* caedem Rōmae restĭtērunt, *These remained at Rome with a view to the slaughter of you all* (*of all of you*).—Cic.

The Genitives *unius, ipsius* (*ipsorum*) are often so used.

Similarly where the Genitive is that of the *Possessor:* as,

Tuum, *hŏmĭnis* simplĭcis, pectus vīdĭmus, *We have seen your breast* (i. e. *heart*), *an artless man as you are.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. So the Relative may agree with a Genitive implied in a Possessive Pronoun: as,

Nostra caede *qui* rĕmansissēmus, *With the massacre of such of us as remained.*—Cic.

3. Objective Genitive.

§ 268. The Objective Genitive denotes the *Object* of the notion expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the object of a verb: thus ămor Dei, *love towards God* (= nos amāmus Deum): as,

Fortĭtūdo est *dŏlōrum lăbōrumque* contemptio, *Fortitude is the despising of sufferings and hardships.*—Cic.

Ex injūriā Sābīnārum *mŭlĭĕrum* bellum ortum est, *From the wrong done to the Sabine women war arose.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Objective Genitive is more frequently used in Latin than the Subjective, and the latter does not occur unless where the context prevents ambiguity: thus cūra Caesăris (Hor. Od. i. 12. 50) is "care *of* or *for* Caesar" [Objective], while cūra Patrum (id. iv. 14. 1) in the example given in § 267, it is equally plain, must mean "care *on the part of* the Senators." In case of any real ambiguity a preposition is used instead of the Objective Genitive, especially in denoting a feeling towards any one: as,

Ŏdium in hŏmĭnum ūnĭversum gĕnus, *Hatred against the whole race of man.*

Obs. 2. Both the Objective and Subjective Genitive when dependent upon a Substantive may be reduced to the head *Possessive Genitive;* and may often be translated by the English Possessive Case. The Objective Genitive, however, mostly requires some Preposition.

Obs. 3. An Objective and Subjective Genitive are sometimes dependent upon the same substantive: as,

Pro vĕtĕrĭbus Helvētiōrum injūriis Pŏpŭli Rōmāni, *For old wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.*—Caes.

Here *Helvetiorum* denotes the Subject and *Populi Romani* the Object; and the sentence is equivalent to, *The Helvetii did wrongs to the Roman people.*

Obs. 4. With the Objective Genitive, the Genitive of the personal pronoun, (*mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*), and not the possessive pronoun, is used: as,

Mīsit fĭlium non sōlum dēprĕcātōrem sui, sĕd ĕtiam accusātōrem mei, *He sent his son not only to intercede for himself, but also to accuse me.*—Cic.

Mĕmŏriam *nostri* quam maxĭmē longam effĭcĕre dēbēmus, *We ought to make the remembrance of ourselves as lasting as possible.*—Sall.

Obs. 5. The Objective Genitive is also found after *Adjectives* derived from Verbs: see § 276, *Obs.* 1.

4. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after substantives and words used substantively to denote the whole of which a part is taken: as,

Mŏdius trītĭci, *A peck of wheat.*—Cic.

Mille hŏmĭnum vălentium, *A thousand of able-bodied men.*—Cic. (Mil. 20.)

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Substantives.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these:—**multum**, *much* (with plus and plūrĭmum); **paulum** or **paullum**, *a little* (with mĭnus and mĭnĭmum); **tantum**, *so much*; **quantum**, *how much*; **ălĭquantum**, *a good deal* (with their diminutives, tantŭlum, quantŭlum, aliquantŭlum); also, **hoc**, *this* (*amount*); **id, illud**, *that* (*amount*), **ălĭquod**, *some* (*amount*); **quicquam**, *any* (*amount*) *soever*: as,

Multum tempŏris, *Much* (*of*) *time.*—Cic.

Ălĭquantum ĕquōrum et armōrum, *A considerable quantity of horses and arms.*—Sall.

Tantŭlum mŏrae, *So little delay.*—Cic.

Hoc cōpĭārum in Hispānias portātum est, *This amount of troops was conveyed into the Spains.*—Liv. (42, 18, *extr.*).

Num quidnam nŏvi, *Is there any news?*—Cic.

Id tempŏris, *At that time*—Cic.

To the above add the indeclinable Substantive nīhil (nīl), *nothing, none of*: as, nĭhil măli, *no* (*kind*) *of evil.*—Cic.

Obs. 1 The Genitive used with these Neuters is not unfrequently an adjective of the Second Declension, used Substantively. See above.

Obs. 2. But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive: hence we have ălĭquid difficĭlĕ, *something difficult;* ălĭquid difficĭlĭus, *something more difficult.*

Obs. 3. Poets and prose-writers, after Cicero, use the Neuters of any Adjectives as Substantives, with a Partitive Genitive dependent on them: as,

Cuncta *terrārum*, *All (of) the world.*—Hor.

Ardua *terrārum*, *The lofty (parts or regions) of the earth.*—Virg.

Exĭguum *campi* ante castra ĕrat, *There was a small portion of the plain before the camp.*—Liv.

Rĕlĭquum *noctis* acquiēvit, *He slept the remainder of the night.*—Curt.

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of *Quantity*,* *Place*, or *Time*, used Substantively: as,

Sătis *ēlŏquentiae*, *săpientiae* părum, *Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall.

Ubīnam *gentium* / Ubi *terrārum* } *Where in the world?*—Cic.

Eo *mīsĕriārum*, *To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

Postea *lŏci*, *Afterwards.*—Liv.

Inde *loci*, *Thereupon.*—Lucr.

* These Adverbs are:

sătis,	*enough.*	ăbunde, affătim,	*abundantly.*
părum,	*too little.*		

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

Mājor *jŭvĕnum*, (*Thou*) *elder of the youths.*—Hor.

Maxĭme *prīncĭpum*, *Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

Graecōrum *ōrātorum* praestantissĭmi, *The most eminent of Greek orators.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex*, *de*, and in certain cases *in*, *inter*, are used: as,

Ācerrĭmus *ex omnĭbus nostris sensĭbus* est sensus vĭdendi, *The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

Croesus *inter rēges* ŏpŭlentissĭmus, *Croesus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after some Numerals, and after Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number: as,

Prīmi *jŭvĕnum*, *First of the youths.*—Virg.

Consŭlum alter, *one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

Trĭum mĭnĭmus, *The youngest of the three.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. The Genitive is often used in English with numerals and adjectives when there is no Partitive meaning, but only an enumeration of the whole. In such cases the Genitive is very seldom used in Latin: thus we say in English, "The veterans, of whom few are surviving," but in Latin "qui pauci supersunt," because these few are all. So also "all of us" is in Latin "nos omnes."

Obs. 2. The use of prepositions (*ex, inter, de*) is more frequent after numerals: as,

Ūnus *ex* illis dĕcemvĭris, *One of those Decemvirs.*—Cic.

De trĭbus et dĕcem fundis tres nobĭlissĭmos possĭdet, *Out of thirteen estates, he holds the three finest.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives, but not *nostri* and *vestri*: see § 359.

5. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) priscae ac nĭmis dūrae *sĕvērĭtātis*, *A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.*—Liv.

Ager quattuor *jŭgerŭm*, *A farm of four acres.*—Liv.

Vir maxĭmi *corpŏris*, *A man of very great stature.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent*, is hŏmo ingĕnĭōsus (not hŏmo ingĕnii); but *a man of great talent*, is hŏmo magni ingĕnii.

Obs. 3. It must be particularly noticed that this Genitive of Quality is limited to the connexion of two Substantives: thus we say, fossa quindĕcim pĕdum, *a ditch of fifteen feet*; but when longus or lātus is added, we must say fossa quindĕcim pĕdes lāta: in like manner, puer dĕcem annōrum, *a boy of ten years*, but puer decem annos nātus. See § 249.

6. Genitive of Definition.

§ 275. Sometimes a Substantive is used in the Genitive by way of Definition, where we should rather have expected a Substantive in Apposition: as,

Haec vox *vŏluptātis*, *This word pleasure.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 2, *extr.*)

B. Genitive after Adjectives.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying *capacity*; also of *desiring, experience, remembering, participating, fullness*, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

Thĕmistocles *pĕrītissĭmos belli nāvālis* Athēnienses fēcit, *Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.*—Nep.

Omnes *immĕmŏrem bĕnĕfĭcii* ōdērunt, *All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.*—Cic.

Ira *impŏtens sui* est, *Anger is incapable of governing itself.*—Sen.

Hŏmo *partĭceps* est *rātiōnis* et *cōgĭtātiōnis*, *Man is partaker of reason and thought.*—Cic.

Bestiae *rātiōnis* et *ōrātiōnis expertes* sunt, *Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.*—Cic.

Plēnum Bacchi pectus, *A bosom (soul) full of Bacchus.*—Hor.
Virtūtis compos, Possessed of virtue.—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

1.	ăvārus,	*covetous.*	imprūdens,	*not foreseeing.*
	aemŭlus,	*jealous.*	rūdis,	*unskilled.*
	ăvĭdus,	*greedy.*	insŏlens,	*unaccustomed.*
	cŭpīdus,	*eager.*	insŏlĭtus,	
	stŭdĭōsus,	*fond.*	insuētus,	
	fastīdĭōsus,	*disdainful.*	compos,	*master of.*
	invĭdus,	*jealous.*	impos,	*not master.*
	tĭmĭdus,	*fearful.*	pŏtens,	*powerful.*
	păvĭdus,		impŏtens,	*not powerful.*
	lĭbĕrālis,	*liberal.*	3. mĕmor,	*mindful.*
	prŏfūsus,	*lavish.*	immĕmor,	*unmindful.*
	parcus,	*stingy.*	cūrĭōsus,	*careful.*
2.	pĕrītus,	*skilled.*	incūrĭōsus.	*careless.*
	impĕrītus,	*unskilled.*	4. partĭceps,	*participating.*
	conscius,	*conscious.*	consors,	*sharing.*
	inscius,	*ignorant.*	exsors,	*not sharing.*
	nescius,		expers,	
	praescius,	*foreknowing.*	ĭnops,	*weak.*
	gnārus,	*knowing.*	5. plēnus,	*full.*
	ignārus,	*not knowing.*	ĭnānis,	*empty.*
	prūdens,	*foreseeing.*		

Verbal Adjectives in ax follow the above rule: as, ĕdax, *devouring*; căpax, *holding.*

Obs. 1. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 1, 2, 3, and those in *ax, ans,* and *ens* (see § 277), is an Objective Genitive: thus, cŭpĭdus sum pĕcūniae = cūpio pecūniam: comp. § 268. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 4, 5, is a Partitive Genitive. Comp. § 269.

Obs. 2. Those signifying *plenty* or *want* are also used with the Ablative: see § 317, *Obs.*

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also sometimes found after *Verbs* of plenty or want: see § 317.

Obs. 4. *Rūdis* and *prūdens* are also used with *in* and the Ablative: as, prūdens in jūre cĭvĭli, *skilful in civil law.*—Cic.

Obs. 5. Such Adjectives as ămīcus, *friendly;* ĭnīmīcus, *unfriendly;* fĭdēlis, fīdus, *faithful,* &c., do not fall under the above rule, but govern the Dative according to § 298.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus pătiens (*adj.*) *lăbōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships;* pătiens (*part.*) *lăbōres,* (*actually*) *enduring them:* as,

Ĕpămīnondas ădeo fuit *vērītātis dilĭgens,* ut ne jŏco quĭdem mentīrētur, *Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.*—Nep.

Ălĭēni appĕtens, sui prŏfūsus, *Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.*—Sall.

C. Genitive after Verbs.

1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive (of the Object): as,

Animus měmĭnit *praetĕrĭtōrum*, *The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

Nec unquam oblīviscar *illĭus noctis*, *Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But they govern the Accusative:—

(*a*) When the *entire object* is represented as retained in the mind or dismissed from it: as,

Rĕmĭnisci prisc*ī*m tempŏris *ăcerbĭtātem*, *To remember the bitterness of the past.*—Nep.

Tu, C. Caesar, oblīvisci nĭhĭl sŏles, nĭsi *injūrias*, *Thou, Caius Caesar, art wont to forget nothing save injuries.*—Cic.

Hence *memini* invariably governs an Accusative to indicate a contemporary: as,

Cinnam mĕmĭni, vīdi Sullam, *I remember Cinna, I saw Sulla.*—Cic.

(*b*) When the object is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective: thus, id, ea, omnia, multa rĕcordāri, rĕmĭnisci, &c.; not ejus, eorum [but earum rerum], &c. (see § 253.)

Obs. 2. Verbs of *reminding* (mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo, &c.) govern the Accusative of a person and the Genitive of a thing: as,

Cătīlīna admŏnēbat ălium *ĕgestātis*, ălium *cŭpīdĭtātis* suae, *Catiline reminded one of his destitute circumstances, another of his ruling passion.*—Sall.

But if the thing is a Neuter Pronoun, it likewise is put in the Accusative, so that a verb of *reminding* is thus joined with two Accusatives: as, illud me admŏnes, *you remind me of that.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of *reminding* are frequently constructed with *de* and the Ablative: as,

De aede Tellūris me admŏnes, *You remind me of the temple of Tellus.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. *Rĕcordor* generally governs the Accusative, very rarely the Genitive: as,

Communes belli *c*ā*sus* rĕcordābantur, *They called to mind the common chances of war.*—Caes.

Obs. 5. The impersonal phrase, "vĕnit mihi in mentem," *to think of, to recollect*, is also used with the Genitive: as,

Sōlet mihi in mentem vĕnīre *illĭus tempŏris*, *I am wont to call to mind that time.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 3, *init.*)

But the phrase is also used personally: as,

Non vĕnit in mentem pugna apud Rĕgillum lăcum, *Do you not call to mind the battle at lake Regillus?*—Liv. (8, 5.)

2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

Accūsātus est *prōdĭtiōnis*, *He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

Caesar Dŏlābellam *rĕpĕtundārum* postŭlāvit, *Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.*—Cic.

Jūdex absolvit *injūriārum* eum, *The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

Absens *prōdĭtiōnis* damnātus est, *He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the Ablative crīmĭne is expressed: as damnātus est crīmĭne rĕpĕtundārum, *He was condemned on the charge of extortion.*

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de:* as,

Appius *de pĕcūnĭis rĕpĕtundis* est postŭlātus, *Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of vis, *violence:* as de vi postulare, damnare, &c.

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned:* as, *reus, noxius, innoxius, insons, mănĭfestus,* and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Căpĭtis hŏmĭnem condemnāre, *To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.
Octŭpli damnāri, *To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative is also used: as, *căpĭte* damnāre.—Cic.

Obs. 2. If the money-penalty is expressed by an Adjective of Quantity, the Genitive is used, as *tanti, quanti, dupli, quadrupli* (comp. § 281): but if the sum is definitely expressed, the Ablative must be used: as,

Ea lis quinquāginta *tālentis* aestĭmāta est, *The damages were fixed at fifty talents.*—Nep.

3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price* or *Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as **tanti, quanti, plūris, mĭnōris**: as,

Quantī Chrysŏgŏnus dŏcet, *At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

Plūris, mĭnōris, vendĕre, *To sell for less* or *more.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a *definite* price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316, *Obs.* 2; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plūrĭmo, mĭnĭmo,* &c., are of frequent occurrence, when actual money value is meant. *To value (a person) highly,* always *magni* (not magno) aestimare.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *flocci, pĭli, nauci, assis,* to denote that a thing is of *no value at all:* especially in the phrases flocci, pĭli făcĕre, pendĕre, &c., "*not to care a straw for.*"

4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs **mĭsĕreor, mĭsĕresco,** *to pity;* and the Impersonals **mĭsĕret, mĭserescit, mĭsĕrētur,** *it causes pity;* **pĭget,** *it vexes;* **poenĭtet,** *it repenteth;* **pŭdet,** *it causes shame;* **taedet, pertaesum est,** *it causes weariness,* govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

O virgo, mĭsĕrēre *mei, O maiden, have pity on me!*—Ov.

Me pĭget *stultĭtiae* meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Nunquam *suscepti nĕgōtii* Attĭcum pertaesum est, *Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 241.

Obs. 2. The object of the feeling is also sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or a clause, with *quod*. See § 241, *Obs.*

Obs. 3. Mĭsĕror, and commĭsĕror *to commiserate*, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

5. Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs intĕrest and rēfert, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person *to whom* a thing is of *importance* or *benefit*. as,

Quid *Mĭlōnis* intĕrĕrat interfĭci Clōdium, *What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

Rēfert *compŏsĭtiōnis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, being used instead: as,

Quid *tuā* id rēfert, *What matters that to you?*—Ter.

Vestrā interest commĭlĭtōnes, *It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Tac.

NOTE.—*Rēfert* probably = rei fert, *it contributes to the interest;* and with *interest*, rei may be understood: in that case the forms *meā, tuā*, &c. may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with rei.

Obs. 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *meā, tuā*, &c.

Obs. 3. The subject of *intĕrest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is expressed,

(*a*) By the Infinitive: as,
Intĕrest omnium *rectē făcĕre, It is the interest of all to act rightly.*

(*b*) By the Accusative and Infinitive: as,
Meā intĕrest, *te vălēre, It is of importance to me that you should be in good health.*—Cic.

(*c*) By a secondary clause beginning with *ut, nē*, or an interrogative: as,
Illud meā magni intĕrest, *tē ut vĭdeam, It is of great importance to me that I should see you.*—Cic.
Vestrā, commĭlĭtōnes, intĕrest, *nē impĕrātōrem pessĭmi făciant, It is of importance to you, fellow-soldiers, that the worst men should not have the making of an emperor.*—Tac.
Magni rēfert, *quid hic vĕlit, It is of great importance what this person wishes.*—Caes.

(*d*) By a neuter pronoun, *hoc, illud* (so that the Verbs are not quite impersonal): as,
Hoc vĕhĕmenter intĕrest, *This is of prodigious importance to the republic.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. The degree or measure of importance is expressed:

(*a*) By the Genitives of value, *magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti*: v. § 281.

(*b*) By the Adverbs *valdē, vĕhĕmenter, magnŏpĕre, măgis, maxĭme*, &c.

(*c*) By Neuter Adjectives, *multum, plus, plūrimum*, &c.

D. Exceptional Uses of the Genitive.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.* 1): as,

Dēsĭne mollium tandem *quĕrēlārum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor. (Comp. the Greek *γόων, κλαυθμοῦ παύεσθαι.*)

Scĕlĕris pūrus, *Pure from guilt.*—Hor. (Gr. *καθαρὸς ἀδικίας.*)

Sōlūtus *ŏpĕrum, Released from toil.*—Hor. (Gr. *λελυμένος πόνων.*)

§ 285. The Genitive is sometimes used (especially by the poets), in the sense of *with regard to, in reference to, for*: as,

O te, Bōlāne, fēlīcem *cĕrebri, O my friend Bolanus, lucky for your choleric vein!*—Hor.

Nōtus in frātres *ănĭmi păterni, Renowned for right fatherly affection to his brothers.*—Hor.

(Comp. the Greek *ὄλβιος, μάκαρ τῶν τέκνων*, etc.)

Obs. Note especially the use of **animi** in such phrases as ănĭmi pendēre, *to be in suspense or anxious in mind*; crŭciāre se ănĭmi, *to torture oneself in mind*, &c. (But we also find ănĭmo; which seems to imply that the form is a Locative: see § 257, *Obs.* 1.)

§ 286. The Locatives dŏmi, *at home*; mīlĭtiae, *in the field*; Rōmae, *at Rome*; Sāgunti, *at Saguntum*; and the like, are commonly regarded as Genitives: but see § 257, *Obs.* 1.

Chapter XL.—The Dative.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object*; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234): as,

Aesōpō quīdam lăpĭdem *impēgĕrat, A person had cast a stone at Aesop.*—Phaedr.

Obs. 1. Here the *direct object* of the action is the *stone* (lapidem) which *is cast*; while the Dative *Aesopo* denotes the *indirect object*, or the person *to whom* the action has reference.

Obs. 2. Such a Dative is often used in Latin where in English the preposition *from* is required: as,

Ădĭmĕre *ălĭcui* lĭbertātem, *to take from a man his freedom.*—Cic.

A. Dative after Verbs.

1. Dative of Advantage.

(*Dātīvus Commŏdi.*)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of:* as,

Dŏmus *dŏmĭnis* aedĭfĭcātur, non *mūrĭbus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*—Cic.

Non *schŏlae* sed *vītae* discĭmus, *We learn not for the school, but for life.*—Sen.

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of, in behalf of,* pro must be used: see §§ 557, 8.

Obs. 2. The Dativus Commodi is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

Obs. 3. The use of the term Dativus Commodi is often extended so as to include those cases in which a thing is represented as *happening to* or *with reference* to a person: as,

In Antiāti *mĕtentĭbus* cruentas in corbem spīcas cĕcĭdisse, *In the territory of Antium, the ears of corn dropped blood-stained into the basket of the reapers* (Lit. *to them reaping*).—Liv. (22, 1.)

Lānĭgĕris *grĕgĭbus* sponte suā lānae cădunt, *From* (lit. *to*) *the woolly flocks the wool drops off of its own accord.*—Ov. (Met. 7, 541.)

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative, to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus vāco, *to be free,* signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it;* nūbo, *to cover* or *veil,* signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself* or *put on the veil for a man,* hence *to marry;* supplĭco, *to be a suppliant,* signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person;* as,

Phĭlŏsŏphiae semper vāco, *I always find leisure to study philosophy.*—Cic.

Vĕnus nupsit *Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic.

Caesări pro te lĭbentissĭme supplĭcābo, *I will most cheerfully supplicate Caesar for you.*—Cic.

2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with *interest* (ἦθος) by some person (Dātīvus Ēthĭcus): as,

Quid *mĭhi* Celsus ăgit, *How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

Hic Mărius vĕniet *tĭbi* ŏrīgĭne parvā, *Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The *Dativus Ethicus* is a more delicate shade of the *Dativus Commodi.*

3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, some of them apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the Dativus Commodi or Incommodi:

1. *To assist:* subvĕnio, succurro, auxĭlior.

2. *To resist, oppose:* rĕsisto, adversor, obnītor, rĕnītor, rĕpugno, obsum, &c.

3. *To favour, study (be devoted to):* fāveo, indulgeo, stŭdeo.

4. *To envy, be jealous of:* invīdeo, aemŭlor (see *Obs.* 4).

5. *To please:* plăceo, arrīdeo.

6. *To serve, obey, benefit:* pāreo, ōbēdio, obtempĕro, servio, prōsum.

7. *To trust* or *distrust:* crēdo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.

8. *To spare, refrain from:* parco, tempĕro.

9. *To advise, persuade:* suādeo, persuādeo.

10. *To flatter:* ădūlor, assentor, blandior.

11. *To cure:* mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor.

12. *To pardon:* ignosco.

13. *To congratulate:* grātŭlor.

14. *To revile:* mălĕdīco, obtrecto, convīcior.

15. *To be angry:* īrascor, succenseo.

16. *To protect:* patrōcĭnor.

17. *To command:* impĕro, impĕrĭto, praecĭpio, and sometimes dŏmĭnor, mŏdĕror, tempĕro

With some others.

Hŏmĭnes *hŏmĭnĭbus* plūrĭmum et *prōsunt* et *obsunt*, *Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

Līber is est existĭmandus, qui nulli *turpĭtūdĭni servit*, *That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

Non lĭcet sui commŏdi causā *nŏcēre alteri*, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmosthĕnes ējus ipsīus artis, *cui stŭdēbat*, prīmam lĭtĕram non pŏtĕrat dīcĕre, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antĭochus se nec *impensae*, nec *lābōri*, nec *pĕrĭcŭlo parsūrum* pollĭcēbātur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mĕdĭci tōto corpŏre cūrando, *mĭnĭmae* ĕtiam *parti mĕdentur*, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Prŏbus *invĭdet nēmĭni*, *The good man envies no one.*—Cic.

Epĭcūrus *Phaedōni* turpissĭme *mălĕdixit, Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.*—Cic.

Quis *Isocrăti est adversātus* impensius (quam Aristŏtĕles), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*—Cic.

Iis aemŭlāmur qui ea hăbeant quae nos hăbēre cŭpiāmus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want.*—Cic.

Omnĭbus *gentĭbus* ac *nātiōnĭbus impĕrāre, To rule over all peoples and nations.*—Cic.

Mŏdĕrāri ănĭmo et *ōrātioni* cum sis īrātus, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally: as, mĭhi invĭdētur, *I am envied.* See § 234, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. Jŭvo, adjŭvo, *I assist;* dēlecto, oblecto, *I delight;* cūro, *I take care of,* or *treat medically;* always govern the Accusative.

Obs. 3. Mĕdĕor, mĕdĭcor, *I heal;* and ădŭlor, *I flatter,* have sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemŭlor, in sense of to *rival, emulate,* is always followed by an Accusative:

Me *Agămemnŏnem* aemŭlari pŭtas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.*—Nep.

Obs. 5. Invĭdeo, *I envy, begrudge,* may take in addition to a Dative of the Person an Accusative (or in later writers an Ablative) of *the thing begrudged:* as,

Invĭdent nōbis *măgistram* optĭmam, *They envy us the best of teachers* (*Nature*).—Cic.

Nĕ *spectācŭlo* quĭdem proelii nōbis invĭdērunt, *They* (*the gods*) *have not even begrudged us the spectacle of a battle.*—Tac. (Ger. 33.)

Obs. 6. *Jŭbeo, rĕgo,* and *gŭberno* are always followed by the Accusative, and *dŏmĭnor, mŏdĕror, tempĕro,* as frequently by the Accusative as by the Dative; especially when they mean *to govern:* as,

O dīva grātum qui *rĕgis Antium, O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium!*—Hor.

Spĕrāre *nos* ămīci *jŭbent, Our friends bid us hope.*—Cic.

Qui (Jūpĭter) *res* hŏmĭnum ac deorum, qui *mărc* ac *terras tempĕrat, Who governs the affairs of men and gods, who governs sea and land.*—Hor.

Quum sōlus rempublicam gĕrĕret, *orbem*que terrārum *gŭbernāret, When he was carrying on the commonwealth alone, and governing the world.*—Cic.

Obs. 7. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative: as,

Haec nobis convĕniunt, *These things agree with us.*
Convĕnīre aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*
Mĕtuo, tĭmeo te, *I fear you.*
——————— tibi, *I am apprehensive for you.*
Consŭlo te, *I consult you.*
——— tibi, *I consult for your interests.*
——— in te, *I take measures against you.*
Prospĭcio, and provĭdeo te, *I see you at a distance.*
——————— tibi, *I consult for your interests.*
Cāveo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you.*
——tĭbi, *I am concerned for your safety.*
Tempĕro, mŏdĕror aliquid, *to regulate, arrange.*
——————— mihi, irae, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain.*

4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

§ 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter
ob, post, prae, sub and sŭper

govern a Dative, with reference to which the Preposition retains its original force. In the case of transitive Verbs, this Dative is the Dative of the indirect object, the direct object of the verb being denoted by the Accusative: as,

Tu *mĭhi* (= in me) terram *in*-jĭce, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).* —Virg.

In-cŭbuit *tŏro* (= in tŏrum), *She leaned upon her couch.*—Virg.

Quum prŏpĕmŏdo *mūris* (= ad muros) *ac*-cessisset, *When he had almost got up to the walls.*—Liv.

Caesări (= ob Caesărem) vĕnienti *oc*-currit, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.*—Caes.

Prae-pōnens ultĭma *prīmis* (= prae primis), *Putting the last before the first.*—Hor.

Quum virtūte *omnĭbus* (= prae omnibus) *prae*-stārent, *Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. The preposition, however, is frequently repeated with its case instead of the Dative, especially after compounds of *ad, con, in.* For instance *commūnĭco* is always constructed *aliquid cum aliquo: inesse* in the best writers is constructed with *in.* On the contrary *adjăceo, assĭdeo, adsto,* mostly take a Dative. When a Preposition is compounded with a Verb signifying *motion to* or *from* a place, it usually governs the same Case as *out* of composition.

Obs. 2. *Assuēfăcio, assuesco* are usually constructed with the Ablative, rarely with the Dative: as,

Cum Lūsĭtānis *gĕnĕre* quōdam pugnae assuēfacti, *Accustomed to a certain kind of fighting with the Lusitani.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. Verbs compounded with *ante* and *prae,* as *antesto, antĕcĕdo, antĕcello, praesto,* are usually constructed with the Dative, but sometimes with the Accusative: v. § 239.

Obs. 4. Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo,* have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

Circumdăre brāchia collo, *To put the arms about any one's neck.*—Ov.

Oppĭdum vallo et fossā circumdăre, *To surround a town with a rampart and moat.*—Cic.

Obs. 5. Some compounds of *a (ab), de, e (ex),* take a Dative of the indirect object, as vĭtam *ălĭcui* ērĭpĕre, *to take violently from a man his life;* dērĭpĕre pellem *leōni,* to rob the *lion of his skin.*—Ov.

5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the *Perfect* Tenses Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

Mihi consĭlium *captum est, My plan has been formed.*—Cic.

Cui non *sunt audītae* Demosthĕnis vĭgĭliae, *Who is there by whom the night studies of Demosthenes have not been heard of?*—Cic.

Obs. The Dative is by the Poets used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb: as,

Barbărus hīc ĕgo sum quia non intellĭgor *ulli*, *Here I am a barbarian, inasmuch as I am understood by none.*—Ov.

Nĕque cernĭtur *ulli*, *Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).*—Virg.

Carmĭna quae scrĭbuntur ăquae *pōtōrĭbus*, *Poems that are written by water-drinkers.*—Hor. (But here perhaps *potoribus* is the Ablative: v. § 311, *Obs.*)

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

Quod *fĕrendum est* mollĭter *săpienti*, *Which the wise man must bear gently.*—Cic.

Semper ĭta vīvāmus, ut rătiōnem *reddendam* (esse) *nōbis* arbĭtrēmur, *Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.*—Cic.

Obs. But the Ablative may be used to prevent ambiguity: see § 536, *Obs.* 3

6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs lĭcet, *it is lawful;* lĭbet, *it pleases;* expĕdit, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

Lĭcet nēmĭni dūcĕre exercĭtum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

Ei lĭbēbit, quod non lĭcet (*ei*), *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

Obs. After *lĭcet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse;* as,

Lĭcuit esse Themistŏcli *ōtiōso*, *Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.*—Cic.

Illis *tĭmĭdis* et *ignāvis* lĭcet esse, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv.

7. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb sum with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

Mĭhi est injusta nŏverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

Trōja *huic lŏco* nōmen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. When, as in the last example, a *name* is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,

Scīpio cui Africāno cognōmen ex vĭrtūte fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

In campis, quĭbus nōmen ĕrat *Raudiis*, dēcertāvēre, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

Obs. 2. The following use of the Dative is an idiom borrowed from the Greek:

Ut *mīlĭtĭbus* lăbor *vŏlentĭbus* esset, *That the soldiers might be willing to undertake labour.* (Lit., *That the labour might be to the soldiers as willing persons*: τοῖς στρατιώταις βουλομένοις εἴη.)

8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (Dativus Commodi, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be* or *become; to give, send* or *come; to impute* or *reckon*, &c.: as,

Ampla dŏmus saepe *fit dŏmĭno dēdĕcŏri, A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

Pausānias rex Lacĕdaemŏnĭōrum *vēnit Attĭcis auxĭlio, Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Nep.

Nec tĭmuit *sĭbi* nē *vĭtio* quis *vertĕret, Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

Cui bŏno fuit, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person: as,

Nec eam rem hăbuit *relĭgiōni, Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.

Magno ŏdio esse apud ĭllĭquem, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

B. Dative after Adjectives and Adverbs.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a Dativus Commodi, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives:—

1. *Of Utility:* ūtĭlis, commŏdus, fructuōsus, &c.
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury:* ĭnūtĭlis, noxius.
3. *Of Fitness:* aptus, accommŏdātus, ĭdōneus, convĕniens, proprius, &c. (Also often following *ad* and *acc.*)
4. *Of Unfitness:* incommŏdus, inconvĕniens.
5. *Of Acceptableness:* grātus, jūcundus, cārus.
6. *Of Displeasure:* ingrātus, injūcundus.
7. *Of Friendliness:* bĕnignus, ămīcus, bĕnĕvŏlus, fīdēlis fīdus.
8. *Of Hostility:* ĭnĭmīcus, pernĭcĭōsus, mălĕvŏlus, mălignus, mŏlestus, īrātus, infestus, ălĭēnus.
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity:* sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis.
10. *Of Equality and inequality:* aequālis, ĭnaequālis.
11. *Of Proximity:* fīnĭtĭmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus.

Rōmŭlus *multĭtūdĭni grātior* fuit quam Patrĭbus, *Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

Deiotărus *fĭdelis* erat *Pŏpŭlo Rŏmāno, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

Patriæ sŏlum *ōmnĭbus cārum* est, *The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

Sĭcŭli *Verri* ĭnīmīci infestique sunt, *The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

Ingrātam Vĕnĕri pōne sŭperbiam, *Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

Numquid *īrātus* es *mĭhi* propter has res, *You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

Idque eo făcĭlius crēdēbātur quia *sīmīle vēro* vĭdēbātur, *And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

Paupertātem *dīvĭtĭis* ĕtiam inter hŏmĭnes esse *aequālem* vŏlŭmus, *We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *ămīcus, ĭnīmīcus, fīnĭtĭmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus*, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. *Sĭmĭlis* and *dissĭmĭlis* are quite as often found with the Genitive. Mutual likeness, &c., is expressed with *inter:* as,

Dissĭmillĭmi *inter se, Very unlike each other.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad:* as,

Multas ad res pĕrūtĭles (*nōbis*) Xĕnŏphontis libri sunt, *The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. The Adjectives which express *friendliness,* as *bĕnignus, bĕnĕvŏlus*, &c., are often constructed with *ergā* or *adversus;* and those which express *hostility,* as *mălignus, mălĕvŏlus,* with *adversus,* or *in.*

Obs. 5. Ălĭēnus, when it means *unfriendly,* takes a Dative; when it means *foreign to, ab* and Ablative; less frequently a Genitive; when it means *unsuitable,* a Dative or *ad* and Accusative.

§ 299. After Adverbs.—Any Adverb may govern a Dative which corresponds in sense to the Adjectives above described: as,

Congruenter nātūrae vīvĕre, *To live agreeably to nature.*—Cic.

Prŏpius Tĭbĕri quam Thermŏpўlis, *Nearer the Tiber than Thermopylae.*

Obs. But *prŏpius* more frequently takes an Accusative or Preposition (*ab.*, &c.)

C. Exceptional Uses of the Dative.

§ 300. In the Poets, the Dative is occasionally, by a Greek idiom, used after a Verb of *fighting* (instead of the Ablative with *cum*): as,

Luctantem *Icārĭis fluctĭbus* Africum, *The south wind wrestling the Icarian billows.*—Hor.

(Compare the Gr. μάχεσθαί τινι.)

§ 301. The Dative is sometimes used by the Poets to express *motion towards:* as,

It clāmor *coelo, The shout rises to heaven.*—Virg.

Chapter XLI.—The Ablative.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*: as,

Trōjae vēnit ab *ōris*, *He came from the coasts of Troy.*—Virg.

Fāto prŏfŭgus, *An exile by destiny.*—Virg.

Carthāgo, *stŭdiis* asperrĭma belli, *Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.*—Virg.

1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from.* See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as **a** or **ab**, **de**, **ex**, **sĭne**, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See Chapter on Prepositions.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate*, *remove*, *deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) Vērēcundum Bacchum sanguĭneis *prŏhĭbēte rixis*, *Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!*—Hor.

Nōdōsā corpus *prŏhĭbēre chiragrā*, *To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

Lĭbĕrāre ălĭquem *culpā*, *To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

Vercingĕtŏrix *oppugnātiōne destĭtit*, *Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.*—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppĭdis* vim hostium *prohĭbent*, *They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

Vĭri bŏni lăpĭdĭbus *a fŏro pellēbantur*, *Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

Eum *ab* omni errātiōne lĭbĕrāvit, *He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *lĭbĕro* is quite *as* frequent with the abl. alone.)

Tu Jūpĭter, hunc *a tuis ārīs* arcēbis, *Thou, O Jove, wilt keep this (villain) from thine altars!*—Cic.

§ 307. The Ablative is used after some Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from* (see § 317): as,

Rōbustus ănĭmus *omni* est *līber cūrā*, *The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

Fāmā atque *fortūnīs* expertes, *Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

Obs. 1. The Preposition *ab* is often used along with the Ablative: as, *Līber ab* omni sumptu, *Free from all expense.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Expers, ĭnānis, more frequently take a Genitive: lĭber, văcuus, always the Ablative alone, or with a Preposition.

Obs. 3. For the construction of ălienus, see § 298, *Obs.* 5.

§ 308. **ŏpus est**, *there is need*, like verbs of privation, governs the Ablative: as,

Auctōrĭtāte nōbis *ŏpus* est, *We have need of authority.*—Cic.

Opus est mātūre *facto*, *There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

Obs. 1. But **ŏpus** is also used as an Adjective (indeclinable), in the Predicate: as,

Thĕmistocles cĕlĕrĭter, quae *ŏpus erant*, rĕpĕrĭēbat, *Themistocles was quick at finding out what was wanted.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. The Ablative after *ŏpus est* is perhaps strictly an ablative of the instrument = *there is work (to be done) with something.*

2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation. It denotes that *from which* anything is made or originates.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles **nātus**, *born from*; **ortus**, **ŏriundus**, *sprung from*; **gĕnĭtus**, *begotten of*: also in the poets with **sātus**, **ēdĭtus**, **creātus**, **crētus**, *sprung from* or *begotten of*: as,

Jŏve nātus et *Maiā*, *Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

Orte *Sāturno*, *O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor.

Quo sanguĭne crētus, *From what blood (family) sprung.*—Virg.

Albā ŏriundum săcerdōtium, *A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

Obs. But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to *more remote* origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

Hippocrătes et Epicȳdes, nāti Carthāgĭne, sed *ŏriundi ab* Syrācūsis, *Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.

Belgae *orti* sunt *a* Germānis, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.

3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Means*, or *Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

Sol cuncta *suā lūce* illustrat et complet, *The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos *virtūte* praecēdunt, *The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

(Britanni) *ĕquĭtātu* atque *essĕdis* ad flūmen progressi (sunt), *The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

Epămīnondas princeps *meo jūdĭcio* Graeciae, *Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

Cornĭbus tauri, apri *dentĭbus*, *morsu* leōnes, se tūtantur, *Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

Obs. The Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person*, the preposition **a** or **ab** is required with the Ablative: see § 234, *Obs.* 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is occasionally used without a preposition, especially where there is an attributive: as,

Scrībēris Vărio Macōnii carmĭnis *ālīte*, *Thou shalt be written of by Varius, a swan of Maeonian note.*—Hor. (See Orell. ad Hor. Od. 1, 6, 2.) Comp. Varr. R. R. 1, 17: omnes agri cŏluntur hŏmĭnĭbus servis aut lībĕris aut utrisque, *either by slaves, by free men, or by both.*

§ 312. 1. If the *manner* in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without **cum**:

2. But if the *manner* is expressed by a Substantive alone, **cum** must be used: as,

Miltĭădes res Chersōnēsi *summā* aequĭtāte constĭtuit, *Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

Athēnienses *cum sīlentio* audīti sunt, *The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mŏdus*, *rătio*, *mos*, *rītus*, *consuētūdo*, never take a preposition: as, hoc modo, *in this manner*; Persārum mōre, *after the custom of the Persians.*

Obs. 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, **cum** is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, **cum** cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, ardēre stŭdio, *to burn with zeal*; exsultāre gaudio, *to exult with joy*; intĕrīre (pĕrīre, mŏri) fāme, *to die of hunger*; gaudēre (laetāri) ămīci adventu, *to rejoice at the arrival of a friend*; glōriāri victōriā

suā, *to boast of his victory;* confīdĕre nātūrā lŏci, *to trust in the nature of the ground:* as,

Dēlicto dŏlēre, *correctiōne* gaudēre, nos ŏportet, *We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

Nōmĭnĭbus vĕtĕrum glōriantur, *They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. With Transitive Verbs an Ablative of the Cause is for the most part used only in the case of such verbal Substantives as *jussu, mandātu, rŏgātu, permissu,* &c.: as,

Adversus Jāsŏnem Tīmŏtheus pŏpŭli *jussu* bellum gessit, *Timotheus carried on war against Jason by command of the people.*—Nep.

In other cases the preposition *propter* with the Accusative, or *causā* with the Genitive, is generally used instead of the Ablative of the Cause.

Obs. 2. If the Cause is a state of feeling, the Perfect Participle of some verb signifying "to induce" is generally used with the Ablative of the Instrument: as, *cūpĭdĭtāte adductus, commōtus, incĭtātus, impulsus,* &c.

Obs. 3. *Fīdo* and *confīdo* are used with the Dative of *a person* (see § 291); *dŏleo,* usually with the Accusative (see § 236); *glōrior* with the prepositions *de* or *in:* as,

In virtūte rectē glōriāmur, *We rightly glory in virtue.*—Cic.
De tuis dīvĭtiis glōriāris, *You boast of your wealth.*—Cic.

§ 314. Adjectives which express a state of the feelings are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, contentus, *contented,* laetus, *rejoicing,* sŭperbus, *proud,* frētus, *relying on,* and, less frequently, maestus, *sorrowful,* anxius, *anxious:* as,

Frētus *dilĭgentiā vestrā,* dissĕro brĕvius, *Relying on your attention, I treat the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

Paucis contentus, *Content with little.*—Hor.

Phoebe sŭperbe *lўrā,* *Thou Phœbus, proud of thy lyre.*—Tib.

Obs. For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nītor, pōtior, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

Săpiens *rătiōne* optĭme *ūtĭtur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.*—Cic.

Plūrĭmis mărĭtĭmis *rēbus fruimur* atquĕ *ūtimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.*—Cic.

Ăgēsilāus *magnā* est praedā pōtītus, *Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

Obs. 2. *Pōtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōtīri,* to obtain the *management of affairs.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. Fungor and vescor are sometimes found with the Accusative: as,

Nĕque bŏni nĕque lĭbĕrālis functus *officium* est vĭri, *He has neither acted the part of an honest man nor a gentleman.*—Ter.

Coepit vesci *singŭlas, He began to eat them up one by one.*—Phaedr.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *valuing*, *exchanging*; and the Adjectives cārus, *dear*, and vīlis, *cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

Lycurgus *ēmi* singŭla non *pĕcūniā*, sed *compensātiōne* mercium jussit, *Lycurgus directed that everything should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

Viginti *tālentis* unam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes *vendĭdit*, *Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

Quod non ŏpus est, *asse cārum* est, *What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mūtat quadrāta *rŏtundis*, *He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *muto*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives magno, *at a high price*; permagno, plūrīmo, *at a very high price*; nīmio, *at too high a price*; parvo, *at a low price*; mīnīmo, *for a very low price*; nīhilo, *for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

Permagno dĕcŭmas vendĭdisti, *You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

Non pŏtest *parvo* res magna constāre, *A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness* or *want* often govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

Germānia *rivis flūmĭnĭbusque* ăbundat, *Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

Neptūnus *ventis* implēvit vēla *sĕcundis*, *Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

Vŏluptāte virtus saepe căret, nunquam indĭget, *Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen.

Cēra rĕferta nōtis, *A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which*; as, implēre ollam dēnāriōrum, *to fill a pot with denaries*, Cic. (Fam. 9, 18); Adjectives of *filling* usually take a Genitive (§ 276). Of Verbs of *want*, cāreo takes always an Ablative; indĭgeo, usually a Genitive; ĕgeo, either the Genitive or Ablative. For the construction of Adjectives of *want*, see § 276.

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficĕre*, *instruĕre*, *ornāre*, &c., come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

Praedā affĕcit pŏpŭlāres suos, *He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Praedĭtus*, *endowed with*, also governs the Ablative; as,

Mens est praedĭta *mōtu* sempĭterno, *The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse trādĭtur *excelsā stātūrā, cŏlōre candĭdo, tĕrĕtibus membris, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.*—Suet.

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, *Obs.* 1. The Ablative is also generally used of external features, as in the above example.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nĭhil est *ōtiōsā sĕnectute* (= *quam* otiosa senectus) jūcundius, *Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.*—Cic.

Tullus Hostĭlius *Rōmŭlo* (= *quam* Romulus) fuit fĕrōcior, *T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.*—Liv.

Scīmus sōlem multo mājōrem esse *terrā* (quam terram), *We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative, instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is less frequent, but is found in the best authors: as,

Quem auctōrem lŏcuplētiōrem Plātōne laudāre possūmus, *What weightier authority can we quote than Plato?*—Cic.

When the Object-Accusative is a Pronoun, the Ablative is more frequently used instead of *quam;* and this is always the case with the Relative in negative clauses: as,

Pūnĭcum bellum, *quo* nullum mājus Rōmāni gessēre, *The Punic war, than which the Romans carried on none greater.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The omission of *quam* with the comparative of an adverb is rare in prose: comp. § 548.

Obs. 3. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,

Miltĭădes ămīcior (fuit) omnium lĭbertāti *quam* (fuit) *suae dŏmĭnātiōni, Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than he was to his own sovereign power.*—Nep.

Obs. 4. The use of the Ablatives *spe, exspectātione, ŏpīniōne, acquo, justo, sŏlīto*, after the comparative, is idiomatic, and is equivalent to *quam est*, or *erat*, with the Nominative: as,

Opīniōne omnium mājōrem cēpi dŏlōrem, *I experienced greater grief than all thought I should* (lit. *greater than the opinion of all men*).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner dignus, *worthy*, and indignus, *unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

Virtus *īmĭtātiōne*, non *invĭdiā*, digna est, *Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.*—Cic.

Quam multi *lūce indigni* sunt, *How many are unworthy of the light of day!*—Sen.

6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words. as,

Turres *dēnis pĕdĭbus* quam mūri *altiōres sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.*—Curt.

Q. Pompēĭus, *biennio* quam nos *major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.*—Cic.

Nātūra id *multo artĭfĭcĭōsius* effĭcit, *Nature effects that more ingeniously by far.*—Cic.

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingĕnĭōsior, *hoc* dŏcet lăbōrĭōsius, *The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.*—Cic.

7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Plăto *ūno* et *octōgēsĭmo anno* scrĭbens est mortuus, *Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.*—Cic.

Extrēmā puĕrĭtiā mīles fuit summi impĕrātōris, *In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.*—Cic.

Sōlis *occāsu, At sunset.*—Liv.

Sāturni stella *trīginta* fĕre *annis* cursum suum conflcit, *The star of Saturn completes its orbit in about 30 years.*—Cic.

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive, the Preposition in is generally used: as,

Aurīgandi arte *in ădŏlescentiā* fuit clārus, *He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.*—Suet.

Ter *in anno, Thrice in the year.*—Cic.

Obs. The following Ablatives are exceptions: die, *by day;* nocte, *by night* (but also *de* die, *de* nocte); vespĕre *s.* vespĕri, *in the evening*, tempŏre, *in time, in season:* which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition in: as,

Agămemnon vix *dĕcem annis* ūnam cēpit urbem, *Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.*—Nep.

Sĕnātus dēcrēvit, ut lēgāti Jŭgurthae *in diēbus proxĭmis dĕcem* Itălīā dēcēdĕrent, *The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.*—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with ante or

post after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

Accusative.	*Ablative.*
ante *or* post tres annos	trĭbus annis ante *or* post.
„ post tertium annum	tertio anno ante *or* post.
tres ante *or* post annos	trĭbus ante *or* post annis
tertium ante *or* post annum	tertio ante *or* post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

Annis quingentis et *decem post* Rōmam condĭtam Lĭvĭus fābŭlam dĕdit, *Livius brought forward a drama* 510 *years after the founding of Rome.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used:

Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnĕrat.
Post tres annos quam vēnĕrat.
Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnĕrat.
Post annum tertium quam vēnĕrat

Or *post* may be omitted:

Tertio anno quam vēnĕrat.
All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*

Obs. 2. Abhinc, *ago*, is used both with the Accusative and Ablative: as,
Abhinc *annos* quīnquordĕcim, *Fourteen years ago.*—Cic.
Abhinc trīginta *diēbus*, *Thirty days ago.*—Cic.

8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* **dextrā**, *on the right hand;* **laevā, sĭnistrā**, *on the left hand;* **terrā mārīque**, *on sea and land;* **bello**, *in the field* (comp. § 258): as

Intŏnuit *laevā*, *It thundered on the left hand.*—Virg.
*Terrā mări*que conquīrĕre, *To make search by sea and land.*—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, **lŏcus, terra, rĕgio, via, ĭter**, with similar words, are used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

Athēnienses *lŏco ĭdōneo* castra fēcērunt, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

Aurēliā viā prŏfectus est, *He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective tōtus, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Quis *tōto mări* lŏcus tūtus fuit, *What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

Tōtā Asiā, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

Obs. So Livy has mĕdio monte, *along the middle of the mountain range* (38, 26): but *in* mĕdio colle, Caes. (B. G. 1, 24.)

§ 331. In all cases besides the above the Preposition in is used in prose: as,

In Ităliā nullus exercĭtus (erat), *There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

In hac sŏlĭtūdine căreo omnium colloquio, *In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

Silvisque agrisque viisque corpŏra foeda jăcent, *O'er forest, field, and highway, the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

Mĕdius *Pollūce* et *Castŏre*, *Betwixt Pollux and Castor.*—Ov. (Am. 2, 16, 13.)

9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute:* as,

His rēbus cognĭtis, Caesar ad nāves rĕvertĭtur, *Having learnt these things* (lit., *these things having been learnt*), *Caesar returns to the fleet.*—Caes.

Pўthăgŏras *Tarquĭnio Superbo regnante* in Ităliam vēnit, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus* (lit., *Tarquinius Superbus reigning*).—Cic.

Ălĭquid *salvis lēgĭbus* ăgĕre, *To do a thing without breaking the laws* (lit., *the laws being safe* or *unbroken*).—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

Caesar, *expŏsĭto exercĭtu*, ad hostes contendit, *Caesar, having landed his army, hastens against the enemy.*—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,

Nondum *comperto*, in quam rĕgionem vēnisset, *It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

Excepto quod non sĭmul esses, cētĕra laetus, *This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

Obs. 1. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives audīto, cognĭto, comperto, and the like.

Obs. 2. Tacitus even uses an Adjective in the same way: as,

Juxta *pĕrĭcŭlōso*, ficta seu vēra prōmĕret, *It being alike hazardous whether he spoke what was false or true.* (Ann. 1, 6.)

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

Nātus est Augustus, *M. Tullio Cĭcĕrōne* et *Antōnio* consŭlĭbus, *Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

Si *se invīto* transīre cōnārentur, *If they should attempt to cross against his will* (lit., *he being unwilling*).—Caes.

Chapter XLII.—The Vocative.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to: as,

Recte te, *Cȳre*, beātum fĕrunt, *With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.*—Cic.

Et *tu, Brūte, And thou too, Brutus!*

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste*, &c., with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection **O**, especially in the Poets: as,

O lux Dardănĭae, *O thou light of the land of Troy!*—Virg.

O dĕcus impĕrii, *O thou glory of the empire!*—Lucan.

Obs. This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250: the Vocative is used only in *speaking to* or *invocation*.

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative: as,

Audi tu *pŏpŭlus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba!*—Liv.

Obs. Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative; for it is found even without Apposition: as,

Agĕdum *pontĭfex pŭblĭcus* pŏpŭli Rōmāni, praei verba, *Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!*—Liv.

Chapter XLIII.—Adjectives.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons;* and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things:* as,

Omnes omnia bŏna dīcĕre, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things).* Ter.

Parvum parva dĕcent, *Small (things) befit a small (man).*—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive hŏmo or res must be expressed: thus, multōrum hŏmĭnum, *of many persons;* multārum rērum, *of many things.* [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things.*]

Obs. 2. Adjectives are principally used in this way in the Plural: as, docti, *learned men;* magnă, *great things.* But in the Singular a Substantive is usually added: as, homo doctus, *a learned man;* pulchra res, *a beautiful thing.*

§ 340. When two Adjectives are attributives to one Substantive they must be connected by a Conjunction. Thus whereas in English we say, "*Many good men,*" the Latin idiom requires multi *et* bŏni vĭri, etc.

Obs. 1. But if an Adjective and Substantive together form one single notion, an additional Adjective may be used without a Connective: as,

Nāvis ŏnĕrāria maxima, *A transport of the largest size.*—Cic

Stătuae ĕquestres īnaurātae, *Gilded equestrian-statues.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. The above rule does not apply to numerals or to Adjective Pronouns: thus we may say, dĕcem bŏni vĭri, illi boni viri, omnes boni viri.

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with **summus**, *at the top, the top of;* **infīmus** or **īmus**, *at the bottom, the bottom of;* **mĕdius**, *the middle;* **extrēmus**, *last, at the end of;* **prīmus**, *first, at the beginning of;* **rĕlīquus**, *remaining, the remainder of;* **dīmĭdiātus**, *halved, the half of:* as,

Ad īmam quercum, *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr.

Unus dīmĭdiātusque mensis, *One month and a half.*—Cic.

Extrēmā hiĕme, *At the end of winter.*—Cic.

Rĕlĭqua vīta, *The rest of life.*—Cic.

Obs. But *relĭquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, reliquum vitae (= reliqua vita), Liv.

§ 342. The Neuter of an Adjective is often equivalent to an abstract Substantive. Thus, **aequum**, *the equitable*, is equivalent to aequĭtas, *equity*; **hŏnestum**, *the honourable*, to hŏnestas, *honour*, *virtue*; and the like: as,

Omnis *honesti justi*que disciplīna, *The entire training which belongs to honour and justice.*—Quint.

In jūre aut in *aequo*, *In law or in equity.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This is especially the case in such adverbial phrases as ex aequo, *in accordance with equity*; ex (de) improvīso, *unexpectedly*; etc.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *is*, *e*, are rarely used in this way except in the Nominative and Accusative. Yet Horace has miscēre ūtīle *dulci*, *to mingle the useful with the agreeable* (A. P. 343); and Livy, pŏtior *utĭlis* quam hŏnesti cūra, *the care for expediency took precedence of that of honour* (42, 47).

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego eum a me *invītissĭmus* dīmīsi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*—Cic.

Plūs hŏdie bŏni *imprūdens* fēci, quam *sciens* ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did wittingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: **invītus**, *unwilling*, *unwillingly*; **laetus**, *joyful*, *joyfully*; **lībens** = lībenter, *gladly*, *with pleasure*; **sciens**, *knowing*, *knowingly*; **imprūdens**, *unwitting*, *unwittingly*; **impērītus**, *unskilled*, *unskilfully*: also, **mātūtīnus**, *in the morning*; **vespertīnus**, *in the evening*; **dŏmestĭcus**, *at home*; **prōnus**, *on one's face*; **sūpīnus**, *on one's back*; **sublīmis**, *aloft*; **mĕdius**, *in the midst*.

Obs. Of the above mātūtīnus, vespertīnus, domestĭcus as = mānĕ, vespĕrĕ, dŏmī are of rare occurrence.

§ 344. The neuter (accusative) singular is sometimes used adverbially; especially by the poets: as,

Dulce rīdēre, lŏqui, *Sweetly to smile, to speak.*—Hor.

Pectus *turbĭdum* laetātur, (*My*) *bosom feels a tumultuous joy.*—Hor.

Sometimes the neuter plural is used: as,

Ācerbă tŭens, *looking fiercely.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. This idiom is occasionally found in prose: as,

Falsum rĕnīdens vultu, *Wearing a counterfeit smile on his features.*—Tac.

Obs. 2. This use of the neuter accusative is to be explained on the principle of the cognate accusative (see § 280). Thus dulce rīdēre (Gr. ἡδὺ γελᾶν) is equivalent to dulcem rīsum ridere; turbĭdum laetāri, to turbĭdam laetātiōnem laetari, etc.

§ 345. **Prior, prīmus, postĕrior, postrēmus,** are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

Hannĭbal *prīmus* cum exercĭtu Alpes transiit, *Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.*

Hĭspānia *postrēma* omnium prōvinciārum perdŏmĭta est, *Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.*—Liv

Obs. The use of *prior, prīmus,* and *postĕrior, postrēmus,* must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius, prīmum,* etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus primus dixit means, *he was the first who spoke;* primum dixit, *he first spoke, and then,* etc.

Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam,* the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque hăbet [*hĕrus* meus] plus săpientiae quam *lăpis, Nor has he* [*my master*] *any more sense than a stone* (*has*).—Pl.

Dĕcet nōbis cāriorem esse *patrĭam* quam *nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.*—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hŏmĭnis doctiōris quam *fuit Claudius, These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.*—Gell.

Argentum reddĭdisti L. Cordio, hŏmīni non gratiōsiōri, quam *Cn. Calidius est, You restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calidius.*—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Egŏ hŏmĭnem callĭdiōrem vīdi nēmĭnem quam *Phormiōnem* (for, quam Phormio est), *I have never seen a cleverer fellow than Phormio.*—Ter.

Patrem tam plăcĭdum reddo quam *ŏvem* (= quam ŏvis est), *I make* (*your*) *father as quiet as a sheep.*—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of quam. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. Plus and amplius, *more*, and mĭnus, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Non *plus quam* quattuor millia effūgērunt (not effūgit), *Not more than four thousand escaped.*—Liv.

Pictores antīqui non sunt ūsi *plus* (not pluribus) *quam* quattuor cŏlōrĭbus, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.*—Cic.

Minus duo millia hŏmĭnum ex tanto exercĭtu effūgērunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.*—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, măgis is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree: as,

Corpŏra magna *magis* quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

Paulli contio fuit *vērior* quam *grātior* pŏpŭlo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

Obs. Tacitus departs from this construction, and uses the positive in the second member of the comparison, or even in both: as,

Clāris mājōribus quam *vĕtustis*, *Of a family more distinguished than old.*—Tac. (See § 720.)

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree: as,

Sĕnectus est nātūrā *lŏquācior*, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—Cic.

Vŏluptas, quum *mājor* est, omne ănĭmi lūmen exstinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro*: as,

Proelium *atrōcius quam pro* nūmĕro pugnantium, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut*: as,

Mājor sum *quam cui* possit fortūna nŏcēre, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.

Damna *mājōra* sunt *quam quae* aestĭmāri possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

§ 352. Atque and ac are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

Artius atque hĕdĕra, *More closely than ivy.*—Hor.

Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with quam, or in

the case of maximus with quantus also, either with or without possum: as,

Jŭgurtha *quam maxĭmas* pŏtest cōpias armat, *Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

Tanta est inter eos, *quanta maxĭma* pŏtest esse mōrum stŭdiōrumque distantia, *There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

Dīcam *quam brĕvissĭmē*, *I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

Obs. We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of:

1. **Unus** or **ūnus omnium**: as,

P. Scaevŏlam *ūnum* nostrae cīvĭtātis et ingĕnĭo et justĭtiā *praestantissĭmum* audeo dīcĕre, *I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

Miltiădes et antīquĭtāte gĕnĕris et glōriā mājōrum *ūnus omnium maxĭmē* flōrēbat, *Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. By **longē** or **multo**: as,

Alcĭbiădes omnium aetātis suae *multo formōsissimus* fuit, *Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative: as,

Tam sum mītis *quam qui lēnissĭmus*, (*i. e.* est), *I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

Tam sum ămīcus rĕipublicae *quam qui maxĭmē*, *I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. "*All the best*," "*all the wisest*," and similar phrases are expressed by **quisque** with the Superlative: as,

Săpientissĭmus quisque aequissĭmo ănĭmo mŏrĭtur, *All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

Altissĭma quaeque flūmĭna mĭnĭmo sŏno lābuntur, (*All*) *the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

Obs. 1. A similar meaning may be expressed with the comparative; thus the former of the above sentences might be expressed,

Quo (*or* ut) quisque est săpientior, ĭta aequiōre ănĭmo mŏrĭtur.

Obs. 2. A like sense may be expressed by quam . . . tam with the Superlative: as,

Quam vos *făcillĭme* ăgĭtis . . . .
Tam maxĭme vos aequo ănĭmo aequa noscĕre
Ŏportet, *In proportion as you live most at your ease, ought you above all others with fairness to entertain fair sentiments.*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 56).

CHAPTER XLIV.—PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

Ego te laudāvi, *tu* me culpasti, *I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

Nos, nos consŭles dēsŭmus, *It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty)!*—Cic.

§ 358. The speaker often uses the first Person Plural when he does not wish to intrude his own personality: as,

Sex libros de rēpublĭcā *scripsĭmus, We (=I) wrote six books upon the commonwealth.*—Cic.

Rĕlĭquum est ut de fēlĭcĭtāte Pompēii pauca *dicāmus, It remains for us (=me) to say a few words respecting the good fortune of Pompey.*—Cic.

Obs. Noster is used in the same way instead of *meus.*

§ 359. The plural forms **nostrum, vestrum,** must be carefully distinguished from **nostri, vestri.** The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with omnium. Thus *one of us* is unus nostrum (not unus nostri); *the wish of you all,* omnium vestrum (*not* vestri) voluntas.—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Nostri, vestri,* are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster, vester,* used abstractly. Thus, mĕmor nostri = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. *of us*).

Obs. 2. But nostri is used as a Partive when a division of human nature is spoken of: as,

Nostri mĕlior pars ănĭmus est, *The better part of us is the soul.*—Sen.

2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person. (See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun **sui, sĭbi, se,** with the Possessive Pronoun **suus,** refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

Nicias tuā *sui* mĕmŏrĭā dēlectātur, *Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

Bestiis hŏmĭnes ūti possunt ad *suam* ūtĭlĭtātem, *Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

Obs. These pronouns also refer to a Noun which is not the Nominative case, provided it be the real subject: as,

Jam inde ab ĭnĭtio *Faustŭlo* spes fuerat, rēgiam stirpem apud *se* ēdŭcāri, *Faustulus had from the very beginning entertained the hope that the children brought up with him were of royal origin.*—Liv.

A *Caesăre* invĭtor, *sibi* ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar to become his lieutenant.*—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun suus in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

Hannĭbălem sui cīves ē cīvĭtāte ējēcērunt, *His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

Cătĭlīna admŏnēbat *ălium* ĕgestātis, *ălium* cŭpĭdĭtātis *suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.*—Sall.

Sua cūjusque ănĭmantis nātūra est, *Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, sui, sibi, se, and suus may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Prŏcŭlus) dixisse fertur, a *se* vīsum esse Rōmŭlum, *Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a *se* vĕlit, illum ad *se* vĕnīre ŏportĕre, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

Obs. Inter se is used to denote reciprocity: as,

Vēri ămīci *inter se* dĭlĭgent, *True friends will love one another.*—Cic.

3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

Apud *matrem* recte est, *All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

De *frātre* confĭdo ita esse ut semper vŏlui, *As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

Obs. 1. The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable to:* as, suo loco, suo tempŏre, *at a favourable place* or *time.*

Obs. 2. On the use of the Possessive Pronoun instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, as, nulla tua ĕpistŏla, *no letter from you,* see § 267, *Obs.* 1.

4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. Hic is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me.* Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word. as,

Ŏpus vel in *hac* magnĭfĭcentiā urbis conspĭciendum, *A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

Qui *haec* vĭtŭpĕrāri vŏlunt, *Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

Sex. Stŏla, jūdex *hic* noster, *Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.*—Cic.

§ 365. Ille is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him* or *yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Ex suo regno sic Mithrĭdātes prōfūgit, ut ex eōdem Ponto Mēdēa *illa* quondam prōfūgisse dīcĭtur, *Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

§ 366. When hic and ille are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the *nearer*, *ille* to the *more remote*: as,

Caesar bĕnĕfĭciis atque mūnĭfĭcentiā magnus hăbēbātur, integrĭtāte vītae Cāto. *Ille* mansuētūdĭne et mĭserĭcordiā clarus factus, *huic* sēvērĭtas dignĭtātem addĭdĕrat, *Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life.* The former *had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency*: on the latter, *severity had conferred distinction.*—Sall.

Obs. *Hic* sometimes refers to that which is nearest in the mind of the speaker, though more distant in the order of words: as,

Cāve Cātōni antĕpōnas ne (Socrătem) quĭdem .... *hujus* ĕnim facta, *illīus* dicta laudantur, *Beware of preferring to Cato even Socrates, for while it is the deeds of the former (Cato), it is the words of the latter (Socrates) that receive praise.*—Cic.

Mĕlior tūtiorque est certa pax quam spērāta victōria, *haec* (pax) in tuā, *illa* in deōrum pōtestāte est, *Sure peace is better and safer than anticipated victory*: the former *is in your own control*, the latter *in the control of the gods.*—Liv.

§ 367. Hic and ille are both used to denote *the following*, or something to be mentioned; but *hic* refers to something present, *ille* to something new or different from the previous subject: as,

Unum hoc dēfīnio, esse nĕcessĭtātem virtūtis, *This one thing I would lay down, that there exists a necessity for virtue.*—Cic.

Illud in his rēbus vĕreor, ne forte reāris ...., *There is one thing (however) I fear, in connexion with these matters (namely) that you should perchance suppose, &c.*—Lucr.

§ 368. Iste is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you* or *that of yours*: as,

De *istis* rēbus exspecto tuas littĕras, *Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

Ista ōrātio, *That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. Iste often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

Iste vir optĭmus, *That excellent man of yours* (ironically).—Cic.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. **Is** refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Săcerdōte prætōre. *Is* quum hăbēret ūnĭcam fĭliam, *eam* bŏnis suis hērēdem instĭtuit, *P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.*—Cic.

Obs. Hence it may sometimes be rendered *the said*, as in the above example.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of **is** are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

(Multos) illustrāvit fortūna dum vexat (*sc.* eos), *Many Fortune has made famous while persecuting (them.)*—Sen.

Non mŏdo non invīdētur illi aetāti, vērum ĕtiam făvētur (*sc.* ei), *We not only do not envy that time of life, but we even favour it.*—Cic.

Obs. Sometimes the pronoun is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

Huic meae vŏluntāti ut fāveas adjūtorque (*sc.* ejus) sis, *That you would favour this my intention and be the furtherer (of it.)*—Cic. (Fam. 15, 4).

§ 372. **Is** or its strengthened form **īdem** is the regular attendant of the Relative *qui*: as,

Bestiae in *quo* lŏco nātae sunt ex *eo* se non commŏvent, *Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.*—Cic.

Eădem ūtĭlĭtātis *quae* hŏnestātis est rēgŭla, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.*—Cic.

§ 373. **Is** and **īdem** are emphatic, if placed after the relative clause: as,

Quod virtūte effĭci dēbet, *id* tentātur pecūniā, *What ought to be done by worth, the same is attempted by means of money.*—Cic.

Qui multa lŏquuntur *iidem* multa mentiuntur, *Those who talk much, (the same) tell many falsehoods.*

§ 374. **Et is (isque, atque is, et is quidem)** or **nec is,** make the preceding substantive more emphatic, and define it more particularly: as,

Hăbet hŏmo mĕmŏrĭam *et eam* infīnītam rērum innumĕrābĭlium, *The man has a recollection, and that an unbounded one, of innumerable subjects.*—Cic.

Epicūrus ūnā in dŏmo *et eā* quĭdem angustā tĕnuit ămīcōrum grĕges, *Epicurus in one house, and that a small one, entertained troops of friends.*—Cic.

Uno *atque eo* făcĭli proelio caesi hostes, *The enemy were cut to pieces in a single engagement, and that a slight one.*—Liv.

§ 375. Idem may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

Thorius ūtēbātur eo cĭbo, qui et suāvissĭmus esset *et idem* facillimus ad concŏquendum, *Thorius used such food as was* at once *most palatable and also easiest of digestion.*—Cic.

Nihil ūtĭle, quod non *idem* hŏnestum, (*There is*) *nothing expedient which is not* also *honourable.*—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vītam prŏfundĕre pro patriā părāti essent, ĭidem glōriae jactūram ne mĭnĭmam quĭdem făcĕre vellent, *There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and* at the same time *would not make the very least sacrifice of glory* (*on her behalf*).—Cic.

§ 376. Ipse gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

Quaeram ex *ipsā*, *I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

Accĭpio quod dant; mĭhi ĕnim sātis est, *ipsis* non sātis, *I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

Ibi mĭhi Tullĭŏla mea fuit praesto, nātāli suo ipso die, *There met me my* (*daughter*) *Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

Crassus triennio *ipso* mĭnor erat quam Antōnius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. Ipse, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus "me ipse laudo," *I* (*but not another person*) *praise myself;* but "me ipsum laudo," *I praise myself* (*but not another person*): as,

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcinā [i. e. ut *alii* me consolentur]; me *ipse* consōlor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

Drūsus se *ipse* intĕrēmit, *Drusus slew himself* [i. e. *others did not slay him.*]—Vell.

Frātrem suum dein *seipsum* interfēcit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac. (See also § 617.)

6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

Relatives.	Correlatives.
qui	**is, īdem**
quālis	**tālis**
quantus	**tantus**
quot (indecl.)	**tot** (indecl.)

ADVERBS.

ut	ĭta
quālĭter	tālĭter (rare)
quantŏpĕre	tantŏpĕre
quŏties (-ens)	tŏties (-ens)

Quāles . . . princĭpes, (*tāles*) . . . cīves, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas ŏpes *quantas* nunc hăbet, non hăbĕret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

*Quŏties*cunque dīco, *tŏties* mihi vĭdeor in jūdĭcium vĕnīre, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. For a complete list of the Relative Adjectives, see § 83, and of the Relative Adverbs, § 133.

Obs. 2. After *tālis, tantus, tot*, and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *quālis, quantus*, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam tālis vir (*sc.* quālis tu es) pōnis dŏmum, *Prythee being such a man* (*as thou art*), *buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

Conservāre urbes *tantas* atque *tāles* (sc. *quāles* eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable* (as those).—Cic.

Similarly the correlative is frequently left to be understood in the relative.

Obs. 3. It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *īdem:* but these pronouns are used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic, ille*, or *iste*. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor quī dīcĭtur Jŏvis, *Yonder splendour which is called* (*that of*) *Jupiter.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 17.)

§ 380. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—Instead of the full construction is . . . . qui, the Relative is often made to agrĕe, as if attributively, with the Substantive to be defined: as,

Quae cŭpĭdĭtātes a nātūrā prŏficiscuntur, făcĭle explentur sīne ullā injūriā, *Such* (= eae cupiditates quae) *passions as proceed from nature, are easily gratified without any wrong-doing.*—Cic.

(So Hōrace, Sat. I. 1, *init.*)

Obs. Virgil's *urbem* quam stătuo vestra est (Aen. I. 573), for *urbs* quam, &c., is an irregular extension of this usage.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause; as,

Thĕmistŏcles noctu de servis suis [eum] *quem hăbuit fidēlissimum*, ad Xerxem mīsit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

Obs. Horace has a construction the reverse of this: quis non mălārum quas ămor cūras hăbet oblīviscĭtur? = malarum curarum quas amor habet. (Epod. 2, 37).

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives quālis, quantus, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Quum tālis esset quālem te esse vĭdeo, *Since he was such a man as I see you to be.*—Cic.

Nullam unquam vīdi tantam (contiōnem), quanta nunc vestra est, *I never saw so large a meeting as yours now is.*—Cic.

Obs. Tālis, tantus are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. **Alĭquis**, *some one*, is more definite than quis. *Ălĭquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*: as,

Grăvis ălĭquis cāsus, *Some severe calamity.*—Cic.

Non tua ulla culpa est, si te *ălĭqui* tĭmuērunt, *It is no fault of yours if some persons have feared you.*—Cic.

Illis prōmissis standum non est, quae coactus *quis* mĕtu prōmīsĕrit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

Si quis quid reddit, *If one repays anything.*—Ter.

Divitiăcus Caesărem obsecrāvit, *ne quid* grăvius in frātrem stătuĕret, *Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. **Quispiam** is similar to quis, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position; as,

Quid, si hoc vŏluit *quispiam Deus*? *What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter. (See also Cic. de Sen. 3, 8.)

Obs. Hence it is not always possible to distinguish between the use of quispiam and aliquis.

§ 385. **Quīdam**, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary: as,

Quīdam ex advŏcātis, *One of the friends called in.*—Cic.

Hăbĭtant hic quaedam mūlĭercŭlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

Obs. *Quīdam* and *quăsi quīdam* are often used to soften an expression: as,

Ex tuis littĕris cognōvi praepostĕram *quandam* festīnātiōnem tuam, *I learnt from your letters your ill-timed haste—so to call it.*—Cic.

Non sunt isti audiendi, qui virtūtem dūram et *quăsi* ferream *quandam* vŏlunt, *Those are not to be heeded who will have a hard and, so to speak, iron virtue.*—Cic.

§ 386. The substantive **quisquam** and the adjective **ullus**, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sĭne*: as,

Justĭtia *nunquam* nŏcet *cuiquam*, qui eam hăbet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sŏciis nēmo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtūte nĕque ămīcĭtiam *neque ullam* rem expĕtendam consĕqui possŭmus, *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod *quisquam* dignum Pompēio afferre possit? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

Obs. In Plautus and Terence *omnis* is sometimes used, instead of *ullus*, with *sine*: as,

Sine omni pĕrīclo, *Without any danger.*—Ter.

§ 387. **Quisquam** and **ullus** are also used with emphasis after comparatives and conditional and relative propositions: as,

Tĕtrior hic tўrannus Sўrācūsānus fuit quam *quisquam* sŭpĕrĭōrum, *This tyrant of Syracuse was more bloodthirsty than any one of his predecessors.*—Cic.

Si tempus est *ullum* jūre hŏmĭnes nĕcandi, certē illud est justum, quum vi vis illāta dēfendĭtur, *If there be any time for justly putting men to death, certainly that is the just time when violence offered is repelled by violence.*—Cic.

Quamdiu quisquam ĕrit, qui te dēfendĕre audeat, vīves, *As long as there shall be a single man who will venture to defend you, you shall live.*—Cic.

Obs. The two rules above mentioned apply also to **unquam** and **usquam**: as,

Bellum maxĭmē mĕmŏrābĭle omnium, *quae unquam* gesta sunt, *The most memorable of all wars that have ever been waged.*—Liv.

§ 388. **Quisque** denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), *every single one.* It often appears in the strengthened form ūnusquisque (or as two words): as,

Pōnīte ante ŏcŭlos ūnumquemque rēgum, *Set before your eyes each one of the kings.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When used with *se*, *suus*, quisque usually stands immediately after those pronouns: as,

Sĭbi *quisque* maxĭmē consŭlit, *Everybody consults chiefly his own interests.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic: as,

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. **Quisque** is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. **Ălius**, when repeated signifies *one . . . another;* **alter**, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things): as,

Prōfĕrēbant alii purpŭram, tus ălii, gemmas ălii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercĭtum perdĭdit, alter vendĭdit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLV.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

(A.) To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

(B.) To ask a question; or Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

(A.) THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—(1.) The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dextrā laevāque duo mărĭa *claudunt* (nos), *On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

Vŏluptas sensĭbus nostris *blanditur*, *Pleasure wins upon our senses.*—Cic. (General statement.)

Obs. With jam prīdem, jam dūdum, the present tense has the force of a present perfect: as, jam prīdem cŭpio, *I have long desired* (Cic.): so, jam dūdum flĕbam, *I had been for some time weeping* (Ov.) In poetry and in later writers, they are also used with the perfect tenses.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present:* as,

Dum haec *gĕruntur*, Cassivellaunus nuntios *mittit*, *While these events are going on, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. This mode of speech, in English, found only in quasi-Dramatic passages, is in Latin very frequent.

Obs. 2. The Present is almost always used with *dum*, though the rest of the sentence may be in a *Past* tense: as,

Dum haec *părantur*, Saguntum jam *oppugnābātur*, *While these preparations were* (Lit., *are*) *making, Saguntum was already being assaulted.*—Liv.

But when *dum* signifies *as long as*, it may take a Past or Future: as, Hoc fēci *dum lĭcuit*, *I did this as long as I was permitted.*—Cic.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Ănus subtēmen *nēbat*: praetĕrea ūna ancillŭla *ĕrat*; ea *texēbat*, *An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl* (herself) *was weaving.*—Ter.

Obs. For the use of this tense with jam prīdem, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Archȳtas nullam căpĭtālĭorem pestem quam vŏluptātem corpŏris *dicēbat* hŏmĭnĭbus ā nātūrā dātam. *Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by Nature than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

Ut Rōmae cōnsŭles, sic Carthāgĭne quŏtannis annui bīni rēges *creābantur, As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep.

§ 396. The Past-Imperfect is also used to signify that something was *attempted* to be done: as,

Cătо pro lēge quae *abrŏgābātur* ita dissĕruit, *Cato thus spoke in defence of the law which it was purposed to abrogate.*—Liv.

Glădium in pectus *dējĕrēbat*, ni... .. &c., *He was just plunging his sword into his bosom (and would have done so) had not*, &c.—Tac.

Antiŏchus fĭliam suam in mātrĭmōnium mihi *dăbat, Antiochus offered to give me his daughter in marriage.*—Liv.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the Verb sum is sometimes used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or *Aorist:* as,

Crīmen nullum *ĕrat;* res jūdĭcāta: Verres nummos accēpĕrat, *There was no accusation; the matter was already adjudged; Verres had received the cash.*—Cic.

Hŏmo *ĕrat* Sĭcŭlus, *The man was a Sicilian.*—Cic.

Classis commūnis Graeciae, in quā dŭcentae *ĕrant* Athēniensium, *The combined fleet of Greece, in which* 200 *ships belonged to the Athenians.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. But the Perfect or Past-Indefinite is preferred when a thing is simply spoken of as an historical fact, not viewed as continuing: as,

Păter ējus Neocles gĕnĕrōsus *fuit, His father Neocles was of noble birth.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. The same remarks apply to the Past-Imperf. of *possum.*

§ 398. The Past-Imperfect is often used in epistolary correspondence, of that which is *present* to the writer, but will appear as *past* to the reader, of the letter (compare § 404): as,

Ita *ĕrant* omnia quae isthinc *afférēbantur* incerta, ut quid ad te *scrībĕrem* non *occurrĕret, All the news that is brought from your quarter is so uncertain, that I cannot tell what to write.*—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But the Present is quite as frequent, and is *always* used when a thing is stated generally and without reference to the precise time of writing: as,

Nos hīc *vălēmus* recte, *I am enjoying good health here.*—Cic. Ep.

Sed *flāgĭtat* tăbellārius, vălēbis ĭgĭtur, *But the postman is pressing, so good-bye.*—Cic. Ep.

Spĕro hŏmĭnes intellectūros, quanto sit omnibus ŏdĭo crūdēlĭtas, *I hope people will understand how odious cruelty is to every one.*—Cic. Ep.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cras ingens *ĭtĕrābĭmus* aequor, *To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.*—Hor.

Obs. The Future is also used with the force of an Imperative: see § 420, Obs. 2.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense.*—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *feci* is either *I have done* or *I did.* The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nēmo pārum diu *vixit* qui virtūtis *perfunctus est mūnĕre*, *No one has lived* (Pres.-Perf.) *too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.*—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos *fuit* (Past.-Indef.), *Appius was blind for many years.*—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after **postquam**, *after that;* **ut prīmum, sīmul atque (ac)**, *as soon as;* **ut, ubi**, *when;* where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as.

Pĕlŏpĭdas non dūbĭtāvit, *sīmŭl ac conspexit* hostem, conflīgĕre, *Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw* (*had seen*) *the enemy, to engage.*—Nep.

Ubi de Caesăris adventu Helvētii certiōres *facti sunt*, lēgātos ad eum mittunt, *No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes

Ut Hostus *cĕcĭdit*, confestim Rōmāna inclīnātur ăcies, *As soon as Hostus fell* (*had fallen*), *the Roman line immediately gave way.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, Hannĭbal *anno tertio postquam* dŏmo *profŭgĕrat*, in Afrĭcam vēnit, *Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. But **quum**, *when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense.*—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

Prōgĕniem Trōjāno a sanguĭne dūci *audĭĕrat*, *She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.*—Virg.

§ 403. The Past-Perfect Indicative is sometimes used by the Poets for the Past-Perfect Subjunctive, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Me truncus illapsus cĕrebro,
Sustŭlĕrat, nisi Faunus ictum
Dextrā lĕvasset, *Me a tree-trunk upon my brains descending had else dispatched, had not Faunus, with his right hand, lightened the blow.*—Hor. (This is probably a Greek idiom: the Past-Perfect being equivalent to a Past Tense Indic. with ἄν.)

§ 404. The Past-Perfect is also, like the Past-Imperfect, sometimes used in epistolary correspondence, in order to accommodate the time to the position of the reader rather than of the writer: as,

Nihil hăbēbam quod scrībĕrem, neque enim quicquam nŏvi *audieram*, *I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news.*—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But this is only allowable when the reference is expressly to the time when the letter *was being written*. See § 398.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have* taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmam quum *vēnĕro*, quae *perspexĕro*, scrībam ad te, *When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.*—Cic.

Dum tu haec lĕges, ego illum fortasse *convēnĕro*, *While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic

§ 406. Sometimes the Future-Perfect is used to indicate that a thing will be finished and gone immediately: as,

Dum lŏquĭmur, *fūgĕrit* invĭda aetas, *E'en while we speak, jealous time is fled.* (Lit., *will have fled.*)—Hor.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum *ĕrīmus* in terris, ĕrit coelesti vītae sīmĭle, *This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

Nātūram si *sĕquēmur* dŭcem, nunquam aberrābĭmus, *If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthāgĭne vĕrēri non ante dēsīnam, quam illam excīsam esse *cognōvĕro*, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

Obs. But the future sense is sure to be expressed in *one* of the clauses, as in the above examples.

(B.) The Indicative Mood used Interrogatively.

1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions:* as,

Quousque tandem, Cătīlīna, *ābūtēre* pătientiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut *vălet?* ut *mĕmĭnit* nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quŏta hōra *est?* *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax *est* Gallīna Sўro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—**nĕ** (enclitic), **num**; **utrum** and **an**. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions;* i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle* **-nĕ**.—The Particle **nĕ** is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

Tarquĭnius rex interrŏgāvit: Estisne vos lēgāti ōrātōresque missi a pŏpŭlo Collātīno? Sŭmus—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—Liv.

Dătursne illa hŏdie Pamphĭlo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter.

Obs. Ne is always joined to the *first* word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with non, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, **nonne**: as,

Cănis *nonne* sĭmĭlis lŭpo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne ēmŏri per virtūtem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle* **num**.—The Particle **num** indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

Num nĕgare audes, *Do you dare deny it?*—Cic.

Num facti Pamphĭlum pĭget, *Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—Ter.

Num Viscellīnum ămīci regnum appĕtentem dēbuĕrunt adjŭvāre, *Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?*—Cic.

Obs. In *Indirect* questions *num* ceases to have a negative force: v. § 435.

§ 413. *Ecquid* and *Numquid.*—These words are compounded of the interrogative and indefinite pronoun *quid;* but they are frequently used as mere interrogative particles equivalent to *ne* and *num* respectively: as,

Quid est, Cătīlīna? *Ecquid* attendis? *Ecquid* ănĭmadvertis hōrum sĭlentium? *What means it, Catiline? Mark you it? Observe you the silence of these men?*—Cic.

Numquid duas hăbētis patrias, *Have ye forsooth two native countries?*—Cic.

2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are **utrum, an, -nĕ**. **Utrum** is used only in the first alternative, and **an** only in the second, while **-nĕ** is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra *an* nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?*—Cic.

Isne est quem quaero *annon*, *Is that the man I am seeking, or not?*—Ter.

Sunt haec tua verba necne, *Are these your words or no?*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Necne* and *annon*, "*or no*," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. *Ne* is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative may be stated in the form "*or no*," necne.

Obs. 3. The first particle (*utrum*) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. An is sometimes *apparently* used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? *An* Pamphĭlus vēnit? *What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter.

Quid dīcis? *An* bello fŭgĭtīvōrum Sĭcĭlĭam virtūte tuā lībĕrātam? *What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?*—Cic.

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "*Have you anything else to say, or will you say that*, &c."

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
utrum,	**an,**	**an**
-nĕ,	**an,**	**an**
(omitted)	**an,**	**an**
(omitted)	**-ne**	

Obs. 1. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.

Obs. 2. When *num* (*numquid*) is used in the former part of the question it retains its negative force: as,

Numquid vos duas habetis patrias, an est illa una patria communis, *Have you perchance two native-countries? or is the one country common also to you?*—Cic.

Chapter XLVI.—The Imperative Mood.

§ 417. *Present Tense* (*Jussive*).—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

Dissolve frīgus, ligna sŭper fŏco large rĕpōnens, *Thaw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire.*—Hor.

Fessae *dāte* serta cărīnae, *Crown with chaplets my tired bark.*—Ov.

Carpe diem, *Seize the* (*present*) *day.*—Hor.

Salve! Ave! *Hail to thee, farewell!*—Cic.

Obs. Not in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* (never non); and in double sentences by *ne . . . . nēve* (neu); nēve . . . . nēve: as,

Ne crūcia te, obsecro, *Do not torment yourself, I pray!*—Ter.

(Compare following sections.)

§ 418. *Future Tense.*—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws: as,

Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe ne *sēpĕlīto*, nēve *ūrīto*, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.*—XII. Tables.

Rēgio impĕrio duo *sunto*, *Let there be two persons with regal power.*—Vet. Lex. in Cic.

Non sătis est pulchra esse poëmăta, dulcia *sunto*, *It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet.*—Hor.

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, *cāvēto*, *Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard.*—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used (*not* in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person: as

Aut bĭbat aut ăbeat, *Let him either drink or begone.*—Cic.

Stătus, incessus, vultus, ŏcŭli, tĕneant dĕcōrum, *Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.*—Cic.

Injūrias fortūnae, quas ferre nĕqueas, dēfŭgiendo rĕlinquas, *The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Second Person of the Subjunctive Mood is properly used only in general propositions, when it may be translated by "*one*:" as,

Ĕmas, non quod ŏpus est, sed quod nĕcesse est, *One should buy not what is necessary, but what one wants.*—Sen.

Obs. 2. The Subjunctive when thus used is usually less authoritative than the Imperative.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by nē (also nēmo, nĭhil) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

Ne quid rĕi tibi sit cum Săguntīnis, *Meddle not with the Saguntines.*—Cic.

Ne transĭĕris Ibērum, *Cross not the Ebro.*—Liv.

Nĭhil ignōvĕris, *Show no charity for anything!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. A prohibition is often expressed by the periphrasis *nōli, nōlīto*: as,

Nōli pūtāre, Brūte, quenquam, &c., *Do not suppose, Brutus, that any single person, &c.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Also the Second Person Singular of the Future Indicative has sometimes an Imperative force: as,

Tu nĭhil invĭtā *dīces făciesve* Mĭnervā, *Do not thou say or do anything against the bent of Nature.*—Hor.

Chapter XLVII.—The Subjunctive Mood.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(C). A wish.

(D). Purpose or result.

(E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narrātio oblīqua*).

(A). *Si* ita *esset, ignoscĕrem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.

(B). Cur *dubĭtas* quid de rēpublicā *sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.

Non *dŭbĭtat* quin Trōja brĕvi *pĕrĭtūra sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.*—Cic.

(C). *Văleas* et mĕmĭnĕris nostri, *May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.

(D). Lēgibus servīmus *ut* lĭbĕri esse *possīmus, We submit to the laws that* (Purpose) *we may be able to be free.*—Cic.

Accĭdit *ut* ūnā nocte omnes Hermae *dējĭcĕrentur, It happened that* (Result) *in one night all the Hermae were demolished.*—Nep.

(E). *Dŏcent* quanto in discrīmĭne *sit* Nōlāna res, *They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

(1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425); or,

(2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

Obs. The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood (see § 429).

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

Present and Future Time.

Present.	Scio quid ăgas,	*I know what you are doing.*
	Scio quid ēgĕris,	*I know what you have done.*
	Scio quid actūrus sis,	*I know what you are going to do.*
Present Perfect.	Cognōvi quid ăgas,	*I have learnt what you are doing.*
	Cognōvi quid ēgĕris,	*I have learnt what you have done.*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	*I have learnt what you are going to do.*
Future.	Audiam quid ăgas,	*I shall hear what you are doing.*
	Audiam quid ēgĕris,	*I shall hear what you have done.*
	Audiam quid actūrus sis,	*I shall hear what you are going to do.*

Past Time.

Past Imperf.	Sciēbam quid ăgĕres,	*I knew what you were doing.*
	Sciēbam quid ēgisses,	*I knew what you had done.*
	Sciēbam quid actūrus esses,	*I knew what you were going to do.*
Past Indefinit.	Cognōvi quid ăgĕres,*	*I learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvi quid ēgisses,	*I learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus esses,	*I learnt what you were going to do.*
Past Perfect.	Cognōvĕram quid ăgĕres,	*I had learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvĕram quid ēgisses,	*I had learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvĕram quid actūrus esses,	*I had learnt what you were going to do.*

* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement: as,

Aemĭlius Paullus tantum in aerārium pĕcūniae *invexit*, ut unius impĕrātoris praeda fīnem *attŭlĕrit* trĭbūtorum, *Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic.

Obs. The *Historical Present* (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive: as,

Helvētii lēgātos ad Caesărem *mittunt*, qui *dīcĕrent*, *The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caes.

1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protăsis* and the *Apodŏsis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

(N.B. For the sake of convenience the use of the Indicative in Hypothetical sentences is brought to this place.)

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.* — If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,

Si est bŏni consŭlis ferre ŏpem patriae, est etiam bonōrum cīvium, etc., *If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.*—Cic.

Si *tŏnuit*, etiam *fulsit*, *If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

Si *nĕgem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.*—Cic.

Tu si hic *sis*, ălĭter *sentias*, *You, if you were in my place, would think differently.*—Ter.

Nĕcassem jam te verbĕrĭbus, nisi īrātus *essem*, *I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.*—Cic.

§ 425. The Conjunctions used in formally stating hypothetical propositions are **si**, *if*; and **nisi** (**ni**), **sin**, *if not*. The last (**sin** shortened from **si ne**) is used only when another hypothesis with **si** (expressed or implied) has preceded.

Obs. To these may be added compounds of *si*, as *etsi, etiamsi*; and *dummodo* (see §§ 498, 503).

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *may have happened*: as,

Me dies, vox, lătĕra, dēfĭciant, *si* hoc nunc vōcĭfĕrāri *vĕlim*, *Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now*, etc.—Cic.

Si scĭĕris (*Perfect*) aspĭdem occulte lătēre uspiam,..... imprŏbe *fēcĕris*, *nisi monueris* altĕrum ne assĭdeat, *If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.*—Cic.

At mĕmŏria mĭnuĭtur:—Crēdo, *nisi* eam *exerceas*, *But (you say), memory decays: I believe you, if you do not exercise it.*—Cic.

(Apodosis not expressed, minuatur, *it would fail.*)

Obs. In such cases we in English often use a *Past* Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were*, &c., as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not* actually taking place, whether *now* (Past-Imperfect), or in the *Past* (Past-Perfect): as,

Săpientia non *expĕtĕrētur si* nihil *efficĕret*, *Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.*—Cic.

(*Si*) ūno praelio *victus* (*esset*) Alexander, bello *victus esset*, *Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the* (*entire*) *war.*—Liv.

§ 428. Instead of a Past Tense *Subjunctive* of a thing

regarded as not taking place, a Past Tense of the *Indicative* is sometimes used in the Apodosis, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Pons sublĭcius ĭter paene hostĭbus *dĕdit*, nī ūnus vir fuisset, *The Sublician bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man*—Liv.

(Compare § 403.)

Obs. The Indicative of the verbs *dēbeo, dĕcet, ŏportet, possum*, and *sum* with a gerundive or neuter adjective, is frequently used in this way in the Apodosis: as,

Si victōrĭa, praeda, laus dūbia *essent*, tamen omnes bŏnos rĕipublicae subvĕnīre *dĕcēbat*, *If victory, plunder, praise, were uncertain, it would still be the duty of all good citizens to come to the aid of the commonwealth.*—Sall.

Si ĭta Milo *pŭtasset*, optābĭlius ei *fuit*, etc., *If Milo had so thought, it would have been more desirable for him, &c.*—Cic.

429. *Hypothetical sentences without regular* Protasis.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used to signify that something would take place *if only* some condition too obvious to be expressed were fulfilled (*Subjunctivus Potentialis*): as,

Crēdat Jūdaeus, non ĕgo, *The Jew may believe it* (*if it were told him*), *not I.*—Hor.

Dicas adductum prŏpius frondēre Tărentum, *You would say Tarentum had actually been transported and was blooming nearer home* (*if you were to see the place*).—Hor.

Pĕcūniae an fāmae mīnus parcĕret, haud facĭle *discernĕres*, *You would not easily tell* (*if you tried*) *whether she were more careless of her money or of her reputation.*—Sall.

Obs. The Past-Imperfect is generally used where in English we say, *you would* have *thought; you would* have *said:* as,

Crēdĕres victos esse; (*Had you seen them*) *you would have thought they had been the vanquished.*—Liv.

§ 430. The Subjunctive is similarly used in expressing a modest wish or affirmation: as,

Vĕlim mihi ignoscas, *I should be glad if you would pardon me.*—Cic.

Hoc vĕro sine ullā dūbĭtātiōne *affirmāvĕrim*, *This I am prepared* (*if necessary*) *without any hesitation to assert.*—Cic.

Quaerendum *censeam*, *I should think we ought to make enquiry.*—Cic.

§ 431. The Subjunctive is sometimes used when a virtual hypothesis is contained in another part of the sentence: as,

An ĕgo in hac urbe esse *possim*, his pulsis qui mē hujus urbis compŏtem fēcērunt, *Could I exist in this city with those in banishment* (i. e., *if they are banished*) *who enabled me to enjoy it?*—Cic.

Mŏri nēmo săpiens mīsĕrum *dixĕrit*, *No wise man* (= *if he were wise*) *would think of pronouncing it miserable to die.*—Cic.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

Mălus cīvis Cn. Carbo fuit:—*fuerit* aliis; tibi quando esse coepit, *Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he?* (*Granted that*) *he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?*—Cic.

Vērum, *ut* ita *sit*, tamen non pŏtes hoc praedĭcāre, *Yet* (*granting*) *that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.*—Cic.

2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used in dependence upon clauses or sentences denoting doubt, uncertainty, or conditionality (see following sections).

Obs. But the Subjunctive cannot stand by itself with this force.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Quālis *sit* ănĭmus ipse ănĭmus *nescit*, *What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.*—Cic.

(Here the *Direct* Question would be, Qualis *est* animus? § 408.)

Diogĕnes *dispŭtare* sōlēbat, quanto rēgem Persarum vitā fortūnāque *sŭpĕrāret*, *Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Quanto regem Persarum supero? *How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

Dii utrum *sint*, necne *sint*, *quaerĭtur*, *The question is raised whether there are gods or no?*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Utrum dii *sunt*, necne *sunt*?)

Multae gentes *nondum sciunt*, *cur* lūna *dēfĭciat*, *Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Cur luna *deficit*?)

Obs. Thus, quae tu *scias* scio, is *I know what it is you know:* but quae tu *scis*, scio, *What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, num (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

Quaero .... *num*, ălĭter ac nunc ēvĕnĭunt, *ēvĕnīrent*, *I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?*—Cic.

Exsistit hoc lŏco quaedam *quaestio* subdifficĭlis, *num* quando ămīci nŏvi vĕtĕrĭbus *sint*. antĕpōnendi, *A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?*—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaerĭtur, **utrum** .... **an** .... **an.**
-nĕ .... **an** .... **an.**
(omitted) .... **-nĕ** .... **-nĕ.**

§ 437. Sometimes the Indicative is found in what are *apparently* Indirect Questions: in such cases the Verb of question must be treated as entirely independent in Syntax: as,

Quaero: *quid factūri fuistis? I put the question to you: What were you meaning to do?*

Et vĭde, *quam conversa* res *est! And see! How the case has altered!* —Ter.

§ 438. The particle **an** is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after **haud scio, nescio, dūbĭto, dūbium est, incertum est:** as,

Aristotĕlem, excepto Plātōne, *haud scio an* recte *dixĕrim* princĭpem philŏsŏphōrum, *With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic.

Dūbĭto an Vĕnŭsiam *tendam*, et ĭbi *exspectem* de lĕgiōnĭbus, *I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.*—Cic.

Contĭgit tibi quod *haud scio an* nēmĭni, *The lot has fallen to you which* perhaps *has fallen to no one else.*—Cic.

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an,* always imply the *probability* of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "*I don't know whether.*"

§ 439. Propositions about which doubt and uncertainty are distinctly *denied* are expressed with **quin** and the Subjunctive; as **non dūbium est quin,** etc. (see § 461).

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity*, where the Verb *dūbĭto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

Quid hoc hŏmĭne *făciātis, What are ye to do with this man?*—Cic.

Quid ălĭud *făcĕret, What else was he to do?*—Cic.

Quid *ēnŭmĕrem* artium multĭtūdĭnem, *Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic. (Quid *enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

§ 441. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive with **ne** or **ut** according as the fear is expressed that a thing *will* (**ne**) or *will not* (**ut**) happen (see § 460).

§ 442. *In all cases* where the Subjunctive is found in apparently independent propositions, it is in reality dependent upon some *condition*, *doubt*, or *uncertainty*, present to the mind of the speaker or writer ("*subjective*"), though not expressed.

3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctīvus Optātīvus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a *wish.*

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

Intĕream sī vălĕo stāre, *May I be a dead man, if I can stand hail!*—Hor.

Vălĕant cīves mei, *sint* beāti, *May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

Especially with utĭnam, *O that!* as,

Utĭnam mŏdo cōnāta perfĭcĕre *possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement:* as,

Dum vīvĭmus, *vivāmus, While we live, let us live!*
Imĭtēmur nostros mājōres, *Let us imitate our ancestors!*—Cic.

Obs. In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. mĕmĭnerim: as,
Mĕmĭnĕrĭmus, *Let us remember!*

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable: as

Utĭnam prōmissa *lĭcĕret* non dăre, *Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!*—Cic.

Utĭnam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Caesăre sŏcietātem nunquam *coisses* aut nunquam *dīrēmisses, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off.*—Cic.

Obs. Similarly *vellem, mallem, nollem,* are used of wishes regarded as *not* attainable; while *vĕlim, mālim,* and *nōlim* are used of those considered to be so (comp. § 426, 427): as,

Vellem ădesse posset Pănaetius, *I could fain wish Panaetius were present.*—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut:*

(1.) Opto, *I wish,* is generally construed with ut and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive): as,

Optāvit ut in currum patris *tollĕrētur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) Vŏlo; Nōlo, and Mālo, are frequently found with ut and the Subjunctive; also very often with ut omitted: as,

Equĭdem *vellem ŭti* (res tuae) pĕdes *hăbērent*, ut ălĭquando rĕdīres, *For my part I should be glad if your business had feet to it, that you might at length return.*—Cic.

Mālo te săpiens hostis *mĕtuat*, quam stulti cives *laudent*, *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

Nōlo accūsātor in jūdĭcium pŏtentiam *affĕrat*, *I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the same way sīno, *I allow*, is sometimes used: as,
Sīne . . . *sciam*, *Let me know.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. For the construction of *vŏlo*, &c., with Infinitive, see § 512.

§ 448. To this place must be referred the use of the Present and the Second Person Singular of the Perfect Subjunctive as *Jussives* (see § 420).

4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, **ŭt** (**ūti**), **quō**, *that, in order that;* **nē**, *lest, in order that . . . not;* **quīn**, **quōmĭnus**, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction **ut**, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result:* as,

(*a.*) *Purpose.*

Rōmāni ab ărātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, *ut* dictātor *esset*, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.

Pylădes Ŏrestem se esse dixit, *ut* pro eo *nĕcārētur*, *Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of *commanding, persuading, striving, wishing*, &c. (see § 451).

(*b.*) *Result.*

Tarquĭnius sic Servium dĭlĭgēbat, *ut* is ejus vulgo *hăbērētur* fīlius, *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic.

Temperantia sēdat appĕtītiōnes et effĭcit *ut* hae rectae rătiōni *pāreant*, *Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

Saepe fit *ut*, ii qui dēbeant, non *respondeant* ad tempus, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

Si haec nuntiātio vēra non est, *sĕquĭtur ut* falsa *sit*, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrasybūlo contĭgit *ut* patriam *lĭbĕrāret*, *It fell to the lot of Thrasybulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

Obs. The phrases, sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* restat, *it remains;* nĕcesse est, *it is necessary;* aequum, justum est, *it is right* or *just;* and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. Ut and ne are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour;* ut in a positive, ne in a negative sense: as,

Cīvĭtāti *persuasit ut* de fīnĭbus suis *exīrent*, *He* (*Orgetorix*) *persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

Te *hortor ut* hos libros de phĭlŏsophiā stŭdĭōse *lĕgas*, *I urge you to read attentively those books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

Prĕcor nē me dĕsĕrās, *I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.

Obs. 2. Jŭbeo, *I order;* vĕto, *I forbid;* cōnor, *I attempt;* and, sometimes, nītor, *I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

Jŭbet nos Pȳthius Apollo *noscĕre* nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

Lex pĕregrīnum *vĕtat* in mūrum *ascendĕre*, *The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

Ter *sunt cōnati impōnĕre* Pēlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg.

Jugurtha Cirtam *irrumpĕre nītĭtur*, *Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 3. *Impĕro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Ipsos abdūci impĕrābat, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 452. Verbs which signify a *resolution* or *decision* are usually followed by ut and the Subjunctive: as,

Dēcrēvit sĕnātus *ut* consul *vīdĕret*, nē quid detrīmenti respublica cāpĕret, *The senate decreed, that the consul should look to it, that the commonwealth suffered no damage.*—Cic.

Athēnienses *stătuērunt ut*, urbe rĕlictā, lĭbertātem Graeciae classe *dēfendĕrent*, *The Athenians came to the resolution to abandon their city and defend the liberty of Greece with their fleet.*—Cic.

Obs. When the determination of an individual about himself is signified, the Infinitive is generally used: as,

Dēcrēram cum Hortensio valde fămlliārĭter *vīvĕre*, *I had determined to live on very friendly terms with Hortensius.*—Cic.

§ 453. Quo.—The Conjunction quo, *in order that; that thereby*, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*: as,

Corrŭpisse dicĭtur Cluentius jūdĭcium pĕcūnĭā, quo ĭnīmīcum suum innŏcentem *condemnāret*, *Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause: as,

Lēgem brĕvem esse ŏportet, *quo* făcĭlĭus ab impĕrītis *tĕneātur*, *A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here **quo** = **ut eo.**)

Obs. 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a *result*.

Obs. 2. Concerning non quo, *not that*, see § 487. *Obs.* 1.

§ 454. **Nē** is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*, ut being omitted: it is equivalent to ut non, quo non, *in order that . . . not; lest:* as,

Nōlo esse laudātor, *nē vĭdear* ădūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

Gallīnae ăvesque rĕlĭquae pennis fŏvent pullos, *ne* frĭgŏre *laedantur*, *Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 455. Sometimes ut is expressed with **nē**. as,

Trebatio mandāvi, *ut*, si tu eum velles ad me mittĕre, *ne rĕcūsāret*, *I have charged Trebatius, if you wished to dispatch him to me, not to refuse.*—Cic.

Pergunt turbāre usque *ut ne* quid *possit* conquiescĕre, *They proceed to make such a disturbance that nothing can rest.*—Plaut.

Obs. This is especially the case with *ne quis, qua, quid*, &c.

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nē quis	instead of	**ut nēmo,**	*that no one.*
nē ullus	„ „	**ut nullus,**	*that none.*
nē unquam	„ „	**ut nunquam,**	*that never.*
nē usquam	„ „	**ut nusquam,**	*that nowhere.*
nēcŭbi (*i. e.* ne alicubi)		„	
nēcunde (*i. e.* ne alicunde),			*that from no quarter.*
nēquando (*i. e.* ne aliquando),			*that at no time.*

Caesărem complexus obsecrāre coepit *ne quid* grăvius in frātrem *stătuĕret*, *Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes.

Circumspectans *nēcunde* impĕtus in frūmentātōres *fĭĕret*, *Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms **ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus**, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc effĭcĭtur . . . . *ut* vŏluptas *non* sit summum bŏnum, *From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Dēmosthĕnes perfēcit mĕdĭtando, *ut nēmo* plānius eo lŏcūtus pūtārētur, *By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

§ 458. **Ut** and **nē** are used in parenthetical sentences, where some such notion as "supposing," "granting that," is implied: as,

Nam *ŭt ŏmittam* Phĭlippum...,*For to say nothing of Philip.* ..—Nep.

Ah nĭmium simplex Hĕlĕne, *ne* rustĭca *dīcam, Ah, too artless Helen, not to say too rude!*—Ov.

§ 459. Similarly **nēdum**, *not to say, much less*, is followed by the Subjunctive: as,

Sĕcundae res săpientium ănĭmos fătīgant; *nedum* illi corruptis mōrĭbus victōriae *tempĕrārent, Prosperity overpowers the spirit of the wise: far less could they, with their morality destroyed, use restraint in victory.*—Sall.

Vĭri clārissĭmi vim trĭbūnĭciam sustĭnēre non pŏtuērunt; *nedum* his tempŏrĭbus sine sapientiā vestrā salvi esse *possimus, The most illustrious men have failed to withstand the tribunicial force: much less can we, in these times, be secure without your wisdom.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety*, **ne** expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; **ut**, that it will *not* occur: as,

Tĭmēbam ne ēvĕnīrent ea quae accĭdērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

Tĭmor Rōmae grandis *fuit, ne* ĭtĕrum Galli Rōmam rĕdīrent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pater *terruit* gentes, grăve *ne* rĕdīret sēcŭlum Pyrrhae, *The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

Omnes lăbōres te excĭpĕre vĭdeo; *timeo ut* sustĭneas, *I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non;* especially in negative sentences: as,

Tĭmeo *ne non* impetrem, *I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

Non vĕreor *ne* tua virtus ŏpīnĭōni hŏmĭnum *non* respondeat, *I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. **Quīn**, *that not, so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, Non prŏhĭbeo, *I do not prevent;* Non rĕtĭneo, *I do not restrain;* Non rĕpugno, *I do not object;* and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as Non est dŭbium, *There is no doubt;* Quis dŭbĭtat, *Who doubts?* Fieri non potest, *It cannot be;* Nĕgāri *non* pŏtest, *It cannot be denied;* and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

Obs. Under *negative* sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *No:* also those containing such words as vix, *scarcely;* părum, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non* possŭmus, *quin* ălii a nōbis *dissentiant, rĕcūsāre, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic.

Vix me *contĭneo quin* in illum *invŏlem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

Haud multum *abfuit quin* Ismēnias *interfĭcĕrētur, A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.*—Liv.

Obs. The expressions *haud multum abfuit, mĭnĭmum abfuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dŭbium quin* Helvētii plūrĭmum *possent, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes.

Haud dŭbia res vīsa ..... *quin circumdūcĕret* agmen, *There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv.

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignōrat quin tria Graecōrum gĕnĕra *sint, Who knows not* (i. e., *there is no one who knows not*) *that there are three classes of Greeks?*—Cic.: where we might equally well have had, Quis ignōrat tria .... *esse* (§ 507).

(3.) Equĭdem *nunquam* dŏmum mīsi ūnam ĕpistŏlam, *quin esset* ad te altĕra, *In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.*—Cic.

Nullus fĕre dies est quin Satrius meam dŏmum *ventītet, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic.

§ 462. **Quin** is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (quī ne); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin ĭgĭtur expergiscĭmĭni? *Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall.
Quin conscendĭmus ĕquos? *Why not to horse at once?*—Liv.

Obs. Quin with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,
Quin tu hoc audi, *Nay but do you hear me.*—Ter.

§ 463. **Quōmĭnus**, *that not, so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance;* as, impĕdio, *I impede;* prŏhĭbeo, *I prevent;* offĭcio, *I obstruct*, etc.; also after per me stat, fit, *it is owing to me* (that something does *not* take place): as,

Non *rĕcūsābo quomĭnus* omnes mea scripta *lĕgant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.*—Cic.

Caesar cognōvit *per Afrānium stare quomĭnus dimĭcārētur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.*—Caes.

Obs. In the former of the above examples *quin* might have been used instead of *quominus* (comp. § 462), but not in the second: also, in the other applications of *quin* (*ib.* 2, 3), *quominus* cannot be used for it.

5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Ōrātio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem *se* ad dēlĭbĕrandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: Diem *ego* ad dēlĭbĕrandum *sūmam*, *I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

(A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.

(B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.

(C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.

(D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.

(E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as dixit, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, ... Aeduis se obsĭdes *reddĭtūrum* non *esse*, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesărem lēgātos mittit, "*velle se* de his rebus ăgĕre cum eo," *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

Obs. Such an Infinitive is very often introduced quite abruptly, especially to indicate feelings entertained rather than a direct speech: as,

Plēbem īra prŏpe armāvit: "Fāme *se* jam sīcut hostes *pĕti*; cĭbo victuque *fraudāri*," *Indignation all but armed the commons: "They were now attacked like open enemies; they were robbed of their bread and living."*—Liv.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātos cum his mandātis mittit, .. haec esse *quae* ab eo *postulāret*, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him*, &c.—Caes

(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te *postulo*.)

Apud Hypānim flūvium Aristŏtĕles ait, bestiŏlas quasdam nasci, *quae* ūnum diem *vivant*, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day*.—Cic.

(Direct form: Sunt bestiolae quaedam *quae* unum diem *vivunt*.)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative: as,

Quis pŏtest esse tam āversus a vēro, qui nĕget haec omnia, *quae vĭdemus*, deōrum immortālium pŏtestāte administrāri, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things*, which we see, *are managed by the power of the immortal Gods?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) *Questions* transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434): as,

Fŭrĕre omnes trĭbūni plēbis .. "quidnam id rei *esset?*" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked)* "*What did that mean?*"—Liv.

(Direct question: Quidnam id rei *est?*)

Quid de praedā fāciendum *censērent*, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv.

(Direct question: Quid de praedā faciendum *censetis?*)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is often expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

"Si vĕtĕris contŭmĕliae oblīvisci vellet, num ĕtiam rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre *posse?*" "*Even if he were willing* (*he said*) *to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?*"—Caes.

(Here, *num* dēpōnĕre posse = *non* dēpōnĕre possa.)

Interrŏgābat .. "*quando ausūros* exposcĕre rĕmĕdia, nīsi .. etc." *He asked* "*When* would *they venture to demand redress, if not* .. etc.?"—Tac.

(*Quando* ausuros = *nunquam* ausuros.)

An quicquam *esse* sŭperbius? *Could anything be more arrogant?*—Liv.

(*An quicquam* esse = *nihil* esse.)

Obs. Madvig's rule is, that questions originally asked in the *First* or *Third* Person, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* with the Subjunctive; and only those in the *Second* Person, by the Subjunctive. But the distinction seems arbitrary, and is not sufficiently supported. No rule, however, can be laid down on the subject without exceptions.

§ 470. (D.) *Commands* and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *imperāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451): as,

(Orāre) .. *ferrent* ŏpem; *adjŭvārent*, (*He begged them*) *to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

"Sin bello persĕqui persĕvērāret, *rĕmĭnisc*ĕ*rētur* pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum," "*If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them (he bad him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*"—Caes.

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar respondit .. "nullos in Galliā văcāre agros, qui dări tantae multĭtūdĭni *possint*," *Caesar replied .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude.*"—Caes.

(Direct form: "Nulli in Galliā vacant agri, qui dari *possint*:" comp. § 480.)

"Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. *qui* inter quātuordĕcim annos tectum non *sŭbissent*, virtūte *possint*," "*He* (*Caesar*) *would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*"—Caes.

(Direct form also: "Qui subissent [§ 476] .. possint" (§ 434).

§ 472. But the Subjunctive used in the *apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes changed into the Infinitive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesăre ŏpus esset, *sēse* ad eum *ventūrum fuisse*," *Ariovistus made answer to the embassy, "that if he had wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him.*"—Caes.

(Direct form: "Si quid .. opus esset, *venissem.*")

"Neque Eburōnes, si ille ădesset, tantā cum contemptiōne nostri ad castra *ventūros esse*," "*Nor would the Eburones, he urged, if he* (*Caesar*) *were at hand, approach the camp with such contempt for us.*"—Caes.

(Direct form: "Si .. adesset .. *vĕnirent.*")

Obs. In such cases, the Past-Imperfect is represented by the Future Infinitive with *esse*, and the Past-Perfect by the same with *fuisse*. (See examples above.)

§ 473. TENSES OF VERBS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.—The Tense of the Subjunctive Mood in *oblique* narration is determined by the ordinary laws for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 423). The following apparent exceptions require to be noticed:—

(1.) The *Praesens Historicum* is often treated as a Past Tense, and followed accordingly by Past Tenses Subjunctive (see § 423. *Obs.*).

(2.) For the sake of greater vividness, a Past Tense like **dixit**, *he said*, is often followed by Present Tenses Subjunctive: as,

Edīcunt, ne quis L. Quinctium consulem *făcĕret*, *They issue a proclamation that no one should endeavour to make L. Quinctius consul.*—Liv.

Interim Caesări nuntiātur Sulmōnenses cŭpĕre ea făcĕre quae *vellet*, *Meanwhile it is reported to Caesar that the people of Sulmo were desirous to do as he wished them.*—Caes.

Cicero *respondit* .. "Si ab armis discēdĕre *vĕlint*, se adjūtōre *ūtantur* lēgātosque ad Caesărem *mittant*," *Cicero made answer*, "*if they wish to lay down their arms, they can use him as their coadjutor, and send ambassadors to Caesar.*"—Caes.

6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. **Qui** *hypothetical.*—The Relative **qui, quae, quod**, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Haec *qui vĭdeat*, nonne *cōgātur* fătēri deos esse, *Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?*—Cic.

(*Qui* videat = *si* quis videat, *if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persārum pŏtest esse, *qui* non ante Magōrum disciplīnam *percēpĕrit*, *Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.*—Cic.

(*Qui non* perceperit = *nisi* perceperit, *unless he has learned.*)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase quod sciam, *as far as I know, if only I know.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortūnāte adŏlescens, *qui* tuae virtūtis Hŏmērum praecōnem *invēnĕris*, *O fortunate youth, who hast found* (i. e. *in that thou hast found*) *a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.*—Cic.

Ut cŭbĭtum discessĭmus, me et de viā et *qui* ad multam noctem *vĭgĭlassem*, arctior quam sŏlēbat somnus complexus est, *No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.*—Cic.

(*Qui* vigilassem = *quum* vigilassem, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of **qui** as introducing a *reason* is augmented by **ut, utpŏte, quippe**: as,

Magna pars Fidēnātium, *ut qui* cŏlōni addĭti Rōmānis *essent*, Lătīne sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv.

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Caesar, *quippe qui* ab eo in me *esset incensus, Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him* (*Crassus*).—Cic.

Obs. But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative: as,

Animus fortūnā non ĕget, *quippe quae* prŏbĭtātem . . . nĕque dăre neque ērĭpĕre *pŏtest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.*—Sall.

§ 478. **Qui** of *Purpose.*—**Qui** takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of **ut**, and denotes a *Purpose* (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui ērĭpiunt ăliis quod ăliis *largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.*—Cic.

(*Quod* largiantur = *ut* largiantur.)

Clusīni lēgātos Rōmam *qui* auxĭlium a sĕnātu *pĕtĕrent*, mīsêre, *The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.*—Liv.

(*Qui* peterent = *ut* peterent.)

§ 479. **Qui** of *Result.*—**Qui** is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of **ut** as indicating a *Result* (§ 449): as,

In ēnōdandis nōmĭnĭbus, *quod* mĭsĕrandum *sit*, lăbōrātis, *In explaining names you* (*Stoics*) *trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.*—Cic.

(*Quod* miserandum sit = *ut* miserandum sit.)

Mājus gaudium fuit quam *quod* ūnĭversum hŏmĭnes *căpĕrent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.*—Liv.

(Major quam *quod* caperent = major quam *ut* caperent.)

§ 480. **Qui** is especially so used after the adjectives **dignus, indignus, īdōneus**, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of* or *fit for*: as,

Līviānae fābŭlae non sătis *dignae* sunt *quae* ĭtĕrum *lĕgantur, The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic.

Nulla mihi vīdēbātur *aptior* persōna *quae* de sĕnectūte *lŏquĕrētur*, quam Cātōnis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic.

Hŏmĭnes scĕlĕrāti *indigni* mihi vīdēbantur, quōrum causam *ăgĕrem, The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.*—Cic

Obs. 1. The poets and later writers in general, also construe these Adjectives with the Infinitive: as,

Fons rīvo *dăre* nōmen *īdōneus, A fountain fit to give name to a stream.*—Hor.

Obs. 2. Similarly **qui** takes the Subjunctive when it is the correlative of the Pronouns *is, talis, tantus:* as,

Ego is sum qui nĭhil unquam . . . . fēcĕrim, *I am such an one as have never, &c.*—Cic.

Affectio tālis ănĭmi quae nŏceat nēmĭni, *Such a disposition of mind as to harm no one.*—Cic.

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition: as,

Prīmi *qua* mŏdo *praeīrent* dŭces, signa sĕquēbantur, *The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.*—Liv.

Alii ŭbi semel prōcŭbuissent, inter jūmenta . . . . mŏrĭēntes, *Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.*—Liv.

Tўrannus *ŭt quisque* maxĭme *lăbōrāret* lŏcus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut ălĭquos mittēbat, *The tyrant, as each post was most in danger, either hastened thither himself or dispatched some to do so.*—Liv.

Obs. But the Indicative may also be used: cf. with the last example, Liv. 22, 6, Consul, quācunque in parte lăbōrāre *sensĕrat* suos, impigre fĕrēbat ŏpem. See also Liv. 3, 11, Qui obvius fuĕrat, mulcātus nūdātus ābībat, *Whoever encountered (them), went off beaten and stripped.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as **sunt qui**, *there are some who;* **non dēsunt qui**, *there are not wanting men who;* **rĕpĕriuntur**, *there are found some who:* as,

Sunt qui discessum ănĭmi a corpŏre *pŭtent* esse mortem, *There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.*—Cic.

Fuēre qui crēdĕrent M. Crassum non ignārum ejus consĭlii fuisse, *There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.*—Sall.

Obs. 1. But if certain definite persons or things are indicated, such phrases are followed by the Indicative: as

Fuēre tămen extra conjūrātiōnem complūres qui ad Cătĭlīnam *prŏfecti sunt*, *There were however a good many [whose names might be given], not in the plot, who went to join Catiline.*—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets and the later writers often construe *sunt qui* with the Indicative, treating it like a single word (Gk. ἔνιοι: cf. Hor. Od. 1, 1, *init.*

§ 483. **Quum.**—The Conjunction **quum** takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causāle*); it may then generally be translated by *as, since,* or *although:* as,

Quum vīta sine ămīcis insĭdiārum et mĕtūs plēna *sit*, rătio ipsa mŏnet ămīcĭtias compărāre, *Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.*—Cic.

Phōcion fuit perpĕtuo pauper, *quum* dītissĭmus esse *posset*, *Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*—Nep.

Obs. *Quum* like *qui* (§ 477) may be strengthened with *quippe:* as,

Nec repрĕhendo (te): *quippe quum* ipse istam reprehensiōnem non *fŭgĕrim*, *Nor do I blame you; inasmuch as I myself have not escaped that censure.*—Cic.

§ 484. **Quum** also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

Socrătes in pompā *quum* magna vis auri argentique *ferrētur*, quam multa non dēsiderō! inquit, *When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"*—Cic.

Quos *quum* tristiōres *vidisset*, trīginta mīnas accēpit, nē aspernāri Rēgis lībĕrālĭtātem vīdērētur, *When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.*—Cic.

Quum trīdui viam prŏfectus *esset*, nuntiātum est ei, Ariovistum cum omnibus suis cōpiis ad occūpandum Vesontiōnem contendĕre, *When he had advanced three days' journey, news was brought him that Ariovistus was hastening with all his forces to seize Besançon.*—Caes.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But **quum** is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time *at which* something takes place: as,

Pūgĭles etiam *quum* fĕriunt adversārium, ingĕmiscunt, *Prize-fighters even when they are in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan.*—Cic.

Crēdo tum *quum* Sĭcĭlia *flōrēbat* ŏpĭbus et cōpiis, magna artĭfĭcia fuisse in eā insŭlā, *I believe that at the time when Sicily flourished in resources and military strength, the arts were in great perfection in the island.*—Cic.

Quum testes *dābo* ex Sĭcĭlĭā, quem vŏlet ille ēlĭgat, *When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.*—Cic.

Quum autem ver esse *coepĕrat* .. dăbat se lăbōri atque ītĭnĕrĭbus, *But when it began to be spring-time, he then gave himself to labour and journeying.*—Cic.

§ 486. **Quod** (**quo**) and **quia**.—The Conjunctions **quod** and **quia**, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Idcirco sum tardior *quod* non invĕnio fĭdum tăbellārium, *I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.*—Cic.

Urbs quae *quia* postrēma aedĭfĭcāta est, Neapŏlis (*νέα πόλις*) nōmĭnātur, *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (Newtown).*—Cic.

Obs. *Quia* states a reason more directly and positively than *quod*.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is *not* true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod*, *non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of **quia** or **quod** with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pūgĭles ĕtiam quum fĕriunt adversārium ingĕmiscunt, *non quod dŏleant* ănĭmove *succumbant*, sed *quia* profundendā vōce omne corpus *intenditur*, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist,*

fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but *false* reason), *but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension* (real reason).—Cic.

Obs. 1. Instead of *non quod*, we find also *non quo* and (rarely) *non quin* (negative).

Obs. 2. Out of this use of *quod* arises such an expression as the following:

Quod rĕlĭgiōnĭbus sese *dicĕret* impĕdīri, *Because, said he,* (alleged but false reason) "*he was prevented by religious scruples.*"—Cæs.

(The *diceret* is brought under the government of *quod*, instead of *impediretur*, by attraction.)

§ 488. In addition to the above cases, **quod** (not *quia*) is used as a causal Conjunction after such Verbs as grātŭlor, *I congratulate;* glōrior, *I boast;* quĕror, *I complain;* mīror, *I wonder;* laudo, *I praise;* and the like, when, as before (§ 486), the Indicative denotes that the ground of *rejoicing, grief, censure,* etc.; is an *actual fact*, which the Subjunctive of course cannot do: as,

Grātŭlor tibi, *quod* e prōvinciā salvum te ad tuos *rĕcēpisti, I congratulate you that you have got back safe from your province to your friends.*—Cic.

Gaudeo *quod* te *interpellāvi, I am glad that I interrupted you.*—Cic.

Non tibi objĭcio *quod* hŏmĭnem .. qui nunc A. Clōdius vŏcātur, omni argento *spŏliasti, I am not laying it to your charge that you robbed a fellow who now bears the name of Aulus Clodius of all his silver* (which you *did*).—Cic.

Sōcrātes accūsātus est *quod corrumpĕret* jŭventūtem, et *nŏvas sŭperstitiōnes introdŭcĕret, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth and bringing in new superstitions.*—Quint.

Obs. In the last of the above examples, as in many similar ones, the Subjunctive may be regarded as belonging to the oratio obliqua (§ 466): as,

Glōriābātur Hortensius, *quod* nunquam bello cīvĭli *interfuisset, Hortensius used to boast that he had never been engaged in civil war.*—Cic. (The Subj. indicates that the assertion is made by *Hortensius.*)

§ 489. **Quod** is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, jŭvat, *it delights;* vĭtium est, *it is a fault;* laudābĭle est, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

Jŭvat me, *quod vĭgent* stŭdia, *prōfĕrunt* se ingĕnia hŏmĭnum, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.*—Plin. Ep.

Magnum bĕnĕfĭcium nātūræ est, *quod* nĕcesse *est* mŏri, *It is a great boon of nature that we must die.*—Sen.

§ 490. **Quod** is sometimes thus used of an hypothetical case, and then of course it takes the Subjunctive: as,

Nēmo ōrātōrem admīrātus est, *quod* Lātīne *lŏquĕrētur*, *No one ever admired an orator because he spoke good Latin.*—Cic.

§ 491. **Quod** is originally a Relative Pronoun, and in some of its applications seems to waver between the use of the Relative Pronoun and of a Conjunction: it is on this principle we must explain such sentences as the following:—

Cūjus corpus a me crĕmātum est, *quod* contra dĕcuit ab illo meum, *His body was laid by me on the funeral pile, whereas* [*which office*] *mine should rather have undergone that office from him.*—Cic.

Obs. The use of quod si, *but if;* quod nīsi (ni), *but if not*, &c., at the beginning of sentences, is to be explained by the fondness of the Latin language for connecting the parts of a narration by means of the Relative.

§ 492. **Quippe** (*quia-pe*), *because, as being*, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, *quum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quŏniam*, *ŭbi*, *ĕnim*, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vēro laudo: .. *quippe quia* magnārum saepe id rĕmĕdium aegrĭtūdĭnum est, *I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.*—Ter.

Quippe ubi nulla *fŏrent* aeterno corpŏre, *Inasmuch as in that case* (i.e. *on a certain hypothesis*, which is denied) *there would be no objects with eternal substance.*—Lucr.

Lĕve nōmen hăbet utrăque res: *quippe lĕve ĕnim* est hoc tōtum, rīsum mŏvēre, *Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.*—Cic.

§ 493. **Quippe** is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vĕtor fātis! *Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!*—Virg.

Mŏvet me *quippe* lūmen cūriae! *Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me!*—Cic.

§ 494. **Quŏniam** (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

Quam me stultĭtiam (*quŏniam* non est gĕnus ūnum), insānīre pūtas? *What kind of folly* (*since there is more than one kind*) *do you think I am mad with?*—Hor.

Quŏniam res in id discrīmen adducta *est*, *Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.*—Cic.

De suis prīvātim rēbus ab eo pĕtĕre coepērunt, *quŏniam* cīvĭtāti consŭlĕre non *possent*, *They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.*—Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified *themselves* merely : v. § 487.)

Itaque *quŏniam* ipse pro se dīcĕre non *posset*, verba fēcit frāter ejus, *Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.*—Nep.

§ 495. **Quando** is sometimes used as a causal Conjunction, equivalent to *quŏniam*. It then takes the Indicative. as,

Quando ĭta tibi lūbet, vāle, *Since such is your humour, Good-bye.*—Plaut.

Cur non sit ōrātor, quando, quod difficĭlius est, ōrātōrem *făcit*? *Why should not he be an orator, seeing that—what is harder,—he makes an orator?*—Quint.

§ 496. **Quoad**, *as long as, as far as, until*, takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as it refers to actual fact or not: as,

Ipse *quoad pŏtuit*, fortissĭme restĭtit, *He himself, so long as he was able, resisted most valiantly.*—Caes.

Jūbeo te salvēre vōce summā, *quoad* vīres *vălent*, *I bid you good day, at the top of my voice; as far as my powers avail.*—Plaut.

Ipse intĕrĕā, *quoad* lĕgiōnes *collŏcasset*, in Galliā mōrāri constĭtuit, *He himself meanwhile resolved to remain in Gaul till he had put the legions into winter quarters.*—Caes.

§ 497. **Dum**, *whilst*, is construed with the Indicative; **dum**, *until*, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea rĕdemptio mansit.....*dum* jūdices *rejecti sunt*, *That bargain remained in force.....until the judges were rejected.*—Cic.

Obsĭdio deinde per paucos dies măgis quam oppugnātio fuit *dum* vulnus dŭcis *cūrarētur*, *The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile* (dum) *the general's wound might be cured.*—Liv.

Irātis subtrăhendi sunt ii, in quos impĕtum făcĕre cōnantur, *dum* se ipsi *collĭgant*, *Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.*—Cic.

Mihi usque cūrae ĕrit quid ăgas *dum*, quid ĕgĕris, *sciĕro*, *It will continue to be matter of concern to me what step you take, until I have learned* what step you have actually taken.*—Cic

* The writer regards it as certain that he *will* learn.

§ 498. **Dummŏdo** (also simply **dum** or **modo**), *provided that* (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Ōdĕrint, *dum mĕtuant*, *Let them hate provided only they fear.*—Suet.

Omnia recta et hŏnesta neglĭgunt, *dummŏdo* pŏtentiam *consĕquantur*, *They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.*—Cic.

Obs. We also find *dummŏdo nē, dum nē, mŏdo nē*. as,

Sit summa in jūre dīcendo sĕvērĭtas, *dummŏdo* ea *nē vărĭētur grātĭā, Let there be the utmost severity in administering justice, so long as it does not fluctuate through partiality.*—Cic.

§ 499. **Dōnec**, *whilst, until*, has the same construction as *dum* (§ 497).

Obs. 1. *Dōnec* is rare in Cicero, and is not found at all in Caesar or Sallust. But it is frequent in the poets, as well as in Livy and Tacitus.

Obs. 2. Livy and Tacitus sometimes use *dōnec* with the Subjunctive, when speaking of simple facts: as,

Elĕphanti trĕpĭdātiōnis ăllquantum cĕdēbant, *dōnec* quiētem ipse tĭmor fēcisset, *The elephants made some disturbance, until their very fears made them quiet.*—Liv.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, **antĕquam, priusquam,** *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnĭbus nĕgōtiis, priusquam *aggrĕdĭāre*, adhĭbenda est praeparātio dilīgens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.*—Cic.

§ 501. When **antĕquam, priusquam,** and **postquam,** are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(*a.*) *With Indicative.*

Antĕquam ad sententiam *rĕdeo*, de me pauca *dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.*—Cic.

Non *ante* fīnītum est proelium, quam trĭbūnus mīlĭtum *interfectus est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.*—Liv.

Ante ăllquanto *quam* tu *nātus es, A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

Neque *ante* dīmīsit cum *quam* fĭdem *dĕdit* ădŏlescens ab his sacris se temperātūrum, *Nor did she leave him till the young man gave her his word that he would refrain from taking part in these rites.*—Liv.

Dēcessit *post* annum quartum *quam expulsus ĕrat, He died four years after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(*b.*) *With Subjunctive.*

Prius Placentiam pervēnēre *quam* sătis *sōīret* Hannĭbal ab Ticīno prŏfectos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Sălămīna, quae facta est *prius quam* poenā *lĭbĕrārētur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Subjunctive is rare when only a specification of priority or subsequence of Time is indicated.

Obs. 2. Ante . . . quam, post . . . quam, are usually separated from each other: see above examples.

§ 502. **Quamvis**, *however much*, and lĭcet, *although*, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

Quamvis Ely̆sios mīrētur Graecia campos, *However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg.

Assentātio *quamvis* pernĭciōsa *sit*, nŏcēre tămen nēmĭni pŏtest, nisi ei, qui eam rĕcĭpit atque eā dēlectātur, *Flattery, however injurious it may be, can harm no one saving the man who takes it in and is gratified by it.*—Cic.

Quamvis sit magna (exspectātio), tămen eam vinces, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

Licet ipsa vĭtium *sit* ambĭtio, frĕquenter tămen causa virtūtum est, *Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint.

Vita brĕvis est *licet supra* mille annos exeat, *Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* is most often found in connexion with an adjective.

Obs. 2. In the poets and later writers *quamvis* is often equivalent to *quanquam*, and takes the Indicative: as,

Erat inter eos dignĭtāte rēgiā, *quamvis* cărĕbat nōmĭne, *He enjoyed the rank of king amongst them, though he had not the title.*—Nep.

§ 503. **Quanquam, etsi, ĕtiamsi**, *although*, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): as,

Quanquam,—etsi prĭōre foedĕre stārētur,—sătis cautum *ĕrat* de Saguntīnis, *Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv.

Quanquam festīnas, non est mŏra longa, *Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

Sed *quanquam nĕgent*, nec virtūtes nec vĭtia crescĕre, attămen, etc., *But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

Obs. Later writers make *quanquam* govern the Subjunctive, whilst they use *quamvis* with the Indicative (§ 502. *Obs.*): as,

Phraātes *quanquam* dēpŭlisset exercĭtus dūcesque Rōmānos, cuncta vĕnĕrantium offĭcia ad Augustum vertĕrat, *Phraates, though he had repulsed the armies and generals of Rome, had yet directed all the observances of respect towards Augustus.*—Tac.

Chapter XLVIII.—The Infinitive Mood.

504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive

1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as jŭvat, dēlectat,

(*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as **pulchrum, dēcōrum est**, (*it*) *is fine, becoming*, &c.; as,

Jŭvat integros *accēdĕre* fontes, atque *haurīre, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and quaff.*—Lucr.

(Here *accēdĕre, haurire*, form subjects to *jŭvat*.)

Dulce et dēcōrum est pro patriā *mŏri, It is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.*—Hor.

Usque adeōne *scire tuum* nĭhil est, nĭsi hoc sciat alter, *Is your knowledge so utterly worth nothing, unless your neighbour know it!*—Pers.

(This use of an Infinitive with an *attributive* Adjective is rare, and not to be imitated.)

2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

Quid sit fŭturum cras fŭge *quaerĕre, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.*—Hor.

Pro nōbis mitte *prĕcāri, Give over praying for us!*—Ov.

Obs. 1. For the Infinitive after Verbs of *willingness, ability*, &c., see § 512.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is sometimes used by the poets where a prose writer would employ the Gerund, or Gerundive: as,

Necquicquam . . vītābis . . *cĕlĕrem sĕqui* Ajācem, *In vain wilt thou try to avoid Ajax, swift to pursue.*—Hor.

(Celer sequi = celer *ad* sequendum.)

3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

Thāles Mīlēsius *ăquam dixit esse* ĭnĭtium rērum, *Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.*—Cic.

Sentit ănĭmus *se mŏvēri, The soul is conscious that it moves.*—Cic.

Non ĕnim ambrŏsiā *deos* aut nectăre *laetāri arbĭtror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.*—Cic.

Scio tibi ĭta *plăcēre, I know that to be your opinion.*—Cic.

(The Subject or Accusative before *placere* is involved in *ita*.)

Obs. Occasionally after a Verb of *saying*, the Nominative is found with *esse*, being descriptive of the subject. This is called *attraction*: as,

Ait esse părātus (= se părātum esse), *He declares himself to be ready.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 7, 22.)

This is a Greek construction (= φησὶν ἑτοῖμος εἶναι), and not found in good prose. Similarly, Virgil has, sensit dēlapsus (= se delapsum esse), *He perceived that he had fallen. . . .* (Gk. ᾔσθετ' ἐμπεσών).

§ 508. Not only Verbs of the above kind, but Phrases equivalent or analogous to them are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Ea *erat confessio,* căput rērum *Rōmam esse, That was a confession (=to confess) that Rome was at the head of affairs.*—Liv.

Auctōres sŭmus tūtam ibi *mājestatem* Rōmani nōmĭnis *fŏre, We will answer for it that the majesty of the Roman name shall be safe there.*—Liv.

Caesărem *certiōrem făciunt sese* non făcīle ab oppĭdis vim hostium *prŏhĭbēre, They inform Caesar that they find it no easy matter to beat off the violence of the enemy from their towns.*—Caes.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder,* etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Salvum *te advĕnīre gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.*—Plaut.

Infĕrĭōres non *dŏlēre* (dēbent) *se* a suis *sŭpĕrāri, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.*—Cic.

Mīror te ad me nĭhil *scribere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.*—Cic.

Peccasse ĕnim *se* non *anguntur,* objurgāri mŏleste fĕrunt, *They are not sorry that they have done wrong; they take it amiss that they are found fault with.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But the above Verbs more frequently take *quod,* with Indicative or Subjunctive (v. § 488).

Obs. 2. Concerning the construction of *pŭdet, pĭget,* &c., v. § 241.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as **certum est,** *it is certain;* **mănĭfestum est,** *it is manifest;* **aequum, justum est,** *it is fair* or *just;* **ŏpus, nĕcesse, est,** *it is necessary;* **sĕquĭtur,** *it follows;* **constat,** *it is acknowledged;* **expĕdit,** *it is expedient,* are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Certum est lĭbĕros a părentibus *ămāri, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.*—Quint.

Quae lĭbĕrum *scīre aequum est ădŏlescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.*—Ter.

Constat ad sălūtem cīvium *inventas esse lēges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.*—Cic.

Nĕcesse est ĭgĭtur *lēgem hăbēri* in optĭmis rēbus, *It is a necessary consequence then, that law should be reckoned among the best of things.*—Cic.

Lēgem brĕvem *esse ŏportet,* quō făcĭlius ab impĕrītis tĕnĕātur, *A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.*—Cic.

Cāto nĕgat *jus esse, cum* qui mīles non sit, cum hoste *pugnāre, Cato affirms that it is not right for one who is not a soldier to fight with the enemy.*—Cic.

Nec *sĕquĭtur* illĭco *esse causas* immūtābĭles, *Nor does it follow therefore that there are immutable causes.*—Cic.

Obs. Restat, relĭquum est, *it remains;* proxĭmum est, *the next thing is,* and the like; as also sometimes, sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* expĕdit, *it is expedient;* mos (moris) est, *it is a custom,* are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Proximum est ut dŏceam deōrum prōvĭdentiā mundum admĭnistrāri, *The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.*—Cic.

Si haec ēnuntiātio vēra non est, *sĕquĭtur ut* falsa sit, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness*, or *permission* (including jŭbeo), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Mājōres *corpŏra* jŭvĕnum *firmāri* lăbōre *vŏluērunt*, *Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.*—Cic.

Sĕnātui *placet*, *Crassum* Sўriam *obtĭnēre*, *It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.*—Cic.

Verres *hŏmĭnem corrīpi jussit*, *Verres ordered the man to be arrested.* —Cic. (comp. § 451).

Cŭpio mĕ esse clēmentem, *I desire that I may be merciful.*—Cic.

Dēlectum hăbēri prŏhĭbēbo, *I will not suffer the levy to be held.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *wishing* are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, sqq.).

Obs. 2. *Impero* is sometimes used like *jubeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Has omnes actuārias *impĕrat fĭĕri*, *He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.*—Caes. (B. G. 5, 1.)

4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination*, *ability*, *lawfulness*, *duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive: as,

Stŭdeo ex te *audīre* quid sentias, *I desire to hear from you what you think.*—Cic.

Amīcĭtia, nisi inter bŏnos, *esse* non *pŏtest*, *Friendship can only exist between the good.*—Cic.

Optat ărāre căballus, *The nag would like to draw the plough.*—Hor. (cf. § 447).

Dīci beātus ante ōbĭtum nēmo *dēbet*, *No one ought to be called happy before his decease.*—Ov.

Caesar bellum cum Germānis *gĕrĕre constĭtuit*, *Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. When a wish respecting the *Subject* is expressed, either the Infinitive alone or the Accusative and Infinitive may be used: thus, instead of Cŭpio esse *clēmens*, we may have Cŭpio *me* esse *clēmentem* (Cic.).

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is also used after certain equivalent phrases: as, (mihi) in ănĭmo est, certum est, consĭlium est, *It is my purpose*, &c.: as,

Certum est (mihi) omnia audacter lībĕreque *dīcĕre*, *It is my determination to say everything boldly and freely.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. Also after jŭbeo, vĕto, cōnor: v. § 451, *Obs.* 2.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

Ubi vŏles *pătĕr esse*, ĭbi esto, *When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

Cŭpio in tantis reipublĭcae pĕrīcŭlis, *me* non *dissolūtum vĭdēri*, *I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

Obs. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is Vŏlui me consŭlem *esse*, not *fuisse*: see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying *to begin, continue*, or *leave off*; also *to be* or *become accustomed*, govern the Infinitive: as,

Incĭpe, parve puer, mātrem *cognoscĕre* rīsu, *Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*—Virg.

Illud jam *mīrāri* dēsĭno, *That I am now ceasing to wonder at.*—Cic.

Qui *mentīri* sŏlet, *pējĕrāre consuēvit*, *He who is in the habit of lying, has learned to be a perjurer.*—Cic.

§ 515. The Verbs *to seem, to be thought, said, believed* (vĭdeor, pŭtor, crēdor, dīcor, fēror, nuntior, etc.), are generally used personally (see § 232, *Obs.*): thus we find,

Lectĭtāvisse Plătōnem stŭdĭōse *Dēmosthĕnes* (not *Demosthenem*) *dīcĭtur*, *Demosthenes is said to have been a most diligent reader of Plato.*—Cic.

Lūna (not *lunam*) sōlis lūmĭne collustrāri *pŭtātur*, *It is thought that the moon is illumined by the sun's light.*—Cic.

Obs. But the impersonal construction is not uncommon with vĭdeor.

5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote *surprise*, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mēnĕ *dēsistĕre* victam, (*To think that*) *I should give over as vanquished!*—Virg.

O Aeschĭne! haeccĭne flāgĭtia făcĕre te, *O Aeschinus, to think that should disgrace yourself in this way!*—Ter.

Ădeōne rem rĕdiisse, *To think it should have come to this!*—Ter.

6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intĕreā Manlius in Etrūriā plēbem *sollĭcĭtāre*, *Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque mĕtu pĕrīcŭla *mētīri*, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

Obs. This use of the Infinitive is most frequent in descriptive passages: where it serves rather to place a circumstance in a lively manner before the eye, than merely to state that it took place.

7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find fŏre ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Clāmābant hŏmĭnes, *fŏre ut* ipsi se dii immortāles *ulciscĕrentur, The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.*—Cic.

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero *fŏre ut contingat* id nobis, *I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. **Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua:** see § 466.

Chapter XLIX.—Participles.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in it, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition:* as,

Dionȳsius, cultros *mĕtuens* tonsōris, candenti carbōne sibi ădūrēbat căpillum, *Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.*—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

Ipsa *suā* Dido concĭdit *ūsa mănu, Dido fell, by* (Lit., *using*) *her own hand.*—Ov

Puer bĕne *sĭbi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.*—Cic.

Obs. When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity for,* it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future;* and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity.* Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect.*

Obs. 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which regularly form a Perfect Participle Active: as, ădeptus, *having acquired;* ūsus, *having used,* &c. (See § 103.

Obs. 2. The lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

Multi in *ĕquis părandis* adhĭbent cūram, in *ămīcis ēlĭgendis* neglĭgentes sunt, *Many take pains in getting horses* (Lit. *horses being got*), *but are careless in choosing friends.*—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of: as,

Cūrio ad fŏcum *sĕdenti* magnum auri pondus Samnītes quum attŭlissent, rĕpŭdiāti sunt, *When the Samnites brought Curius as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.*— Cic.

Scripta tua jam diu *exspectans* non audeo tămen flāgĭtāre, *While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Imperfect Participle, *quum* with the Past-Imperfect is often used: as,

Audivi *quum diceret, I heard him saying.*—Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense:—

Audeo,	*I dare,*	**ausus,**	*having dared.*
Gaudeo,	*I rejoice,*	**gāvīsus,**	*having rejoiced, rejoicing.*
Sŏleo,	*I am wont,*	**sŏlĭtus,**	*having been wont.*
Fīdo (& comp.),	*I trust,*	**fīsus,**	*having trusted.*
Jūro,	*I swear,*	**jūrātus,**	*having sworn.*
Coeno,	*I dine,*	**coenātus,**	*having dined.*
Prandeo,	*I breakfast,*	**pransus**	*having breakfasted.*
Nūbo,	*I am married,*	**nupta**	*having been married to.*
Ōdi,	*I hate,*	**ōsus**	*having hated, hating.*

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so:—

Adĭpiscor	*I attain to,*	**ădĕptus,** *having attained, or having been attained.*
Cŏmĭtor,	*I accompany,*	**cŏmĭtātus,** &c.
Confĭteor,	*I confess,*	**confessus,** &c
Mētior,	*I measure,*	**mensus.**
Expĕrior,	*I try,*	**expertus.**
Mĕdĭtor,	*I practise,*	**mĕdĭtātus.**
Testor,	*I call to witness,*	**testātus.**
Mŏdĕror,	*I control,*	**mŏdĕrātus.**
Pŏpŭlor,	*I devastate,*	**pŏpŭlātus.**
Partior,	*I divide,*	**partītus.**
Păciscor,	*I bargain,*	**pactus.**

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute.*

(B.) By quum with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Mucius sōlus in castra Porsennae vēnit, eumque interfĭcĕre, *prōpŏsĭtā* sibi *morte*, cōnātus est, *Mucius went alone into the camp of Porsenna, and having set death* (Lit., *death having been set*) *before his eyes, attempted to slay him.*—Cic.

Cognĭto Caesăris *adventu*, Ariovistus lēgātos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

Dextrā Hercŭles *datā* ōmen se accĭpĕre ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv.

(B.)

Epămīnondas *quum vicisset* Lăcĕdaemŏnios ăpud Mantinēam, atque ipse grăvi vulnĕre se exănīmări *vĭdĕret*, quaesīvit, salvusne esset clĭpeus, *Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.*—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)

Obs. Similarly the want of an Imperfect Participle in the Passive may be supplied by quum and the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: as,

Quum cīvĭtas in lăbōre assĭduo rĕfĭciendae urbis *tĕnērētur*, *The people being occupied in the incessant labour of restoring the city.*—Liv.

(Similarly with *dum* and the Present Indicative, § 393.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle* Active is used to denote (1) simple *futurity*; (2) *intention* or *purpose*: as,

Delli mŏrĭtūre, *O Dellius, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

Perseus rĕdiit, belli cāsum de integro tentātūrus, *Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

Obs. The Future Participle occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

Nam priusquam incĭpias *consulto*; et ubi consŭlŭĕris, mātūre *facto* ŏpus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

Nihil *pensi* neque *mŏdĕrāti* hăbēre, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

§ 529. The use of the *Gerundive Participle* is explained in the next chapter.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

Victa pietas jăcet, *Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.*—Ov.

Rursus in oblīquum *verso* perrumpit *ārātro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.*—Virg.

Tyrtaeus carmĭna *compŏsĭta* exercĭtui rĕcĭtāvit, *Tyrtaeus composed songs and repeated them to the army.*—Justin.

Chapter L.—The Gerund and Gerundive Participle.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative; as, rĕgendi, *of ruling;* rĕgendo, *to, for,* or *by ruling;* ad rĕgendum, *for the purpose of ruling.*

Obs. Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).—In such sentences as pārendum est, *we must obey;* mŏriendum est, *we must die;* the form in -dum is the neuter of the Gerundive Participle, not the Gerund. See § 536.

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

Gen.—Practĕrĕāmus ĭgĭtur praecepta Lătīnē *lŏquendi* (§ 263), *Let us then pass over the rules for speaking Latin.*—Cic.

Dat.—Āqua nitrōsa ūtĭlis est bĭbendo (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

Acc.—Brĕve tempus aetātis sătis longum est *ad* bĕnĕ hŏnestēque *vīvendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

Abl.—Orātor *in dīcendo* (§ 331) exercĭtātus, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is found only with Prepositions, and cannot be used as the direct object after a transitive verb.

§ 533. The Gerund, though virtually a Substantive, still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

Parsĭmōnia est scientia *vītandi sumptūs* sŭpervăcuos, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense.*—Sen.

Publĭca prōdendo tua necquicquam serves, *By betraying the public weal, you would in vain try to preserve your own.*—Liv.

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is *necessary* or *proper* to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb est, sunt, etc., in agreement with a

Substantive, to signify that something *ought to be done.*

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the *Neuter* Gender along with the Verb est, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb *governs an Accusative*, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive: as,

Dīligentia est *cŏlenda, We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

Obs. Such a construction as poenas tĭmendum est, *we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb *governs any other case* than the Accusative the Gerundive is used impersonally with est in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

Rĕsistendum sĕnectūti est.....*pugnandum* tanquam contra morbum, sic contra sĕnectūtem, *We must resist old-age; we must combat with old-age as with a disease.*—Cic.

Corpŏri *subvĕniendum est, We must aid the body.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

Obs. 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

Obs. 3. The Gerundives of Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative are used both impersonally and in agreement with Substantives in the Nominative case: as,

Ūtendum ĕrit verbis, *We shall have to make use of words.*—Cic.

Non păranda nōbis sōlum săpientia sed ĕtiam *fruenda* est, *We must not only get wisdom, but also enjoy the use of it.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. Instead of the Dative of the agent, the Ablative with *a* or *ab* may be used to avoid confusion: as,

Quĭbus est *a vobis* consŭlendum, *Whose interests should be consulted by you.*—Cic. (Manil. 2, *extr.*)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus,

Ars pŭĕros ēdūcandi difficĭlis est

becomes

Ars pŭĕrōrum ēdūcandōrum difficĭlis est

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi;* consequently *puerorum.* (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus, a, um.* (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with puerorum in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum.* For example:

Nihil Xenŏphonti tam rēgāle vĭdētur, quam stŭdium *agri cŏlendi, Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.*—Cic.

Rēgŭlus *rĕtĭnendi offĭcii* causā crŭciātum sūbiit vŏluntārium, *Regulus for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. So also are used the Gerundive Participles of *ūtor, fruor, pŏtior vescor, fungor:* as,

Ad *agrum fruendum* invītat atque allectat sĕnectus, *Old age invites and tempts us to the enjoyment of the country.*—Cic.

Hostes in spem *potiundōrum castrōrum* vēnĕrant, *The enemy had got hopes of obtaining possession of the camp.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a *neuter* Adjective: as,

(Pars hŏnesti) in *trĭbuendo suum* cuique versātur, *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result* (§ 299): as,

Vălĕrius consul cŏmĭtia *collēgae subrŏgando* hăbuit, *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

Dĕcemvĭri *lēgĭbus scribundis, Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

Tibĕrius quăsi *firmandae vălētūdĭni* in Campāniam concessit, *Tiberius withdrew into Campania ostensibly for the purpose of recruiting his health.*—Tac.

(But here Cic. would have written *ad firmandam valetudinem.*)

Obs. 1. This use of the Gerundive is most frequent in describing the function of *an official person or body:* as in the expressions, *Triumviri agris dandis,* &c. (See examples above.)

Obs. 2. To this head belong the phrases, esse solvendo (*sc.*, aeri, for which *aere* also occurs, alieno), *to be capable of paying, solvent;* ŏnĕri fĕrendo esse, *to be adequate to the bearing of the burden.*

§ 539. The Gerundive is sometimes found with a similar meaning in the Genitive Case: as,

Rēgium impĕrium, quod ĭnĭtio *conservandae lĭbertātis* atque *augendae reipublicae fuerat, The kingly government, which at the outset, had tended to the preservation of liberty and the increase of the Commonwealth.*—Sall.

Obs. This is to be regarded as a *Genitive of Quality* (§ 276).

§ 540. The following usage has been variously explained:—

In *castra* vēnērunt causā *purgandi sui, They came into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.*—Caes.

(Where we might have expected *purgandorum.*)

Non vĕreor nĕ quis hoc me *vestri adhortandi* (adhortandorum) causā magnĭfĭce lŏqui existĭmet, *I have no fear that any one will think I am herein speaking boastfully for the sake of encouraging you.*—Liv.

(Alĭquid facere) *eōrum* (= ea § 537, *Obs.* 2), quae sĕcundum nātūram sunt, *ădīpiscendi* causā, *To do a thing for the sake of attaining to those things which are in accordance with nature.*—Cic.

Permissā.....lĭcentiā *dīrĭpiendi* (=diripiendorum) *pōmōrum, Giving leave to pilfer the fruit.*— Suet.

Obs. It is possible that the Gerund may in the above cases be treated as an ordinary Substantive, as we say, "*The clearing* of *themselves,*" "*The doing* of *those things which are, &c.*"

§ 541. The Gerund (or Gerundive) is sometimes used in the Ablative Case, after the manner of an *Ablative Absolute* when it has the force of an *Imperfect* Tense: as,

L. Cornēlius, complexus Appium, non cuĭ sĭmŭlābat *consŭlendo,* dĭrēmit certāmen, *Lucius Cornelius embracing Appius—being concerned in reality not for the person for whom he pretended—put an end to the dispute.*—Liv.

Ut non pĕtisse Saguntīnos, sed sĕrie, fīnĭtĭmis dŏmĭtis gentĭbus, *jungendoque,* tractus ad id bellum vĭdēri posset, *So that he might seem not to have singled out the Saguntines for attack, but in the natural order, after having subdued the neighbouring tribes, and as he was linking them together, to have been dragged into the said war.*—Liv

(In the above examples, consulendo, jungendo = *quum* consuleret, jungeret.)

Chapter LI.—The Supines.

§ 542. The two Supines in um and u are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in um is used only after Verbs signifying *motion,* and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Făbius Pictor Delphos ad ōrācŭlum *missus est scītātum* quĭbus prĕcĭbus deos possent plācāre, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

Cŭbītum īre (or, of several persons, *cŭbītum* discēdĕre), *To go to bed.* —Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos *hăbĭtātum concessit, Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

Obs. The phrase īre perdĭtum, *to set about deliberately to destroy* (Cic., Sall.), should be noted.

§ 544. The Supine in u (which is properly an Ablative of *Manner*, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as **jūcundus**, *pleasant;* **făcĭlis**, *easy;* **hŏnestus**, *honourable;* **crēdĭbĭlis**, *credible;* **mīrābĭlis**, *wonderful;* and the like, with their contraries, to denote *in what respect* they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam *jūcundum cognĭtu* atque *audĭtu*, quam săpientibus sententiis grăvĭbusque verbis ornāta ōrātio? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

Id *dictu* quam re *făcĭlius*, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing.*—Liv.

Nĕfas est *dictu*, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pŭdet: as,*
Pŭdet dictu, *I am ashamed as I say it!*—(Agr. 32.)

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,
Mīrābĭle dictu, *Marvellous to relate!*—Virg.

Chapter LII.—Adverbs.

§ 545. Adverbs qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and (other) Adverbs. To these parts of speech they sustain a corresponding relation to that of the Adjective to the Substantive; as in the following examples:

Tantus ămor, *So great love.*
(Substantive qualified by Adjective.)

Adeo ămāre, *To love to such a degree.*
Adeo ămans, *So loving* (*affectionate*).
Adeo ămanter, *So lovingly.*
(Verb, Adjective, and Adverb, qualified by corresponding Adverb.)

§ 546. In the following cases an Adverb is found joined with a Substantive:

(1.) In the case of the Numeral Adverbs **ĭtĕrum, tertium, quartum**, etc., as denoting the number of times an office has been held: as,

Consul ĭtĕrum, tertium, *Consul for the second, third time*, etc.—Liv. (Where in Greek the word consul would appear as a participle: *ὑπατεύων.*)

(2.) Some Adverbs of place: as, circa (very often), extrinsĕcus, and some others: as,

Multae *circa* cīvĭtātes, *Many surrounding states.*—Liv.

Grăvĭbus *sŭperne ictĭbus* conflictābantur, *They encountered severe blows from above.*—Tac.

(3.) With some Substantives used participially: as,

Pŏpŭlus lāte *rex*, *A nation widely ruling.*—Virg.

(A poetical construction.)

(4.) Occasionally with other Adverbs: as,

Inter duo *simul* bella, *Between two wars going on at once.*—Liv.

Nullā *magnŏpĕre* clāde acceptā, *No serious disaster having been suffered.*—Liv.

Paene mīles, *Hardly (yet) a common soldier.*—Cic.

§ 547. **Partim.**—The Adverb partim (originally accus. of pars) is often used as the Subject of a sentence; especially where partim .... partim = ălii .... ălii: as,

Eorum autem bĕnĕfĭciorum *partim* ejusmŏdi sunt ut ad ūnĭversos cīves pertĭneant, *partim* singŭlos ut attingant, *Of those acts of beneficence, some are of a nature to extend to one's fellow-countrymen generally, others to affect individuals only.*—Cic.

Obs. In the above example *partim* governs the Genitive (of *beneficiorum*) according to § 271.

N.B. Concerning the use of a neuter Adjective as an Adverb, see § 344.

§ 548. The Comparative of Adverbs is in prose usually followed by *quam*: as,

Vox me cĭtius dēfĕcĕrit quam nōmĭna (*not* nomĭnĭbus), *Voice would sooner fail me than names.*—Cic.

Ōdĕram multo *pējus* hunc *quam* Clōdium ipsum (rather than Clodio ipso), *I hated him worse than Clodius himself.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But in verse the Ablative is more common: as, blandius Orpheo, *more bewitchingly than Orpheus;* cautius sanguĭne vīpĕrīno, *(to avoid anything) more carefully than viper's blood.*—Hor.

Obs. 2. Also in short phrases, the Ablative is preferred in prose: as, măgis sōlĭto, *more than usual* (Liv.), dicto cĭtius, *no sooner said than done* (Petr.). To these we may add the proverb: lacrĭmā nil cĭtius ārescit, *Nothing dries faster than tears.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. For the construction of *amplius, plus, minus*, see § 349.

§ 549. Adverbs are compared together in the same way as Adjectives (see § 350): as,

Avĭdĭus quam consultius, *More eagerly than advisedly.*—Tac.

§ 550. Some Adverbs derived from Adjectives govern a Dative: see § 299.

§ 551. Sic, ĭta.—Sic is derived from hic and ita from is; and the two Adverbs strictly differ from each other as do the Pronouns from which they are derived. Thus sic takes the place of a description, while ĭta simply makes reference to something in the context: as,

Macte virtūte puer: *sic* ĭtur ad astra, *A blessing on thy valour, boy! Thus do men go heavenwards.*—Virg.

(Compare the well-known *Sic* vos non vobis, etc.)

Ut bĭnae rēgum făcies, *ĭta* corpŏra gentis, *As there are two species of kings* [queen-bees], *so there are sorts among their subjects.*—Virg.

Ut quisque est vir optĭmus, *ĭta* difficillĭme esse ălios improbos suspĭcatur, *Just in proportion to a man's excellence* [*in that proportion*] *does he find most difficulty in suspecting others to be evil.*—Cic.

Obs. From the two preceding examples it will be seen that *ĭta* is the regular correlative of *ut*.

§ 552. An Adverb occasionally appears as Predicate after the Verb *to be*: see § 213, *Obs.* 2.

Chapter LIII.—Prepositions.

§ 553. Prepositions serve to show the relation of one Substantive to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 554. Some Prepositions are found with the Accusative only; others with the Ablative only; some with the Accusative or Ablative, according to the sense; and some with either the Accusative or Ablative indiscriminately.

Obs. *Tĕnus* is sometimes found with the Genitive: see § 557.

§ 555. Lists of the Prepositions, with the cases they govern, are given in §§ 134-137. The following are the principal uses of the several Prepositions. For further details the student is referred to the Dictionary.

§ 556. I. With the Accusative only.

1. **Ad.**—*To, at,* or *near; for, in relation to, in comparison with:* as,

Ventum ĕrat ad Vestae (*sc.* aedem), *We had come to the temple of Vesta.*—Hor.

Ad quintum lăpĭdem, *By the fifth milestone.*—Nep.

Ad Veios, *Before the walls of Veii.*—Liv.

Omnes ad ūnum, *All to a single man.*—Cic.

Ad unguem, *To the very nail*, i. e. *perfectly.*—Hor.

Ad nuptias cŏquĕre, *To cook for a wedding-feast.*—Plaut.

Nātus ad ăgendum, *Born for action.*—Cic.

Agĕre ad praescriptum.—*To act according to express rule.*—Caes.

Vir bŏnus et non illĭtĕrātus, sed nĭhil ad Persium, *A respectable man and no mean scholar, but nothing (in comparison) to Persius.*—Cic.

Obs. Ad Rōmam, *before the walls of Rome, in the vicinity of Rome,* must be distinguished from Rōmae, *actually at Rome.* Before numerals ad is occasionally an Adverb; as,

Occīsis ad hominum millĭbus quattuor, *As many as* 4000 *being slain.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 33.)

Ad duo millia et trĕcenti, *As many as* 2300.—Liv. (10, 17.)

2. **Adversus, adversum.**—Used of motion, direction, disposition, *towards*, or *against :* as

Adversus montem, *Towards* or *up a hill.*—Caes.

Pietas justĭtia adversus deos (est), *Piety is justice in relation to the gods.*—Cic.

Adversus lēges, *Contrary to the laws.*—Cic.

Adversus vĕtĕrem impĕrātōrem compărābĭtur, *He will be matched against a veteran general.*—Liv.

Obs. Adversus differs from contra in that it does not, like the latter, always signify *opposition :* from erga, in having a greater variety of applications (see No. 9).

3. **Ante.**—*Before ;* of place, time, comparison : as,

Ante ostium stāre, *To stand before the door.*—Ter.

Ante urbem condĭtam, *Before the building of the city.*—Cic.

Ante omnes cārissimus, *Before all most beloved.*—Nep.

Obs. Note especially the phrase ante diem (A.D.) in giving the day of the month : as, ante diem XIII Kălendas Jānuārias (*the 20th of December*), where the preposition strictly belongs to Kalendas, but is made to govern diem as well.

4. **Ăpŭd.**—*Near ; in the presence of ; in the writings of :* as,

Apud Mantĭnēam, *In the neighbourhood of Mantinea.*—Nep.

Apud Laecam, *In the house of Laeca.*—Cic.

Verba ăpud sĕnātum făcĕre, *To make a speech before the senate.*—Cic.

Apud Xĕnŏphontem, *In (the writings of) Xenophon.*—Cic.

Obs. Apud is sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *at* or *in :* as,

Apud urbem Nōlam, *In the city of Nola.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 5.)

5. **Circum, circā.**—*Around, about, near about.* These forms are used somewhat differently

(*a.*) **circum.**—More precise than circa, *all round:* as,

Urbes quae circum Cāpuam sunt, *The cities which lie round about Capua.*—Cic.

Terra circum axem se convertit, *The earth turns round upon its axis.*—Cic.

Līgāto circum collum sūdārio, *With a handkerchief tied round one's neck.*—Suet.

Omnium flāgĭtĭōrum (= flagitiosorum) circum se cātervas hăbēbat, *He had about his person gangs of all kinds of profligate characters.*—Sall.

(*b.*) **circā.**—Of place; *round, about, in the neighbourhood of:* of time; *about, towards:* of number (= circĭter); *near about:* of relation; *about, respecting:* as,

Circa montem Amānum, *In the vicinity of Mount Amanus.*—Caes.

Lēgātōs circa vīcīnas gentes mīsit, *He dispatched ambassadors round to the neighbouring nations.*—Liv.

Circa eandem hōram, *About the same time of the day.*—Liv.

Circa quingentos Rōmānorum, *About* 500 *of the Romans.*—Liv.

Circa verba dissensio, *A dispute about words.*—Quint.

Obs. Circa in the sense of *concerning* (usually de with *abl.*) is chiefly found in later authors.

6. **Circĭter.**—*About:* as a preposition used only with numerals: as,

Octāvam circĭter hōram, *About the eighth hour.*—Hor.

N.B. But circiter is usually an Adverb.

7. **Cīs, citrā.**—*On this side of; without* (rare): as,

Citra or cis Rhēnum, *On this side the Rhine.*—Caes.

Citrā spĕciem, *Without* (lit. *on this side, on the wrong side of*) *beauty.*—Tac.

Citra fĭdem, *Beyond belief.*—Tac.

Obs. The form citra alone is used in the latter (figurative) sense.

8. **Contrā.**—*Opposite to; against:* as,

Insŭlae tertium lătus est contra septentriōnes, *The third side of the island is opposite to* (*faces*) *the north.*—Caes.

Contra nātūram, offĭcium, *Contrary to nature, duty.*—Cic.

Contra Pŏpŭlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, *To conspire against the Roman people.*—Caes.

Obs. For the distinction between contra and adversus see above.

9. **Ergā.**—*Towards:* of feeling or conduct: as,

Dīvīna bŏnĭtas erga hŏmĭnes, *The divine goodness towards man.*—Cic.

Obs. Erga is almost always used of *friendly* feelings or conduct; contra being used of hostility.

10. **Extrā.**—*Outside of, free from; except* (rare): as,

Extra portam Collīnam, *Outside the Colline gate.*—Cic.

Extra noxiam, *Free from guilt.*—Ter.

Extra dŭcem paucosque praetĕrea, *Excepting their leader and a few besides.*—Cic.

11. **Infrā.**—*Beneath;* of place or relation: as,

Infra coelum ĕt sīdĕrā, *Beneath the sky and stars.*—Tac.

Infra se, *Beneath oneself* (in figurative sense).—Cic.

12. **Inter.**—*Between, among; during* (esp. with gerunds): as,

Inter Pădum atque Alpes, *Between the Po and the Alps.*—Liv.

Inter tēla versāri, *To be in the midst of weapons.*—Cic.

Inter falcārios, *In the quarter* (or *street*) *of the scythe-makers.*—Cic.

Inter hōram tertiam et quartam, *Between the third and fourth hour.*—Liv.

Haec inter coenam dictāvi, *The above I dictated in the course of supper.*—Cic.

Inter bĭbendum, *During drinking.*—Just.

Hi omnes inter se differunt, *These all differ from one another.*—Caes.

Pueri inter se ămant, *The boys love each other.*—Cic.

Quod inter nos lĭceat, *Between ourselves.*—Cic.

13. **Intrā.**—*Within;* of place, time, or any other relation: as,

Intra mūros, *Within the walls.*—Cic.

Intra hōs sex menses, *Within the last six months.*—Phaedr.

Intra centum, *Within one hundred.*—Liv.

Intra lēgem, *Within the law* (the limit prescribed by law).—Cic.

14. **Juxtā.**—*Hard by;* next to: as,

Juxta mūrum, *Close to the wall.*—Caes.

Hŏmo juxta Varrōnem doctissĭmus, *The most learned man after Varro.*—Gell.

Obs. Juxta denotes closer proximity than ad or prope.

15. **ŏb.**—*Before* (of place); *on account of:* as,

Mors ob ŏcŭlos saepe versāta est, *Death was often before his eyes.*—Cic.

Ob rem jūdĭcandam pĕcūniam accĭpĕre, *To take a bribe for one's judicial vote.*—Cic.

Mortem ob rempublĭcam ŏbīre, *To encounter death on account of the state.*—Tac.

16. **Pĕnes.**—*In the possession, or power of:* as,

Quem pĕnes est pŏtestas, *To whom belongs the power.*—Cic.

Pĕnes te es, *Are you in your senses?*—Hor.

Hi (servi) centum dies pĕnes accūsātorem (erant), *These slaves remained in the hands of the accuser one hundred days.*—Cic.

Obs. Penes is often put after its case, especially a Relative.

17. **Pĕr.**—*Through, throughout, during; by means of; in the way of; on account of; by* (in oaths): as,

Per agros văgāri, *To roam over the country.*—Liv.

Per hiĕmem, *Throughout the winter.*—Cato.

Per indūtias, *In time of truce.*—Liv.

Per explōrātōres cognoscĕre, *To learn by means of scouts.*—Caes.

Per īram făcĕre (aliquid), *To do anything through anger.*—Cic.

Per summum dēdĕcus vītam āmittĕre, *To lose life in circumstances of extreme disgrace.*—Cic.

Per aetātem, *Through* (*on account of*) *age.*—Cic.

Per deos atque hŏmĭnes, *By gods and men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The meaning *on account of* is rare.

Obs. 2. In adjurations *per* is often separated from its Accusative: as,

Per ĕgo te deos ōro, *By the gods I entreat you!*—Ter.

Per ego te, inquit, fīli, quaecunque jūra lĭbĕros jungunt părentibus, prĕcor, *By whatever claims bind children to their parents, I entreat thee, my son!*—Liv.

18. **Pōne.**—*Behind* (rare): as,

Pōne castra, *Behind* (*in the rear of*) *the camp.*—Liv.

Vinctae pōne tergum mānus, *Hands bound behind the back.*—Tac.

19. **Post.**—*Behind* (in lit. and fig. sense); *after:* as,

Post me ĕrat Aegīna, ante Mĕgăra, *Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Post tergum, *Behind one's back.*—Caes.

Nĕque ĕrat Lȳdia post Chloen, *Nor was Lydia behind Chloe* (*in favour*).—Hor.

Post M. Brūtum prōconsŭlem, *After the proconsulate of M. Brutus.*—Cic.

Maxĭma post hŏmĭnum mĕmŏrĭam classis, *The largest fleet in* (lit. *since*) *the memory of men.*—Nep.

Obs. Post is usually preferred by classical writers to pōne, which, as a preposition, became nearly obsolete.

20. **Praeter.**—*Along, past* (of motion); *besides, except, contrary to:* as,

Praeter castra Caesăris cōpias suas transduxit, *He marched his forces past the camp of Caesar.*—Caes.

Praeter cētĕros lăbōrāre, *To labour beyond* (*more than*) *the rest.*—Cic.

Amīcum tĭbi nēmĭnem esse praeter Lucullum, *I see you have no friend except Lucullus.*—Cic.

Praeter spem, ŏpīnĭōnem, *Contrary to expectation.*—Cic.

21. **Prŏpĕ.**—*Near to;* usually of *place:* as,

Prŏpe oppĭdum, *Near to the town.*—Caes.

Prŏpe lūcem, *Towards daybreak.*—Suet.

Prŏpe sēdĭtĭōnem ventum est, *It came very near to a mutiny.*—Tac.

Obs.—Prŏpe is often an Adverb, and followed by the Preposition *ab* (*a*). So also is the compar. adverb prŏpius, and less frequently proxĭme.

22. **Proptĕr.**—*Near* (*close*) *to; on account of* (the most frequent meaning): as,

Propter Plătōnis stătuam consēdĭmus, *We sat down close to the statue of Plato.*—Cic.

Pārēre lēgĭbus propter mĕtum, *To obey the laws on account of fear.*—Cic.

Obs. Propter sometimes follows its case.

23. **Sĕcundum.**—*By, along; directly after, following upon; according to:* as,

Ĭter sĕcundum mărе făcĕre, *To journey along the sea-coast.*—Cic.

Sĕcundum vindēmiam, *Directly after the vintage.*—Cato.

Vīvĕre sĕcundum nātūram, *To live according to nature.*—Cic.

Sĕcundum lĭbertātem vindĭcias dăre, *To grant a claim in favour of personal freedom.*—Liv.

24. **Suprā.**—*Above* (in lit. or fig. sense), *beyond:* as,

Supra me Attĭcus (accŭbuerat), infra Verrius, *Next above me sat Atticus, below me Verrius.*—Cic.

Ille supra sĕgĕtes nāvĭgat, *One sails over corn-fields.*—Ov.

Dux hostium cum exercĭtu supra căput est, *The enemy hovers over our head with an army.*—Sall.

Supra millia vīginti, *Beyond* (*more than*) 20,000.—Liv.

Supra mŏdum, *Beyond measure.*—Liv.

Obs. It is rarely used of time: as,

Paullo supra hanc mĕmŏrĭam, *A little before the present date.*—Caes.

25. Trans.—*Across, on the farther side of:* as,

Trans mărе currunt, *They hurry across the sea.*—Hor.

Trans Tĭbĕrim hăbĭtat, *He lives on the farther side of the Tiber.*—Hor.

26. Ultrā.—*Beyond:* as,

Cis Pădum ultrāque, *On the nearer and farther side of the Po.*—Liv.

Ultra mŏdum, *Beyond a (certain) limit.*—Cic.

Ultra fās, *Beyond what is right.*—Hor.

Ne sūtor ultra crĕpĭdam, *Let not the shoemaker go beyond his last.*—Vet. Prov.

27. Versŭs.—Of direction *towards* (only of local direction): as,

Arpīnum versus, *Towards Arpinum.*—Cic.

Ităliam versus nāvĭgāre, *To sail in the direction of Italy.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. Versus is often used in combination with *ad* or *in:* as,

T. Labiēnum ad Oceănum versus prŏfĭcisci jŭbet, *He directs T. Labienus to set out in the direction of the Ocean.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. Versus is put after its case, like the English *-wards*.

§ 557. II. With the Ablative only.

1. Ăb, ā.—Of separation or origin, *from, by;* of proximity, *on the side of;* to denote the agent after a Passive Verb: as,

Non longe a fīnĭbus Tŏlŏsātium absunt, *They are not far from the territories of the Tolosates.*—Caes.

Rem omnem a princĭpio audies, *You shall hear the whole matter from the beginning.*—Ter.

A pŭero, *From a boy* (= *from boyhood.*)—Cic.

Cornix est ab laeva, *The crow is on the left.*—Plaut.

Haec a nōbis sunt, *These things are on our side.*—Cic.

Nĭhil est ab omni parte beātum, *Nothing is in every respect happy (from every point of view).*—Hor.

Ossa ejus clam in Attĭca ab ămīcis sĕpulta (sunt), *His bones were secretly buried in Attica by his friends.*—Nep.

A frīgŏre lăbōrare, *To suffer from cold.*—Plin.

A mănu servus, *An amanuensis.*—Suet. (See also § 715.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes only the context can determine whether *ab* is used in the sense of *by* or *from:* as,

Postŭlātur a pŏpŭlo, *The demand is made by* (or *from*) *the people.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In such expressions as a manu (servus), ab epistŏlis, etc., the preposition denotes the *province in which* service is rendered.

Obs. 3. *Ab* is used chiefly before consonants and *a* before vowels (including *h*) only: *abs* is rare, except in compounds.

Obs. 4. The primary meaning of this preposition appears to have denoted *origin*.

2. **Absque** (rare).— *Without :* as,

Absquĕ te esset, *Without you ; were it not for you.*—Plaut.

Obs. According to Zumpt, *absque* occurs but once in Cicero, and there only for the sake of euphony.

3. **Cōram.**—*In the presence of :* as,

Cantābit văcuus cōram lātrōne viātor, *The empty-pocketed traveller will whistle in the presence of the highwayman.*—Hor.

4. **Cum.**— *With, along with :* as,

Esse cum tēlo, *To be (provided) with a weapon.*—Cic.

Cum pāce laxior annōna rĕdiit, *Along with peace returned greater cheapness of provisions.*—Liv.

Ex sēmĭne cum dĕcimo rĕdit, *There is a tenfold* (lit. *with a tenth*) *return from the seed.*—Varr.

Obs. 1. *Cum* is not used to introduce the *instrument* of an action : thus *cum gladio* interfectus est would not mean, *he was slain with a sword*, but *he was slain having a sword with him.*

Obs. 2. But cum is often used of the attendant *circumstances*, or *characteristics* of an action : as,

Summa cum cĕlĕrĭtāte ad exercĭtum rĕdiit, *He returned with the utmost speed to his army.*—Hirt.

Obs. 3. With the Ablatives of Pronouns cum is written as an enclitic : as, *mecum, tecum, nobiscum, quibuscum*, etc.

5. **Dē.**—*Down from, from ;* of time, *during, in the course of ;* of material, *made of ; concerning :* as,

De mūro se prōjēcit, *He cast himself down from the wall.*—Caes.

Caupo de via Lătīna, *An innkeeper from the Latin way.*—Cic.

Pauci de nostris cădunt, *A few from amongst our men fall.*—Caes.

Diem de die prōferre, *To put off from day to day.*—Liv.

De die, de nocte, *By day, by night.*—Cic.

De tertia vĭgĭlia, *In the course of the third watch.*—Caes.

Nĭveo factum de marmŏre signum, *A statue made of snow-white marble.*—Ov.

De republĭca (scripti libri), *Books written on the subject of the commonwealth.*—Cic.

Obs. The adverbial phrases, de novo, de integro, *anew, afresh ;* de improvĭso, *unexpectedly ;* de industria, *on purpose ;* should be noted : also, de (Gallis, &c.) triumphare, *to triumph for victories gained over* (*the Gauls*, &c.).

6. **Ex, ē.**—*Out of, from ;* of time, *immediately after ;* of material, *made out of ; on account of ; in pursuance of, in accordance with :* as,

Sōlem e mundo tollĕre vĭdentur, qui ămīcĭtiam e vita tollunt, *They seem to take the sun out of the world, who take friendship out of human life.*—Cic.

Ex ĕquo cădĕre, *To fall from one's horse.*—Cic.

Stătim e somno lăvantur, *They* (the Germans) *bathe immediately on rising from sleep.*—Tac.

Cotta ex consŭlātu est prŏfectus in Galliam, *Immediately after his consulate, Cotta started for Gaul.*—Cic.

Quĭdam ex mīlĭtĭbus, (*A certain*) *one of the soldiers.*—Caes.

Stătua ex aere facta, *A statue made of bronze.*—Cic.

Urbem e suo nōmĭne Rōmam jussit nōmĭnāri, *He directed th city to be called Rome from his own name.*—Cic.

Quum esset ex aere ălĭēno commōta cīvĭtas, *The city being in a commotion on account of debt.*—Cic.

Ex lĭttĕris Caesăris supplĭcātio dēcrēta est, *A supplication was decreed in accordance with Caesar's dispatch.*—Caes.

Obs. Note also the phrases, e rĕgiōne, *over against;* ex aequo, *in an equal degree;* ex improvīso, *unexpectedly,* &c.

7. Prae.—*Before; because of; in comparison with:* as,

Prae se grĕgem ăgens, *Driving the herd before him.*—Liv.

Prae se ferre, ostentāre, *To make a public show of.*—Cic.

Prae maerōre lŏqui (non) pŏtuit, *He could not speak for grief.*—Cic.

Prae cētĕris Cāto in sĕnectūte flōruit, *Cato was distinguished above others in the character of an old man.*—Cic.

Obs. Prae in the sense of *because of* chiefly occurs in negative sentences. Plautus, however, has such sentences as, Prae laetĭtiā lacrĭmae praesĭliunt mĭhi, *Tears start to my eyes for joy.* (Stich. 3, 2, 13.)

8. Pro.—*Before, in front of; instead of, on behalf of; in consideration of; in proportion to:* as,

Castra pro moenĭbus lŏcāta erant, *The camp had been pitched in front of the walls.*—Liv.

Pro suggestu (dicĕre), *To speak from the front of a platform.*—Caes.

Ego pro te mŏlam, *I will grind for you.*—Ter.

Pro patria mŏri, *To die for one's country.*—Hor.

Pro vectūrā solvĕre, *To pay for freight.*—Cic.

Pro Caesăris in se bĕnĕfĭciis, *In consideration of Caesar's favours done to him.*—Caes.

Proelium atrōcius quam pro nūmĕro pugnantium, *A battle more sanguinary than might have been expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

9. Sine.—*Without:* as,

Non sĭne dis, *Not without the help of the gods.*—Hor.

Nullus dies sine līnea, *Not a day without a line.*—Prov. in Plin.

10. **Tĕnus.**—*Up to, as far as:* as,

Căpŭlo tĕnus abdĭdit ensem, *He buried his sword up to the hilt.*—Virg.

Tauro tĕnus, *As far as Mount Taurus.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive: as,
Crūrum tĕnus, *Up to the legs.*—Virg.

Obs. 2. Tenus always follows its case.

§ 558. III. With the Accusative and Ablative.

1. **In.**—*In, into; towards, until; against.*

(*a.*) With the Accusative: always implying motion or direction towards: as,

In coelum ascendĕre, *To ascend into heaven.*—Cic.

Chŏrus virtūtum in ĕquŭleum impŏsĭtus, *A whole company of virtues put on the rack.*—Cic.

Belgae spectant in septentriōnes et ŏrientem sōlem, *The Belgae face towards the north and east.*—Caes.

Dormiet in lūcem, *He will sleep till broad day.*—Hor.

Sōlis dēfectiōnes ĭtemque lūnae praedicuntur in multos annos, *Eclipses of the sun and moon are foretold for many years to come.*—Cic.

In praesens, in fūtūrum, in perpĕtuum, *For the present, for the future, for ever.*—Cic.

In lĭbĕros nostros indulgentia, *Fondness towards our children.*—Cic.

In utramque partem dispūtare, *To argue a question on both sides.*—Cic.

Orātiōnes in Cătĭlīnam hăbĭtae, *The speeches delivered against Catiline.*

Obs. 1. Note the adverbial phrases, in commūne, *for the common good;* in ūnĭversum, *in general;* in pējus, *for the worse.*

Obs. 2. Occasionally the Accusative after *in* has the force of the Ablative: as,

Eam optĭmam rempublĭcam esse dūco, quae sit *in pŏtestatem* optimātium, *I deem that the best form of government which is in the power of the aristocracy.*—Cic. (Leg. 3, 17.)

(*b.*) With the Ablative: of rest or action *in a place; in* or *during; among:* as,

Caedes in Appia via facta (est), *A murder was committed on the Appian road.*—Cic.

Sĕdēre in ĕquo, *To sit on horseback.*—Cic.

In omni vīta, *In the whole of one's life.*—Cic.

In summo omnium tĭmōre, *During the excessive alarm of all.*—Cic.

Thălēs qui săpientissimus in septem fuit, *Thales who was the wisest among the seven.*—Cic.

2. Sub.—*Under, up to,* etc.

(*a.*) With the Accusative: *under, up to* (of motion); of time, *just after* or *before:* as,

Exercĭtum sub jŭgum mittĕre, *To pass an army under the yoke.*—Caes.

Sub montem succēdunt mīlĭtes, *The soldiers make their way up the hill.*—Caes.

Sub noctem, *At nightfall.*—Caes.

Sub galli cantum, *Just about cock-crow.*—Hor.

Sub eas (lĭtĕras) stătim recĭtatae sunt tuae, *Directly after that letter was read yours.*—Cic.

(*b.*) With the Ablative: *under* (usually without motion); of time, *just upon, after:* as,

Sub pellĭbus hĭčmare, *To winter under skins* (or *tents*).—Caes.

Sub dīvo, *Under the open sky.*—Hor.

Sub hoc jŭgo Dictātor Aequos mīsit, *Under this* (*kind of*) *yoke the Dictator made the Aequians pass.*—Liv.

Sub dĭtione ălĭcujus esse, *To be under any one's power.*—Caes.

Adhuc sub jūdĭce lis est, *The matter is still before the judge* (undecided).—Hor.

Sub adventu Rōmānorum, *Just before the arrival of the Romans.*—Liv.

3. Sŭper.—*Above, beyond, concerning.*

(*a.*) With the Accusative: *above,* whether of place or some other relation: as,

Sŭpĕr vallum praecĭpĭtātus est, *He was pitched headlong over the ramparts.*—Sall.

Nōmentānus ĕrat sŭper ipsum, *Nomentanus sat next above* (*our host*) *himself.*—Hor.

Sŭper omnia, *Above all things.*—Liv.

(*b.*) With the Ablative: *above,* of place; *concerning:* as,

Ensis (illī) sŭper cervīce pendet, *A sword hangs suspended over his neck.*—Hor.

Multa sŭper Priămo rŏgĭtans, sŭper Hectŏre multa, *Asking many a question concerning Priam, many concerning Hector.*—Virg.

4. Subter.—*Under:* in Prose almost always with the Accusative: as,

Mănum subter tŏgam exsĕrĕre, *To thrust the hand out from under the toga.*—Liv.

Rhoetĕo subter lītŏre, *'Neath the Rhoetean shore.*—Cat.

5. **Clam.**—*Without the knowledge of:* used indifferently with the Accusative or the Ablative: as,

Clam patrem, *Without a father's knowledge.*—Ter.
Clam vōbis, *Without your knowledge.*—Caes.

Obs. *Clam* is properly rather an adverb than a Preposition.

CHAPTER LIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 559. Conjunctions connect sentences together and show the relation between them. They thus sustain the same relation towards sentences which Prepositions sustain towards Substantives (see § 553).

Obs. Sometimes Conjunctions appear to connect words; where however it may generally be shown that they virtually connect sentences: as,
Ĕgo et tu crēdĭmus, *I and you believe* = ego crēdo et tu crēdis.

§ 560. Conjunctions may be arranged in the following classes: Connective, Adversative, Hypothetical, Concessive, Causal, Conclusive, Final, Temporal.

N.B. For lists of the above, see § 139.

1. Connective Conjunctions.

§ 561. **Et** is the Conjunction most used simply to connect words and sentences: as,

Virtus hŏmĭnĭbus instĭtuendo *et* persuādendo trādĭtur, *Virtue is imparted to men by instruction and persuasion.*—Cic.

Cāri esse *et* dīlĭgi vŏlūmus, *We wish to be dear (to others) and to be loved by them.*—Cic.

§ 562. **Et** often introduces the first member as well as subsequent ones. it may then be translated by *both . . . . and; in the first place . . . . and then; not only, but also;* and similar expressions: as,

Te *et* mŏneo *et* rŏgo, ut rĕcordēre consĭlium nostrum, *I both advise you and request you to call to mind my advice.*—Cic.

Ōrātiuncŭlas *et* quas postŭlas, *et* plūres etiam mittam, *I will send you not only the little speeches you ask for, but others too.*— Cic.

Sed *et* ipse errābat, *et* ălios ĕtiam errāre cōgēbat, *But in the first place he was himself in error, and then he forced others likewise to err.*—Cic.

Obs. Very often the introductory *et* is not translated in English: as,
Hoc *et* rătio doctis, *et* nĕcessĭtas barbăris, praescripsit, *This lesson reason has taught the civilised and necessity the uncivilised.*—Cic.

(Concerning the Concord of the Predicate in such cases, see § 220.)

§ 563. The enclitic **quĕ** is used in preference to et when things are closely connected in any way: as,

Arma contra *deos ārasque* et fŏcos tŭlit, *He bore arms against the gods and their altars, and against our fire-sides.*—Cic.

Pĕdestres nāvālesque pugnae, *Battles by land and sea.*—Cic.

§ 564. **Et . . . . nĕque (nec).** When two propositions are connected, one of which is positive and the other negative, the following arrangements are found:

et . . . . . nĕque (nec); et non.
nĕque (nec), et non, . . . et.
nĕque (nec), ... que.

Intellĭgĭtis *et* ănĭmum ei praesto fuisse, *nec* consĭlium dĕfuisse, *You see that not only had he presence of mind, but that counsel was not lacking.*—Cic.

Sextus *et* rem agnoscit, *neque* hŏmĭnem ignōrat, *Sextus is* [*both*] *acquainted with the affair, and no stranger to the individual.*—Cic.

Afrĭcānus *nĕque* [cessabat] unquam, *et* interdum collŏquio altĕrius *non* ĕgēbat, *Africanus was never idle, and at times could do without the intercourse of another.*—Cic.

Is lŏcus mĕlior quem *et non* cŏquit sol *et* tangit ros, *That is a better situation where on the one hand the sun does not scorch, and the dew reaches.*—Varr.

Sed *nec* illa exstincta sunt, ălunturque pŏtius et augentur cōgĭtatione et mĕmŏria, *But in the first place those things are not dead; and then they rather derive nutriment and increase from thought and recollection.*—Cic.

Obs. In such cases the *neque* (*nec*) is usually resolved in English into *and not, on the* {*one* / *other*} *hand . . . not*, or the like.

§ 565. **Atque** (ac before consonants only) is mostly used when a second member is at the same time to be brought into comparison or contrast with the preceding one:

Dīvīna *atque* hūmāna prōmiscua nĭhil pensi nĕque mŏdĕrāti hăbēre, *Things divine and human without distinction they treated without respect or restraint.*—Sall.

Vīta mĭsĕra *atque* ĭnhŏnesta, *A life at once wretched and dishonourable.*—Sall.

Obs. 1. *Atque* does not differ essentially from *que*, and is preferred to it when *que*, if used, would follow short and unaccented syllables. See the above examples.

Obs. 2. When several members are connected together, the conjunction may either be repeated after each member, or else omitted altogether: as,

Virtus *et* hŏnestas *et* pŭdor, *Virtue, honour, and shame.*—Cic. (*Not* virtus, honestas *et* pudor.)

Mĕtellum multi fĭlii, fĭliae, nĕpōtes, nĕptes, in rŏgum impŏsuērunt, *A number of sons and daughters, grandsons and daughters, joined to place Metellus on the funeral pile.*—Cic.

(This latter construction is called *Asyndeton*, ἀσύνδετον; the former *Polysyndeton*, πολυσύνδετον.)

§ 566. **Quum (tum) . . . . tum**, *whilst, not only . . . . also*, are used chiefly in introducing different particulars respecting the same thing: as,

Impărātus *quum* mīlĭtĭbŭs *tum* pĕcūnĭā, *Unprepared not only in the article of men but also of money.*—Cic.

Ĕpistŏla summae *quum* bĕnĕvŏlentiae *tum* ĕtiam prūdentiae, *A letter characterised by the utmost good-will as well as the utmost sagacity.*—Cic.

Tum semper tum in his tempŏrĭbus, *Both in general, and (especially) in these times.*—Cic.

Dissĕro in utramque partem, *tum* Graecē *tum* Lătīnē, *I debate on both sides, now in Greek, now in Latin.*—Cic.

§ 567. **Non mŏdo (sōlum) . . . . vērum (sed) ĕtiam**, *not only . . . . but also*, are used to give emphasis to a statement: as,

Non sōlum nātūrā sed ĕtiam stŭdio, *Not only by nature, but also by industry.*—Cic.

Obs. When there is a double negative in the sentence, as, *not only not excellent, but not even middling*, the negative particle may be omitted from the former member, the latter being usually expressed by sed ne . . . . quĭdem (656): non mŏdo praestantes, sed ne mĕdiŏcres quĭdem. (Cf. Cic. Rep. 2, 15, quae non sōlum facta, sed ne fĭĕri quĭdem pŏtuisse, *not only not actual facts, but not even possible*). But the negative is quite as often expressed in both.

§ 568. **Nĕque (nec)**, *neither . . . . nor*. When two or more Subjects of the Third Person are connected by neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), the Predicate is made to agree with that Subject along with which it is expressed: as,

Nec tŏga nec fŏcus *est*, *Neither toga nor fire-place is there.*—Mart.

[Vōbis] nec aetas, neque hŏnōres, neque virtus . . . . dulcēdĭnem vīvendi mīnuĕre *potuĕrit*, *For you neither years, nor honours, nor worth, will avail to lessen your fondness for life.*—Cic.

§ 569. But in the case of the Personal Pronouns ego or tu, the Verb may be put in the Plural Number: as,

Haec si nĕque *ĕgo* nĕque *tu fēcĭmus*, *If neither you nor I have done these things.*—Ter. (Ad. 1, 2, 23.)

[Indignābantur] quod in dĕcemvĭris neque *ĕgo* neque *Caesar* hăbĭti essēmus, *They were indignant that neither I nor Caesar should have been appointed among the Decemvirs.*—Brut. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Person of the Verb is of course determined according to the regular rule. See § 221.

Obs. 2. *Neque, nec* are used indifferently before vowels and consonants.

§ 570. **Aut, vel (-vĕ), *or***. Aut is a disjunctive word, and introduces something quite different from what has gone

before: **vel** is copulative, and implies not so much a new alternative as a modification of the preceding one: as,

Omne ēnunciātum *aut* vērum *aut* falsum est, *Every proposition is either true or false.*—Cic. (New alternative "*false*," and exclusive of the other.)

Pāce *vel* Quĭrīni *vel* Rōmŭli dixĕrim, *By favour of Quirinus or* (*shall I call him*) *Romulus.*—Cic.

Vi *aut* clam ăgendum est, *It must be managed by open force or else by secrecy.*—Cic. (Alternatives directly opposed.)

Ordo *vel* pāci dĕcōrus *vel* bello, *An order seemly whether for peace or war.*—Liv. (Both alternatives included.)

Obs. 1. The above distinction cannot however be always traced with equal clearness.

Obs. 2. *Ve* is abbreviated from *vel*, and has a similar use: as,

Duābus trĭbusve hōris, *In two or three hours.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Ve* is also found in the compound *sīve* (seu): as,

Sīve cāsu *sive* consĭlio deorum immortālium, *Whether by accident or by the counsel of the immortal gods.*—Caes.

2. Adversative Conjunctions.

§ 571. Adversative Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a proposition in some way opposed to what has preceded. They are the following: **sed, autem, vērum, vēro, at** (poet. **ast**), **atqui, cētĕrum, tămen, attămen, vēruntămen,** in English, *but, yet.* They do not affect the structure of a sentence

§ 572. **Sed, autem,** *but.*—**Sed** denotes a more direct and emphatic opposition than **autem**, and therefore stands at the head of its sentence, while **autem** takes the second place: as,

Non ĕgo hŏrus tĭbi, *sed* servus sum, *I am not your master, but your slave.*—Plaut.

Hoc non mŏdo non laudāri, *sed* ne concēdi quĭdem pŏtest, *This not only cannot be praised, but cannot even be allowed.*—Cic.

Gyges a nullo vīdēbātur, ipse *autem* omnia vīdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, while he himself saw everything.*—Cic.

Ōrātiōnes Caesăris mĭhi vĕhĕmenter prŏbantur; lēgi *autem* complūres, *Caesar's speeches have my warm admiration; and I have read a good many.*—Cic.

§ 573. **Vērum** and **vēro,** *but,* are used with the same distinction as *sed* and *autem.* **Cētĕrum** is similar in its use to *vērum* or *sed.*

§ 574. **Vēro** is often used as an affirmative particle: as,

Ego vēro cŭpio te ad me scrībĕre, *I do in truth desire you to write to me.*—Cic.

Immo vēro, inquit, vīvunt, *Yea, verily, they do live.*—Cic.

Sometimes it is used where in English we say *yes:* as,

Fuisti, crēdo, in schŏlis phĭlŏsŏphorum? *Vēro*, ac lĭbenter quĭdem, *You have attended the schools of the philosophers, I believe? Yes, and with pleasure too.*—Cic.

§ 575. **At**, *but; on the other hand; but, you say;* is especially used in stating objections: as,

At mĕmŏria mĭnuĭtur: crēdo, nĭsi eam exerceas, *But, say you, the memory decays. I believe, if you do not keep it in practice.*—Cic.

Obs. In stating an objection, *at* is often strengthened by *ĕnim:* as,

At ĕnim cur a me pŏtissĭmum hoc praesĭdium pĕtīvērunt, *But, you say, why have they come to me rather than any other for this protection?*—Cic.

§ 576. **At** is idiomatically used in sudden transitions, vehement exclamations of displeasure, etc.: as,

Consurgit Turnus in ensem et fĕrit. . . . . At perfĭdus ensis frangĭtur in mĕdio, *Turnus rises upon his sword and strikes. . . . But, lo! the faithless sword snaps in two.*—Virg.

Una māter Cluentium oppugnat. *At* quae mater, *The mother of Cluentius is his only assailant. But then what a mother!*—Cic.

At o deorum quidquid in coelo rĕgit, . . . quid iste fert tŭmultus, *Why, in the name of all the gods that rule above, what means this to-do?*—Hor. (at the beginning of a piece.)

§ 577. **Atqui**, *and yet*, is similar to at: as,

Magnum narras et vix crēdĭbĭle. Atqui sic hăbet, *What you say is astonishing and hardly credible. And yet so it is.*—Hor.

§ 578. **Quodsi** (negative quodni, quod nisi), *but if, and if,* is about equivalent to si autem: sometimes the quod serves as a pure connective: as,

Quodsi quis illorum vĕtĕrānorum lĕgat acta, *But if* (or *now if*) *anyone would read the actions of those veterans.*—Nep. (Eum. 8, 2.)

Quodsi te sors Afris aut Hispānis aut Gallis praefĕcisset, *Now if fortune had placed you over Africa, Spain, or Gaul.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. i. 1, 9.)

3. Hypothetical Conjunctions.

§ 579. Hypothetical Conjunctions are those which are used in stating an hypothesis: concerning their syntax see §§ 422, sqq.

4. Concessive Conjunctions.

§ 580. Concessive Conjunctions are those which may be rendered in English by *although, even if, granting that.* They

are **etsi, ĕtiamsi, tămetsi, (tămenetsi), quanquam, quamvis, lĭcet, ŭt, quum.** They are discussed in treating of the use of the Subjunctive Mood. (See §§ 456, 481, 500, 501.)

5. Causal Conjunctions.

§ 581. Causal Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason: they can mostly be translated by *because, since, for, seeing that.* (For a list of them see p. 93.) Their syntax, with the exception of **nam** and **ĕnim**, is treated under the *Subjunctive* Mood (§§ 477, 483; 486-495).

Nam (namque), is more emphatic than **enim**, and begins its own clause; **enim** stands second and is often used as a Particle (see § 654): as,

Percontātōrem fŭgĭto; *nam* garrūlus īdem est, *Shun an inquisitive person; for he is also a gossip.*—Hor.

Scrībe ad me quam saepissĭme: nonnĭhil *ĕnim* mē lĕvant tuae lĭtĕrae, *Write to me as often as possible, for your letters relieve me a little.*—Cic. ad Att.

Obs. 1. *Nam* is often used elliptically, where the thought is readily supplied: as, *Nam* quid ego de Cĭcĕrōne dīcam, [I will not], *for why need I, speak of Cicero.*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

Obs. 2. *Namque* sometimes stands after the first word in a sentence, especially in Livy: see § 716.

6. Conclusive Conjunctions.

§ 582. Conclusive Conjunctions are those which are used in drawing a conclusion, and may be translated by *therefore, accordingly, wherefore.* (For a list of them see p. 94.) They have no effect upon the structure of a sentence.

§ 583. **Ergo**, *therefore*, stands usually, though not always, at the head of its sentence: as,

Ergo ăvārus (is) ĕrit sed fīnīte, *Accordingly such a person will be covetous, but to a limited degree.*—Cic.

Ergo Quintĭlium perpĕtuus sōpor urget, *So then perpetual slumber weighs upon Quintilius!*—Hor.

Nēmo *ergo* non mĭser? Prorsus nēmo. *Is there no one who is not miserable? Absolutely none.*—Cic.

Obs. Ergo is also used after a Genitive in the sense of causâ: see § 264.

§ 584. **Igĭtur**, *accordingly, then*, is less emphatic than ergo, being rather a particle to express transition, and does not regularly stand at the head of a sentence: as,

Est *ĭgĭtur* id quo illa conflĭciuntur hŏmĭne mĕlius, *That power, then, by which those things are done, is more excellent than man.*—Cic.

Rătiōnem *igĭtur* pontis hanc instĭtuit, *The following, then, was the plan of a bridge he resolved on.*—Caes.

Obs. Sallust often begins with *igitur* (§ 693): as,

Igitur, ex dīvĭtiis luxŭria atque ăvārĭtia . . . invāsēre, *Accordingly, as the consequence of wealth, luxury and covetousness made their way in.*—Sall.

§ 585. **Itāque**, *and so, accordingly*, is similar to igĭtur, but denotes a consequence in action rather than in reasoning: as,

Itāque rem suscĭpit, *Accordingly he undertakes the business.*—Caes.

It is sometimes used with **ergo**: as,

Itāque ergo, ut măgistrātu ăbiēre, *Accordingly, therefore, when they had retired from their office.*—Liv.

7. Final Conjunctions.

§ 586. Final Conjunctions are such as are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are treated in dealing with the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 449-463).

8. Temporal Conjunctions.

§ 587. Concerning **antĕquam, priusquam, postquam**, see § 501. Concerning **ut, ut primum, sĭmul atque (ac)**, *as soon as*, see § 401.

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*

BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

§ 588. The preceding portion of the Syntax comprises the ordinary grammatical rules: the following is devoted chiefly to peculiarities of the Latin idiom.

CHAPTER LV.—SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Common Substantives.

§ 589. *Concrete for Abstract.*—Concrete Substantives are used in preference to abstract to denote,

(1.) The period of a person's life during which something happens: as,

Mĕ pŭĕro, *In my boyhood.*—Cic.

Dēfendi rempublĭcam *jŭvĕnis*, non dēsĕram *sĕnex*, *I defended the commonwealth in my youth, I will not abandon it in my old age.*—Cic.

Obs. Similarly sexāgēnarius, octōgēnarius, *In one's sixtieth or eightieth year.*

(2.) The office held: as,

Consul ĭdem fēci, *I did the same in my consulate.*—Cic.

Consŭle Planco, *In the consulate of Plancus.*—Hor.

Sāturno *rēge*, *In the reign of Saturn.*—Virg.

§ 590. *Collective for Plural.*—Singular Substantives are not unfrequently used in a collective sense: as,

Ager bŏnus pĕcŏri, *arbŏre* infēcundus, *Soil good for stock, unproductive in trees.*—Sall.

Pulvīnus *rŏsā* fartus, *A cushion stuffed with roses.*—Cic. (So Hor. multa in rosa, Od. 1, 5, 1.)

Armāto mīlĭte, *With armed men.*—Virg,

§ 591. *Plural for Abstract.*—In cases where the corresponding abstract Substantive is wanting, we often find the plural of the concrete Substantive used to supply the deficiency: as,

Quum vĭdeamus tanta *officia* mŏrientis, *When we see such conscientiousness displayed by him on his deathbed.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 31, 99.)

Stŭdia *literarum, nŭmerorum, sŏnorum, The study of literature, arithmetic, acoustics.*—Cic.

Lĕpos quīdam *făcētiae*que, *A certain elegance and facetiousness.*—Cic.

§ 592. *Abstract for Concrete.*—The use of abstract Substantives for concrete occurs chiefly in the following cases:

(1.) Some Substantives denoting *age, rank in life* or *office*, are used as *Collectives:* as jŭventus, *a body of young men;* nōbĭlitas, *the nobility;* servĭtium (also servĭtia, *pl.*), *the slaves;* impĕria (*pl.*), *persons in office;* lĕvis, grăvis armātura, *light* or *heavy-armed troops:* also less frequently, advŏcātio, *the body of* advocati; sălūtatio, *of morning callers;* rēmĭgium, *the rowers;* mĭnistĕrium, *the servants;* lātrōcinium, *banditti*, etc.

Obs. Not adolescentia or senectus however.

(2.) Substantives of *quality* or *character* are used for the persons to which they apply: as,

Neque ego per *ignāviam* incerta pro certis captārem, *Nor would I by the help of cowardly men grasp at uncertainties for certainties.*—Sall. (Cat. 20.)

Omnium *flāgĭtiōrum* atque *făcĭnŏrum* circa se cătervas hăbēbat, *Catiline had about him gangs of profligate fellows and desperadoes.*—Sall. (Cat. 14.)

Parcendum est *cārĭtati* hŏmĭnum, *We must spare those who are dear to us.*—Cic. (Or. 2, 58, 237.)

§ 593. *Generic Plural.*—Sometimes the plural of a Substantive may be rendered by "*kinds of:*" as,

Quattuor *perturbationes* sunt, tres *constantiae, There are four kinds of mental disturbance, three of tranquillity.*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 6, 14).

Somno et *quiētibus* cētĕris, *By sleep and other kinds of repose.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 29, 103.)

§ 594. Similarly the plural is used to denote *repeated manifestations* of a quality: as,

Ūtĭlĭtātibus tuis possum cărēre, *I can dispense with your services.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 3. *fin.*)

Ipsōrum Deōrum saepe *praesentiae, The repeated instances of appearance of gods themselves.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 66, 166.)

So crūdēlĭtātes, *acts of cruelty*; perfĭdiae, *of treachery*; bŏnĭtātes, *of goodness*, etc.

§ 595. *Verbal Substantives.*—A Verbal Substantive is often generalised by the addition of rerum (not needing to be translated): as,

Cognĭtio, ignōrātio rērum, *Knowledge, ignorance.*—Cic.

Nĭmis cĕlĕri *despĕrātiōne* rērum, *By too precipitate despair.*—Liv.

Nātūra rērum, *Nature* (in widest sense).—Cic.

§ 596. Instead of a Verbal Substantive we not unfrequently find used a Perfect Participle Passive (see § 528): as,

Post Hasdrŭbălis exercĭtum *dēlētum*, *After the destruction of Hasdrubal's army.*—Liv.

Propter crēbrius de coelo *lapĭdātum*, *On account of unusually frequent showers of stones.*—Liv. (29, 10.)

Obs. Rarely as the Subject of a sentence however:

Quum *occīsus dictator* . . . . pulcherrimum facĭnus vidērētur, *When the assassination of the dictator seemed a most glorious achievement.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 8.)

§ 597. *Substantives governing the case of their Verbs.*—This takes place chiefly with Substantives derived from Verbs governing the Dative: as,

Justĭtia est obtempĕrātio *lēgibus*, *Justice is obedience to the laws.*—Cic. (See § 291, 6.)

Spe *dŏmum* rĕdĭtiōnis sublātā, *The hope of returning home having been taken away.*—Caes.

Obs. The above construction is, however, exceptional. Still more rare is the Accusative after Substantives derived from a Transitive Verb: as,

Quid tibi *hanc* dĭgĭto *tactio* est, *What right have you to touch this woman with your finger?*—Pl.

(For such a construction as *id* dare operam, see § 253.)

§ 598. *Substantives as Adjectives.*—Substantives derived from Verbs denoting the *agent* are sometimes used as Adjectives: as,

Contemptor ănĭmus, *A scornful temper.*—Sall.

Foedĕrum *ruptor* dux et pŏpŭlus, *The treaty-breaking general and his people.*—Liv.

Illa scĕlĕrāta et pēne *dēlētrix* hujus impĕrii sica, *That accursed dagger* [*and*] *well nigh fatal to this empire.*—Cic.

Plēbĭcŏla trĭbūnus plēbis, *A popularity-courting tribune.*—Cic.

Obs. Similarly we find such expressions as exercĭtus tīro, *a raw army* (Cic.), and the like.

§ 599. **Nēmo.**—Instead of *nullus* we frequently find nēmo in apposition with Substantives denoting *men*: as,

Nēmo vir bŏnus, nēmo ădŏlescens, nēmo pictor, *No good man, no youth, no painter.*—(all in Cic.)

Obs. In the same manner we find *quisquam homo, quisquam cīvis*, etc.

§ 600. *Diminutives.*—These are used with great variety of signification; implying *affection, pity, contempt*, and kindred feelings (cf. § 703): as,

Hac tămen oblectābar *spĕcŭlā, However I pleased myself with this gleam of hope.*—Cic. Fam.

Mercēdulā adducti, *Induced by paltry gain.*—Cic.

Graecŭlus ēsŭriens, *The poor half-starved Greek.*—Juv.

Illa aureŏla ōrātiuncŭla, *That golden little speech.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 17, 43.)

§ 601. **Ellipsis.**—The following Substantives are often left to be understood from the Gender of Adjectives: as,

Aqua, *water*; in the expressions frīgĭda, călĭda (calda), *cold, hot water.*

Căro, *flesh, meat*: as, fĕrīna, *the flesh of wild animals, game, venison*; agnīna, *lamb*; būbŭla, *beef*; porcīna, *pork.*

Castra, -orum, *camp, soldiers' quarters*: as, hīberna, *winter quarters*; aestīva, *summer quarters*; stătīva, *fixed quarters.*

Febris, *a fever*: as, tertiāna, quartāna, *a tertian, quartan fever*; frīgĭda quartāna, *a quartan ague.*

Pĕcūniae, *moneys*; in the phrase rĕpĕtundae, *moneys to be reclaimed; extortion.*

Pars, *part*; esp. in *pl.*: as, prīmas, sĕcundas agĕre, *to play the first* or *second part.*

Tempus, *time*: especially in the phrases, ex quo, *from what time*; ex illo, *from that time, &c.*

§ 602. *Hendiadys* (cf. § 724, 2).—Sometimes two Substantives are used to convey a single notion (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν): as,

Pătĕris lībavit et *auro, He poured out libations from bowls of* (Lit. *and*) *gold.*—Virg.

Huc accēdit summus tĭmor, quem mihi *nātūra pŭdor*que meus attrĭbuit, *To this is added an extreme timidity, which my natural bashfulness* (Lit. *nature and bashfulness*) *occasions me.*—Cic.

§ 603. *Plural equivalent to Singular.*—The following Plurals among others are used (especially in poetry) without considerable difference from Singulars:

pectŏra,	*the breast.*	regna,	*realms, a kingdom.*
cervīces,	*the (back of the) neck.*	tecta,	*abode.*
colla,	*the neck.*	ōtia,	*repose.*
ōra (os),	*the face.*	sīlentia,	*silence.*
terga,	*the back.*	pondĕra,	*weight.*

Obs. This usage is especially frequent in the case of words whose singular would be less manageable in verse.

§ 604. *Metonymy.*—Sometimes a Substantive is by a figure of speech used to denote something with which it is closely connected: as,

ālea,	*a gambling-table,*	is used for	*gambling.*
Bacchus,	*god of wine,*	„	*wine.*
Cĕres,	*goddess of corn,*	„	*corn.*
fasces,	*the fasces,*	„	*the consulate.*
mănus,	*the hand,*	„	*violence; ownership.*
Mars,	*god of war,*	„	*war, strife.*
Mĭnerva,	*goddess of art,*	„	*art, genius.*
nōmen,	*name,*	„	*nation; debt.*
săgum,	*a war-cloak.*	„	*a state of war.*
sĕcūres,	*axes,*	„	*power of life and death.*
sīca,	*a dagger,*	„	*assassination.*
stīlus	*a writing-style,*	„	*writing; style.*
stŏla,	*a matron's gown,*	„	*a matron.*
tōga,	*the gown of peace,*	„	*the state and arts of peace.*
venter,	*the belly,*	„	*gluttony.*
Vĕnus,	*goddess of love and beauty,*	„	*love, beauty.*
Vulcānus,	*god of fire,*	„	*fire.*

§ 605. *Synecdŏche.*—Sometimes a characteristic *part* of a thing is put for the whole The following Substantives among others are so used:

cărīna,	*a keel,*	is used for	*a ship.*
căput,	*a head,*	„	*an individual.*
pecten,	*a quill or stick for a lyre,*	„	*the lyre.*
puppis,	*a stern,*	„	*a ship.*
tectum,	*a roof,*	„	*a house.*

2. Proper Names.

§ 606. *Names of tribes for countries.*—The names of tribes and nations, especially those less known, are often used for the country in which they live: as,

Caesar ex *Mĕnăpiis* in *Trĕvīros* vēnit, *Caesar came out of the country of the Menapii into that of the Treviri.*—Caes.

Lēgātus in *Persas* prŏfectus est, *He set out as ambassador into Persia.*—Nep.

Obs. In the case of obscure tribes there often exists no separate name for the country.

§ 607. The singular of a national name, as Rōmānus, Poenus, Graecus, and the like, is often used where the sense requires the plural (comp. § 590): as,

Romanus consĕrĕre pugnam ..... contra ēlūdĕre *Poenus, The Romans were for coming to close quarters; the Carthaginians on the other hand were content to baffle them.*—Liv.

Obs. This idiom is common in Livy, especially in his more animated passages.

§ 608. Names of nations are sometimes used adjectively by the poets: as,

Galla (= Gallica) crūdēlĭtas, *Gallic cruelty.*—Mart.

Syra (= Syria, Syriăca) merx, *Syrian wares.*—Hor.

Obs. Similarly Rōmŭlus, and some other proper names, are used as Adjectives: as,

Romula (=Romulea) tellus, *The land of Romulus.*—Virg.

§ 609. *Patronymics.*—In the poets Masculine and Feminine Patronymics (see § 184) are used instead of *filius* and *filia:* as,

Priămĭdes Hĕlĕnus, *Helenus son of Priam.*—Ov.

Atlantis Maia, *Maia daughter of Atlas.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. But the proper name and the patronymic are not used together as above, except where needful for the sake of distinction.

Obs. 2. In the plural number the poets often use a characteristic patronymic as a national name: as,

Aeneădae, *The house of Aeneas*, i.e. *the Romans.*—Lucr.

Rōmŭlĭdae, *The sons of Romulus* (in same sense).—Virg.

Chapter LVI.—Adjectives.

§ 610. The principal uses of Adjectives have been already explained (Chap. XLIII.). It only remains to notice a few peculiarities.

§ 611. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives* (comp. §§ 340-342).—Under this head two cases remain to be noticed:

(1.) A Substantive and Adjective are often equivalent to a Substantive and a Genitive Case (§ 263): as,

Servīlis tūmultus (= tumultus servorum), *The servile tumult* or *war.*—Caes.

Pĕcūniae *alĭēnae* (= aliorum), *The money of others.*—Cic.

Dĕcemvĭrāle (= decemvirorum) ŏdium, *The hatred entertained for the Decemviri* (§ 268).—Liv.

Xĕnŏphontēus (= Xenophontis) Hercŭles, *The Hercules of Xenophon.*—Cic.

(2.) An Adjective is used in agreement with a Substantive, where the English idiom would employ the corresponding abstract Substantive derived from the Adjective: as,

Dēfīnire ămīcĭtiam *părĭbus* offĭciis et vŏluntātĭbus, *To define friendship to consist in reciprocity of good offices and good-will.*—Cic.

Ŏpes factiōnis, vestra pătientia, *nullum* jus, *The strength of the oligarchy; your tameness of spirit; the absence of rights* (Lit. the *no* right).—Sall.

Obs. The converse is perhaps as frequent: as,

In hac *văriĕtāte* stŭdiōrum, *In these various pursuits* (= in his variis studiis).—Cic.

§ 612. **Nullus.**—The Adjective *nullus* in colloquial language is sometimes used adverbially (= non): as,

Phĭlŏtīmus non mŏdo *nullus* vĕnit, sed, etc., *Philotimus not only does not come, but, &c.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 24.)

Si non quaerit, *nullus* dixĕris, *If he does not ask, don't you say.*—Ter. (Hec. 1, 2, 4.)

Obs. 1. In such cases *nullus* is more emphatic than *non*.

Obs. 2. Very often we may trace the proper force of *nullus* with verbs: as,

Nōlīte existīmāre, me quum a vōbis discessĕro, nusquam aŭt *nullum* fōre, *Do not suppose that when I have left you I shall not exist any where or* AT ALL (= *be a person at all*).—Cic. (Cat. de Sen. 22, 79.)

Haec bŏna in tăbŭlas publĭcas *nulla* rĕdiĕrunt, *No such goods have been entered in the public books* AT ALL.—Cic. (Rosc. Am. 44, 128.)

§ 613. **Sexcenti.**—This numeral is used to denote an indefinitely large number: as,

Sexcenta millia mundōrum, *Hundreds of thousands of worlds.*—Cic.
Sexcentae ĕpistŏlae, *An immense number of letters.*—Cic.

Chapter LVII.—Pronouns.

§ 614. *Strengthening of Pronouns.*—It has been already observed (§ 357) that the Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of sentences, unless for the sake of emphasis. They may be rendered still more emphatic by the following means:

(1.) By the addition of **ipse**; with which however the words ĕgo, tu, etc., are not usually expressed (see § 377).

(2.) By the suffixes **met**, **te** (see § 75, *Obs.* 1): as ĕgŏmet, tēmet, nosmet, etc. The suffix met may be added to all cases of the pronouns ĕgo, tu, sui, excepting the Gen. Pl. of ego, tu, and the Nom. Sing. of tu: -te is used only with tu (tūte).

Obs. The suffixes are often combined with ipse: hence, *nosmĕtipsos*, *nobismetipsis*, etc.

(3.) By the addition of the enclitic ădeo: as,

Tuque ădeo, *And thou especially.*—Virg. (G. 1, 24). (Comp. Catull. 64, 28.)

Similarly with other Pronouns (comp. § 653): as,

Id ădeo, si plăcet, consīdĕrāte, *That very point, if you please, consider.*—Cic. (Caec. 30, 87.)

§ 615. Sometimes a Pronoun (especially ille) is redundant in the second member of a double sentence, when it has been expressed or implied in the former. It then adds vivacity to the expression: as,

Nunc dextra ingĕmĭnans ictus, nunc *ille* sĭnistra, *Now with his right hand redoubling his blows; now* [he does it] *with his left.*—Virg. (Æ. 5, 457.)

Nec dulces ămōres
Sperne puer, neque *tu* chŏrēas, *Nor scorn in youth sweet loves, nor scorn* [thou] *the dance.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 9, 16.)

Obs. This idiom appears to be imitated from the Greek. Compare
Ἤ τινας ἐκ Πύλου ἄξει ἀμύντορας . . . .
Ἤ ὅγε καὶ Σπάρτηθεν.—Hom. Od. 2, 327.

§ 616. Ille is also sometimes used idiomatically with an appositive Adjective (§ 216), to which it gives emphasis: as,

Phĭlŏsŏphi quīdam, mĭnīme măli *illi* quĭdem, sed non sătis ăcūti, *Certain philosophers* [those] *far from bad men indeed, but not very acute.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 9, 39.)

Similarly with an Adverb: as,

Enucleāte *ille* quĭdem et pŏlīte, sed ...., *Clearly it is true* [he speaks], *and with polish, but,* &c.—Cic. (Br. 30, 115.)

Obs. When so used, *ille* is attended by *quidem.*

§ 617. Ipse.—The ordinary rule for the case of ipse has been already given (§ 377). The following remarks are added by Zumpt (§ 696):

(1.) Cicero is partial to construing ipse as the subject even when the emphasis belongs to the object: as,

Ut non mŏdo pŏpŭlo Rōmāno sed ĕtiam sĭbi *ipse* condemnātus vĭdērētur, *So that he seemed not only to the Roman people a condemned man, but even* [himself] *to himself.*—Cic. (Verr. 1, 6, 17.)

(Compare the foll.: non ita ăbundo ingĕnio ut te consōler, quum *ipse* me non possim, id. Fam. 4, 8: quid est nĕgōtii contĭnēre eos quibus praesis, si te *ipse* contĭneas, id. Q. Fr. 1, 1, 2.)

(2.) When joined to a possessive pronoun in a reflective clause **ipse** usually takes the case of the subject: as, meam ipse lēgem neglĭgo, tuam *ipse* legem negligis, not meam *ipsius*, tuam *ipsius*, etc. The genitive is necessary only where ipse refers to another than the subject: as, tuā *ipsius* causā [ego] hoc fēci, etc. But exceptions to this rule occur both in Cic. and elsewhere.

§ 618. **Et ipse** is used when a new subject is added to a predicate already expressed or implied: as,

Cornēlio mĭnus cōpiarum dătum, quia L. Manlius *et ipse* .... in Galliam mittēbātur, *To Cornelius was allotted a smaller force, because L. Manlius was* also *being sent into Gaul.*—Liv. 21, 17. (It having been already mentioned that Cornelius was going into Gaul.)

Is *et ipse* Alpīnus amnis .... difficillimus transĭtu est, *This (the Durance) being* also *an Alpine stream, is very difficult to cross.*—Liv. 21, 31. (Two Alpine streams having been before mentioned.)

§ 619. The neuter of **is** (**et id, idque**) is used without reference to any particular substantive (comp. § 374), when an additional particular is stated (= "*and that*") as,

Doctum hŏmĭnem cognōvi, et stŭdiis optĭmis dēdĭtum, *idque* a puĕro, *I have known him to be a man of letters and devoted to the best pursuits,* and that *from a boy.*— Cic. (Fam. 13, 16.)

(Similarly in Greek καὶ ταῦτα.)

§ 620. **Idem.**—The ordinary correlative of īdem is qui (see § 379). Instead of the Relative we also find **atque** (**ac**), **et**; more rarely **ut, cum**; and (in poetry only) the Dative: as,

Anĭmus (est) erga te *īdem ac* fuit, *Her feelings towards you are the same as they were.*—Ter.

Si quaerātur *ĭdemne* sit pertĭnācia *et* persĕvērantia, *If the question be asked whether obstinacy is the same thing as perseverance.*—Cic.

Utrique *ĭdem* făciunt, *ut* si laevam partem neglĭgĕrent, dextĕram tuērentur, *Both act as if they were to neglect the left side and defend the right.*—Cic.

Eōdem *mecum* patre gĕnĭtus, *Born of the same father with me.*—Tac.

Invītum qui servat *ĭdem* făcit *occidenti, He who saves a man's life against his will does the same as one who should murder him.*—Hor. (Comp. Gr. *ταὐτὰ ἐμοὶ βούλει.*)

§ 621. **Qui, quis, ălĭquis,** etc.—The following use of qui in parenthetical clauses, and stating the ground of something requires to be noted:

Si mihi permīsisses rem, *qui meus ămor in te est,* confēcissem, *If you had left the matter in my hands,* such is my affection for you (= pro meo in te amore), *I would have settled it.*—Cic.

Păter tuus si vīvĕret, *qua sĕvĕritāte fuit*, tu prŏfecto non vīvĕres, *If your father were living*, such was his sternness, *you certainly would not be living.*—Cic.

(Qua severitate, Abl. of Quality: see § 318.)

§ 622. Quis is sometimes used in a tone of impatience or indignation (Gr. ποιός: cf. Aristoph. Eq. 162): as,

Quem tu mĭhi Staseam, *quem* Peripătētĭcum narras? *Don't talk to me of your Staseas, your Peripatetics!*—Cic. (Or. 1, 23).

§ 623. The interrogative quid is used in animated language to pass from one point to another, where it may be rendered by "*and then:*" as,

Quid lēges vĕtĕres mōresque mājōrum? *quid* auspĭcia? etc., And then, *the laws and customs of our ancestors;* and then *the auspices, etc.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 10).

Quid in lĕvĭōrĭbus stŭdiis? And then *in less serious pursuits, etc.*—Cic. (Cat. Maj. 14, 50.)

Obs. The expression is elliptical, *dicam* or some other word being understood.

§ 624. The neuter quid is often used interrogatively where persons are concerned: as,

Quid nōbis duōbus lăbōrĭōsius dīci aut fingi pŏtest? *What can be mentioned or conceived more overwhelmed with trouble than we two?*—Cic. (Mil. 2, 5.)

Obs. Similarly *nĭhil:* cf. Cic. Fam. 4, 4, victor quo *nĭhil* ĕrat mŏdĕrātius: and with a partitive genitive, quantum (e.g. hŏmĭnum, Ter. Ph. 5, 6, 13); quiquid (e.g. deŏrum, Hor. Epod, 5, *init.*).

§ 625. Quis.—It has been already stated that quis, as an Indefinite Pronoun, is chiefly found after si, ne, num, or in composition (§ 383). But it is sometimes used alone as the least emphatic *any* (= Gr. τίς), when it is generally an enclitic: as,

Simplĭcior *quis* est? *Is* one *simpler than ordinary?*—Hor. (S. 1, 3, 63.)

Morbus aut ĕgestas aut *quid* ejusmŏdi, *Disease or privation or* anything *of that kind* (= τοιοῦτόν τι).—Cic.

§ 626. Nescio quis, *I know not who*, i. e. *some one or other*, is treated as if it were a compound of quis, the nescio having no effect upon the syntax: as,

Pacōnii nescio *cūjus* quĕrēlis, *By the complaints of one Paconius, whoever he may be.*—Cic.

Prŏpe me hīc nescio *quis* lŏquĭtur, *Some one* or other *is speaking here close to me.*—Pl.

Obs. Strictly *nescio quis* forms a sentence by itself, its verb being supplied from the other part of the sentence.

§ 627. **Si quis**, *if any*, is sometimes nearly equivalent to quicunque, *whosoever*, *whatsoever* (like Gr. εἴ τις = ὅστις): as,

Nūda fĕre Alpium căcūmĭna sunt, et *si quid* est pābŭli, obruunt nĭves, *The summits of the Alps are mostly bare, and if there is any pasture* (= *what little pasture there is*) *is buried beneath the snows.*—Liv.

Arāneŏlae quăsi rēte contexunt, ut *si quid* inhaesĕrit confĭciant, *Spiders spin a kind of net that they may destroy* whatever *gets stuck fast in it.*—Cic.

Illi ĕtiam, *si quos* fŭdĭmus, appārent, *Those also* whomsoever *we have put to rout appear* (*again*).—Virg.

Especially when a modest statement is to be made: as,

Ea, *si quam* hăbēmus, făcultas, *Whatever ability—if any—I possess.*—Cic.

§ 628. **Quŏtus**, *what number?* is an ordinal, corresponding to primus, secundus, etc. It is used idiomatically: as,

Tu *quŏtus* esse vĕlis rescrībe, *Write back what number you mean to make.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 5, 30.)

Quŏtus erit isto dēnārius, qui non sit fĕrendus, *What shall be the precise number of denarii that is not to be allowed?*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 3, 94.)

Especially **quŏtusquisque** (or as two words), when it is implied that the number is small: as,

Quŏtus ĕnim *quisque* formōsus est, *For what a small proportion of men are handsome!*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 28, 79.)

§ 629. **Alius.**—The use of alius . . . . alius has already been noted (§ 390). The following additional examples may be useful:

Dŏlus mălus est, cum *ăliud* ăgĭtur, *ăliud* sĭmŭlatur, *It is fraud, when one thing is actually done, and another pretended.*—Cic.

Aliis mĭsĕrandus, *ăliis* irrīdendus esse vīdētur, *To some he seems to deserve pity, to others ridicule.*—Cic.

Alius is often repeated in a different case (= *one . . . . another*): as,

Alius ălio mōre vīventes, *Living one in one way, another in another.*—Sall.

Alias ex *aliis* fingendo mŏras, *Inventing one excuse for delay after another.*—Liv.

Alii super alios, *One on the top of the other.*—Liv.

Obs. So with an adverb in the second place, as alius alio, alius aliter, *one in one way, another in another*, etc.

§ 630. **Alius** is followed by **atque** (**ac**), **et**, **praeter**, **nisi**, **quam**: as,

Tullia longe *aliā* in fortunā est *atque* ejus pĭetas et dignĭtas postŭlabat, *Tullia is in a much worse position than her affection and rank entitle her to.*—Cic.

Lux longe *ălia* est sōlis et lychnorum, *The light of the sun is very different from that of lamps.*—Cic.

Nĭhil *aliud* est discĕre nisi rĕcordari, *Learning is nothing else than remembering.*—Cic.

Rŏgavit num quid *ăliud* ferret *praeter* arcam, *He asked whether he was carrying anything else besides the box.*—Cato ap. Cic. (A rare construction.)

Lȳsander nĭhil *ăliud* mōlītus *quam* ut omnes cīvĭtates in suā tĕnēret pŏtestāte, *Lysander attempted nothing short of holding all the states under his own power.*—Nep.

Obs. The Ablative (of comparison, § 319) after alius is altogether exceptional:

Neve pŭtes *ălium săpiente* bŏnoque beātum, *And deem none happy other than the wise and good.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 20.)

Chapter LVIII.—Verbs.

§ 631. The principal uses of the Moods and Tenses have been already explained (§§ 392, sqq.). The following observations are of a miscellaneous character

§ 632. *Impersonal use of the Passive.*—This construction (see § 234, *Obs.* 2) is very frequent in the best writers, and is often preferred even where the same sense might be expressed by the Active Voice: especially—(1) When the Subject, being obvious, is readily supplied; (2) When it is indefinite: as,

(1.) De Tărentīnis magnā contentiōne in sĕnātu *actum*, *The case of the Tarentines was warmly debated in the senate.*—Liv.

Supplēmentum scrībĕrent consŭles *permissum*, *The consuls were empowered* [by the Senate] *to fill up vacancies by enlistment.*—id.

Tŭmŭlus in quo *pugnātum ĕrat*, *The rising ground where the battle had taken place.*—id.

(2.) *Tămultuātum* in castris *fuĕrat*, *There had been a disturbance made* [by some persons] *in the camp.*—id.

Ipsos appropinquāre lēgātos *allātum est*, *News was brought that the envoys themselves were at hand.*—id.

De quo pŭtas ad me *missum esse, sit missum* necne nescio, *As to the point you think word has been sent me about* [name of the sender purposely kept back], *whether it has been sent or no, I know not.*—Cic. Att. 12, 28. (See Nägelsbach, p. 313.)

Obs. In such cases, for the most part, attention is called rather to the action than the agents.

§ 633. *Passive as Middle or Reflective* (see also § 252).—Passive Verbs have not unfrequently a reflective sense,

like the Greek Middle Voice: as, mŏvēri, *to move* (oneself); verti, *to turn* (oneself), *revolve;* prĕmi, *to depress* (oneself), *sink;* etc.: as,

Quod semper *mŏvētur* aeternum est, *That which moves for ever is eternal.*—Cic.

Vertĭtur interĕa coelum, *Meantime the heavens revolve.*—Virg.

Mundus .... *prĕmĭtur* Lĭbўae *dēvexus* ad Austros, *The world sinks and slopes downwards towards the south of Africa.*—id. (G. 1. 241.)

Obs. Such was probably the origin of the Deponent Verbs (comp. Greek Deponents in -ομαι): as, ūtor, *I serve* or *help myself*, hence *use;* nĭtor, *I support myself* (*upon*), *lean* (upon); fungor, *I quit myself:* etc.

§ 634. *Perfect used ἀορίστως.*—The Perfect Indicative is often used, especially in poetry, of that which regularly or repeatedly takes place: as,

Illĭus immensae *rūpērunt* horrea messes, *That man's enormous crops burst his barns.*—Virg. (G. 1, 49.)

Saepe ĕtiam stĕrĭles incendĕre *prōfuit* agros, *Often too it does good to fire the barren fields.*—(ib. 84.)

Hinc ăpĭcem Fortūna *sustŭlit*, illic *pŏsuisse gaudet*, *From one head Fortune removes the diadem, on another she is pleased to rest it.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 34. *fin.*)

Obs. In the last example, the Perfect Infinitive is used in the same way. The term *Aoristic* is applied to this construction, because the Aorist is regularly so used in Greek.

§ 635. *Ellipsis of the Verb.*—This of course occurs only in the case of verbs which may be without difficulty supplied:

(1.) The Copula (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) is very often omitted in short aphoristic sentences: as,

Omnia praeclāra rāra, *All fine things* [*are*] *rare.*—Cic.

Quot hŏmĭnes, tot sententiae, *Many men, many minds.*—Ter.

Also in descriptions: as,

Anĭmus audax, subdŏlus, vărius; cujuslĭbet rĕi sĭmŭlātor ac dissĭmŭlātor; etc., *His spirit* [*was*] *daring, crafty, versatile; capable of assuming any mask or any disguise.*—Sall.

(Sallust is partial to this kind of brevity: § 689).

Obs. This ellipsis chiefly occurs where the Verb would be in the Present Tense (including the *Praesens Historicum:* § 393).

Esse is more frequently omitted than expressed in the Future Infinitive Active: as,

L. Cincio HS XXCD constĭtui me *cūrātūrum* Idĭbus Febr., *I have settled to pay into the hands of L. Cincius* 20,000 *sesterces on the* 13*th of February.*—Cic.

2.) **Inquam, inquit,** or some such verb is frequently omitted when the words spoken follow. Especially in such phrases as

Tum Cotta, tum Crassus, *Then [said] Cotta, Crassus,* etc.—Cic. de Or. (passim).

Quid multa, *Why [should I say] many words?*—id.

Obs. 1. But after *tum* the verb is very often presently added: as, Tum rīdens, Scaevŏla, non luctābor, *inquit,* tecum Crasse amplius, *Thereupon with a smile, says Scaevola, I shall not dispute the point with you any further, Crassus.*—id.

Obs. 2. To this head belongs the common superscription of letters, sălūtem (*sc.* dicit), Cic. Ep. (passim).

(3.) In dedications, dīcat, or some such word: as,

Aenēas *haec* de Dănăis victōribus arma, *Aeneas this trophy [dedicates], from the victorious Greeks.*—Virg.

Obs. So in titles of books: as,

Cicĕrōnis de Offĭciis ad fĭlium suum lĭber [scriptus], *A book of Cicero concerning moral duties, addressed to his son.*

(4.) **Dent, duint,** in prayers: as,

Di mĕliōra, *The gods [grant] a better lot* (like our *God forbid!*)—Cic.

(5.) In colloquial language, any verb that may be readily supplied: as,

Inde cōgĭto in Arpīnum (*sc.* ire), *After that I purpose [going] to Arpinum.*—Cic.

A me Caesar *pĕcūniam* (*sc.* postulat), *Caesar [expects] money from me!*—id. (Phil. 2, 29, 72.)

Ne multa [*sc.* dīcam]; clāmōres [*sc.* sĕcūti sunt], *Not to make a long story of it, acclamations [followed.]*—id. (Att. 1, 16.)

. . . . Verbum căve [*sc.* dicas] de nuptiis,

Ne ad morbum hoc ĕtiam [*sc.* accēdat], *Take care not [to say] a word about the wedding, lest in addition to her illness [there be added] this further shock.*—Ter. (And. 1, 5, 65.)

(6.) When it may be supplied from another Verb in the same sentence: as,

Ventrem nĭhil ăliud [făcĕre] quam dătis vŏluptātibus *frui, The belly (they said) [did] nothing else than enjoy the pleasures afforded it.*—Liv. (2, 32.)

§ 636. *Repetition of Verb.*—This takes place—

(1.) In answering a question (where in English "Yes" or "No" would be used): as,

Nempe *nĕgas* ad beāte vivendum sătis posse virtūtem?—Prorsus *nĕgo, You deny then that virtue is of sufficient avail for a happy life?—Yes, I do, altogether.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 5, 12.)

Dasne aut mănēre ănĭmos post mortem, aut morte ipsā intĕrīre?—Do vēro, Do you grant that the soul either survives death, or perishes at the moment of death?—Yes I do.—1, 11, 25.)

Obs. But not always: as,

An tu haec non crēdis?—Mĭnĭme vēro, *Don't you believe in those things?—No, indeed!*—ib. 1, 5, 10.

(2.) Instead of the brief expression idque, et id, "*and that*" (§ 619), the verb of the preceding clause is often repeated: as,

Pompēius summos in republĭca hŏnōres *assĕcūtus est*, et *assecutus est* (= idque) mātūrius quam quisquam ante eum, *Pompey attained to the highest honours in the state*, and that *at an earlier period than any one before him*.—Cic.

(3.) When a second action is performed on the same object, the preceding verb is often repeated as a participle: as,

Quum urbem vi *cēpissent, captam*que dīrĭpuissent, *Having taken the city by storm*, and then *pillaged it, etc.*—Liv. (22, 20.)

Eam rem consŭles ad Patres *dētŭlērunt*; sed *dēlātam* consŭlĕre ordĭne non lĭcuit, *The consuls laid the matter before the senate: but they were not allowed to consider it* [the matter as *laid before them*] *in a regular way*.—id. (2, 28).

§ 637. **Substantival Use of Participles.**—What has been said (§ 339) respecting the use of Adjectives Substantively, applies generally to Participles. The following remarks are of a more special nature.

§ 638. *Imperfect Participle.*—The substantival use of this Participle is most frequent in the Plural. It is less frequent in the oblique cases of the Singular, and in the Nom. Sing. does not occur at all: as,

Addĭdit et ălĭam *fidentis* spĕciem, *He added an additional token of confidence* [Lit. *of one feeling confidence*].—Liv. (27, 2.)

Erranti monstrāre viam, *To point out the way to one who has strayed*.—Enn. ap. Cic.

[Quisque] acūtius atque acrius vĭtia *in dīcente* quam recta vĭdet, *Everybody sees faults in a speaker more keenly and vividly than excellencies*.—Cic. (Or. 1, 25, 116.)

Sōli rătione *ūtentes* jūre ac lēge vīvunt, *Only those who make use of reason live according to right and law*.—id. (N. D. 2, 62, 154.)

Hoc gĕnus *dēlībĕrantium* pellātur e mĕdio, *Let this class of questioners be banished from our midst*.—id. (Off. 3, 8, 37.)

Quid est tam commūne quam . . . . mare *fluctuantibus*, litus ējectis, *What is so common as to those tossed on the waves, the sea; to those shipwrecked, the shore?*—id. (Rosc. A. 26, 72.)

Multae bestiae *insectantes* ŏdōris intŏlĕrābĭli foedĭtāte dēpellunt, *Many creatures drive away their pursuers by the intolerable disgustingness of their smell.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 50, 127.)

Obs. 1. Instead of the Nom. Sing., and often of the Nom. Plur. of the Participle, we find either the verbal substantive in -tor, or a Relative clause.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, especially in the Gen. Plur., the Imperfect Participle is so used as to be equivalent to an abstract Substantive: as,

Clāmōres *păventium*, *Cries of dismay* (lit. *of persons dismayed*).—Liv. (22, 5.)

Dĭversĭtas *trādentium*, *Disagreement of tradition* (lit. *of those handing down*, viz., *the accounts*.—Suet. (Cal. 3.)

Obs. 3. Such words as ănĭmans, *an animal*; ămans, *a lover*, being true Substantives, stand on a different footing from the above.

§ 639. *Future Participle.*—The substantival use of this participle is less frequent, and belongs chiefly to later writers: as,

Illud quod tantŭm pĕrĭtūri vĭdent, *An object which only the doomed to death behold.*—Tac. (G. 40.)

Mīre *audĭtūrum dictūri* cūra dēlectat, *Care on the part of one about to speak greatly pleases him who is to hear.*—Quint. (11, 3, 157.)

Tam vărie se gessit, ut nec *laudātūrum* magna, nec *vĭtūpĕrātūrum* mĕdiocris mātĕria dēfĭciat, *He conducted himself in such different ways that while to the eulogist ample material, to the censor what is not inconsiderable is afforded.*—Vell. (2, 101.)

§ 640. *Perfect Participle Passive.*—This participle is used substantively, both in the Masculine of *persons*, and in the Neuter of *things* or *acts*.

§ 641. The *Masculine* is so used chiefly in the Plural: as,

Nŭmĕrum jūre *caesōrum* obtĭnēre, *To be put in the category of the justly slain.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 12, 43.)

Ut de vi et mājestāte *damnāti* ad pŏpŭlum prōvŏcent, *That those condemned for violence and treason should appeal to the people.*—id. Phil. 1, 9, 21 (Nüg. p. 89).

§ 642. The *Neuter* is so used—

(1.) To denote *a thing done:* most frequently in the Plural, but also in the Singular: as,

Facta illustria et glōriōsa, *Deeds distinguished and glorious.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 11, 37.)

Cētĕrōrum nĕque *dictum* obscūrum pŏtest esse,....nĕque tŏmĕre *dicto* concēdi, *As for the rest, neither can what they say remain in the dark, nor what they say indiscreetly be condoned.*—id. (Rosc. A. 1, 3.)

Obs. Sometimes the use of such words fluctuates between that of Substantives and that of Participles; as in the second of the above examples. So we find *recte* facta (Cic. Leg. 2, 4, 9), as well as facta *illustria*, *fortia*, etc. In the following example the two usages seem to be combined:

Mŏvēmur saepe ălĭquo ăcūte *conclūso*, *We are often affected by some acute argument.*—Cic. Tusc. (1, 32, 78.)

(2.) In the Neut. Sing. (but not in the Nom. Case), with the force of abstract Substantives: v. § 528. Especially in such phrases as ex compŏsĭto, *by agreement;* ex empto, ex vendĭto, *by purchase, by sale,* etc.

§ 643. **Zeugma.**—Sometimes a Verb which is strictly appropriate only as applied to one Substantive, is by a modification of its meaning applied to two: as,

Rōmānis Germānisque ĭdem condūcĕre [pŭtābam], et pācem quam bellum *prōbābam, I deemed the interests of Romans and Germans to be the same, and approved of peace rather than war.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 58.)

(Here probabam has to be taken in the modified sense of putabam in the first member of the sentence.)

Nos Maurĭci Rustĭcīque vīsus, nos innŏcenti sanguĭnĕ Sĕnĕcio *perfūdit, Us the sight of Mauricus and Rusticus* [horrified], *us Senecio drenched with guiltless blood.*—Tac. (Agr. 45.)

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

Obs. Zeugma may also occur with other parts of speech besides Verbs: as,

Vir fācundus et pācis artĭbus [hăbĭlis, aptus], belli ĭnexpertus, *An eloquent man and fitted for the arts of peace, inexperienced in war.*—Tac. (Hist. 1, 8).

Chapter LIX.—Adverbs and Prepositions.

§ 644. **Adverbs.**—Ĭta, besides its ordinary use (§ 551) has the following peculiar constructions:

(1.) After non, haud, it is equivalent to admŏdum, *very:* as,

Sunt ea (sĭmūlācra) pĕrampla et praeclāra, sed non *ita* antīqua, *Those statues are very magnificent and admirable, but of no very great antiquity.*—Cic.

Haud *ita* multum (praedae) mīlĭti dătum, *No very large proportion of the spoil was given to the soldiers.*—Liv.

Nec *ita* multo post, *And not very long after.*—Cic.

Obs. In such cases there is an ellipsis: *not so much so as might have been expected,* &c.

(2.) In adjurations: as,

Ita me dii ăment, hŏnestus est, *So may heaven love me, he is a fine gentleman!*—Ter. (Eun. 3, 2, 21.)

Obs. In the same way *sic* is used: see Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

§ 645. **Sātis** not unfrequently = "*considerably*," "*fairly*," "*well*:" as,

Satis cum pĕrīcŭlo, *With considerable risk.*—Ter. (And. 1, 1, 104.)

Plānĭties erat magna et in ea tūmŭlus *satis* grandis, *There was an extensive plain, and in it a mound of considerable size.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 43.)

Hŏmo nec inflcētus et *sātis* lĭtĕrātus, *A person not without elegance and a fair scholar.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 14, 58.)

§ 646. **Mĭnus, pārum, mălĕ.**—These three Adverbs are often used with a negative force, when they are equivalent to a softened *non*: as,

Tĕrentia *mĭnus* bellŏ hăbuit, *Terentia has not been very well.*—Cic. (Fam. 9, 9.)

L. Cotta .... *mĭnus* in Sĕnātum vĕnit, *L. Cotta hardly comes into the Senate at all.*—(ib. 12, 2.)

Pārum succēdit quod ăgo, *My business is not getting on much.*—Ter. (And. 4, 1, 56.)

Pārum clāris lūcem dăre cōget, *He will make him throw light on what is not clear.*—Hor. (A. P. 448.)

Ego illum mălĕ sānum semper pūtāvi, *I have always thought him of unsound mind.*—Cic. (Att. 9, 15.)

Mălĕ grātus, *Ungrateful.*—Ov. (Her. 7, 27.)

Obs. Minus especially = non, after quo [quomĭnus], sin. Parum is never a decided negative; but always means *less than might be expected.*

§ 647. **Nullus** in colloquial language = non: see § 612.

§ 648. **Prepositions** (see § 553, sqq.).—When a Preposition occurs in composition with a Verb, it is often repeated after the Verb: as,

Exīre ex nāvi, *To disembark from a ship.*—Nep.

Exīre ex urbe, *To depart from the city.*—Cic.

Sometimes a different Preposition is used: as, exire de nāvi, a patria (Cic.).

§ 649. When in English two Prepositions are joined with the same Substantive, in Latin the Substantive is usually repeated: as,

Haec quum *contra* lēgem *pro*que lēge dicta essent, *When these speeches had been made for and against the law.*—Liv. (34, 8.)

Dārius dēcēdit; rĕlictis fĭliis et *in* regno et *ante* regnum susceptis, *Darius died leaving behind him children born both during and before his being king.*—Just. (2, 10.)

Obs. But in the case of Prepositions which may also serve as Adverbs, the construction may be as in English: as,

Intra extrāque mūnītiōnes, *Within and without the fortifications.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 72.)

Supra subterque terram, *Above and below ground.*—Liv. (39, 4.)

Or the Substantive may be expressed with one Preposition and understood with the other: as,

Sŭper theātrum circūque, *Above and round about the theatre.*—Liv. (24, 39.)

Iliăcos intra mūros et extra, *Within the Trojan walls and without them.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 16.)

§ 650. Inter is sometimes repeated: as,

Inter Pēliden et *inter* Achillem, *Between the son of Peleus and Achilles.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 12.)

Nĭhil *inter* te atque *inter* quadrŭpĕdem intĕresse (pŭtas), *You think there is no difference between you and a brute.*—Cic. (Par. 1, 14.)

Certātum *inter* Ap. Claudium maxĭme, et *inter* P. Dēcium Mūrem, *The contest was very warm between Ap. Claudius and P. Decius Mus.*—Liv. (10, 7.)

Obs. Zumpt remarks that this construction is especially frequent with *interesse.*

§ 651. When the *same* Preposition belongs in English to two Substantives, the corresponding Preposition in Latin is repeated with the latter Substantive only when it denotes something quite distinct from the former: as,

Lēgāti *ab* Aeduis et *ab* Trĕvĭris vĕniēbant, *Embassies arrived* [separately] *from the Aedui and from the Treviri.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 37.)

Cur *de* suā virtūte aut *de* ipsīus dīlĭgentiā dēspērārent, *Why did they despair either of their own valour, or of his conduct?*—(ib. 40.)

Otherwise it is not repeated: as,

In Caesăre pŏpŭlōque Rōmāno, *In Caesar and the Roman people.*—(ib. 32.)

Apud Arĭŏvistum et Sĕquănos, *In the hands of Ariovistus and the Sequani.*—(ib. 33.)

Chapter LX.—Conjunctions and other Words as Particles.

§ 652. The Conjunctions, as such, being treated above (§§ 559, sqq.), the following observations will be devoted to their use, and that of other short words as particles.

Obs. The term *particle* (see § 11) is especially applied to uninflected words without any syntactical power, but serving to call attention to some particular part of a sentence.

§ 653. Ădeo.—This particle is attached to single words for the sake of emphasis. In this way it is used after

Pronouns (§ 614) and other words, including the Conjunction atque: as,

Multum adeo [is] . . . arva jŭvat, *Much does such an one improve the soil.*—Virg.

Hoc signĭfĭcant, *atque ădeo* ăperte ostendunt, *This they hint* and indeed *openly show.*—Cic.

§ 654. Ĕnim, though often used elliptically, for the most part retains its logical sense of *for* (see § 581). It is however sometimes merely a particle of emphasis = *indeed, in fact:* as,

Tum Metilius Tr. Pl., id *ĕnim* fĕrendum esse nĕgat, *Thereupon Metilius, tribune of the commons, declares that that is* really *not to be put up with!*—Liv. (22, 25.)

Quid tute tēcum?—Nĭhil *ĕnim*, *What were you saying to yourself?—Nothing* at all.—Plaut.

Illa *ĕnim* se nĕgat (factūram), *The woman declares she cannot* on any account *do so.*—Ter. (Phor. 1, 2, 63.).

Obs. In the same way is sometimes used nam and also the compound ětĕnim (= Gr. καὶ γάρ).

§ 655. **Nempe** (= nam-pe), *forsooth, so it seems, why,* occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and gives animation: as,

Si Flacĭdius dat tantam pĕcūniam Flacco, *nempe* idcirco dat ut răta sit emptio, *If Flacidius gives so large a sum of money to Flaccus,* I suppose *the reason he gives it, is that the bargain may be good.*—Cic.

Nempe dixi, *I said, did I?*—Hor. (S. 1. 10, 9.)

Nempe nĕgas ad beāte vīvendum sătis posse virtūtem, *You deny* then, it seems, *that virtue is sufficient for a happy life?*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 5, 12.)

In quā tandem urbe . . . . ? *Nempe* in eā quae, etc., *In what city pray?* Why (or *forsooth*) *in that which, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 3, 7.)

§ 656. **Quĭdem**, *indeed, at least, even,* is usually placed next after the most emphatic word of a sentence, which it serves to mark: as,

Sĭbi quĭdem persuādēri, etc., *He* for his part *was convinced, etc.*—Cic.

Nĭhil sāne ex *me* quĭdem audīre pŏtuisses, *You would not have been able to hear a word from me,* at any rate.—Cic.

Especially in connexion with ne: when ne .. .. quĭdem = *not even* (see also § 567, *Obs.*): as,

Nulla ne *mĭnĭma* quidem aura, *Not* even *the least breath of air.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Quidem is often equivalent to the Greek γέ. When ne . . . quidem = *not even,* the emphatic word is put between the two particles.

Obs. 2. For the use of quĭdem after ille, see § 616.

Obs. 3. With the first person singular, ĕquĭdem (= ego quidem) is used: also sometimes with other persons, see Lat. Dict. s. v.

§ 657. **ŭtĭque** is formed from ŭt or ŭti, and signifies *at any rate, certainly :* it usually follows the word to which it chiefly refers : as,

Illud vĕro ŭtĭque (= Gr. γοῦν) scīre cŭpio, *There is one thing* at any rate *I should like to know.*—Cic.

Annum quĭdem ŭtĭque tĕnēto, *You must* at any rate *maintain the limit of a year.*—Cic.

After non it may be translated by *certainly :* as,

Unĭverso pars contĭnētur : *non utique* accēdit parti quod ūnĭversum est, *The part is contained in the whole :* but certainly *the whole does* not *belong to a part.*—Quint.

§ 658. **Duntaxat** is similar to quĭdem, but usually *precedes* the word to which it refers : it may be translated by *just, at least, only :* as,

Duntaxat ad hoc, Just *for this purpose.*—Hor.

Gĕnus ēlŏquentiae *duntaxat ădŏlescens adhuc* Străbōnis Caesăris sĕcūtus vīdētur, *He appears,* at least while still a young man, *to have imitated Strabo Caesar's style of oratory.*—Suet.

Pĕdĭtātu *duntaxat prŏcul* ad spĕciem ūtĭtur, *He employs his cavalry,* only at a distance *for show.*—Caes.

§ 659. **Certē.**—The use of the Adverb **certe** = *certainly, at least,* must be distinguished from that of certo, *for certain, of a truth :* as,

Certe ĕquĭdem pējōrem puĕrum quam te vīdi nēmĭnem, *Verily, a worse lad than you I never saw.*—Pl.

Res fortasse vērae; certe grăves, *Matters, perhaps true, but* at least *important.*—Cic.

Certo scio, *I know for certain.*—Cic.

§ 660. **Vēro, dēmum,** *indeed, at length,* are used for the sake of giving a strong emphasis to the words to which they are attached : especially in the phrases, **is dēmum,** *that and nothing short of it ;* **tum vēro** (Gr. τότε δή), *then if never before, then verily :* as,

Tum vēro ardēmus scītāri, *Then* more than ever *we are fired with curiosity.*—Virg.

Is dēmum vītam aequā lance pensĭtābit, *That man,* and no other, *will form a fair appreciation of life who, etc.*—Plin.

§ 661. **Cunque** is rarely found alone ; occurring for the most part in such compounds as quicunque, ubicunque, etc. When it does occur alone, it is equivalent to the Greek ποτέ, *ever, at any time :* as,

Mĭhi *cunque* salvo rītĕ vŏcanti, *Be gracious to me* whensoever *duly invoking thee.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 32, 15.)

Obs. In poetry cunque is not unfrequently separated from the word to which it belongs by *Tmesis :* as,

Quae dēmant cunque dŏlōrem, *Whatever things may remove pain.*—Lucr.

CHAPTER LXI.—ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 662. The terminations of the *inflected* words in Latin show at once their relation to each other; and the arrangement of these may therefore be varied without affecting the sense. Thus the words,

Scīpio Hannĭbălem vīcit

will have the same meaning whether they are arranged thus or in any other way: as,

Hannibalem Scipio vicit,
Hannibalem vicit Scipio, etc.

In English, from the Subject being only known by its position at the beginning, only one arrangement yields a certain sense.

Obs. But the *uninflected* words have in general the same positions as in English: see §§ 678, sqq.

§ 663. In ordinary language, however, the arrangement of words is pretty regular; the Subject leading off the sentence, and the Predicate following: as,

Alexander mortuus est; Nix est alba, etc.

Obs. According to the preceding section (*Obs.*), various preliminary uninflected words may precede the sentence proper: such as Conjunctions Adverbs of Time and Place, etc.

§ 664. *Object.*—When a sentence consists of Subject, Verb, Object, the usual order in Latin is,

1 Subject, 2 Object, 3 Verb,

these several parts being each attended by their adjuncts. The following may serve as examples of such simple sentences:

Haec Bābȳlōniam condĭdit, *She (Semiramis) it was who founded Babylon.*—Just.

Hannĭbal urbem trĭpartīto aggrĕdĭtur, *Hannibal attacks the city with his army in three divisions.*—Liv.

Ingrātus ūnus omnĭbus mĭsĕris nŏcet, *A single ungrateful person does injury to all the unfortunate.*—P. Syr.

Obs. 1. The same rule applies to Verbs Transitive proper (§ 234), and to such as govern a Dative or Ablative case.

Obs. 2. Not only the Accusative, but also the other oblique cases usually precede the Verb: as, *glădiis* pugnāre, *glădio* hūmĕrum appĕtĕre; viam *ferro* pătĕfăcĕre, vītam ălĭcui ērīpĕre, etc. The Accusative generally precedes another Case, unless the latter be emphatic.

§ 665. But when the Predicate or Object is emphatic it may be brought to the beginning, the Subject often coming last: as,

Vīcit rătiōnem āmentia, *The victory was gained over reason by frenzy.*—Cic.

Arma vĭrumque căno, *Arms and the man I sing!*—Virg.

Haec ego omnia compĕri, *All these things have I brought to light.*—Cic.

Obs. Inquam, inquit, *say I, says he,* are always used parenthetically: as, mĭhi vĕro, *inquit,* Cotta, etc.: cf. § 635, 2.

§ 666. The *first place* in a sentence being the most prominent, it is, where emphasis is needed, assigned to the most emphatic word: as,

Fuit, fuit, ista quondam in rep.. ..ca virtus, *There was,—yea there was once—that vigour in the commonwealth.*—Cic.

Ad mortem te Cătĭlīna dūci jamprīdem ŏportēbat, *To execution, Catiline, thou oughtest long since to have been conducted!*—Cic.

Elĕphanto nulla bēluarum prūdentior est, *Than the elephant there is not a single quadruped more sagacious.*—Cic.

§ 667. Also *the last place* in a sentence may become strikingly emphatic for any word whose ordinary place would have been earlier: as,

Arbŏres sĕrit dīlĭgens agrĭcŏla quārum adspĭciet bācam ipse *nunquam, The industrious husbandman plants trees the fruit whereof he will* NEVER *see* AT ALL.—Cic.

Prōvinciam cēpisti *dūram, The task you have undertaken is hard.*—Ter.

Apud Helvētios longe dītissimus fuit *Orgetŏrix, Among the Helvetii by far the richest man was Orgetorix.*—Caes.

Maecēnas ătăvis ēdīte *rēgibus, Thou Maecenas sprung from the loins of kings.*—Hor.

Especially, sometimes, the last word of an Hexameter: as,

Tantum relĭgio pŏtuit suādēre *mălōrum, To such ills could superstition tempt!*—Lucr.

Partŭriunt montes, nascētur rīdĭcŭlus *mus, The mountains are in labour; forth will come an insignificant mouse!*—Hor.

Albānique patres atque altae moenia *Romae, And Alban sires, and walls of lofty* ROME.—Virg.

Obs. In free conversational language or familiar letters, the arrangement approaches the English more closely: as,

Ego quum accēpissem tuas lĭtĕras Nōnis Aprīlĭbus, *Having received your letter on the 5th of April.*—Cic.

(Periodic order: ego quum literas tuas Non. Apr. accepissem.)

§ 668. A *Substantive or Adjective in Apposition* follows the word to which it refers: as,

Urbs Rōma, Cĭcĕro ōrātor, Consul Tullius, Plīnius mĭnor, etc.

Obs. 1. *Consul Tullius* or *Tullius consul* might be equally correct. The former would inform us that *the consul's name was Tullius;* the latter that *Tullius held the office of consul.*

Obs. 2. Any adjuncts serving to qualify either word, may separate the two: as,

Attius Navius, *inclītus eā tempestāte* augur, *A. Navius, a famous augur of the time.*—Liv.

Egĕrius (frātris hic fīlius erat rēgis) *Collātiae in praesīdio* rĕlictus, *Egerius—this was the king's brother's son—being left in charge of Collatia,* &c.—Liv.

Obs. 3. Sometimes one or more unimportant words not adjuncts of either, are allowed to stand between: as,

Evander *tum ea* prŏfŭgus ex Pĕlŏponnēso rĕgēbat lŏca, *Evander, at the time an exile from Peloponnesus, ruled in these parts.*—Liv.

Lūcŭmōni *contra,* omnium hērēdi bŏnōrum, quum dīvĭtiae jam ănĭmos făcĕrent, *Wealth now inspiring the Lucumo, on the contrary, who was heir to* [*his*] *entire property, with arrogance.*—Liv.

§ 669. A *Dependent Genitive* (1) usually stands next after the governing substantive; unless (2) it is emphatic, when it generally precedes: as,

(1.) Agnĭtio *ănĭmi,*—nātūra *Deōrum,*—fĭgūrae *Deōrum,*—actio *vītae,* omnis cūrātio et admĭnistrātio *rērum*—(all from one chapter of Cic.: N. D. 1, 1.)

(2.) *Doctissĭmōrum* (*hŏmĭnum*) sententiae,—*săpientis* grăvĭtas atque constantia,—*maxĭmārum* (*rērum*) ignōrātio.—(Cic. same chapter.)

Obs. 1. Also the Genitive often precedes when the other Substantive has an attributive: as, summa phĭlŏsŏphōrum dissensio (Cic.), hoc ōrācŭli responso (Nep.), mīrābĭlis pugnandi cūpidĭtas (Nep.), nulla nŏvandi res causa (Liv.), triste dictātōris impĕrium.

Obs. 2. The Genitive may be made still more emphatic by being separated from the Substantive on which it depends: as,

Ne hĭcmis *quĭdem* spătio, *Not in winter time even.*—Liv.

Quod Darĭi regno *ipsorum* nītĕrētur dŏmĭnātio, *Because on the rule of Darius depended* THEIR OWN *authority.*—Nep.

§ 670. When the Subjective and Objective are combined, the former generally precedes and the latter follows the Substantive: as,

Cognoscĭte *hŏmĭnis* (Subj. Gen.) princĭpium *măgistrātuum gĕrendorum* (Obj. Gen.), *Mark the man's commencement of holding office.*—Cic. (Verr. 1, 13, 34.)

Cur *eōrum* (Subj. Gen.) spem rĕlĭquam *fortūnārum* (Obj. Gen.) vī extorquēre cōnāris, *Why do you attempt to wring from them their (only) remaining hope of recovering their fortunes?*—Cic. (Div. in Q. Caecil. 6, 21).

§ 671. *Adjectives.*—The ordinary position for an attributive Adjective is immediately *before* its Substantive: as,

Multas virtūtes,—mājōre relĭgiōne,—in tam prŏpinquo lŏco (all from Nep. Them. 8); — ingens multĭtūdo,—tam longi ŏpĕris,—amplissĭmis verbis,—publĭca laetĭtĭa,—insĕquens annus,—consūlāris pŏtestas,—Fidēnāti bello,—ancĭpĭti proelio,—ex mājōrĭbus castris (from Liv. 5. 8, 9); etc.

Obs. 1. Some of the Adjectives in the above examples are emphatic; but the position does not render them so. On the contrary, the place next *after* the Substantive, as being less usual, is not unfrequently more emphatic: as, tempestate *maximā* (Nep. Them. 8), donum *amplum* (Liv. 5, 16), O puerum *pulchrum* (Cic. Off. 1, 40, 144), etc.

Obs. 2. A monosyllabic Substantive more frequently precedes its Adjective: as, res rustĭcae, res nāvālis, di immortales. Yet Cic. has magna spes, omnis spes, etc.

§ 672. Great emphasis may be given to an Adjective by separating it from its Substantive, so as to let it produce a more independent impression: as,

Num tĭbi haec *parva* vĭdentur adjūmenta, *Deem you these* small *helps*?—Cic. (Mur. 18, 38.)

Sit ĭdem *magnĭfĭcentissĭmos* et *nullos* unquam fēcisse lūdos, *Be it all the same thing (for a candidate) to have given the most magnificent games or none ever at all.*—ib. (19, 41.)

Fĭliam ejus *parvŭlam* arrĭpuit, *He seized hold of his daughter, an infant.*—Nep. (Them. 8.)

Trĭbus *in ūnum* bellis collātis, *Three wars being accumulated all in one.*—Liv. (5, 13.)

Obs. In poetry, it is very common for a Substantive to be separated from its epithet by several words, without any special emphasis being intended. The Substantive and epithet then often stand in corresponding parts of a line.

Especially if the Adjective becomes in this way either the first or last word in a sentence: as,

Lăbor omnia vincit
Improbus, Toil untiring conquers all (difficulties).—Virg.

Hanc nātūrae tam dilĭgentem fabrĭcam, ĭmĭtāta est hŏmĭnum vĕrēcundia, *This so careful contrivance of nature, human modesty has copied.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 35, 127.)

Quod ălĭud ĭter hăbērent *nullum, Because, other route (they said) they had none.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 8.)

§ 673. But the place immediately before a Substantive is for the (quasi-enclitic) pronominal Adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, an emphatic position: as,

Clāmōres maxĭmos pro *vestrā* sălūte neglexit, *He thought little of the loudest outcries in comparison with the safety of you.*—Cic. (Mil. 2, 3.)

Per vos, ac per *vestram* fĭdem, *By means of you, and your protection.*—ib. (2, 4.)

Quum *suā* mānu sŏrōrem esse interfectam fătērētur, *When he confessed that by his own hand his sister had been put to death.*—ib. (3, 7.)

Meam pŏtentiam invĭdiōse crīmĭnābatur, *He made invidious charges against* (what he called) MY *unconstitutional power.*—ib. (5, 12.)

(Compare Nep. Paus. IV. 2, where, writing to Xerxes, Pausanias says, des ei fīliam *tuam*, and immediately after, Graeciam sub *tuam* potestatem se rĕdacturum pollĭcētur. In the former case a prominence of the word *tuam* might seem likely to give offence, in the latter it could not be other than flattering.)

§ 674. Different forms of the same word, when used to indicate some contrast, correspondence, or reciprocity, are put close to each other: as,

Mănus mănum lăvat, *Hand washes hand* (= *One good turn deserves another*).—Vet. Prov. in Sen.

Haeret *pĕde pes* densusque *vĭro vir*, *Foot is locked to foot and man to man, in dense array.*—Virg. (Aen. 10, 361).

Omnia *mea mēcum* porto, *I carry all my property about me.*

Magnăque cum *magno* vĕniet trītūra călōre, *And a great crop* [Lit. *thrashing*] *with great heat will ensue.*—Virg. (G. 1, 190.)

Magnum magno cōnāmĭne mīsit, *The mighty* (*stone*) *with mighty effort he threw.*—Ov. (Met. 3, 59).

§ 675. The ille of celebrity (§ 365) follows the Substantive to which it refers; as,

Mēdēa illa, Acădēmĭa illa (Cic.), testūla illa, *The* (*fatal*) *oyster-shell used in ostracism* (Nep.): comp. § 365.

Obs. But when an Adjective is added, the *ille* may precede the Substantive: as, vĕhĕmens *ille* consul, Cic. in Cat. 2, 6.

§ 676. Some Adjectives regularly *follow* the Substantives to which they refer. So do especially those which are equivalent to a dependent Genitive, or may be rendered in English by a Substantive and a Preposition: as,

Pŏpŭlus *Rōmānus*, Pŏpŭlus Albānus (= Romae, Albae); vincŭla publĭca (= pŏpŭli), *the prison of state;* dii publĭci, *the gods of one's country* (Nep.); mōtus cīvĭcus (= civium), *a commotion amongst citizens;* pontĭfex maximus, aes ălĭēnum; etc.

Obs. But we find always trĭbūni mīlĭtum consŭlāri pŏtestāte, not potestate consulari; and in the case of some words the usage varies, as pugna nāvālis or navalis pugna; cīvĭtas mărĭtĭma or maritima civitas.

§ 677. Sometimes an Adjective is put after a Substantive because of its close connexion with what immediately follows: as,

Bellum *multiplex* fuit eōdem tempŏre, *There were going on at the same time a multitude of wars.*—Liv.

Romānis indignĭtas *mājor quam* cūra, *The Romans felt more indignation than concern.*—Liv.

Căvendum est ne tardĭtātibus ūtāmur in ingressu *molliōribus, ut* [= adeo molles ut] pompārum fercŭlis sīmiles esse vidēāmur, *We must take care not to use in walking such effeminate slow movements as to look like the vessels carried in religious processions.*—Cic.

Non Idĭbus Dĕcembrĭbus, die *sollenni, sed* extemplo Kălendis Octobrĭbus, [*They had entered on office*] *not on the 13th of December, the day proper for so doing, but at once on the 1st of October.*—Liv.

§ 678. *Adverbs* are usually placed immediately before the word they qualify: as, sătis magnus, dīlĭgenter cūrare, etc. But they may be emphasised in a similar manner to Adjectives (comp. §§ 672, sqq.): as,

Nusquam ŏpĕra sine ēmŏlŭmento est, *Nowhere is work without its meed.*—Liv.

Clam se ab custōdĭbus subduxit, *He, without being noticed, got away from his keepers.*—Nep.

(For nunquam at the end of a sentence, see § 667.)

Obs. Non when it refers to a single word, stands immediately before it: as, Dāvus sum, *non* Oedĭpus, *Davus am I, not Oedipus.*—Ter.

Hŏmo *non aptissĭmus* ad jŏcandum, *A man not the best hand at a joke.*—Cic.

But when it refers to the entire proposition, it often stands at the beginning: as,

Non, medius fĭdius, possum prae lacrўmis rĕlĭqua scrĭbĕre, *I cannot, I vow, write the rest for tears.*—Cic. (ad Att.).

§ 679. When two words stand in the same relation to another word, they must either both precede or both follow it: as,

Divĭnĭtus dătum atque oblātum (*not* datum divinitus atque oblatum); —suā spe ac praedĭcātiōne (*not* spe sua, &c.);—cum summa vŏluntāte et exspectātiōne Pŏpŭli Rōmāni (*not* cum voluntate summa P. R., &c.); —sĕvĕre relĭgiōsēque dīcĕre;—ămīcōrum stŭdio offĭcĭōque;—hŏmo audācissĭmus atque āmentissĭmus.—(All from Verr. Act. I. 1-3.)

§ 680. *Prepositions.*—The ordinary position of the different Prepositions has been explained above (Chap. LIII.). Concerning the connexion of two Prepositions with the same Substantive see § 649.

A Preposition may be separated from its Case not only by an attributive (as, ex mărĭtĭmis cīvĭtātibus, ad bĕne vīvendum), or a dependent Genitive (as, ex Caesăris castris), but also (1) by the enclitic *que* (poet.); or (2) by an Accusative of the object governed by a transitive participle: as,

(1.) Eque sacrā rĕsŏnant exămĭna quercu, *And the swarms hum from the sacred oak.*—Virg.

(N.B.—Ad*que* rēgem, in Nep. Dat. 7, is probably a false reading for ad regemque.)

(2.) Nec ĕnim in constĭtuentĭbus rempublĭcam, nec in *bella* gĕrentĭbus, etc., *For not among those who manage politics or wage wars, etc.*—Cic. (Br. 12, 45.)

In *suum cuique* trĭbuendo, *In giving each his due.*—(ib. 21, 85.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes when the governed Substantive has an attributive, the Preposition stands between the two: as, una *ex* re (Cic.); &c.

Obs. 2. Concerning *per* separated from its Substantive in adjurations, see § 556, 17. *Obs.*

§ 681. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce: for examples see Chap. LIV. The principal exceptions are there treated. Concerning ne . . . . . quidem, see § 656.

Also some Adverbs of Time and Place, as **intĕrim, intĕrea, sīmul, jam, nunc, tunc, tum; ībi, hic, illic**, etc., when they contain a reference to what has preceded, stand at the beginning.

Obs. Inde is very often treated as an enclitic: as,

Dēdi *inde* inermes coepti, &c.; Agi *inde* de Apollĭnis dōno, &c.; Obsĭdio *inde* urbis, &c.—Liv.

§ 682. *Subordinate clauses.*—Participial or adverbial clauses and clauses with quum (see § 526), also Relative clauses when serving the purpose of definition, are let into the body of a period: as,

At Xerxes *Thermŏpўlis expugnātis*, prōtĭnus accessit astu, *But Xerxes after having forced the pass of Thermopylae, approached the city.* —Nep.

Jamque, *nuntiāto augŭrio, quum duplex nŭmĕrus Rōmŭlo se ostendisset*, utrumque rēgem sua multĭtūdo consălūtāverat, *And now, when the augury had been published, and the double number presented itself to Romulus, the different parties had each saluted their own king.*—Liv.

Compare also the following:

Pălātium prīmum, *in quo ipse erat ēdŭcātus* (Rel. clause), mūnīit: sacra dīis ălīis *Albāno rītu* (Adverb. clause), Graeco Hercŭli *ut ab Evandro instĭtūta ĕrant* (Adv. clause), făcit.—Liv. (1, 7).

Magna pars [virgĭnum] forte, *ut in quem quaeque incĭdĕrat* (Adv. clause), raptae.—Liv. (1, 9).

Athēnienses [dixit] suo consĭlio, *quod commūni jūre gentium făcĕre possent* (Rel. clause), deos publĭcos suosque, patrios ac pĕnātes, *quo făcilius ab hoste possent dēfendĕre* (comp. § 684), mūris saepsisse.—Nep. (Them. 7).

§ 683. But when a Relative clause introduces an altogether fresh predication it forms a new sentence or clause by itself: as,

Inde non prius ēgressus est quam rex eum, dătā dextrā, in fĭdem rĕcēpit, *Quam praestĭtit, He did not quit the spot, until the king, giving him his right hand, took him under his protection: which he made good.* —Nep.

Postquam audiērunt mūros instrui, lēgātos Athēnas mīsērunt, *qui id fĭĕri vĕtārent, When they heard that the walls were being built, they sent ambassadors to Athens, to forbid its being done.*—Nep.

Obs. In accordance with the above is the idiomatic practice of Latin authors of carrying forward narrative by means of the Relative.

§ 684. Similarly a Subjunctive clause with *ut* or *ne*, when not simply explanatory, follows the sentence to which it is attached: as,

Triplex portus constĭtūtus est, isque moenĭbus circumdătus, *ut ipsam urbem dignĭtāte aequipărāret, A threefold port was formed and surrounded by walls, so as to vie with the city in importance.*—Nep.

Tullius praecēpĕrat suis, *ne* quid prius quam mandāta ăgĕrent, *Tullius had instructed his envoys not to attend to anything before their commission.*—Liv.

But in the following examples the clause with *ut*, *ne*, being explanatory, naturally precedes:

Sed quia in cīvĭtāte bellĭcōsā, plūres Rōmŭli quam Numae sĭmĭles rēges pūtābat fŏre, *ne sacra rēgiae vĭcis* dēsĕrĕrentur, flāmĭnem Jŏvi assĭduum săcerdōtem creāvit, *But as in a martial commonwealth, he thought there would be more kings like Romulus than like Numa,—to prevent the sacred rites falling to the share of the king from being neglected,—he appointed a perpetual flamen to Jove.*—Liv.

His, *ut assĭduae templi antistĭtes essent*, stīpendĭum de publĭco stătuit, *To these—in order that they might serve the temple uninterruptedly—he assigned a salary from the public treasury.*—Liv.

Obs. It is not possible to define precisely the kinds of clauses treated of in the preceding sections. The longer clauses more frequently *follow*.

§ 685. Most sentences, and even clauses, are capable of being divided into shorter members, each of which is arranged according to the same general principles as an entire sentence: as,

Atqui *tōtus* hic lŏcus, *phĭlŏsŏphōrum* pūtātur proprius, *The whole of this subject, however, is regarded as belonging to philosophy* (not rhetoric).—Cic.

Quidquid erit ĭgĭtur, *quācunque* ex arte, *quōcunque* de gĕnĕre, id *ōrātor* si tanquam *clientis* causam dĭdĭcĕrit, dīcet *mĕlius* et ornātius quam *ille* ipse ejus rei *inventor* atque artĭfex, *Whatever it may be, therefore, from whatever art or science, and from whatever branch, the orator will, if he will only study it as he would his client's brief, speak upon it more effectively and impressively, than even the original discoverer or proficient therein.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 11, 51.)

Obs. After the enunciation of an emphatic word, the remaining words *in the same member* are unemphatic. In the second sentence the adverbs *melius, ornatius*, follow the verb dicet because of their close connexion with the following words *quam*, etc. (comp. § 677.)

§ 686. Regard must in all cases be had to euphony, concerning which it is impossible to lay down precise rules. It may however be remarked that a trochaic ending (— ⏑) for a sentence is preferable to an iambic or dactylic one. Thus the following endings occur in the first chapter of the De Oratore:

Esse póssent, constĭtísset, fefellĕrunt, exstĭtĕrunt, recŏlendas, discrímen, redundārunt, rŏgānti, vŏluntāti; the only iambic ending in the same chapter being conferam (a *creticus*).

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*

BOOK III. — REMARKS ON THE STYLES OF SALLUST, CAESAR, CICERO, LIVY AND TACITUS.

CHAPTER LXII.—STYLE OF SALLUST.

§ 687. The style of Sallust is marked by brevity and frequent use of antithesis; also by the recurrence or peculiar use of certain words and constructions; and by some archaisms.

Obs. There is something artificial about the style of Sallust. This is most apparent in the moralising introductions with which he has prefaced his Catiline and Jugurtha. In simple narrative or description he is often exceedingly vigorous and animated: see for example his delineation of the character of Catiline (c. 5); his account of the seizure of the dispatches of the Allobrogian embassy (ib. 44, 45); of the siege of Zama (Jug. 60); of the Philaeni (ib. 79).

§ 688. *Brevity.*—This is a general feature of the style of Sallust, and is seen most strikingly in such concise expressions as the following:

Vītam sīlentio transīre, *to go through life without causing one's name to be heard of,* (Cat. 1);—ingĕnium, corpus, *the entire faculties of the human mind or body,* (ib. 2);—quae hŏmĭnes ārant, nāvĭgant, aedĭfĭcant, *the different kinds of activity put forth in husbandry, navigation, and building or architecture,* (ib. 2);—ămāre, pōtāre, *to indulge in the pleasures of licentiousness or intoxication,* (ib. 11);—mănus, venter, *gambling, gluttony,* (ib. 14);—virtus, *all kinds of excellent qualities;* especially *of the mind,* (passim);—ars, *any kind of occupation or course* (passim).

§ 689. *Asyndeton* (§ 565. *Obs.*).—In accordance with his love of brevity, Sallust is fond of dispensing with connectives; as in the following examples:

Quĭbus prŏfecto contra nātūram, corpus vŏluptāti, ănĭmus ŏnĕri fuit, *To whom—in opposition to what nature intended, unquestionably—the body was the only source of pleasure* [and] *the mind a burden.*—(Cat. 2.)

Māre saevum, importuōsum; ăger frūgum fertĭlis, bŏnus pĕcŏri, arbŏre infēcundus: coelo terrāque pēnūria ăquārum, *The sea* [is] *rough* [and] *without harbours; the soil fertile* [and] *good for stock* [though] *unproductive in trees; sky and earth* [are alike] *deficient in supply of water.*—(Jug. 17.)

(Compare also Cat. 5.)

Obs. Sallust is equally partial to the omission of the copula; as in the latter of the above examples.

§ 690. *Antithesis.*—The following may serve as specimens of the very frequent use of this figure by Sallust:

Nam pro pŭdōre, pro abstĭnentiā, pro virtūte, audācia, largītio, ăvārĭtia vĭgēbant, *For in place of modesty, of clean-handedness, of virtue, flourished effrontery, corruption, covetousness.*—(Cat. 3.)

Laudis ăvĭdi, pĕcūniae lĭbĕrāles, *Covetous of praise; liberal with money.*—(ib. 7.)

Concordia maxĭma; mĭnĭma ăvārĭtia, ĕrat, *There was the utmost degree of harmony, the least of covetousness.*—(ib. 9.)

(Compare the whole of the last-named chapter: also Cat. 54, etc.)

§ 691. *Historical Infinitive.*—Sallust makes very frequent use of this construction (see § 517), which is particularly suited to animated description. This is well seen in his vivid picture of the state of the capital during the panic caused by the conspiracy (Cat. 31), or of the restlessness and insecurity of the guilty Jugurtha (Jug. 72).

§ 692. *Alius .... ăliud.*—This concise idiom (see § 629) is probably more frequent in Sallust than in any other writer. Thus we find—

Aliud ălio ferri.—(Cat. 2.)
Alius ălii nātūrā ĭter monstrat.—(same chapter.)
Alius ălio mōre vīventes.—(ib. 6.)
Alius ălium hortāri.—(same chapter.)
Praetĕrea *ălium ălio* [mittit].—(ib. 27.)
Alios in *ălia* lŏca [praemīsisse].—(same chapter.)

And so in many other places.

§ 693. *Sed, nam, ĭgĭtur.*—Sallust begins a great many of his sentences with one or other of these conjunctions (probably after the model of the Greek δὲ or ἀλλὰ—γὰρ—οὖν). This has a somewhat bald and monotonous effect. Thus in the first short chapter of the Catiline, nam and sed each begin two sentences; and in five consecutive chapters (ib. 7—11), sed begins *nine* sentences; ĭgĭtur, *four;* and nam (or namque), *three.*

Obs. By other authors igitur is placed second in a sentence, not first.

§ 694. *Favourite or peculiar words.*—There are some words (1) which Sallust is fond of repeating; others (2) which are rarely used by other writers or not in the same sense: the following are the principal of these:

(1.) **Mortāles** in sense of hŏmĭnes (passim). **Pŏpŭlāres,** for *accomplices* (Cat. 22, 24).

Tempestas for (*particular*) *time* (Gr. καιρός): as,

Eā tempestāte (Cat. 7, 17, 22, 26; Jug. 8, &c.), quā tempestāte (Jug. 79).

Ăgo and its frequentative **ăgĭto**, in various senses: as,

Cīvĭtas laeta *ăgĕre*, *The whole city* (acted as) *full of joy.*—(Jug. 55.)

Incultius *ăgĕre*, To live *in a more uncivilized manner.*—(id. 89.)

Multa *ăgĭtāre*, To turn over, meditate upon *many things.*—(Cat. 53.)

Vāgos *ăgĭtāre*, To live *a wandering life.*—(Jug. 19.)

Agĭtāre (absol.), *To move, gesticulate.*—(Jug. 60.)

Vārius incertusque *ăgĭtābat*, He acted *in an inconstant and hesitating way.*—(ib. 74.)

Hăbeo, in various senses: as,

Virtus clāra aeternaque *hăbĕtur*, *Virtue* is *a glorious and imperishable* possession.—(Cat. 1.)

Aequābĭlius *sēse* res hūmānae *hăbērent*, *Human affairs would* go on *more steadily.*—(ib. 2.)

Aetātem prŏcul a rĕpublĭca *hăbēre*, To spend *one's life aloof from public affairs.*—(ib. 4.)

Nĕque quicquam pensi *hăbēbat*, Nor had he *any consideration.*—(ib. 5.)

So, condĭdēre atque *hăbuēre*, sĭcŭti plērŭque mortālium *hăbentur*, nōmen rēgium *hăbēbant* (ib. 6)—in promptū *hăbēre*, lĭbīdĭnem *hăbēbant* (ib. 7), and so on.

(2.) Peculiar uses of words:

Mĕdiocris, in sense of *equitable, good* (Gr. ἐπιεικής): Jug. 6.

Gignentia, for *plants, vegetation*: Jug. 79, *med.*

§ 695. *Archaisms.*—Sallust somewhat affects these: the following may be noted:—

(1.) Accusative pl. of Substantives and Adjectives in es and is in Is rather than es: as, omnīs, etc.

(2.) Genitive sing. of 4th Decl. in i for us: as, sĕnāti (Cat. 30, 36, 51).

(3.) Such contracted Genitives as ingĕni (Cat. 1), impĕri (ib. 6), auxĭli (ib. 40), &c.

(4.) He always uses o after v, and not u: as dīvorsi (Cat. 2), convortit (ib. 6), &c.

Obs. This last mode of spelling, however, appears to have been the usual one in the time of Sallust.

CHAPTER LXIII.—STYLE OF CAESAR.

§ 696. The style of Caesar has few peculiarities. It is clear, direct, and unaffected. He is said to have carefully avoided unusual words or expressions.

Obs. The 'Commentaries' of Caesar were designed, as the name implies, to serve as "notes" or memoranda for history (see Suet. Caes. 56). But Cicero remarks that while "silly persons" (inepti) might think the unadorned materials of Caesar a good field to show off their fine writing, sensible people would shrink from meddling with what was in itself so excellent ("sanos quidem homines a scribendo deterruit:" Brut. 75).

§ 697. Caesar is generally brief and concise, though evidently without studying to be so like Sallust. Perspicuity is evidently more consulted than brevity. Hence perhaps, he often repeats the antecedent along with the Relative pronoun; as in the following:

Erant omnīno duo *itĭnĕra*, quĭbus *itĭnĕribus* dŏmo exīre posset.—B. G. 1, 6.

Diem dīcunt quā *die* ad rīpam Rhŏdăni omnes convĕniant.—(same chapter.)

Re frūmentārĭā compărātā ĕquĭtĭbusque dēlectis, ĭter in ea *lŏca* făcĕre coepit, quĭbus in *lŏcis* esse Germānos audĭēbat.—ib. 4, 7.

§ 698. He is partial to the construction of the *Ablative Absolute*. Thus many passages begin with some such phrase as "Quĭbus rēbus cognĭtis" (B. G. 19, etc.), "bello confecto" (ib. 30), "eo consĭlio dīmisso" (ib. 31), "hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā" (ib. 32), "his rēbus cognĭtis" (ib. 33), &c.

§ 699. A great many particulars are often gathered up in one sentence. Thus some of Caesar's periods contain perhaps more members than those of any other narrative writer: as,

Quod ŭbi Caesar compĕrit, omnĭbus his rēbus confectis quarum causā transdūcĕre exercĭtum constĭtuĕrat, ut Germānis mĕtum injĭcĕret, ut Sigambros ulciscĕrētur, ut Ubios obsĭdiōne lĭbĕraret,—dĭebus omnīno dĕcem et octo consumptis,—sătis et ad laudem et ad ūtĭlĭtātem prōfectum arbitrātus,—se in Galliam rĕcĕpit pontemque rescĭdit, *When Caesar was informed of this, as he had accomplished all the objects he had in view in crossing [the Rhine],—namely, to strike terror into the Germans, to inflict vengeance on the Sigambri, and to raise the blockade of the Ubii,—having spent in all eighteen days and no more; thinking that enough had been achieved whether for his credit or his ends, betook himself back into Gaul and broke down the bridge.*—(B. G. iv. 19).

Obs. These inconveniently long periods doubtless owe their origin to haste of writing (see § 696, *Obs.*). For other examples see B. G. vii. 33, 34, 36.

Chapter LXIV.—Style of Cicero.

§ 700. The style of Cicero is that of a man who has at his command all the resources of the language. Every period is a work of art, and the cadences are full and sonorous. But perhaps the finest charm is to be found in his letters. He there allows himself more natural liberty in the use and coining of words, as well as in the structure of his sentences, while yet we nowhere miss that grace which is inseparable from Cicero.

Only a few points will be noticed here, since the peculiarities of Cicero are mostly rhetorical rather than grammatical.

§ 701. He is fond of doubling his words; that is to say, he often uses together two or more words of nearly identical meaning, in order to convey a fuller or more precise sense. Thus we often meet with such combinations as the following:

Amīcus nĕcessārĭusque,—sŭperbia atque arrŏgantia,—sermo atque fāma,—ignōmĭnia et turpĭtūdo,—lĕvĭtas et inconstantia,—cūra atque ŏpĕra,—sīne jūdĭcio contrōversĭāque;—rĕgĕre et admĭnistrare,—mŏleste grăvĭterque ferre,—committĕre et crēdĕre,—struĕre et mōlīri, etc. (all from the Cluentius).

Obs. In his frequent use of such parallel words Cicero was no doubt studying partly a more complete and exhaustive expression, and partly the cadence of his sentences.

§ 702. In his more rhetorical passages Cicero makes a bold use of Abstracts for Concretes (§ 592, 2): as,

Prōvinciam ad summam *stultĭtiam nēquĭtiam*que vēnisse, *The province had fallen into the hands of the greatest fools and knaves.*—(Verr. 5, 15.)

Exercĭtus collectus ex agrārĭā *luxŭrĭā*, *An army collected from all the prōfligates of the country.*—(In Cat. 1, 3.)

§ 703. *Diminutives.*—He makes a free use of these, and appears to coin them when it suits his purpose: as,

Contortŭlae quaedam et mĭnūtae *conclūsiuncŭlae*, Paltry *little quibbling arguments.*—(Tusc. 2, 18.)

Nummŭlis acceptis, *Having received some paltry coins.*—(Att. 1, 16.)

Brūti nostri *vultĭcŭlus*, *The* dear (*little*) *face of our Brutus.*—(Att. 14, 20.)

Quintus fīlius Antōnii est *dextella*, *My nephew Quintus is Antony's right-hand man* (perhaps implying some contempt).—(ib.)

Obs. This free use of diminutives is found chiefly in his letters and the conversational parts of his philosophical and other works.

§ 704. *Vĭdēri.*—Cicero is partial to the use of this verb, and sometimes uses it to soften a statement, where in English it cannot be translated: as,

Restat ut de imperātore ad id bellum dēlĭgendo dīcendum *vĭdeātur*, *It remains for me to speak respecting the choice of a commander for the said war.*—(Manil. 10, 27.)

(Comp. ib. 20, where the same phrase is repeated.)

Obs. This use of videor corresponds to that of δοκέω in Greek (cf. Xen. Anab. 1, 3, 12); and sometimes occurs in other authors besides Cicero: as,

Nĕque id sine causā arbitrāri *vĭdēbantur*, *Nor were they* [did they seem to be] *without reason for that opinion.*—(Nep. Alc. 6.)

§ 705. *Versāri, rătio.*—These two words are used by Cicero very frequently, and in various senses: the following examples are taken from a large number in Nägelsbach (Stilist. pp. 167, 297):

(1.) **Versāri**: *to be engaged in; to be in connexion with, in the domain of; to deal with; to be at work:* as,

In omni gĕnĕre fūrandi atque praedandi *versāri*, To be engaged in *every kind of thieving and robbery.*—(Verr. 5, 1.)

Uterque in summā sĕvērĭtāte *versātur*, *Both of them* (Cato and Caesar) take the ground *of extreme severity.*—(In Cat. 4, 4.)

Meus labor in prīvātorum pĕrīcŭlis *versātus*, *My exertions which* have to do with *the perils of private citizens.*—(Manil. 1 2.)

Versātur magnus error, *A great delusion* prevails.—(Leg. Agr. 2. 3, 7.)

(2.) **Rătio**: *account, consideration; dealings; relation, province* or *domain* (German, verhältniss); *calculation; reasoning; theory, system, mode:* as,

In *rătiōnem* indūcĕre, *To take into account.*—(Verr. 1, 4.)

Rătiōnem hăbent cum terrā, *They (farmers)* have to do *with the soil.*—(de Sen. 15.)

Dīversa stŭdia in dissĭmĭli *rătiōne*, *Diverse activities in a different* field.—(In Cat. 2, 5.)

Dŏmestĭca, bellĭca *rătio*, *The* domain *or* department *of home affairs, of war.*—(Off. 1, 22.)

Rătio vēnēfĭcii, *The* domain, department or ground *of the (alleged) poisoning.*—(Clu. 1.)

Pĕtītiōnis tuae *rătio*, *The* question or matter *of your canvass* (little more than = petitio tua).—(Fam. 15, 13, 1.)

Sine ullā dīvīnā *rătiōne*, *Without taking the gods into* consideration *at all.*—(N. D. 3, 35.)

CHAPTER LXV.—STYLE OF LIVY.

§ 706. Livy is the greatest master of prose narrative. The periods of Cicero are those of a public speaker; those of Livy combine the stateliness of a historian with the copious flow and artistic grouping suitable to descriptive narration.

Obs. There seems to be no foundation for the opinion that the later decades were inferior in excellence to the earlier ones. (See Lewis, R. Hist. i. p. 253.) Livy was charged by his contemporaries with a certain provincialism (*Patavinitas*); but it is not known wherein the alleged peculiarities consisted.

§ 707. *Figurative language.*—Livy makes frequent use of metonymy (§ 604), and other figures of speech. Thus we find Mars for bellum (*passim*); mĭnistĕria, servĭtia, for *ministri, servi* (§ 592); praetōrium, not only for *the office of commander-in-chief* (21, 3), but also for *a commander-in-chief's council of war* (21, 54); praerŏgātīva, for *a prior election* (21, 3); agrestium fŭga, for *agrestes fŭgientes* (3, 69); rōbŏra vĭrorum for *rōbusti vĭri* (21, 54); etc.

§ 708. *Genitive.*—Livy uses the Genitive after Adjectives with more freedom than earlier writers: as,

Trĕpĭdi rērum suārum (= de rebus suis), *In alarm about their own interests.*—(5, 11.)

(See remarks on style of Tacitus: § 721).

§ 709. *Singular for Plural.*—This use has been already noticed (§ 607).

§ 710. *Indicative for Subjunctive.*—Instead of the Subjunctive in Relative clauses of the *oratio obliqua* (§ 465), Līvy not unfrequently uses the Indicative (even when such usage cannot be explained by 467, *Obs.*): as,

Proconsŭlem P. Cornēlium, multōrum exemplo qui in măgistrātu non *triumphāvērunt* (= triumphaverint), triumphātūrum essĕ, *P. Cornelius might* (he said) *enjoy his triumph as proconsul, after the precedent of a number who had not done so while actually in office.*—(36, 39.)

Q. Făbium dīcĕre, se .... ab Rōmā Aequis bellum afferre, eādem dextrā armātā, quam pācātam ille antea *dĕdĕrat* (= dederit), *Q. Fabius said, he brought war from Rome to the Aequians, with the same right hand armed which he had before offered them in peace.*—(3, 2.)

§ 711. The *Subjunctive* is often *preferred to the Indicative* after dōnec, antĕquam, priusquam, even when simple facts are spoken of: see §§ 499, 501 (*b.*)

§ 712. *Perfect Subjunctive after Past Tenses.*—This construction (§ 433) is perhaps more frequent in Livy than in any other writer. Compare the following:

Eo *fuit* (*past-indef.*) hăbĭtu ōris, ut... ...rīdentis ĕtiam spĕciem *praebuĕrit*, *He wore such an expression on his features as to present the appearance of a laugh.* (Lit. *of one laughing*).—(21, 2.)

Haud dŭbium [fuit], quin nĭsi firmāta extrēma agmĭnis *fuissent* ingens in eo saltu accīpienda clādes *fuĕrit*, *There was no doubt that had not the rear-guard been strengthened, a serious defeat must have been sustained in that pass.*—(21, 34.)

Transeuntem Apennīnum ădeo atrox *ădorta* tempestas *est*, ut Alpium foedĭtatem prŏpe *sŭpĕrāvĕrit*, *As he was crossing the Apennines, he was assailed by a tempest of such violence as almost to surpass the horrors of the Alps.*—(21, 58.)

(In all the above cases Cicero would probably have used the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

§ 713. *Hypothetical use of Future Participle.*—Other writers use the Imperfect participle active and Perfect participle passive hypothetically: Livy extends this use to the Future participle in **-rus**: as,

Dēdĭturis se Hannĭbăli non fuisse arcessendum Rōmānōrum praesīdium, *If they had intended to give themselves up to Hannibal, they ought not to have sent for a Roman garrison.*—(23, 44.)

§ 714. *Gerund and Gerundive.*—Livy is partial to the use of these verbal forms, which he uses with greater freedom than any other writer. (Compare § 541.) The following examples of his use of the Gerundive may be useful:

[Săguntīnis] oppugnandis (*Abl. Absol.*) haud dŭbie Rōmāna arma mŏvēbantur, *By the attack upon Saguntum there was no question of a war with Rome being provoked.*—(21, 5.)

(Cicero would have said Saguntinis oppugnatis.)

Possĭdendis agris (= possessiōne agrorum) contentus, *Content with holding the (public) lands.*—(6, 14.)

Quum vix mŏvendis armis (= ad arma mŏvenda) spătium esset, *There being hardly room to move their arms:*—(23, 27.)

Ubi prōmŏvendo adjunctam (= promotam atque adjunctam) mūro vīdērunt turrem, *When they saw that the tower*, by being gradually pushed orward, *had been brought close to the wall.*—(23, 38.)

His āvertendis terrōrĭbus (= ad hos avertendos terrores: cf. § 538), in trĭduum fĕriae indictae, *To avert these terrors, a holiday of three days was notified.*—(3, 5.)

Ante condĭtam *condendamve* urbem, *Before the city was founded or designed to be founded.*—(Pref.)

§ 715. *Prepositions.*—Livy is somewhat peculiar in his use of certain Prepositions, especially **ab** (**a**), **ad**, as seen in the following examples:

(1.) **Ab, a.**—*Directly after; by way of: on the part of* (cf. § 557, 1): as,

Ab (= ex) his praeceptis, contiōnem dīmīsit, *Immediately after (giving) these instructions, he dismissed the assembly.*—(44, 34.)

Ab irrīsu (= per irrisum) linguam exsĕrĕre, *To put out the tongue in ridicule.*—(7, 10.)

Ab rēgiis, *On the part of the royalists.*—(37, 23.)

Ad exsolvendam fĭdem a consŭle (= consulis), *To the making good of a promise on the part of the consul.*—(27, 5.)

Mettus Curtius ab Sābīnis (= Sabinorum) princeps, *Mettus Curtius leader on the part of the Sabines.*—(1, 12.)

(2.) **Ad.**—*At the instance of; in the department of:* as,

Ad (= propter) mĕtum, ad spem vĕniae dēdĕre se, *To surrender in (at the promptings of) fear, or of hope of pardon.*—(36, 13.)

Ad dēsīdĕrium rĕlictārum (*sc.* bŏum), mūgīre, *To bellow at missing the heifers that had been left behind.*—(1, 7.)

Trĭbūni mīlĭtum ad lĕgiōnes (= legionum), *The military tribunes of the legions.*—(7, 5.)

Servi ad rēmum, *The slaves at the oar.*—(34, 6.)

§ 716. **Namque** is frequently placed by Livy (as by later writers generally) second instead of first in a sentence: as,

Omnium *namque* lăborum, etc., (5, 11.)

Ibi *namque* in tăbernis, etc., (3, 44.)

Chapter LXVI.—Style of Tacitus.

§ 717. Tacitus lived a century after the latest of the aforementioned masters of Latin prose. The language had then lost somewhat of its original chasteness and severity, but from an increased vocabulary and greater freedom of expression, it was perhaps better fitted to express the conceptions of so original and vehement a writer.

§ 718. Tacitus delights to express himself in striking and original ways. He has great variety of phraseology; his turns of thought are often abrupt and even startling; and he frequently suggests much more than he expresses. He uses freely many idioms rarely or never found in writers of the preceding century, and his language has much of a poetical complexion.

§ 719. The scale of this work does not admit of a full treatment of so various a subject as the style of Tacitus. For fuller particulars the student is referred elsewhere.* We shall notice only the more prominent points.

§ 720. (A.) VARIETY.—This is shown chiefly in the following particulars:

(1.) *Different forms of the same word:* as,

Plebs and plēbes—sĕnectus and sĕnecta—oblīvium and oblīvio—quŏtiens and quŏties—tĕgūmen, tĕgĭmen and tegmen—părentum (*gen. pl.*) and părentium, &c.

(2.) *Different grammatical constructions without difference of meaning:* as,

(Lĕgiōnem .... prŏ rīpā compōnĕret), *subsĭdio* (Dat. of Purpose or Result: § 297) victis et *terrōrem* (Apposition) adversus victōres, *As an assistance to them if conquered, and a terror to their conquerors.*—(Ann. 12, 29.)

Corpŏre ingens, *ănĭmi* (§ 285) immŏdĭcus, *In body huge in mind (ambition) unmeasured.*—(Hist. 1. 53.)

Cum *Parthus* (§ 607) distrăhĕret turmas, *Sarmătae* irrŭĕrent, *While the Parthians tried to separate the squadrons, and the Sarmatians rushed, &c.*—(Ann. 6. 35.)

Especially in comparisons (§ 350):

Vĕhĕmentius quam caute.—(Agr. 4.)

Clāris mājōrĭbus quam vĕtustis.—(Ann. 4, 61.)

Quanto inŏpīna, tanto mājōra.—(Ann. 1, 68.)

Quanto quis clārior, mĭnus fĭdus.—(Hist. 3, 58.)

(3.) Various words and phrases employed to denote the same thing: as,

Fīnis sponte sumptus—quaesīta mors—suo ictu mortem invĕnīre—fīnem vītae sĭbi pŏnĕre—vŏluntārio exĭtu cădĕre—vītam rĕlinquĕre—etc., all to denote *self-destruction.*

Vēnas, brăchia exsolvĕre, rĕsolvĕre, abrumpĕre, interscindĕre, abscindĕre, incīdĕre—lĕvem ictum vēnis inferre—all of *opening the veins in order to cause death.*

(4.) *Peculiar uses of words.*—Tacitus not only uses (*a*) many new words, but also (*b*) old ones in rarer meanings: the following may serve as examples:

(*a*) Centŭrĭōnātus, exstĭmŭlātor, instĭgātrix, inturbĭdus, quinquĭplĭcāre, praeposse, prōvĭvĕre, pervĭgēre, sŭperstagnāre, sŭperurgēre.

* See Böttticher's 'Remarks on the Style of Tacitus,' prefixed to Dr. Smith's Tacitus, from which the present sections are partly taken.

(*b*) Adductus (*drawn to; tight*), in sense of *severe:* hence, adductius regnāri, *to be under stricter rule.*—(Ger. 43.)

Expĕdīre, *to go on an expedition* (Gr. στρατεύεσθαι).—(Hist. 1, 88.)

Externus, *hostile:* hence externa mōlīri, *to make hostile movements.*—(Hist. 3 5.)

Dīversus, also *hostile:* as dīversa ăcies, *the enemy's line.*—(Ann. 14, 30.)

Annus, *yearly crop.*—(Ger. 14.)

Sĭnister = mălus.—(Agr. 5.)

§ 721. (B.) Peculiar Idioms.—Under this head fall—

(1.) *His use of the Genitive* (see § 285):

(*a*) After Adjectives; as, immŏdĭcus ănĭmi, ingens animi, vĕtus ŏpĕris ac lăbōris, virtūtum stĕrĭlis, &c. &c.

(*b*) With the Gerundive, to denote a purpose (see § 539): as,

Aegyptum prŏfĭcīscĭtur cognoscendae antīquĭtātis, *He sets out for Egypt,* in order to *study its antiquities.*—(Ann. 2, 59.)

Vitandae suspīcionis, an quia păvĭdis consĭlia in incerto sunt, *Either in order to avoid suspicion, or else because the plans of the timid fluctuate.*—(Ann. 3, 9.)

(2.) His free use of the Dative of *purpose* (see § 297); as,

Rĕpertus est nūdus .... exercĭtando corpŏri, *He was found stripped for exercise.*—(Ann. 14, 59.)

Num .... cētĕra expugnandis urbĭbus attŭlissent, (He asked) *whether they had brought the other* (*appliances*) *for taking cities.*—(Hist. 3, 20.)

(3.) Of the Accusative without a Preposition after verbs of motion: as,

Rīpam accēdĕre—oppĭdum irrumpĕre—advolvi gĕnua—incĭdere lŏcum, &c.; in which cases a Preposition is mostly used by Cicero. Tacitus has also such expressions as vertĭces montium insĭdēre, Ger. 43; summa collium insidere, Agr. 37. (Comp. § 236.)

(4.) Of the Ablative Absolute (see § 333. *Obs.* 2).

(5.) His frequent use of an Adjective instead of the Genitive of a Substantive: as,

Caĭānae expĕdītiōnes, *The expeditions of Caius* (*Caligula*). —(Hist. 4, 15.)

Mĕtus hostĭlis, *Fear of the enemy.*—(Ann. 12, 51.)

Obs. This idiom is found in earlier writers (§ 611): it is its *frequent* use that is peculiar to Tacitus.

(6.) Of the plural of Abstract Substantives: as, audāciae (Ann. 1, 74), īrācundiae (14, 4), etc., where the use of the plural indicates *separate manifestations* of the abstract quality (see § 594).

(7.) Of the *Infinitive*:

(*a*) As Historical (comp. § 517):

Tacitus uses this idiom more frequently than any other writer (Sallust included: § 691). He has it even after such Adverbs of time as *ubi, cum*: as,

Ubi crūdescĕre sēdītio, *When the mutiny was growing fiercer.*—(Hist. 3, 10, &c.)

(*b*) After verbs of *advising, commanding, preventing*, &c., instead of the Subjunctive and ut, ne, quin, quōmĭnus. Thus we find,

Obstĭtit Oceănus in se sĭmul atque in Hercŭlem *inquiri* (=quominus inquireretur, § 463), *Ocean prevented inquiry at once into himself and Hercules.*—(Ger. 34.)

(8.) *Zeugma* (see § 643).

§ 722. (C.) ABRUPTNESS, &c.—This is seen in the unexpected turns often given by Tacitus to a sentence: as,

Ferrum ēlātum *dēfĕrēbat* in pectus—*ni* proxĭmi dextram vi attĭnuissent, *He raised his sword, and was in the act of plunging it into his bosom*—[and would have done so] *had not the by-standers held his hand by main force.*—(Ann. 1, 35.)

Germānia a Sarmătis Dācisque *mĕtu aut montĭbus* sēpărātur, *Germany is bounded on the side of the Sarmatians and Dacians* by fear or by mountains.—(Ger. 1.)

Cĭbos et *hortāmĭna* pugnantĭbus gestant, *They carry to the combatants provisions and* encouragement.—(Ger. 7.)

§ 723. Tacitus is a writer who suggests more than he says, and his brief comments are frequently marked by bitterness and irony. This is seen in the following sentences:

Nec corrumpĕre et corrumpi *sæcŭlum* vŏcātur, *Nor is the conduct of seducer and seduced there called* "the [fashion of] the age."—(Ger. 19.)

Măneat, quaeso, dūretque gentĭbus, si non ămor nostri, at certe ŏdium sui; quando urgentĭbus impĕrii fātis, *nihil jam praestāre fortūna mājus pŏtest quam hostium discordiam,—Heaven grant there may remain and abide in the nations, if not love of us, at least hatred of one another; since, now that the destiny of the empire weighs upon us, Fortune can no longer confer on us anything better than strife amongst our foes.*—(Ger. 33.)

Sanctiusque ac rĕverentius visum de actis deōrum *crēdĕre quam sciret —It seemed more pious and devout to* believe *in the doings of the gods than to* know *about them.*—(Ger. 34.)

§ 724. (D.) POETICAL COMPLEXION.—This is felt throughout in reading Tacitus; and consists partly in the use of the "poetical" constructions which have been illustrated. The following points may be added:

(1.) The use of abstract substantives in concrete sense: as,

Tītus ingens rērum *fīdūcia* accessit, *In Titus he found a great* prop *of his fortunes.*—(Hist. 4.)

Mīlĭtiae = *milites* (Hist. 3, 18).

Exsĭlia = *exsŭles* (Hist. 1, 2).

Mātrĭmōnia = *uxores* (Ann. 2, 13).

(2.) Hendiadys (see § 602): as,

Nec ullum in barbăris saevĭtiae gĕnus ŏmīsit *īra et victōria*, *Nor did the* rage of the victors *fail to practise any species of cruelty known among barbarians.*—(Agr. 16.)

Sŭper sexāginta millia . . . *oblectātiōni ŏcŭlisque* cĕcĭdērunt, *More than* 60,000 *were slain for the gratification of our eyes.*—(Ger. 33.)

Impĕtu et īrā, *In a fit of passion.*—(Ger. 25.)

(3.) A general use of elevated and figurative language: as,

Glōria frontis, *Pride of aspect* (*of the tall, handsome horns of cattle*).—(Ger. 5.)

Nūdi aut săgŭlo lĕves, *Naked or lightly* [*clad in*] *a soldier's mantle.*—(ib. 6.)

Sēra jŭvĕnum Vĕnus, *Their youth are late in arriving at the age of puberty.*—(ib. 20.)

Silvam, | augŭriis patrum et priscā formīdĭne sacram [a Hexameter line], *A forest consecrated by the auguries of ancestors, and awe of old.*—(ib. 39.)

Dŏmĭtae gentes, capti rēges, et monstrātus fātis, Vespāsiānus, *Tribes were subdued; kings led captive; and Vespasian pointed out* (*by the finger of*) *destiny.*—(Agr. 13.)

Urbs incendiis vastāta; . . . . plēnum exsĭliis mărе; infecti caedĭbus scŏpŭli, *The capital was ravaged by fire; the sea crowded with exiles; the cliffs stained with carnage.*—Hist. 1, 2).

Non tŭmultus, non quies: quāle magni mĕtus et magnae īrae sĭlentium est, *There was neither uproar nor calm; like the stillness of deep dread or deep wrath.*—(Hist. 1, 40.)

N.B.—The book entitled *Dialogus de Oratoribus* differs greatly in style from the other works ascribed to Tacitus; being characterised by a fluent rhetorical diction. It seems probable that it was one of the historian's juvenile productions.

PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

Obs. Prosody is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

CHAPTER LXVII.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long (¯), short (˘), or doubtful (≚).

(A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long: as, āurum, *gold*, pōena, *punishment*, cūī, *to whom*.

EXCEPTION.—**Prae** in composition is usually short before a vowel: as, prăe-acutus, *sharpened at the end*.

Obs. 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long: as, oc-cīdo, *to kill*, from caedo, *to strike*; con-clūdo, *to shut up*, from claudo, *to shut*.

Obs. 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened: as, pŏesis (ποίησις). platĕa (πλατεῖα) as well as platēa.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long. as, cōgo from cŏăgo, *to collect*, bōbus from bŏvĭbus, *to* or *by oxen*, jūnior from jŭvĕnior, *younger*, prūdens from prŏvĭdens, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x*, *z*), or by *j*: as, mēnsa, *a table*, dūx, *a leader*, Amāzon, *an Amazon*, ējus, *of him*.

Obs. In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word nūx (*a nut*), root nūc-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position): though strictly speaking, it is the *syllable* which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *s*, the *vowel* retaining its quantity as in other cases; nūc-i, nūc-em, nūc-es, etc.

Exception 1. Bĭjugus, *yoked two together*, quadrĭjugus, *yoked four together*.

Obs. 1. *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, ăqua, *water*. *H* is a simple brĕathing: hence, ădhuc, *as yet*.

Obs. 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word: as, In mare, *into the sea*; fruitūr vita, *he enjoys life*.

Obs. 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short: as,

In solio Phoebus claris lucĕntĕ smăragdis.—Ov.

Obs. 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before sc, sm, sp, sq, and st.

Exception 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, dŭplex or dūplex, *twofold*, pătris or pātris, *of a father*. It generally remains short before *tl*, as, Ătlas; *cl*, as assĕcla; and *fl*, as mellĭfluus, *flowing-with-honey*.

Obs. 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, Tĕmessa or Tēmessa, Frŏcne or Prōcne, cygnus or cȳgnus, *a swan*.

Obs. 2. A vowel *naturally long* remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, ācres from ācer, *sharp*.

Obs. 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, ōb-ruo, not ŏb-ruo, *to overwhelm*, sūb-latum, not sŭb-latum, *lifted up*.

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, pĭus, *pious*, flĕo, *to weep*, pŭer, *a boy*: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as trăho, vĕho.

Exceptions. The following vowels are long before another vowel:

1. The a in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, aquāï.
2. The a and e of proper names in -aius, -eius: as, Cāius, Pompēius (Cājus, Pompējus).
3. The e in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, diēi: but rēi and fidēi except in archaic poets.
4. The e in the Interjection ēheu.
5. The i in the Genitive alīus (but always short in alterĭus). In the other Genitives in ius, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, illīus, ipsīus, unĭus.
6. The i in fio when not followed by *r*: as, fīo, fiebam, fiam, but fierem, fieri.
7. The i in dīa (δῖα), *divine*.
8. The i in Diana is doubtful: Dīana and Diana.
9. The o in the Interjection oho is doubtful: ōho and ŏho.
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, āër (ἀήρ), Aenēas (Αἰνείας), Alexandrīa (Ἀλεξάνδρεια) Brisēis (Βρισηΐς).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels.*—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, lĕvis, *light*, lēvis, *smooth*, lĕgo, *I pick, read*, lēgo, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, dūco, *I lead*, root dŭc (compare dux, dŭcis: ēdŭco, *I educate*); dīco, *I say*, root dĭc (compare index, -dĭcis, mălēdĭcus, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are *short:* as, rēgĭfŭgium (name of a festival), rēgĭfĭcus, *kingly* (rex, fŭgo, făcio); ŏpĭfĕr, *aid-bringing* (ops, fĕro); lānĭger, *wool-bearing* (lāna, gĕro); magnĭlŏquus, *grandly speaking* (magnus, lŏquor), etc.

Obs. In levāmentum, instrūmentum, lenīmentum, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

gĕr-ēbam, gĕr-ens, lānĭ-gĕr, from gĕr-o.
rēg-ius, rēg-īna, rēg-ĭ-fŭgium, from rex, rēg-is.

Exceptions:	cŭrūlis (sella),	*the curule chair*, from	currus(?).
	tēgūla,	*a tile*, „	tĕgo.
	sēdes,	*a seat*, „	sĕd-eo.
	lūcerna,	*a lantern*, „	lūc-eo.
	sēcius,	*otherwise*, „	sēcus.
	prōnŭba,	*match-maker*, „	nūbo.
	jūcundus	*pleasant* „	jŭvo.
	hūmānus,	*human*, „	homo.
	sŏpor,	*sleep*, „	sōpio.
	pējĕro and dējĕro,	compounds of	jūro.

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, index, -dĭcis, *an informer*; praedĭco, *I affirm*; mălēdĭcus, *evil-speaking* (all with i *short*), compared with dīco, *I say*, addīco, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root dĭc, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of dīco, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In cognītum, agnītum (from nōtum), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare cŭpio, accĭpio, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

lăvo,	lāvi,	lōtum,	*to wash.*
vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*to see.*
mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*to move.*
jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*to assist.*

Exceptions. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, rŭi.

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short:

Bĭbi, dĕdi, fŭi, tŭli,
Stĕti, stĭti, fĭdi, scĭdi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short:

Dătum, rătum, sătum, rūtum,
Ĭtum, cĭtum, lĭtum, sĭtum quĭtum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From sto comes stātum: from sisto comes stătum.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short: as pŏposci from posco, *to demand;* tĕtĭgi from tango, *to touch;* cĕcīdi from caedo, *to cut.*

§ 737. The prefix **pro** is *short* in prŏcella, *a storm*, prŏcul, *far off*, prŏfanus, *profane*, prŏfestus, *not kept as a holiday*, prŏficiscor, *to set out*, prŏfecto, *truly*, prŏfiteor, *to profess*, prŏfugio, *to flee to a distance*, prŏfundus, *deep*, prŏfundo, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e.g.:* "Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore voces," Cat.), prōnepos, *great-grandson* (but prŏnepos once in Sidonius), prŏpitius, *propitious*, prŏtervus, *wanton:* it is doubtful in prŏcuro, *to manage another's affairs*, prŏpago, *layer*, *offspring*, prŏpago, *to propagate*, prŏpino, *to drink to another*, prŏpello, *to push forward* (ŏ in Lucr. only): it is long in all other words: as, prōcedo, *to go forward*, prōcurro, *to run forward*, &c.

Obs. Prōpago, in sense of *layer;* prŏpago, *offspring* (Virg.).

§ 738. **Di** is short only in dĭrimo (disimo), *to separate*, and dĭsertus, *eloquent.*

§ 739. **Ne** is short only in nĕque, *neither;* nĕqueo, *to be unable;* nĕfas (and its derivatives), *unlawful;* nĕfandus, *abominable:* long in other words, as nēmo (ne-hemo or homo), *no one;* nēquicquam, *in vain.*

§ 740. **O** for **ob** is short in ŏmitto, *to let go by*, and ŏperio, *to shut up.*

§ 741. **Si** is short in sĭquidem.

§ 742. **Re** is always short, except rēfert (= rem fert), *it concerns* (but rĕfert from rĕfero).

§ 743. **Ve** is long, except in vĕhemens (= vē-mens), *forcible.*

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a *vowel* are long: as, sī, tū, tē, mē, sē, nē, ē, dē.

Exceptions. The enclitics are short: as, quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, cĕ, tĕ (tutĕ) psĕ (reapsĕ), pte (suoptĕ): quă (usu. preceded by si, num, etc.) *Nom. Sing. Fem.* and *Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from quis.

(B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Final Vowels.

§ 745. a is *long:*

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension: as, mensā.
2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in as and es (excepting tes): as, Aeneā, Anchisā.

Obs. But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make ē: see § 746, 2.

3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation: as, amā.
4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals: as ā (ăb), contrā, suprā; anteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph: 4.)

a is *short:*

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension: as, mensă
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in tes, as Orestă.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters: as, regnă, mariă, cornuă.
4. In the Adverbs ită, posteă, the Conjunction quiă, and the Interjection ejă.

Obs. a in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in eus is doubtful: as Theseă.

§ 746. e is *long:*

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension: as, diē: and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative: as, fidē (= fidĕi).
2. In Greek words in e of the First Declension: as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted: as, Tempē, cetē.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation: as, monē. But the following are doubtful: vidĕ, valĕ, cavĕ; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), habĕ, tacĕ, manĕ, jubĕ.

Obs. In conversation *cave* appears to have been pronounced *cau*: cf. Cic. Div. 2, 40.

4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension: as doctē, aegrē: with the exception of benĕ, malĕ, supernĕ, infernĕ (in Lucr. and Auson.), internĕ.

5. In the Adverbs ferē, fermē, and the Interjection ohē.

Obs. Concerning monosyllables in e, *see* § 744.

e is *short* in all other words: as, dominĕ, regĕ (subs. and verb), fuerĕ, impunĕ.

§ 747. i is generally *long*: as, puerī, corporī, dicī, audī, docuistī, vigintī.

i is *short*:

1. In nisĭ, quasĭ, sicubĭ, necubĭ, and in the very rare form cŭĭ for cŭī.

2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, Dat. Paridĭ, Voc. Alexĭ.

i is *doubtful* in mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.

Obs. ŭbĭque always; but always ibĭdem, ubĭque. We find also cŭĭque.

§ 748. o is mostly common: as, amŏ, amatŏ, lcŏ, octŏ.

But o is *long*:

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension: as, dominō, deō, magnō.

2. When it represents the Greek ω: as, Didō, Plutō.

3. In monosyllables: as, dō, prō.

o is *short* in egŏ, duŏ, modŏ, *only*, putŏ, *I think*, and cedŏ, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), nesciŏ, *I know not* (in the phrase nesciŏ quis), and quandŏ when compounded with quidem: as, quandŏquidem.

§ 749. u is always *long*: as, cornū, auditū.

II. Final Consonants.

§ 750. **as** is almost always *long:* as, mensās, civitās, laudās.

as is *short* only:

1. In anăs, anătis, *a duck.*
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, Arcadăs. And some Greek Noms. as Iliăs, &c.

Obs. In vas (văd̆is) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. **es** is almost always *long:* as, vulpēs, *a fox*, leonēs.

es is only *short:*

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: as, milĕs, ĭtis, interprĕs, ĕtis: and *adj.* praepĕs, ĕtis; but mercēs, ēdis; pēs, pĕdis; abiēs, abiĕtis.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: as, Arcadĕs: also Hippomanēs (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*), Demosthenĕs (*Voc. Sing.*).
3. From esse, *to be;* as, es, adēs, potĕs.
4. In the Preposition penĕs.

§ 752. **is** is usually *short:* as, navĭs, lapidĭs, regĭs, regerĭs.

But **is** is *long:*

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: as, musīs, dominīs (contr. from musa + is, domino + is: *see* §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), nobīs, vobīs.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for es); as, omnīs (or omneis) for omnēs.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: as, audīs (= audi + is: *see* § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms velīs, nolīs, malīs; sīs, possīs.

Obs. 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as fuerīs.

Obs. 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: as, vīs (noun and verb), glīs; but ĭs, quĭs (prons.), are short.

§ 753. os is almost always *long:* as, puerōs, honōs (ōris), arbōs (ŏris). (But arbŏr, honŏr, etc.: see § 760.)

os is only *short:*

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, avŏs servŏs (= avus, servus): *see* § 19. *Obs.*
2. In impŏs (ŏtis), compŏs (ŏtis).
3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidŏs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argŏs (neut.): besides ŏs, ossis, already mentioned.

§ 754. us is usually *short:* as, dominŭs, gradŭs, sumŭs.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecŭs, pecŭdis.
2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypŭs, Oedipŭs, from πούς.

§ 755. ys in some Greek words is *long:* as Phorcȳs, Erinnȳs: in Tethys it is common (Tethў̆s).

§ 756. Final syllables in b, d, t are short; as, ăb, apŭd, amăt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t;* as, irritât for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. c. Final syllables in c are mostly short: as, nĕc, donĕc.

EXCEPTIONS. Lāc, *milk;* hīc (adv.), *here* (the pronoun hĭc is doubtful); hūc, *hither;* sīc, *thus:* the Imperatives dīc, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce). Făc is short (for făcĕ).

§ 758. l. Final syllables in l are short: as, semĕl, animăl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nīl.

§ 759. n. Final syllables in n are short: as, carmĕn, taměn, ăn.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (*a kidney*), sīn (= si non, *but if not*), splēn (*the spleen*), ēn (*lo*), nōn (*not*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *as* and *es* (First Decl.): as, Aeneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Lacedaemōn, Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. r. Final syllables in r are short: as, puĕr, vĭr, sempĕr.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: as, fūr (*a thief*), pār (subs. and adject.), lār, vēr, cūr. (But cŏr, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: as, aĕr (ἀήρ), *the air*; aethēr (αἰθήρ), *the sky*.

N.B. Celtibĕr is common. (Mart.)

CHAPTER LXVIII.—METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (ῥέω, ῥυθμός) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quădrŭpĕ | dăntĕ pŭ|trĕm sŏnĭ|tŭ quătĭt | ŭngŭlă | cămpūm.—Virg.

Păssĕr | dĕlĭcĭ|ae mĕ|ae pu|ĕllae.—Catullus.

Flŭmĭnă | cŏnstĭtĕ|rint ă|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called Arsis (ἄρσις, ictus), and is denoted by the sign ´. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, vīdimus, ārma, tĕnŭia, dĕĕrat. The unaccented syllable is called Thesis (θέσις), and is denoted by the sign ` : as, ārmà.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, Ītălĭam (Virg. Æn. I. 2). The Grammarians call this Diastŏlē.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (pĕdēs): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

⏑ ⏑ Pyrrhĭchius (Pyrrhic)... *pătĕr, bŏnĕ.*
⏑ ´ Iambus ..... *ădēst, mĕō.*
´ ⏑ Trŏchaeus (Trochee).... *ārmă, flēbĭt.*
– – Spondēus (Spondee)..... *ōrās, ēmī.*

2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Tribrăchys ..... *hŏmĭnĭs, rĕcĭpĕ.*
´ ⏑ ⏑ Dactўlus (Dactyl)..... *ōmnĭă, fēcĭmŭs.*

⏑ ⏑ ⏓ Anapaestus (Anapaest) . *ŭbĕō, lĕgĕrēs.*
⏑ ⏓ ⏑ Amphibrăchys ..... *ămābăt, dĭĕbŭs.*
– ⏑ ⏓ Creticus or Amphimacer, *ēxplĕō, sērvītūs.*
⏑ ⏓ – Bacchīus ..... *ămīcōs, sŭpēllēx.*
– ⏓ ⏑ Antibacchīus ..... *aūdīrĕ, rēxīssĕ.*
– – – Molossus ..... *haūsīstī, dīvīnaē.*

3. Of Four Syllables.

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Proceleusmaticus ..... *ĭnŭtĭă, cĕlĕrĭtĕr.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏓ – Ionicus a Minore ..... *ŏnĕrābūnt, gĕnĕrōsī.*
⏓ – ⏑ ⏑ ——— a Majore ..... *ūlcīscĭtŭr, sōlāmĭnĕ.*
⏓ ⏑ ⏑ – Choriambus ..... *ĕrĭpĭūnt, sīmplĭcĭtās.*
⏑ ⏓ ⏓ ⏑ Antispastus ..... *ĭnēxhaūstŭs, pĕrīllūstrĭs.*
⏓ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Paeon Primus ..... *ēxĭgŭŭs, rēspĭcĭăt.*
⏑ ⏓ ⏑ ⏑ ——— Secundus ..... *ŏbēdĭĕt, dŏmēstĭcŭs.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏓ ⏑ ——— Tertius ..... *ĭnĭmīcŭs, pĕpŭlĕrĕ.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ ——— Quartus ..... *ĭnĭtĭŏ, mŭsĕrĭcōrs.*
⏑ – – – Epitrĭtus Primus..... *lăbōrāndō, sălūtāntēs.*
– ⏑ – – ——— Secundus .... *ādmĭnīstrāns, ĭmpĕrātrīx.*
– – ⏑ – ——— Tertius ..... *āuctōrĭtās, ĭntĕllĭgēns.*
– – – ⏑ ——— Quartus ..... *āssērtātŏr, ĭnfĭnītŭs.*

Obs. Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Diiambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (*μέτρα*) which they contain.

Obs. A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one *measure:* an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a *half-measure.*

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (*ἕξ, six*); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (*τρεῖς, three*); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (*δίς, twice*).

§ 765. **Elision** (ēlīsio) or **Synăloepha** (*συναλοιφή*) is the striking-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign ⁀: as,

Cōntĭcŭĕrĕ ⁀ ōmnes (*read,* cōntĭcŭ|ēr'ōmn|ēs)

Mō mĭsĕrum ⁀ ĕxclāmăt (mē mĭsĕr'|ĕxclām|ăt).

Pĕrque hĭĕmēs (pĕrqu'hĭĕ|mēs).

Ūmbrārum hae sēdēs (ūmbrār'|hae sēd|ēs).

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse: as,

Si ad vitulam spectas.—Virg.

Obs. 2. The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare: as,

intimŏ ămore.

Obs. 3. The Elision of an iambus is avoided: as,

disce mĕŏ exemplo.

Obs. 4. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of est is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided: as,

Ter sunt | conat|ī im|ponere | Pelĭŏ | Ossam.—Virg.

Obs. 6. The Interjections ō, heu, ah, proh, are not elided: as,

Ō pater | ō hŏmĭn|um di|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.
Āh ĕgŏ | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Lib.

Obs. 7. Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

Te Cory|dŏn, ō Āl|exi; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.
Īnsŭlae | Ioni|o in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

Obs. 8. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s*: as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. **Synaerēsis** (*συναίρεσις*) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign ⏜, ⏜. It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse: as,

Seu len|to fue|rint al|vĕāria | vimine | texta.—Virg.
Caucase|asque re|fert volu|cres fur|tumque Pro|methĕī.—Virg.

So Orphēă, Typhoĕă.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words. dēīnde, prōīnde, abīĕte, arīĕte, dĕēsse and its derivatives, antĕhāc, and in the whole verb antĕīre.

§ 767. **Diaerēsis** (*διαίρεσις*) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables: as, pictaï.

I. Dactylic Hexameter Metre.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls (– ⏑ ⏑), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee (– ⏑), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee (– –). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑
– –	– –	– –	– –	– –	– –

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

(*a*) Rādīt ĭtĕr lĭquĭdūm cĕlĕrēs nĕquĕ commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

(*b*) Ĭmpēnsāquĕ sŭī pŏtĕrīt sŭpĕrare cruoris,
(*c*) Tĕmpŏrā lābūntŭr tăcĭtīsquĕ sĕnescimus annis,
(*d*) Nĭtĭmŭr ĭn vĕtĭtŭm sēmpĕr cŭpĭmusque negata,
(*e*) Aspĭcĭūnt ŏcŭlīs sŭpĕrī mŏrtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

(*f*) Dūm vīrēs ānnīquĕ sĭnūnt tŏlĕrate lăbores,
(*g*) Quārūm quae mĕdĭŭ'st nōn ĕst hăbĭtabilis aestu,
(*h*) Cūrvārīquĕ mănūs ĕt ădūncōs crescer' in ungues,
(*i*) At pătĕr ūt tērrās mūndūmquĕ rŭbescere vidit,
(*k*) Nūmĭnă nĕc spērnī sĭnĕ poenā nostra sinamus,
(*l*) Cōntĭgĕrānt răpĭdās lĭmōsī Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

(*m*) Nātūram ĕxpēllās fūrcā tămĕn usque recurret,
(*n*) Ut dēsīnt vīrēs tămĕn ĕst laudanda voluntas,
(*o*) Aut prōdĕssĕ vŏlūnt aūt dĕlectare poetae,
(*p*) Pārtūrĭūnt mōntēs nāscētūr ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

(*q*) Ex aequō cāptīs ārdēbānt mentibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called **Spondaic.** It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constitit atque oculis Phrygia ăgmĭnă circūmspexit:
Cara deum soboles, magnūm Jŏvĭs incrēmĕntum:
Cum patribus populoque, penātĭbŭs ĕt māgnis dis.

Obs. Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,
Aut levis ocreas lentō dūcūnt ārgento.—Virg. Aen. VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one **Caesura** (from *caedo*, "to cut") which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five Caesuras:

Dónec || erís || felíx || multós || numerábis || amícos.

§ 772. The **Caesura** may be either **strong** or **weak.** The *strong Caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

Árma virúmque canó || Trojaé qui prímus ab óris.

The *weak Caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a Dactyl: as,

Ó passí gravióra || dabít deus hís quoque fínem.

§ 773. The **Caesuras** are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (ἡμι- and μέρος) hence, **Triemimeral,** after the first three half feet; **Penthemimeral,** after the first five half feet; **Hephthemimeral,** after the first seven half feet; **Ennehemimeral,** after the first nine half feet.

Obs. The two short syllables of the Dactyl are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral*, or *Hephthemimeral* Caesura. The Penthemimeral strong Caesura is the most common. The Hephthemimeral is generally used along with the Triemimeral: as

Fáma malúm || quo nón aliúd || velócius úllum.

§ 775. Besides the Pause of the Caesura, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the Penthemimeral Caesura: as,

Tántae | mólis erát || Románam | cóndere géntem.

§ 776 The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cỹpă | rīssī); Bucol. 8, 1 (Ālphĕsĭ | bŏeī); etc.

Obs. 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as laus ĕst (Hor.), ūsus ĕst (Virg.), are admissible.

Obs. 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

Vértitur interea coelum, ét ruit óceanó Nox (Virg.).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter exclusively dactyls or exclusively spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These opposite effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

Quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula cámpum.

Ílli intér sesé magnā́ vi bráchia tóllunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter.*—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis ārbŭtŭs hŏrrĭda,
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.

Jamque iter emensi turres ac tēctă Lătīnōrum
*Ar*dua cernebant, &c.—Virg.

Obs. In Virgil, the redundant syllable is frequently the enclitic -que.

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

Póstera lúx oritúr. Linguís animísque favéte,
Núnc dicénda boná ‖ súnt bona verba dié.—Ov.

It has the following scheme:

⏑ – ⏑ | – ⏑ – | – ‖ ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑

Hence it appears:

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$. Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

Obs. The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant: as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuít.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties:

1. Two Dactyls: as,

   Crédĭdĭmúś gĕnĕrí || nóminibúsque tuís:

2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl: as,

   Trājēctām glădĭŏ || mórte perire juvát:
   Cúm mălă pér lōngŭs || cónvaluére morís: (most usual form):

3. Two spondees: as,

   Sūprēmām bēllĭs || ímposuísse manum.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse:

(1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

Obs. But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

(2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

(3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

Obs. The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

III. Trimeter Iambic (Acatalectic) Verse.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (διποδίαι ἰαμβικαί), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1 2 3 4 5 6

⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ || – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mĕtús pavórquĕ || fúnus ét frēndéns dolŏr,
Prōnást timóri || sémper ín pējŭs fidēs.

Obs. A Verse is called *Catalectic* (καταλήγω, *to leave off*), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

(A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.
(B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.
(C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae poénă măněat mémet ét sedés scio;
Hic laéva frénis dóctă mŏděrandís manus;
Pyrrhí manú mactétur ét tŭmŭlúm riget,
Tu tú malórum máchinátrīx făcĭnorum;
Ăn ălĭqua poénae párs meae ígnotást mihi,
Lăcĕraeve fíxis únguibús venaé fluant,
Quīn pŏtĭus íra cóncitúm pectús doma;
Fas ómne cédăt ăbĕat éxpulsús pudor,
Evásit ét pĕnĕtrâle fúnestum áttigit,
Parum ípse fídēns mĭhĭmet ín tutó tua.

Obs. 1. The complete scheme of Iambic Trimeter, as used by Horace in his Epodes, is given below: § 807.

Obs. 2. Iambic *Dimeter* (acatalectic) corresponds with Iambic Trimeter, minus the first measure. See below, § 802, *Obs.*; 807.

§ 785. Very rarely both the long syllables in the same foot are resolved so as to make a proceleusmatic (⏑⏑⏑⏑) : as,

Pāvĕt ănīmus, ártus hórridús quassát tremor.

Obs. 1. By the less exact poets a spondee instead of an iambus is introduced into all the places except the 6th foot : as,

Ut mós ĕst vălgi pássim ĕt cĕrtatím ruit.

Obs. 2. We sometimes find even in good authorities examples of the original pure *iambi :* as,

Săbīnŭs īllĕ quĕm vĭdēbĭs hōspĭtēs,
Gĕnĕr sŏcĕrquĕ pĕrdĭdĭstĭs ōmnĭă.

In Hor. Epod. 16, the *even* lines consist of pure *iambi* throughout.

§ 786. *Choliambus.*—A kind of *limping* movement is given to the Senarius, by substituting a trochee for an Iambus in the sixth foot. Such a verse is called choliambus (halt-iambus), scazon (*σκάζω, to limp*), or senarius claudus (Gr. *χωλός, limping* senarius). Being at the end of a line, a spondee (_ _) may be used for the trochee. The scheme is,

1 2 3 4 5 6

Quae tú vólēbās ‖ néc puélla nólēbat,
Ăn aémulátŭr ‖ ímprobí jocós Phaedrī.

The *iambus* is indispensable in the 2nd, 4th, and 5th feet.

Obs. 1. The choliambus is only adapted for use in short poems.

Obs. 2. Rarely, instead of the penthemimeral caesura, we find a principal pause or verse-caesura at the end of the *iambus* in the 2nd place and a foot-caesura before the fourth *arsis*, as,

Quodcúmque agít ‖ renídet hūnc habét mórbum.

Obs. 3. In this scheme the resolution of a long syllable into two short is allowed only in the commencing syllable and in those on which the *arsis* falls in the first four feet : examples are,

Et cūpít et ínstat ĕt precátur ĕt dónat,

Et múlta frágrat tésta sĕnībus aūtūmnis,

Ăquīlísque sīmīles făcĕre nŏctuás quaéris.

N.B.—The *scazon* is also called *Hipponactius* from its reputed inventor Hippōnax, and was employed in Greek by Babrius in his Æsopian fabies.

IV.—Trochaic Tetrameter (Catalectic).

§ 787. *Comic Tetrameter.*—This verse, also called *Quadratus* from having four measures (see § 764), *Octonarius Catalecticus*

from having eight feet all but a syllable, and *Septenarius* from having only seven *full* feet, has the following scheme:—

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

– ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ || – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ×

Pércrépá pūgnúm Pŏpīllī || fúctă Cŏrnēlí cănĕ,
Núlla vóx humána cónstăt || ábsque séptem lítterīs.

§ 788. Consequently it has a pause or verse-caesura exactly in the middle, *i.e.* before the fifth *arsis*. In the 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th feet it preserves the pure trochee (which, however, may be resolved into a tribrach); but in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th feet it admits, instead of the trochee, a spondee (which can be resolved into a dactyl, an anapaest, or occasionally a proceleusmaticus); and the last syllable of the verse is common: as,

Rŏtă rĕsístat mémbră tórquens || tángăt Íxíŏn hŭmúm,
Méque ŏvántem scĕlĕrĕ tánto || răpíte ín áltos gúrgítés,
Ímpĭúm răpíte átquĕ mérsum || prĕmítŏ pérpĕtúís mălís,
Úndă mĭsĕrīs grátă Léthes || vŏsquĕ tórpentés lăcús.

V.—Anapaestic Dimeter.

§ 789. The Anapaestic Dimeter Acatalectic Verse consists regularly of *four* anapaests (which are interchangeable with spondees), and has always a principal caesura exactly in the middle of the line: we obtain, therefore, the following varieties:—

1. *Four Anapaests.*

(*a.*) Fŭgĭát trĕpídí || cŏmĕs éxĭlí.

2. *One Spondee and Three Anapaests.*

(*b.*) Jām nŏn stăbílís || rŭĕt árctŏphýlăx,

(*c.*) Sŏlítae mūndí || pĕrĭérĕ vícĕs,

(*d.*) Phrўgĭúmquŏ nĕmús || mātrís Cўbĕlés,

(*e.*) Ălítúrquŏ sítís || lătíce íngēstó.

3. *Two Spondees and Three Anapaests.*

(*f.*) Sīgnúm cēlsí glăcĭálĕ pŏlí,

(*g.*) Jām caerŭlĕ́ĭs ēvĕctŭs ăquĭs,

(*h.*) Ĭntĕr sŭbĭtŏs stĕtĭt hŏrrōrĕs,

(*i.*) Plăcĭdŭs fēssŭm lēnĭsquĕ fŏvĕ.

(*k.*) Vŏlŭcĕ́r mātrĭs gĕnŭs Ástraeae,

(*l.*) Sŭmĭs ĭn jŭgŭŏ̄ tēlŭm Pўrrhĭ.

4. *Three Spondees and One Anapaest.*

(*m.*) Lūxŏs aurā cōmplĕntĕ sĭnŭs,

(*n.*) Ĕrrāt cūrsŭ̄ lĕvĭs ĭncērtŏ̄,

(*o.*) Hīc quĭ nĭtĭdŏ̄ taurŭs cōrnŭ̄,

(*p.*) Pătĕr ŏ̄ rērŭm pōrtŭs vītae.

5. *Four Spondees.*

(*q.*) Nūnc vĕlōcĕs fīgĭs dūmŭs.

The spondees in the 1st and 3rd feet (but not elsewhere) may be resolved into dactyls (which dactyls, however, must not be immediately followed by an anapaest), so that we obtain the following:

6. *One Dactyl and Three Spondees.*

(*r.*) Nōn căpĭt ūmquăm māgnŏs mōtŭs,

(*s.*) Ĕt cŏngēstŏ̄ paupĕr ĭn aurŏ̄'st.

7. *One Dactyl, Two Spondees, and One Anapaest.*

(*t.*) Sōrdĭdă pārvae fōrtūnă dŏmŭs,

(*u.*) Sīvĕ fĕrōcĭs jŭgă Pўrēnĕs,

(*v.*) Mōllĭ pĕtŭlāns hăcdŭs ĭn hĕrbŭ̄,

(*w.*) Lĭbĕt ĭnfaūstŏs mittĕrĕ quēstŭs.

8. *One Dactyl, One Spondee, and Two Anapaests.*

(*x.*) Pĕctŏră lōngĭs hĕbĕtātă mălĭs,

(*y.*) Văcŭae rĕpărănt ūbĕră mātrĕs.

9. *Two Dactyls and Two Spondees.*

(z.) Cōntrāhĭt īgnĕs lūcĕ rĕnātā.

§ 790. The last syllable of each line is *not* common; for in the Anapaestic system there exists a *Synaphēa* (συνάφεια) or *connexion* of all the verses, so that a short syllable at the end of one line should (though exceptions may very rarely be found) itself end in a consonant, and be followed by a word in the next line beginning with a consonant: as,

Grege dímissó pabúla carpít
Ludít prató, etc.

§ 791. After a series of Dimeter Anapaestics it is usual to close the system with a monometer which for the most part takes the form of the *versus Adonius* (_ ◡ ◡ | _ ◡̄): as,

Nos é tantó visí populó
Digné premerét quos ínversó
Cărdĭnĕ mundūs.

Other forms are _ _ ◡ ◡ ◡̄: as,

cōmpēnsăt ĭtĕr; vīcīnă pŏlō;

◡ ◡ _ ◡ ◡ ◡̄: as,

pĕrcūntĕ, mŏrī;

and (very rarely) _ _ _ _: as,

ītĕ ad plānctūs.

This break may occur after a series of any length, and the last syllable is then common.

VI.—Hendecasyllabic Verse.

§ 792. The Hendecasyllabic Verse (ἕνδεκα, *eleven*), also called Phalaecian (from the poet Phalaecus, Φάλαικος), has in its most elegant form the following metre:—

/ _ | / ◡ ◡ | / ◡ | / ◡ | / ◡̄ |

consisting of one spondee, one dactyl, and three trochees, for the third of which, as the last syllable of a verse is common, a spondee may stand. As,

Tăm bĕll|ūm mĭhĭ | pāssĕr|em ābstŭ|lĭstīs,
Sōlēs | ŏccĭdĕ|rĕ ĕt rĕd|īrĕ | pŏssūnt.

Obs. 1. Occasionally the liberty is taken of commencing with a *trochee* or *iambus:* as,

Neu tĭbi libeat foras abire,
Mĭnister vetuli puer Falerni.

Obs. 2. A still greater liberty, seldom indulged in, is the substitution of a spondee for the dactyl in the second part: as,

Quas voltŭ vĭdi tamen serenas.

§ 793. The monotony which might be apprehended from the uniformity of the measure is to a great extent obviated by the freedom it enjoys from any fixed laws of caesura and elision: as,

Frústra blánditiaé ‖ venítis ad me,
Défessús ‖ tamen ómnibús ‖ medullis,
Amicós ‖ medicósque cónvocate,
Électíssima péssimí ‖ poetae,
Quót sunt quótque ‖ fuére Márce Tullī.

Obs. Hypermeter lines (for the conditions relating to which see § 778) occur sometimes in this metre: as,

Quaenam te mala mens miselle Rāvĭde
Agit praecipitem.

VII.—Choriambic Verse.

§ 794. Choriambic has usually a spondaic commencement or base (*βάσις* or *ἀνάκρουσις*) and an iambic conclusion (*κατάληξις*). The principal forms of it are—

(N.B.—The term anacrūsis, from *ἀνα-κρούω, to beat upwards,* denotes the syllable or syllables which precede the first *ictus* in a line.)

1. With one *choriambus*,

– – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏓, as:

Audax | omnia per|petī,
Cui frons | turgida corn|ibŭs.

2. With two *choriambi*,

– – | – ⏑ ⏑ – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏓, as:

Seu ru|pit teretes ‖ Marsus aper | plagās,
Myrto|um pavidus ‖ nauta sec|et marĕ.

Obs. This and the following form (3) are called Asclepiadean (from the grammarian Asclepiades). The latter is called long Asclepiadean.

3. With three *choriambi*,

– – | – ⏑ ⏑ – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏓, as:

Morda|ces aliter ‖ diffugiunt ‖ sollicitu|dinēs,
Quae mens | est hodie ‖ cur eadem ‖ non puero | fuĭt.

§ 795. By Catullus (but not by Horace and the more *correct* poets) the spondaic commencement in the first form is changed for a trochaic or iambic: *e. g.*:

Mōntĭ|um domina ut | fores,
Pŭēll|ae et pueri in|tegri.

This form is called GLYCONIAN (from the poet Glycon), and Catullus closes a series of them with what is called (from the poet Pherecrătes) a PHERECRATIAN verse, of which the scheme is

– ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑,

and an example,

Lūtĕ|ŭm pĕdĕ sŏc|cum.

Horace, however, uses the first form only in connexion with other rhythms, as in the following stanzas:—

(1). Ō fōns Bándūsĭaĕ ‖ splēndĭdĭŏr vĭtrŏ, } (2nd chor. form):
Dūlcī dígnĕ mĕrŏ ‖ nŏn sĭnĕ flŏrĭbŭs, }
Crās dŏnābĕrĭs haedō (Pherecratian verse):
Cuí frōns túrgĭdă cŏrnĭbŭs (1st chor. form):

(2). Scrībĕrĭs Vărĭŏ ‖ fortĭs ĕt hŏstĭum } (2nd chor. form)
Víctŏr, Maeŏnĭ ‖ cărmĭnĭs ălĭtĕ }
Quăm rēm cūnquĕ fĕrōx ‖ nāvĭbŭs aut ĕquĭs }
Mílēs, tĕ dŭcĕ, gĕssĕrĭt (1st chor. form).

And (3) the couplet,

Quém tū Mélpŏmĕnĕ sămĕl (1st chor. form):
Nāscēntĕm plăcĭdō ‖ lūmĭnĕ vĭdĕrĭs (2nd chor. form):

Obs. 1. Neglect of the verse-caesura, or division of the line at the end of a foot, in the second and third forms (see preceding page) is very rare: *e.g.*:

Dum flagrantia de — torquet ad oscula,
Non incendia Car—thaginis impiae.
Arcanique fides ‖ prodiga per — lucidior vitro.—(Hor.)

Obs. 2. In the second form it may be noticed:

1. That elision after the verse-caesura causes nothing unpleasant to the ear, *e. g.*

Auditam modere‖re arboribus fidem:

2. That each foot may consist of a single word: as,

Quassas indocilis ‖ pauperiem pati:

3. That a short syllable is (rarely) lengthened by *arsis*.

Perrupĭt Acheronta Herculeus labor.

Obs. 3. The following are examples of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) in a system of Choriambic (Glyconian) verses of the first form:

Unguentate glabris mărīte
*a*bstinere.

Munere assidue vŭlēntem
exercete juventam.

Sancta nomine Rōmŭlīque
*a*ntique.

Saltuumque rĕcōndĭtōrum
*a*mniumque sonantum.

VIII.—Minor Ionic and Galliambic Verse.

§ 796. There is but one ode in Roman literature written in *Ionic à minori* verses (Horace Od. lib. iii. 12): it appears to have four divisions, each consisting of ten connected *Ionic à minori* feet without *hiatus* or *common* syllable at the end of a foot: the scheme is

⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – –
⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – –
⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – –

Miserárum est neque amóri | dare lúdum neque dúlci,
Mala víno lavere; aút ex|animári metuéntes
Patruáe verbera línguae.

One short ode is not sufficient to enable us to ascertain the laws of this metre.

§ 797. An offshoot of the *Ionic à minori* verse is the Galliambic (so named from the Galli or priests of Cybele, for whose rites its vibratory rhythm was well adapted). The general scheme is,

⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑ – – || ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑ –.

Examples are:

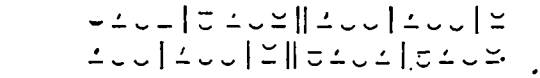
Itaque út domúm Cybébes || tetigére lassulae,
Aliéna quáe peténtes || velut éxulés locá.

Then by the change, at the beginning of each half-verse, of the two pyrrhics (⏑ ⏑) into a long syllable, and the resolution of the long syllable at the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and (especially) the 5th *arsis* into two short, we obtain

– – ⏑ – ⏑ – – || – – ⏑ – ⏑ –, as:
Jām jám dolét quod égi || jām jámque pœnitét.

$\breve{\breve{\breve{

and Iambic, or Iambic and Trochaic. The following kinds occur, but only in combination with other metres:—

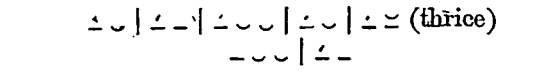


Nivésque deducúnt Jovem || núnc mare núnc siluae
Móllibus ín puerís || aut ín puéllis úrere.

Obs. The Logaoedic is less correctly regarded as an asynartete metre.

XI.—Sapphic Verse.

§ 800. The Sapphic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Sappho of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:



Cláre | Maéce|nás eques | út pa|térnī
Flúmi|nís ri|pae simul | ét jŏ|cósă
Rédder|et laud|és tibi | Váti|cánī
Móntis | imágo.

§ 801. The following may serve as illustrations of the caesura:—

1. Cláre Maécenás || eques út patérni.
2. Mércurí || facúndĕ nĕpós || Atlántis.
3. Laúreá || donándūs Ápóllinári.
4. Férvet ímmensús-quĕ rūít || profúndo.
5. Lénis Ílithyíă tūére mátres.

Obs. 1. The caesura with elision should not be imitated, *e.g.*:

Ímbriûm divína avis imminentum.

Obs. 2. Once a short syllable is lengthened by *arsis* at the caesura:

Angulus ridĕt, ubi non Hymetto.

Obs. 3. Of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) the following are specimens:—

Romulae genti date remque prōlēmque
et decus omne.

Mugiunt vaccae tibi tollit hīnnītum
apta quadrigis equa.

Dissidens plebi numero bĕātōrum
eximit virtus.

Obs. 4. In the Sapphic stanza there is a close connexion between the third line and the Versus Adonius; hence Horace sometimes divides a word between them: as,

Labitur ripa Jove non probante uxorius amnis.
Thracio bacchante magis sub interlunia vento.

Obs. 5. Horace differs from his model Sappho in making the fourth syllable always long instead of short.

XII.—Alcaic Verse.

§ 802. The Alcaic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Alcaeus of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:—

⏑ | – ⏑ | – – || – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ (twice) (Alcaic line).
⏑ | – ⏑ | – – | – ⏑ | – ⏑ | (Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis ⏑)
– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ (Logaoedic).

It should be observed, however, that the *long* anacrusis is preferable; and that the concluding syllable of each line, if not in itself long, usually ends with a consonant: as,

Nōn | sémper | ímbres || núbibus | híspidōs
Mā|nánt in | ágros || aút mare | Cáspiŭm
Vēx|ánt in|aéqua|les pro|cellae
Úsque nec | Ármeni|ís in | óris.

But a short syllable is found in both places: as,

Vī|des ut | álta || stét nive cándidum
So|rácte | néc jam || sústineánt onŭs
Sil|vaé lab|óran|tes ge|lúquĕ
Flúmina | cónstiter|ínt a|cúto.

Obs. The third line may also be scanned as Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic:—

⏑ – ⏑ – | – – ⏑ – | ⏑

But the fifth syllable is invariably long: comp. § 784, *Obs.* 2.

§ 803. The practice of Horace, after he himself had become more perfect in his metres (*i. e.* in his later Odes), should both in Sapphic and Alcaic verse be chiefly imitated. The following appear to be the best caesural verse divisions:

1. In the first two lines.

Dissolve frigus || ligna super foco
Large reponens; || atque benignius.

Obs. An elision here does not interfere with the verse-caesura: as,

Regum timendor‖um in proprios greges.

2. In the third:

(*a.*) Non vultus instantis ‖ tyranni.
Quos inter Augustus ‖ recumbens.
Deprome quadrimum ‖ Sabina.

(*b.*) Spargent ‖ olivetis ‖ cupressi.

(*c.*) Si fractus illabatur orbis.

3. In the fourth, in order of frequency

(*a.*) Impavidum ‖ ferient ruinae.

(*b.*) Nec virides ‖ metuunt colubros.

(*c.*) Flumina constiterint ‖ acuto.

(*d.*) Aut digito ‖ male pertinaci.

(*e.*) Levia personuere saxa.

(*f.*) Cuncta supercilio ‖ moventis.

Obs. 1. Once a short syllable is made long by *arsis* at the second *arsis* of the fourth line:

Caeca timĕt aliunde fata.

Obs. 2. A monosyllable at the place of the caesura in the first two lines is unusual, though sometimes found in Horace:

Non est meum, si ‖ mugiat Africis,
Carthagini jam ‖ non ego nuntios,
Quid debeas, o ‖ Roma Neronibus,
Te copias, te ‖ consilium, et tuos,
Te fontium qui ‖ celat origines.

Obs. 3. *Et* is frequently—but not in the fourth Book of the Odes—found (usually with an elision) at the end of a line; but a monosyllable in the last place is generally (esp. if preceded by another) disagreeable to the ear; *e.g.*.

Cur non sub alta vel platano vel hac.

Cf., O quae beatam diva tenes Cyprum et ‖ Memphin carentem Sithonia nive: } and Aedesque labentes deorum et ‖ Foeda nigro simulacra fumo.

Obs. 4. A short syllable is never found at the place of the caesura in the first two lines, and the resolution there of the long syllable into two short, as in

Hinc ŏmne prīncĭpĭ ‖ um hŭc refer exitum

is very exceptional.

Obs. 5. The verse-caesura is hardly ever neglected: such a line as

Mentémque lymphat — ām Mareótico

is altogether abnormal.

Obs. 6. Hypermeter lines are occasionally admitted: *e.g.*:

Sors exitura et nos in aeternum
Exilium, etc.

Obs. 7. The *genit.* case in *ii* is not admitted : ī is the form : *e. g.* :
vis consilī expers, etc.

Obs. 8. The hiatus in jam Daedaleo || ocior Icaro, is not to be imitated.

XIII.—Double or Alternating Verses.

§ 804. This system, to which the Elegiac verse belongs, has been carried out by Horace in great variety.

§ 805. There is one ode (Od. I. 8) in which the odd lines have the following scheme (choriambic without base) :

⏑ – – ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑, as :
Lȳdĭă, dīc | pĕr ōmnēs :

and the even the following (also choriambic, with Trochaic Dimeter base : sometimes called *long Sapphic*) :

⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – – ⏑ || ⏑ – – ⏑ | – ⏑ –, as :
Tē dĕ|ōs ōr|ō Sȳbărīn || cūr prŏpĕrās | ămāndo.

§ 806. Horace has also one ode (Od. II. 18) in which a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic verse in the odd lines is followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in the even. The latter verse has such a pause (or verse-caesura) that the rhythm of the latter half becomes trochaic. The scheme is :

⏑ – – – | ⏑ – ⏑
– ⏑ – ⏑ – || ⏑ – – – –, as :

Nŏn ĕbūr nĕq|ue aŭrĕum,
Mĕā rĕnīdĕt || ĭn dŏmō lăcūnăr.

Obs. 1. The metre is called by the scholiast Acron *Hipponactean* from the already-mentioned poet Hippōnax.

Obs. 2. The last syllable is common ; and there is no synaphea, as may be seen from

Rapacis Orci || fine destinata
Aula divitem manet.

§ 807. Horace has imitated Archilochus in many instances : in the first ten Epodes we have after his model the following scheme :

⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ (Trimeter Iambic Acatalectic),
– | ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏑ (Dimeter Iambic Acatalectic), as :

Bĕātŭs īllĕ | quī prŏcŭl nĕgōtĭīs,
Ŭt | prīscă gēns mōrt | ālĭum:
Pŏsĭtosque vernās | dĭtis exāmēn domus:
Sĕn|īle guttur fregerit:
Nēc mūnŭs hŭmĕris | efficacĭs Hērculĭs:
Viderĕ prŏpĕrantes domum:
Pavidumque leporem ĕt | advenam *lăquĕō gruem:
Jucunda captat praemia:
Quid dixit aut quīd tăcŭit, etc.
Quod si pudică mŭlĭer in partem juvet.

Obs. A diphthong is (very rarely) shortened before another vowel, as:

Ĕt|Esquĭlĭnaĕ ālites (§ 765, *Obs.* 7).

§ 808. Another combination, after Archilochus, is (once Od. IV. 7) formed by the *second* half of a Pentameter appended to a Hexameter verse, as:

Díffugére nivés; redeúnt jam gramina cámpis
Árboribúsque comae.

Obs. The Hexameter may be varied according to the rules already laid down, but the even lines must always correspond to the *second* half of the Pentameter.

§ 809. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XIII.), consists of a Hexameter, to which is appended an asynartete line made up of a Dimeter Iambic and the second half of a Pentameter: as,

Horrida tempestas coelum contraxit, et imbres
Nivésque dedúcunt Jóvem || núnc mare, núnc silvae;
Thrëïcio Aquilone sonant; rapiamus, amici,
Occasionem de die || dumque virent genuă;
Cetera mitte loqui: deus haec fortasse benigna
Reducet in sedem vicĕ. || Nunc et Achaemenio.

Obs. The even line in the above is the even line *reversed* of Epode XI.

§ 810. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XI.), consists of a *senarius* (see TRIMETER IAMBIC ACATALECTIC), to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of the *second half* of a Pentameter together with an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic (see § 784, *Obs.* 2): as,

Amore qui me praeter omnes expedit
Mŏllĭbŭs | īn pŭĕr|īs || aut ín pŭéll|īs úrĕrĕ:

* (Once.)

Hic tertius December, ex quo destiti,
Inachia fure|rĕ, || silvis honorem decutit

Unde expedire non amicorum queant,
Libera consili|ă || nec contumeliae graves.

Obs. The hiatus in

Vincere mollitiæ || amor Lycisci me tenet

is explained, as is the short syllable at the verse-caesura, by the fact of the two halves of the line being composed in distinct measures, in each of which the last syllable of the verse is common.

§ 811. Another (Od. I. 4), after Archilochus, consists of a logaoedic line (§ 798, 2), followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic: as,

Pāllĭdă | mōrs aēq|uō pūls|āt pĕdĕ || paupĕrūm tăbērnās,
Rĕgúmqŭe tūrrēs. Ó bĕātĕ Sĕxtī:
Altern|o terr|am quati|unt pede || dum graves Cyclopum,
Volcanus ardens urit officinas.

§ 812. Moreover, Horace has (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. XII.) a Hexameter followed by a line made up of three dactylic feet (of which the last must be pure) and a spondee or trochee (Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic), the scheme of which is,

$$\angle \breve{\smile}\bar{\smile} \mid \angle \breve{\smile}\bar{\smile} \mid \angle \breve{\smile}\breve{\smile} \mid \angle \breve{\smile}\breve{\smile}, \text{ as:}$$

Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon aut Mitylenen,
Aut Ĕphĕs|ōn bĭmăr|īsvĕ Cŏr|ĭnthī;
Moenia, vel Baccho Thebas vel Apolline Delphos
Insĭgn|ēs, aut | Thēssălă | Tēmpē:
Nec tam Larissae percussit campus opimae,
Quām dŏmŭs | Ālbŭnĕ|aē rĕsŏn|āntĭs.

§ 813. And, lastly, Horace has (Epod. XIV. and XV.) a Hexameter followed (1) by an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic: as,

Nox erat et coelo fulgebat luna sereno
Intér minóra síderá;

Or (2), by a pure *senarius* (Epod. XVI.): as,

Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus aetas
Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

Obs. This metre is called Pythiambic.

XIV.—The Priapean Verse.

§ 814. The Priapean Verse (Catull. XVII., XVIII., and XIX.) consists of the placing together (unintermingled) of a Glyconic and Pherecratian verse, so that the scheme is

– ⏑ | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ || – ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑;

Paŭpĕr|ĭs tŭgŭrī | pătĕr || fīlĭ|ŭs-quĕ cŏlōnī,

Hūjūs | nām dŏmĭnī | cŏlŭnt || mē dĕ|ŭmquĕ sălūtānt,

Quĕrcŭs | ārĭdă rūst|ĭcā || cōnfōrmātă sĕcūrī,

Altĕr | āssĭdŭā | cŏlēns || dīlĭg|ēntĭa ŭt hērbă.

Obs. 1. The spondee of the Pherecratian half of the verse becomes more frequently than not an Iambus.

Obs. 2. Catullus occasionally makes a short syllable long at the pause (or verse-caesura) || : *e. g.* :—

Nutrio magis et magis || et beabo quotannis.

XV.—The Saturnian Verse.

§ 815. The Saturnian was the oldest native Roman verse, and it remained in use till the Hexameter was introduced by Ennius. Its rhythm is controlled not by the quantity of syllables as long or short, but by word-accent only.

It consists of two members, each of which has three accents. The first member has a monosyllabic anacrusis. The following two lines may serve as specimens; the former ascribed to the poet Naevius, the latter a retort upon him by one of the 'Metelli:'—

Fató Romāe Metélli || fiunt cónsulés.

Dabúnt malúm Metélli || Naēvió poétae.

§ 816. The Saturnian line has been described as Iambic Trimeter Hypermeter, or Trochaic Trimeter with anacrusis; but it is better to regard it as a distich written in a single line, as in the old English ballad metre.

Obs. The oldest English metre consists in like manner of a distich regulated only by word-accent, often treated as a single line: as,

Ín a sómer séson,
When sófte wás the sónne. (Piers Plowman).

§ 817. In the Saturnian metre Naevius wrote his poem on the First Punic War, the first line of which was,

Virúm mí (mihi) Casména || ínsecé (*i. e.* insequere) versútum.

The song of the Arval Brothers (Donaldson, *Varron.* p. 194), some fragments of Salian hymns, and probably certain inscriptions and epitaphs are also in this metre.

Obs. An old Latin translation of the inscription of Pyrrhus has been thought to show a mixture of Saturnian and Hexameter verse :—

Qui ántedhác invícti | fuvére virí ‖ pătĕr | ŏptĭme Ŏl|ympī
Hos égo in pūgna vící ‖
Victúsque súm ab ísdem ‖ (see *Varron.* p. 228).

Or, as we may perhaps write the lines,

Qui ántedhác invícti ‖ Fū|vērĕ vĭr|ī pătĕr | ōptĭm' Ŏ ‖lympī ‖
Hos égo in púgna víci ‖ Vīc|tūsquĕ sum *ăb* | īsdĕm ‖

XVI.—The Teliambic or Miuric Verse (*dock-tailed;* from μειῶ, οὐρά).

§ 818. The Teliambic Verse is a Hexameter terminated by an Iambus (τέλος, ἴαμβος) instead of a Spondee (⏑ ⏓ for ⏓ ⏑). As the last syllable of the line is common, the Iambic may become a Pyrrhic (⏑ ⏑). As,

Dīrĭge ŏd|ōrĭs ĕq|uōs ād | cērtă cŭb|ĭlĭă | cănĕs.

Obs. The effect of this line is similar to that of the Choliambic (§ 786), the rhythm being suddenly interrupted.

PART IV.—ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER LXIX.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 819. The Latin Language is a member of that great family of languages known by the name of Indo-European or Aryan. At some remote period a race migrated from the East, embracing the ancestors of both the Greeks and Italians. From this race the Italians branched off, and were themselves divided into two stocks, the *Latins* on the west, and the *Umbro-Samnites* on the east, the latter including the Umbrians, Sabines, Samnites, and their numerous colonies.

Obs. 1. The term *Indo-European* points to the eastern and western limits of the languages so designated. It includes the Indian, Persian, Slavonian, Lithuanian, Greek, Latin, Gothic or German, and Celtic languages. The term *Aryan* is derived from one of the most ancient names of nations included in the above family (*Gr.* Ἄριοι, *Lat.* Arii), and contains the root Ar- (ἀρετή), *noble, brave.*

Obs. 2. The *Umbro-Samnite* branch, though more closely related to Latin than to Greek, was distinct from the Latin. It was itself divided into two main dialects, the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*, the latter being spoken by the Samnites. Of both of these dialects some remains have come down to us.

§ 820. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Dorian Greeks of Cumae and Sicily. Of the 24 letters of the Grecian Alphabet, the Latins omitted *θ*, *φ*, and *χ*, and changed the Digamma or Vau (*F*), having the power of V or W, into F. The Latin Alphabet consisted originally of 20 letters, to which X, making the whole number 21, was added at a very early period:

1. A.	8. H.	15. P.
2. B.	9. I (J).	16. Q.
3. C.	10. K.	17. R.
4. D.	11. L.	18. S.
5. E.	12. M.	19. T.
6. F.	13. N.	20. V (U).
7. Z.	14. O.	21. X.

Hence Cicero mentions an alphabet of 21 letters, of which *x* was the last (*Nat. Deor.* ii. 37).

Obs. 1. Z, corresponding to the Greek Zeta, was found in the earliest Roman Alphabet, and it occurred in the Carmen Saliare. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in writing Greek words. At the same time *Y* was introduced for the same purpose. (Further, v. 836.)

Obs. 2. The Latins originally wrote CS instead of X. The letter X appears to have first come into use in the time between the Decemviral legislation and the capture of Veii; but the first document in which it is found is the Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus, B.C. 186.

Obs. 3. It appears that when the Dorian Alphabet was introduced among the Latins, C was the Guttural Media, corresponding to the Greek γ, and K the Guttural Tenuis, corresponding to the Greek κ. But at a very early stage of the Latin Alphabet, the difference between the Guttural Media and Tenuis disappeared, so that C and K came to have the same sound. C was thus used to express both the Tenuis and Media. Hence in the Twelve Tables, *ni cum eo pacit* and *ni pacunt* occur, from the same verb as *pango, pepigi*. So on the Columna Rostrata we find the forms *leciones, macistratos, ecfociont, pucnandod, Cartocinienses*, equivalent to *legiones, magistratus, exfugiunt, pugnando, Carthaginienses*. In like manner C. and Cn., the ancient representatives of the names Gaius and Gnaeus, were retained down to the latest times. As K gradually went out of use, being only retained in a few words, of which the chief were *Kaeso, Kalendae, kalumnia, kaput*, the difference between the Tenuis and Media again became marked, and a new letter G, formed from C by adding a tail to the latter, was introduced to indicate the Media. This letter is found in the time of the First Punic War, on the sarcophagus of L. Scipio Barbatus, and was placed in the alphabet between F and H by a freedman of Sp. Carvilius Ruga, the old letter Z having by this time become obsolete. (Plut. *Quaest. Rom.* c. 59).

Obs. 4. The Emperor Claudius introduced three new letters; namely, an inverted Digamma, Ⅎ, to distinguish the consonant *v* from the vowel *u*; the Antisigma, Ↄ, to express the sounds *bs* and *ps*, answering to the Greek ψ; and the sign of the Greek aspirate ⊦, to express the intermediate sound between the vowels *i* and *u* (v. § 840, 3). These letters were used in inscriptions, some of which are extant; but they soon went out of use (Tacit. *Annal.* xi. 14); and Priscian and the other grammarians mention therefore an alphabet of only twenty-three letters, in which *x* and *y* are included.

(A.) THE CONSONANTS.

§ 821. Consonants are divided :—

I. According to the part of the mouth, where they are produced, *i. e.* according to their *organ*, into—

1. GUTTURALS—*c* (*k*), *q*, *g*, *h*, *n*, *x*.
2. DENTALS—*t*, *d*, *n*, *l*, *r*, *s*, *z*.
3. LABIALS—*p*, *b*, *f*, *v*, *m*.

II. According to their *power*, that is, whether they can be pronounced with or without a vowel, into :

1. MUTES :—	Gutturals.	Dentals.	Labials.
(*a.*) *Tenues* (sharp)	*c*, *k*, *q*,	*t*,	*p*.
(*b.*) *Mediae* (flat)	*g*,	*d*,	*b*.
(*c.*) *Aspĭratae* (aspirates)	*h*,	none.	*f*.

2. VOCALS:—
(*a.*) *Liquids—l, m, n, r.*
(*b.*) *Sibilants—s, x, z.*
(*c.*) *Semivowels—j, v.*

I. Gutturals.

§ 822. **K. C.** (1) The early history of these letters has been already explained (§ 820, *Obs.* 3). The Latin C, except at an early period, has the same sound as *k* in the cognate languages. Hence it stands in place of *g* and *h* before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*:

rectum,	rexi [rec-si],	from rego.
auctum,	auxi [auc-si],	„ augeo.
tractum,	traxi [trac-si],	„ traho.
vectum,	vexi [vec-si],	„ veho.

C represents *d* before a guttural tenuis: as,

iccirco,	for idcirco	quicquam,	for quidquam
quicquid,	„ quidquid	nequicquam,	„ nequidquam.

Obs. The forms with *c* are the orthography of the best MSS.; but we generally find quidquid (relative).

(2) C disappears:—

i. Before *n*: as,

ara-nea	[=arac-nea]	comp.	ἀράχνη	de-ni	[=dec-ni]	comp.	decem
la-na	[=lac-na]	„	λάχνη	qui-ni	[quinc-ni]	„	quinque.
lu-na	[=luc-na]	„	luceo				

ii. Before *t* when the nasal precedes: as,

quin-tus [=quinc-tus] Quin-tius [=Quinc-tius].

iii. Before *t* and *s* if C is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

ar-tus	[=arc-tus],	comp.	arceo
far-tus	[=farc-tus],	„	farcio
tor-tus	[=torc-tus],	„	torqueo
hor-tus	[=horc-tus],	„	herctum
co-hortes	[=co-horctes],	„	herctum
cor-tis	[=corc-tis],	„	ἕρκος
mul-si	[=mulc-si],	„	mulceo
mul-ta	[=mulc-ta]	„	mulco.
au-tor	[=auc-tor],	„	augeo
au-tumnus	[=auct-umnus],	„	augeo

(3) C had its hard or K sound even before *e* and *i* (with the single exception mentioned below), and was not sibilated as it is in

English. Hence we find that C in Latin words before *e* and *i* is always expressed in Greek by K: as, *censor*, *κήνσωρ*: *Cicero*, *Κικέρων*; and that the Romans, in writing Greek words in Latin, always expressed K by C: as, *Cecrops*, *Cilix*, *Cineas*, *Cybele*.

On the other hand, the fact that in several Latin words *ci* and *ti* *before a vowel* were written indifferently, proves that these sounds must have been pronounced similarly. Thus we find in inscriptions, *tribunitiae* and *tribuniciae*; and on the other hand, *mundiciei* for *munditiei*; the sound being in either case that of a sibilant. So likewise in inscriptions we have both forms in proper names: as,

Larcius	and	Lartia,	Accius	and	Attius,
Marcius	„	Martia,	Abucius	„	Abutius,
Mucius	„	Mutius,	Neracius	„	Neratius.

In the oldest MSS. we have a similar fluctuation: thus we find,

solacium	and	solatium,	suspicio	and	suspitio,
convicium	„	convitium,	secius	„	setius.

It must be observed, however, that this interchange of *ci* and *ti* takes place only *before a vowel*: we never find, for instance, *milicis* instead of *militis*, or *felitis* instead of *felicis*. From the sibilant sound of *ti* arose in modern Italian such forms as *palazzo* from *palatium*; *Piacenza* from *Placentia*, &c.

A similar sibilation before *i* occurs in Greek: thus *πάσσων*, *θάσσων*, *μάσσων*, represent *παχίων*, *ταχίων*, *μακιων*; and *βράσσων*, *κρέσσων* or *κρείσσων* represent *βραδίων*, *κρετίων*: in like manner *φυλάσσω*, *τάσσω*, *ταράσσω* represent *φυλακίω*, *ταγίω*, *ταραχίω*. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 57).

Obs. Still the fluctuation between *ci* and *ti* with a vowel following did not really occur in many words in which it is usually given. For example:

1. *Contio* (not *concio*) is the only form found in the oldest MSS. of Plautus and Gaius. The former orthography is in accordance with the etymology; for the form *coventionid* (= coventione) in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus proves that *contio* is a contraction of *co(n)ventio*.

2. *Nuntius* (not *nuncius*) alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. This form also is in accordance with the etymology. The old form was *nountios*, connected with *novus*. From *novus* was derived a verb *novēre*; from the present participle of which, *novens*, *novent-is*, came, with the suffix *ius*, the word *noventius*, just as *Florus*, *florere*, *Florentia*. Then *noventius* was shortened into *nountius*, as *novendinae* into *noundinae* (*nundinae*).

3. *Indutiae* (not *induciae*) (Gell. 1. 25).
Fetialis (not *Fecialis*), comp. Gr. *φετιάλιοι*.
Otium and *Negotium* are the only correct forms.

4. *Condicio*, on the other hand, alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. It is doubtful, however, whether the word is derived from *condicere* or *condere*; and consequently whether *condicio* or *conditio* is etymologically the more correct.

§ 823. **Q.**—The Guttural Tenuis Q is, as a general rule, used only in the combination of QV, followed by a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. It is a Guttural tenuis followed by a labial semivowel, and forms a transition between the Guttural tenuis *k* and the Labial tenuis *p*. The close connexion of QV with these sounds is seen by a comparison of the same word in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and the Italian dialects:—

K.		Q V.		P.	
Sansk.	kis,	*Lat.*	quis,	*Oscan,*	pis,
„	kat,	„	quod,	„	pod,
Gr.	κόση,	„	quanta,	*Umbrian,*	panta,
				Gr.	πόση,
Sansk.	çatvar,	„	quattuor,	*Umbrian,*	petur,
				Gr.	πίσυρες,
		„	quinque,	*Gr.*	πέμπε,
				Sansk.	pançan,
Lat.	cocus,	„	coquo,	*Lat.*	popina,
Lat.	secundus,	*Lat.*	sequor,	*Gr.*	ἕπομαι.

Obs. 1. In inscriptions of the Republican period, the relative pronoun generally has QV in forms written subsequently with a C: as, quoius, quoici, quom; later, cujus, cui, cum, &c. It must not, however, be inferred from this, that QV was more ancient than C. In many Latin words C appears in the roots and QV in the derivatives: as,

Quirites	from	Cures (curis),
inquilinus	„	incola,
sterquilinium	„	stercus,
querquetulanus	„	quercetum,
inquinare,	„	cunire.

Obs. 2. Instead of QV, when the word *u* followed, Q was frequently written alone, especially from the time of the Gracchi: thus we find in Inscriptions:

qura	instead of	cura,	pequdes	instead of	pecudes,
pequnia	„	pecunia,	persequtio	„	persecutio.
pequlatu	„	peculatu,			

§ 824. **G.**—(1) The late introduction of the medial G into the Latin Alphabet (taking the position of the obsolete *z*) when C became exclusively a Tenuis, has been already mentioned (§ 820, *Obs.* 3).

In many words *c* is softened into *g* before vowels and the liquids *l, m, n, r*: as,

1. Before vowels:

Sigambri	for	Sicambri,	gurgulio	for	curculio,
negotium	„	nec-otium,	triginta comp.		τριάκοντα,

2. Before liquids:

neglego	for	nec-lego,	Gnossus	for	Cnossus,
gloria (see *Obs.*) comp. cluo,		κλύω,	Gnidus	„	Cnidus.

Obs. From the Stem CLV, with the suffix *or*, came a Substantive *clu-or* (like *hon-or*, &c.), from which with a second suffix *ia*, was formed *cluoria* (like *uxorius* from *uxor*). *Cluoria* was shortened into *cloria* (*gloria*), as *puer* into *por* in *Marci-por*.

(2) G often disappears:—

i. At the beginning of words, and followed by the liquids: as,

lamentum	compare	clamare,	navus	compare	i-gnavus,
lactis	,,	γάλακτος,	nosco	,,	co-gnosco.
natus	,,	gnatus,			

ii. Before *s*, when it is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

spar-si, spar-sum,	from	spargo,	mul-si	from	mulgeo,
ter-si, ter-sum	,,	tergeo,	ful-si	,,	fulgeo.
al-si	,,	algeo,			

iii. Sometimes before *m*: as,

conta-minari from ta(n)go, exa-men from exago.

In other words, such as *agmen*, *tegmen*, the *g* remains.

iv. Often before *v*: as,

nives (nigves),	compare	ninguo,
fruor (fruguor),	,,	fruges, fructus,
fluvium (flugvium),	,,	fluxi,
conniveo (connigveo),	,,	connixus; cf. nico, nicto,
vivo (vigvo),	,,	vixi, victus.

Obs. 1. In the same way the following words seem to have had originally a G, which disappeared before *v*:

brevis, comp.	*Gr.* βραχύς,		
levis, ,,	,, ἐλαχύς,	*Sansk.* laghu,	
pravus, ,,		,, prahvas,	
malva, ,,	,, μαλάχη.		

Obs. 2. G followed by the semivowel *i* with an accompanying vowel often disappears (the *i* in such cases was pronounced as a *y*, though written *j* in English): as,

ma-ior, major	(orig. mag-ior)	comp.	mag-is,
Ma-ius	(orig. Mag-ius)	,,	mag-nus,
me-io	(orig. mig-io)	,,	mingo, ὀμίχω.

Ma-ius signifies the "growing-month," as the root *mag*, Sansk. *mah*, signifies originally "to grow."

Obs. 3. In like manner *d* disappears, when followed by the semivowel *i* and an accompanying vowel, as *Jovis* instead of *Diovis*, *Janus* instead of *Dianus*.

§ 825. **H.**—(1) H was originally a Guttural aspirate; the traces of which are still retained in *traxi*, *tractum*, from *traho*, and *vexi*, *vectum*, from *veho*. But in all other cases, H in Latin is only the rough breathing, corresponding to the Greek spiritus asper.

(2) H often represents *f*, a sound peculiar to the Italian languages: as,

hoedus	for	foedus,	haba	for	faba,
hordus	,,	fordus,	hircus	,,	fircus,
hostis	,,	fostis,	hariolus	,,	fariolus,
horreum	,,	farreum,	hebris	,,	febris, &c.

(3) H at an early period was often dropped in pronunciation. Hence we find in Inscriptions and MSS., the following words written both with and without the aspirate:

harundo	and	arundo,	heres	and	eres,
haruspex	,,	aruspex,	hora	,,	ora,
hoedus	,,	oedus,	humerus	,,	umerus,
hasta	,,	asta,	Hamilcar	,,	Amilcar,
harena	,,	arena,	Hasdrubal	,,	Asdrubal,
hedera	,,	edera,	Hannibal	,,	Annibal,
herciscere	,,	erciscere,	Hammon	,,	Ammon.

The form without the aspirate is in most cases the more correct. The tendency was to drop the *h*, until at length it completely disappeared, as in the modern Italian.

(4) H in the middle of words between two vowels was frequently dropped; but the older form was also retained along with the more modern. Thus, while *nemo* always occurs instead of *nehemo*, we find in use at the same time:

Ahala	and	Ala,	nihil	and	nil,
vehemens	,,	vemens,	cohors	,,	cors,
prehendo	,,	prendo,	dehibeo	,,	debeo,
mihi	,,	mi,	praehibeo	,,	praebeo.

II. Labials.

§ 826. P.—(1) It has been already remarked that in the Indo-European languages the Guttural Tenuis C or K frequently passes into the Labial Tenuis P, and that the Latin QV, which is a Guttural with a Labial semivowel attached, formed the transition between them (§ 823).

Obs. In the Oscan and Umbrian *p* often represents an original *k*: see examples in § 823. In Latin this is rarely the case; and even the few Latin words, which have *p* instead of the original *c*, are probably all borrowed from other dialects. Thus *popina* is the Oscan form of *coquina*, from *coquo*; *palumbes* probably comes from the Oscan, *columba* being the pure Latin form. *Epona*, which is usually derived from *equus*, is unquestionably a Celtic word. *Lupus* is the Greek λύκος, but it probably comes immediately from an Italian dialect. If *limpidus* be the same as *liquidus*, the former must be regarded as a dialectical variety, *liquidus* being the pure Latin form.

(2) P at the end of a word, when the final vowel was dropped, was, as a general rule, softened into the medial *b*: as,

ab	*Gr.*	*ἀπό*	*Sansk.*	ápa,
sub	„	*ὑπό*	„	úpa,
ob	„	*ἐπί*	„	úpa.

(3) B before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*, was pronounced as *p*. Hence there arises a fluctuation in the orthography, some writing *ps*, *pt* according to the pronunciation, and others *bs*, *bt* according to the etymology. Down to the Augustan age, the orthography according to the pronunciation was the more usual; and hence we find, in the inscriptions of the two last centuries of the republic, such forms as *apstulit*, *apstinere*, *opsignetur*, *opsidione*, *optinebit*, *supsignent*. In the perfects and supines the orthography according to pronunciation prevailed: as,

nub-o	nup-si	nup-tum,
scrib-o	scrip-si	scrip-tum.

(4) P is sometimes inserted between *m* and *s* or *t* to facilitate the sound: as,

emptus	from	emo,
sumpsi, sumptus	„	sumo,
comptus	„	como,
contempsi, contemptus	„	contemno,
hiemps	„	hiems.

Obs. The form *tempto*, which also occurs in the best MSS. instead of *tento*, is opposed to both etymology and analogy. *Tento* comes from *tentus*, the participle of *tendo*; consequently no *m* precedes requiring the insertion of a *p* to facilitate the sound. It would seem that a confusion was made between the participle *temptus* from *temno* and the participle *tentus* from *tendo*; and that the orthography of the former word was erroneously transferred to the latter.

§ 827. **B.**—(1) B was pronounced as *p* before *s* and *t*, as already remarked (v. § 826).

(2) *Du* in the older language became *b* in the words:

duellum	bellum,
duellicus	bellicus,
Duellius	Bellius,
duis	bis,
duidens	bidens,
duonus	bonus.

So *dv* became *v* in the words:

dvi-ginti (comp. duo)	viginti,
suadvis (comp. suadeo, *Gr.* *ἡδύς*)	suavis.

But these examples do not prove that *b* and *v* simply were interchangeable, since the preceding *d* exercises a disturbing influence.

(3) The Romans avoided the juxtaposition of *b* and *f*, as the forms *aufero* and *aufugio* shew. Hence *afui*, *afuturus*, *afore*, &c., are strictly the correct forms, not *abfui*, *abfuturus*, *abfore*, &c.

§ 828. **F.**—(1) F was a sound peculiar to the Italian languages, and may be described as the Labial Aspirate. In the Etruscan, Umbrian, and Oscan alphabets it was represented by a peculiar character, 8; but in Latin it was expressed by the so-called Aeolic digamma (*F* or **F**).

In the middle of Latin words the *f* underwent two changes: (1) the aspirate was lost and the labial alone remained; or (2) the labial sound was lost and the aspirate only remained.

(1) *Loss of the aspirate in f:*

Gr.	ἄμφω	comp. with *Lat.*	ambo,
	ὀμφαλος	„	umbilicus.

In the same way the Sanskrit suffix *-bhyam* (as in *tu-bhyam*, *Dat.* sing. of 2nd personal pronoun) corresponds to the Gr. *-φι*, and the Oscan *-fe*, and the Latin *-bi* instead of *fi*. Hence *b* has arisen out of *f* in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, *i-bi*, *u-bi*.

So also *b* has arisen out of *f* in the terminations *-bam* and *-bo* of the Imperfect and Future, which come from the root FU in *fui*, as *eram* and *ero* come from the root ES in *est*.

In the Perfect terminations *-vi*, and *-ui*, for *fui*, the *f* has been disturbed by the following semivowel, like the *d* in *viginti* (v. § 827) and the *g* in *nives* (v. § 824).

(2) *Loss of the labial in f:* as, *hoedus* for *foedus*, &c.: see examples in § 825 (2).

In *mi-hi* the *f* has become a mere aspirate, while in the corresponding forms it has become *b*: as *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c.

So also in the pronominal adverbs in *-im*, as *ill-im*, *ist-im*, &c., the original termination was *-fim*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyam*. The *f* first became *h*, so that from *illo-fim*, *isto-fim*, arose *illo-him*, *isto-him*: then *h* disappeared between two vowels, according to the general practice; and *illo-im*, *isto-im* were then contracted into *illīm*, *istīm*.

Obs. The forms *ex-im*, *i-n-de*, *u-n-de*, *ali-cu-n-de*, &c. are of the same origin; the old forms *i-fim* and (*c*)*u-fim* coming from the pronominal roots *i* (is) and *cu* (qui), *f* sinking into *h*, and disappearing between the two vowels.

III. Dentals.

§ 829. **T.**—T had a weaker sound at the end than at the beginning and middle of words. Hence we find the *t* of the 3rd Person of verbs sometimes dropped in Latin, as it regularly is in Greek. Even in

old Latin inscriptions we have the 3rd persons *dede, dedro, dederi, censuere.* In the 3rd Person Plural of the Perf. Active the termination *ere,* instead of *erunt,* occurs in the best period of the language.

On the sibilation of *t* followed by *i* and another vowel v. § 822 (3).

§ 830. **D.**—(1) The Dental Media D at the end of words was pronounced nearly like the Tenuis *t* (Comp. Quint. i. 7, § 5). Hence we find in the best MSS., *t* at the end of words instead of *d,* and in the same MS. both forms often occur side by side: as,

it	and	id,	at	and	ad,
quot	„	quod,	aput	„	apud,
quit	„	quid,	set	„	sed,
istut	„	istud,	haut	„	haud.
aliut	„	aliud,			

(2) By a comparison with the Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination of the Neuter of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives: thus *quod* corresponds to the Sanskrit *kat.* So, also, the Preposition *ad* or *at* corresponds to the Sanskrit *ati.* The termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit is *t,* which was in like manner softened in old Latin into *d,* and finally dropped. Hence we find on the Columna Rostrata, the old Ablatives *altod, marid, dictatored, navaled;* and similar forms in other inscriptions.

(3) The softening of a final *t* into *d,* and then the disappearance of the latter, appears in many other Latin words.

1. We have the three forms *haut, haud,* and *hau.*

2. In the Imperative, the *d* arising out of *t* is regularly dropped in Latin: comp.

esto	with the Oscan	estud,	facito	with the Oscan	factud,
agito	„	actud,	liceto	„	licitud.

Obs. It has been already noticed that the *t* of the 3rd Person of Verbs is frequently dropped (v. § 829). That the *t* was in such cases first softened into *d* appears from forms found in inscriptions, such as the Latin *fecid, exead,* and the Oscan *fefacid, hipid, fuid,* &c.

In the middle of Latin words there was also a fluctuation in the pronunciation and orthography of *d* and *t,* especially after *r* and *u.*

Compare	quatuor	and	quadratus,
	quatriduum	„	quadraginta,
	mentiri	„	mendax.

(4) On the disappearance of *d* followed by *v* at the beginning of words, as *duellum* (bellum), *duis* (bis), *duonus* (bonus) *dviginti* (viginti); and on its disappearance followed by *i,* as *Janus* (Dianus), *Diovis* (Jovis), v. §§ 827, 824, *Obs.* 3.

(5) On the change of *d* into *l* and *r,* v. §§ 831, No. 2; 832. No. 2.

IV. Liquids.

§ 831. L.—(1) L had its *fullest* sound at the end of words, like *sal, mel, consul, vigil.* This is the reason why *l* always retains its place at the end of Latin words, while so many other consonants in the same position disappear.

(2) L had a *lighter* sound at the beginning of words, as in *latere, laetari, lectus, lotus,* &c., and in the middle of words between vowels, as in *talis, fidelis, facilis, hostilis.* Since the *l* in this position was pronounced only lightly with the tongue, it was frequently interchanged with *r.* Thus the suffixes *-alis* and *-aris* (§ 187, No. 9) are the same; *-alis* being used when *r* precedes, and *-aris* *l* precedes: as,

austr-alis	vall-aris,	mur-alis	proeli-aris,
rur-alis	sol-aris,	corpor-alis	regul-aris.

For the same reason we have *caeruleus* instead of *caeluleus* from *caelum,* and *Parilia* instead of *Palilia* from *Pales.*

In consequence of the lighter sound of *l* in the beginning and middle of words, we find it interchanged in these positions with *d*: as,

lacrima instead of dacrima, *Gr.* δάκρυον,
levir „ δάϝηρ,
lautia „ dautia (Fest. p. 68),
lingua „ dingua, *Goth.* tuggo, *Eng.* tongue,
oleo comp. odor, *Gr.* ὄδωδα.

D represents *l* in the forms:

cadamitas for calamitas (Mar. Victor. p. 2456),
Capitodium „ Capitolium (ib. p. 2470).

(3) L had its lightest sound when it was the second *l* of *ll.* The difference in sound between *l* and *ll* seems to have been so slight, that in inscriptions many Proper Names were written both with one *l* and with two: as, *Ofilius* and *Ofillius, Silius* and *Sillius,* &c.

For the same reason we find in the best MSS. both *mille* and *mile, millia* and *milia.* The more correct orthography of these two words is *mille* and *milia.* The reason for this is that *i* before *a* was pronounced as *y;* and as the second *l* seems to have had nearly the same sound (like a second *l* in French), the combination of sound *millia* (=milyya) was nearly impossible.

Obs. 1. On the same principle, we may understand how in Greek βάλλω arises from βαλιω, τίλλω from τιλιω, &c. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 252.) In the same way in Latin:

percello	arises from	percelio	*Perf.* perculi,
pello	„	pelio	pepuli,
tollo	„	tolio	tetuli.

Obs. 2. Words in *-ela*, when a short vowel precedes, ought to be written with a double *l*: as,

loquella,	*not* loquela,	luella,	*not* luela,
querella,	,, querela,	fugella,	,, fugela.
sequella,	,, sequela,		

But when a long vowel precedes the *-ela*, the single *l* is the correct orthography: as, *custodela, clientela, suadela, candela, &c.* See Lachmann, ad Lucret. 3, 1015.

§ 832. **R.**—Of all the liquids, and indeed of all the consonants, *R* is the most closely related to the vowels. In Sanskrit there is a vowel *r* sound distinguished by a separate character from the consonantal *r*.

(1) In Latin an original *s* constantly becomes *r* between two vowels: as,

Lares	for Lases,	Spurius	for Spusius,
arae	,, asae,	Valerius	,, Valesius,
feriae	,, fesiae,	Papirius	,, Papisius,
arena	,, asena,	quaero	,, quaeso.

In the same way:

aeris	from aes,	Veneris	from Venus,
cruris	,, crus,	Cereris	,, Ceres,
generis	,, genus,	pulveris	,, pulvis,
temporis	,, tempus,	cineris	,, cinis.

So also in composition:

dir-imere for dis-imere, dir-ibere for dis-hibere.

The termination *-rum* of the Genitive Plural is instead of *-sum* in such words as *faba-rum, bono-rum, die-rum, bove-rum*, &c.

Even at the end of words *s* sometimes becomes *r*: as,

arbor	for arbos,	honor	for honos,
labor	,, labos,	lepor	,, lepos.

The *r*, which is the sign of the Passive, arises in like manner from the *s* of the Reflective Pronoun *se*.

Obs. The time at which *s* began to be changed into *r*, is partly indicated by the statement of Cicero (*ad Fam.* ix. 21), that L. Papirius Cursor, who was consul B.C. 336 (consequently in the time of the Samnite wars), was the first of his family named Papirius, while all his ancestors were called Papisii. Compare Livy, iii. 4, *init.*

(2) *D* was also changed into *r*, especially in the preposition *ad* in composition. Thus we find in the grammarians and in inscriptions:

arvenae	for advenae,	arfines	for adfines,
arvocati	,, advocati,	arfuisse	,, adfuisse.
arvorsum	,, advorsum,		

So also in the usual forms:

arbiter for adbiter (comp. adbitere),
arcesso „ adcesso,
meridies „ medidies (from medius dies).

§ 833. **N.**—(1) N, at the beginning of all words, had a sharp, full sound. Hence we find no examples in which N in this position undergoes any change.

(2) N, at the end of words, was pronounced more feebly, as is clear from its frequent disappearance in this position; as, for instance, in the Nominative case of all Stems in *on:* as *leo* from *leon*, in the *homo* from *homon*, &c. So also in such forms as *ceteroqui* for *ceteroquin*, *alioqui* for *alioquin*.

(3) N, in the middle of words, when it represents *m* and stands before *d* and *t*, had a full sound; as, *eorundem*, *tandem*, *duntaxat*, *septentrio*. It had the same sound in the middle of words between two vowels. Hence the orthography in this position often fluctuates between a single and double N: as, *Porsena* and *Porsenna*, *Caecina* and *Caecinna*, &c. In the oldest MSS. of Plautus, Virgil, Lucretius, and Gaius, words are sometimes written with a single *n*, where etymology would require two: as, *conubium*, *conectere*, *conexus;* which forms are most readily explained on the supposition that N in this position had so full a sound as to render the two letters unnecessary.

(4) But N, in the middle of words, had a very faint sound before the aspirate *h*, the semivowels *j* (=*y*) and *v*, and the sibilant *s*, and hence frequently disappears before these letters:

i. Before *h:* as,

cohaereo, cohors,
coheres, cohortari.
cohibere,

ii. Before *j* (= *y*) and *v:* as,

coicio	compared with	conicio (conjicio),
cojectura	„	conjectura,
cojunx	„	conjunx,
cojuncti (whence cuncti)	„	conjuncti,
coventionid (in S. C. de Bacch.)	„	conventio (whence contio, v. § 822, *Obs.* 1.).

iii. Before *s*, which occurs still more frequently:

(*a.*) In the Suffix *-iens:* as,

quoties	instead of	quotiens,
toties	„	totiens,
quinquies	„	quinquiens.

(*b.*) In the Suffix of the Ordinal Numbers *-esimus* for *-ensumus*: as,

vicesimus	instead of	vicensumus,
quadragesimus	,,	quadragensumus,
duodevicesimus	,,	duodevicensumus.

(*c.*) In the Suffix of the Gentile Adjectives in *-ensis*: as,

Apulesis	instead of	Apulensis,
Ostesis	,,	Ostensis,
Narbonesis	,,	Narbonensis.

(*d.*) In the Stems of some words: as,

cesor	instead of	censor,
cosul	,,	Consul,
mesis	,,	mensis,
mostrum	,,	monstrum,
tosor	,,	tonsor.

(*e.*) In Lucretius, Plautus, and early Inscriptions, the *n* of the *nt* of the termination of the Imperfect Participles sometimes disappears; namely, when the *t* of the Stem has been dropped before *s*, the sign of the Nominative: as,

animas	instead of	animans,	lacrimas	instead of	lacrimans,
cogitas	,,	cogitans,	dormies	,,	dormiens,
curas	,,	curans,	obedies	,,	obediens.

(5) N had a guttural sound before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *ch*, *x*, and was probably pronounced like the French *n*. Some of the ancient writers, as we learn from Varro (ap. Prisc. i. 39), sought to express this sound by *g*, as in Greek, writing

Agchises	instead of	Anchises,
agceps	,,	anceps,
aggulus	,,	angulus.

Hence we can explain the forms

ec-ce	instead of	en-ce,
ec-quis	,,	en-quis,
ec-quando	,,	en-quando.

(6) N is changed into *m* before labials, and is assimilated before the liquids, *l*, *r*: as,

im-peritus	instead of	in-peritus,
im-modicus	,,	in-modicus,
col-laudo	,,	con-laudo,
col-ligo	,,	con-ligo,
cor-ripio	,,	con-ripio,
cor-ruo	,,	con-ruo.

§ 834. **M.**—(1) M, at the beginning of Latin words, had the same full sound as it had in the cognate languages.

(2) M had a weaker sound in the middle of words before the labial consonants, as in *umbra*. Further, in the middle of words M was changed into:—

i. The guttural *n* before the guttural *c*: as, *anceps* (for *ambiceps*).

Obs. On the other hand, *m* generally remained before *q*: as, *quemquam*, *tamquam*.

ii. Into the dental *n* before the dentals *d*, *t*: as, *tantundem*, *veruntamen*, *eandem*. The only exception to this rule is *circumdo*.

iii. Into a faint nasal sound (which frequently was not written), before *j* (=*y*), *v*, and *s*: as, *conjunx* or *cojunx*, *consul* or *cosul*, &c. (v. § 833, No. 4).

iv. In composition, the *m* of *circum* and of *com* frequently disappears before a vowel: as,

circuire, circuitus,	coagulum,	coactus,
coemptio,	coire,	cooptare, &c.

(3) M, at the end of words, was pronounced so faintly as to be almost inaudible. In Latin verse, a word ending in a vowel and M, was for metrical purposes regarded as ending only in a vowel. Hence M was frequently not written at the end of words. Its disappearance is of importance for the history of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations.

Obs. 1. In the Verb, the *m*, which is the sign of the first Person Sing., is dropped in most tenses of the Indicative, but retained in the Subjunctive. This *m* must have disappeared very early, as it is also dropped in Greek in the present tense of verbs in -ω, and retained only in verbs in -μι. In Latin, the *m* is preserved in only two verbs in the Present Indicative, *s-u-m* (= *es-u-m*, comp. Gr. ἐσ-μί) and *inqua-m*.

Obs. 2. In Nouns, the final *m* is sometimes written and sometimes omitted in inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars: thus we find such forms as *dono* and *donom*, *viro* and *sacrom*, &c. From the time of the S. C. de Bacchanalibus, the final *m* of the nouns regularly appears. But that it still continued to be omitted in the popular dialect, is evident from the inscriptions scribbled by the populace on the walls of Pompeii, in which the *m* of the Accusative is usually wanting: as, *tota*, *puella*, &c., for *totam*, *puellam*, &c. From the third centuury A.D., the *m* of nouns and other words is constantly omitted in inscriptions, because it had by this time ceased to be pronounced in the popular dialect. This dropping of the *m* first in pronunciation and then in writing, seems to have been one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions in the popular language.

V. Sibilants.

§ 835. **S.**—(1) The grammarians give us hardly any information respecting the pronunciation of S; but it clearly had more than one sound in Latin.

(2) S, at the beginning of words, had a sharp sound. It is found, at the beginning of words, only before consonants, in the combinations *sp, sc, st:* as, *spargere, scindere, stare.* On account of its sharp sound, it disappeared before *f* at the beginning of words: as, *fallo* compared with *σφάλλω, fungus* with *σφόγγος, fundá* with *σφενδόνη, fidis* with *σφίδη.*

(3) S, in the middle of words, was pronounced sharply both before and after consonants. This is shown by the change of the Labial Media into the Tenuis before *s:* as, *nup-si, lap-sus,* &c. (v. § 826, No. 3): and also by the fact that *s* is retained only before sharp sounds, while it is dropped before *m, n, l, d:* as,

ca-mena,	po-no,	corpu-lentus,	ju-dex,
(cas-mena),	(pos-no),	(corpos-lentus),	(jus-dex),
o-men,	ce-na,		i-dem,
(os-men),	(ces-na),		(is-dem),
po-moerium,	ahe-neus,		di-duco,
(pos-moerium),	(ahes-neus),		(dis-duco),
du-mosus,	vide-n',		tre-decim,
(dus-mosus),	(vides-n'),		(tres-decim).

Obs. In the same way *s* disappears before *b:* as, *ju-beo* (=*jus-beo*), which is a contraction of *jus-hibeo.*

Sometimes S is changed into *r* before the same sounds: as,

car-men,	veter-nus,	diur-nus,
(cas-men),	(vetes-nus),	(dius-nus).

(4) S, in the middle of words, had a softer sound between two vowels, as it has in the Romance languages: as, Lat. *rosa,* Ital. *rosa,* French *rose.* This is also shown by the change of *s* into *r* between two vowels (v. § 832, No. 1), which could not have been of such frequent occurrence had not the *s* in this position been the softer sibilant.

Obs. In *spes* and *dies,* the *s* belongs to the Stem, and has been dropped in the Gen. and Dat. cases Sing., *spe-i* = *spes-i, die-i* = *dies-i.* That the *s* of *spes* belongs to the Stem is proved by the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *speres* in Ennius, and by the verb *spero.* That the *s* of *dies* belongs to the Stem appears from the forms *diur-nus* = (dius-nus), *ho-dier-nus* (=ho-dies-nus), and *Dies-piter.*

(5) S, at the end of words, was from the earliest times very

faintly sounded in Latin. In many of the Case-endings, *s* was dropped altogether. Thus it disappeared in the Nom. Sing. of such words as *Numa, poeta, puer, vigil*; in the Gen. Sing. of the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions, originally ending in *a-is, o-is, e-is*, from which arose the later forms *ae, i, ei*; in the Nom. Pl. of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, where *a-is* and *o-is* were the original forms of the later *ae* and *i*. In verbs, in like manner, the *s*, which was the sign of the 2nd Person Sing. of the Imperative, was dropped, *rege, mone, audi* having at one time ended in *s*. So also in the 2nd Person Sing. of the Pres. and Imperf. Indic. and Subj., and of the Fut. Indic. Passive, we have the forms *amare, amere, amabare, amarere, amabere*, together with *amaris, ameris*, &c. The adverbs *magis* and *potis* were also at an early period written *mage* and *pote*.

Obs. In the inscriptions of the time of the Punic War, we find words of the 2nd declension in the Nominative case without *s*: as, *Terentio, Albanio*, &c. In the Roman poets down to the time of Cicero, the final *s*, followed by a word beginning with a consonant, did not make the preceding vowel long, which proves that it was not then pronounced. Cicero styles this pronunciation *subrusticum* (*Orat.* 48, 161), which shows that the *s* was still dropped in his time in the country dialect. In the later Imperial inscriptions the final *s* in the case-endings usually disappears. This omission of the final *s*, like the similar disappearance of the final *m*, was one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions.

§ 836. **Z.**—(1) Z was found in the oldest Roman alphabet and occurred in the Carmen Saliare. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables, and we are told that the tragic poet Attius did not use it. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in Greek words.

(2) The Romans, in the time of Plautus and Pacuvius, expressed the Greek *z* at the beginning of words by *s*, and in the middle of words by *ss*: hence they wrote and pronounced *Saguntum, Sethus, sona, badisso, Atticisso*, &c. Such forms in the present MSS. of Plautus, as *zona, Zacynthus, badizo, trapezita* were introduced in the recension of the text by the grammarians, in accordance with the orthography of their time.

Obs. It would seem that at a later period the Roman *s* had in it something of *d* sound as well as of a sibilant. Hence in the Imperial times, when *di* followed by a vowel was sibilated, it was sometimes expressed by *s*: thus we find *diabolus, diaconus*, &c., written *sabolus, zaconus*, &c.

§ 837. **X.**—(1) Whether X is classed among the gutturals or the sibilants is immaterial, as it represented both sounds united. It is here placed with the sibilants, because in course of time it degenerated into a mere sibilant.

Obs. It has been already shown that X did not belong to the earliest Roman Alphabet; yet still it was written at a period earlier than the most ancient inscriptions (v. § 820, *Obs.* 2). It can be only an accident that we do not

find it in the short inscriptions of the earliest times. It first appears in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus in the words: *exdeicendum; exdeicatis, extrad.*

(2) From the time of the Gracchi, that is from the time of Lucilius and Attius, who did much to fix the Latin orthography, X was frequently written *xs:* as, *saxsum, maxsume, proxsimum, deduxsit, lexs,* &c. This orthography is found even in monuments of the Augustan age. Hence it is clear that the sibilant was pronounced very strongly. From this predominance of the sibilant we may account for the fact, that before consonants, the guttural part of *x* disappeared and the sibilant *s* alone remained; whence we find in inscriptions *sescentas, Sestius, praetestati.* The remaining *s* then disappeared before those consonants with which it did not harmonize, that is, before *d, n, m, v* (v. § 835, No. 3): as, *se-decim, se-ni, se-mestris, se-vir.*

VI. Semivowels.

§ 838. J.—(1) The same character, namely I, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *i* and the semivowel *j.*

The semivowel J had its simplest sound at the beginning of simple words, and at the beginning of the second member of compound words: as,

ab-judico	ad-jungo	con-jectus
e-juro	de-jectus	di-judico.

In such cases J was pronounced like the English *y.* If the J was followed by *i,* the J was dropped: therefore the correct orthography is—

eicit	*not* ejicit,	proicit	*not* projicit,
reicit	„ rejicit,	coicit	„ cojicit.

A short vowel thus preceding J in composition remained short, just as before a simple consonant: as,

bĭjugus, quadrŭjugus, trĭjugus, altĭjugus.

(2) J in the middle of simple words between two vowels had a fuller sound, more similar to a vowel. Hence, as we learn from Quintilian (i. 4, § 11), this sound was represented by a double *i* by Cicero, who wrote, for example, *aiio* and *Maiia* (cf. Prisc. i. 18; vii. 19). We find in inscriptions such forms as *Pompeiius, eiIus, cuiIus, maiIorum,* the second I in some cases being written higher than the other letters.

(3) The guttural is omitted before J in:

mājor, mājus	for	măgior,
Mājus (Māius)	„	Māgius,
pulējum	„	pulēgium,
mējo	„	mĭgio (cf. mingo),
āio	„	ăgio (cf. Sansk. *ah,* "dicere").

v is omitted before J in:

Gājus (Gāius) for Gavius.

r in:

pē-jero for perjero (cf. perjurium).

s in:

dī-judico for disjudico.

s with *n* preceding in:

trā-jicio for transjicio.

s with *c* preceding in:

sē-jugis for sexjugis.

Obs. In the later popular pronunciation J was sibilated and pronounced nearly like the English *j* and the Italian *gi*. In a very late inscription we find *congiunta*, written for *conjuncta*. Hence the Italian words *giunto*, *giovane*, *giogo* from *junctum*, *juvenem*, *jugum*.

§ 839. V.—(1) The same character, namely V, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *u* and the semivowel *v*.

Obs. The semivowel *v* was reckoned by Cicero among the labial consonants. (Mar. Victorin. p. 2462.) The Emperor Claudius, as already remarked (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4), introduced for this sound the character Ⅎ, which, however, after his death fell into disuse.

(2) Many Greek words, which originally began with a Digamma, begin in Latin with a *v*: as,

vomo,	ἐμέω,	vitulus,	ἴταλος,
voco,	εἶπον, rt. ἐπ-,	ver,	ἦρ,
volvo,	εἴλω,	vestis,	ἐσθής,
vinum,	οἶνος,	vespera,	ἑσπέρα,
viola,	ἴον,	Vesta,	Ἑστία.

Obs. The Latin *v* was expressed in Greek, after the disappearance of the Digamma, by either ου or β; and the same word is sometimes written indifferently in either way; as,

Varro,	Οὐάρρων,	Βάρρων,
Vala,	Οὐάλης,	Βάλης,
Valentia,	Οὐαλεντία,	Βαλητία,
Valerius,	Οὐαλέριος,	Βαλεριανός,
Venusia,	Οὐενουτία,	Βενουσία.

This fluctuation in the orthography between ου and β proves that *v* in Latin occupied an intermediate sound between the vowel sound ου and the consonant β in Greek, which was the case with the Greek F. V would therefore seem to have been pronounced in the beginning of words like the English *v*.

V rarely comes into contact with a preceding consonant, except the liquids *r* and *l*. It either (1) drives out the preceding consonant, or (2) is changed into *u*, or (3) disappears altogether.

(1) D disappears before *v* (v. § 827, No. 2) in:

viginti, suavis.

G disappears before *v* (v. § 824, No. 2, iv.) in:

nives, fruor, fluvium, conniveo, vivo.

F, having previously become *h*, disappears before *v* (v. § 828) in:

proba-vi for proba-fui, &c.

(2) V is changed into *u* in the suffix *-vus* after Mutes and *n*: as,

vacuus,	perpetuus,
mortuus,	ingenuus.

But if *r* or *l* precedes, the suffix *-vus* retains its original form: as,

alvus,	acervus,
calvus,	curvus.

(3) V disappears altogether before *d*, *t*, and *s*: as,

te, tibi,	comp.	tu, tuus,	. .	Sansk.	tvam,
se, sibi,	,,	sui, suus,	. .	,,	svas.

Obs. A comparison of these pronouns with the Sanskrit shows that *v* was the original form, subsequently changed into *u*, and then dropped.

(4) In like manner V rarely comes into contact with a consonant following; for, when a vowel following is dropped, *v* becomes *u*, and then coalesces with the preceding vowel into a diphthong. Thus *av* becomes *au*, when the vowel following is dropped: as,

fautor	from	favitor,
nauta	,,	navita,
auceps	,,	aviceps,
audeo	,,	avideo; comp. avidus.

So *ov* becomes *ou* (afterwards written *u*), when the vowel following is dropped: as,

nuper	for	novumper (v. *Obs.* 1),
nunc	,,	novumce (v. *Obs.* 2),
Jupiter	,,	Jovipiter,
Juno	,,	Jovino,
jucundus	,,	juvicundus,
prudens	,,	providens.

In such cases *v* was probably pronounced like the English *w*.

Obs. 1. In *nuper* for *novum-per*, the preposition is added as an enclitic, like *parum-per*, *sem-per*, *paullis-per*, *tantis-per*, *aliquantis-per*.

Obs. 2. *Novum-ce* becomes first *noum-ce*, *num-ce*, and then *nun-c*; just as *hum-ce* becomes *hun-c*, and *tum-ce* becomes *tun-c*.

(5) V between vowels is frequently dropped: as,

petii	for	petivi,	malo	for	mavolo,
commorunt	,,	commoverunt,	aetas	,,	aevitas,
amarunt	,,	amaverunt,	ditior	,,	divitior,
nolo	,,	novolo,	vita	,,	vivita.

The *v* in the Perfect of the First Conjugation seems to have been usually omitted in the popular pronunciation; hence the perfect forms of the modern Italian *lavorai, amai, chiamai*, &c.

(B.) THE VOWELS.

§ 840.—(1) The vowels appear to have been pronounced in Latin much as they are in the modern Italian. According to the organs with which they are pronounced, A has the nearest relation to the Gutturals, I to the Dentals, and U to the Labials; while E has an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Dental *i*, and O an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Labial *u*.

(2) We learn from Quintilian that *e* in some cases had an intermediate sound between *e* and *i* ("in here neque *e* plane neque *i* auditur," i. 4, § 18), which sound was expressed in the prae-Augustan period by *ei*.

(3) There was in Latin an intermediate sound between *i* and *u*, very nearly equivalent to the sound of the Greek *υ*, the French *u*, and the German *ü*. This sound is frequently mentioned by grammarians. It is stated by them to have occurred in the following words:—

Before *m* in:

maxumus,	pulcherrumus,	sumus,
intumus,	acerrumus,	contumax,
extumus,	justissumus,	contumelia,
lacrumae,	volumus,	existumat,
optumus,	nolumus,	monumentum,
minumus,	possumus,	alumenta.

Before *b*, *p*, and *f* in:

manubiae,		
lubido,	aucupium,	aurufex.
intubus,	mancupium,	
artubus,	aucupare,	
manubus,	manupretium,	

And there are many words of a similar kind. This variation in the orthography is found chiefly before Labials. In the old inscriptions all such words appear with *u*, but in the inscriptions in the time of Caesar, Cicero, and Augustus, with an *i*. We are expressly told by the ancient grammarians that Caesar and Cicero employed the *i*,

though the country-people used the more ancient pronunciation with the *u*.

The Emperor Claudius attempted to introduce the new character ⊦, for this intermediate sound between *i* and *u* (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4); but it is curious that, in inscriptions, this character does not occur in any of the words already mentioned, but only as a representative of the Greek *υ*, as in: Aeg ⊦ pti, C ⊦ cnus, Bath ⊦ llus, &c.

Even in late inscriptions we sometimes find the *u* in such words; so that the intermediate sound between *u* and *i* seems never to have passed completely into *i*. In modern Italian the *i* is the most frequent, as in *ottimo*, *massimo*, *prossimo*, *intimo*, *libidine*, &c. But the *u* is still retained in *monumento* and *documento*.

(4) The following arrangement shows the comparative weight of the vowels in Latin, *a* being the heaviest and *i* the lightest:

a, *o*, *u*, *e*, *i*.

CHAPTER LXX.

FORMATION OF THE CASES.

§ 841. There appears to have been originally but one mode of declining Nouns in Latin—namely, by adding to the Stem a certain suffix for each case. The present "Five Declensions" have arisen through the changes undergone by these suffixes in combination with the final letter or letters of the Stem. In the following chapter it is shown in what way these changes were probably developed.

The origin of the case-suffixes is for the most part quite unknown. Their ultimate form is ascertained by comparison of the oldest known languages of the Indo-European or Aryan family. Yet it must not be supposed that Latin any more than Greek is *derived* from Sanskrit or any other known language. Only by approaching nearer to the source from which the streams of the Indo-European languages have diverged, we obtain their original elements in a less altered and corrupt form.

§ 842. Instead of the ordinary "Five Declensions," nouns may be classed according to the final letter of their Stem into Two Principal Declensions:

I. The Consonant Declension;

II. The Vowel Declension: the latter being subdivided into the

A = Declension,
E = „
I = „
O = „
U = „

§ 843. The "Five Declensions" correspond to these in the following way:—

1 Declension.	2 Declension.	3 Declension.	4 Declension.	5 Declension.
A Decl.	O Decl.	Consonant and I Decl.	U Decl.	E Decl.

The case-endings appear for the most part in their original forms in the Consonant Declension; while in the Vowel Declensions they undergo various changes through the combination of the vowels of the Stems with the vowels of the case-endings.

1. The Nominative Singular.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

§ 844. The suffix of the Nominative Singular of Masculine and (in most cases) Feminine Nouns is **s**, added immediately to the Stem: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
(Aenea-s).	avo-s	trab-s, avi-s.	gradu-s.	re-s

§ 845. *Third Declension.*—(1) In the Consonantal Stems, the ordinary euphonic changes must be observed. Thus: **cs**, **gs** = **x**; while **t**, **d**, and **s** disappear before the suffix: as, dux = duc + s; lex = leg + s; aetās = aetat + s; vas = vad + s.

Obs. In *nix*, *nivis*, the Stem was NIGV, which accounts for the *x* in the Nominative, while the *g* disappears in the oblique cases (v. 824, No. 2, iv.).

(2) Stems ending in **n** mostly reject **s**: as, tubĭcen, for tubicen + s; flamen, for flamen + s. But in some cases the *s* is retained and the *n* dropped: as, sanguis for sanguin + s.

(3) Stems ending in **on** reject both *n* and *s*: as, natio, for nation + s; virgo, for virgon + s; homo, for homon + s.: v. § 833, No. 2.

(4) Stems ending in **l** and **r**, reject the suffix: as, pater, dator, fur, consul, vigil.

Obs. Stems ending in *ant* and *ent* frequently reject the *n* as well as the *t* before *s* in the more ancient writers, as: *cogitas* instead of *cogitans*. For further examples, v. § 833, No. 4, iii.

(5) Many Stems have changed the earlier **s** of their Stem into **r**: as, arbos, arboris; earlier, arbos, arbosis. Similarly honos for honor; labos for labor, etc. (v. § 832, No. 1). Even the *s* of the Nominative is in one instance changed into *r*: namely, *quirquir* for quisquis (Varr. *L. L.* vii, 8, Müller).

§ 846. *Third Declension*:—I-stems.—(1) Many Stems in I have lost the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative, so that they apparently

belong to the Consonant Declension; but the majority have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, thus retaining their original vowel. Stems of Adjectives in *-ati, -eti, -iti, -ti*, mostly formed from Substantives, and signifying belonging to a place, had in the time of Naevius, Ennius, Plautus, and Cato, the-full Nominatives in *-atis, -etis, -itis, -tis;* but subsequently *-as, -es, -is, -s*, the *i* disappearing and the *t* being then elided according to euphonic laws: as,

Later Forms.	Old Forms.	Later Forms.	Old Forms.
Arpinas	Arpinatis	infimas	infimatis
Capenas	Capenatis	nostras	nostratis
Ardeas	Ardeatis	cujas	cujatis
Ferentinas	Ferentinatis	Samnis	Samnitis
Ravennas	Ravennatis	Quiris	Quiritis
Lavinas	Lavinatis	Caeres	Caeretis
primas	primatis	,,	Caeritis
optimas	optimatis	Laurens	Laurentis
summas	summatis	Tiburs	Tiburtis.

§ 847. In like manner a great number of Nouns formed by the suffix *ti*, drop the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative: as,

mens	mons	ars
dens	pons	pars
ingens	sons	mors
fons	frons	cohors, &c.

Obs. The Nom. in *is* in many of these words occurs in old writers: as Nom. *mentis* in Ennius quoted by Varr. *L. L.* v. 59; Nom. *sortis* in Plaut. *Cas.* ii. 6, 28.

§ 848. If a liquid precedes the *i*, the *s* of the Nominative is dropped as well as the *i:* as,

mugil	for	mugilis
pugil	,,	pugilis
vigil	,,	vigilis
linter	,,	linteris
Arar	,,	Araris (Prisc. v. 13)
par	,,	paris (Prisc. vii. 64)
vomer	,,	vomeris (Cat. *R. R.* 135)
caro(n)	,,	carnis (Prisc. vi. 17).

Obs. Hence the original form of the Nom. of *caro* must have been *caroni-s*, which became both *caro* and *carnis*. The Gen. Pl. *carni-um* is explained by the Stem being *car(o)ni*.

§ 849. Adjectives ending in the Nominative Masculine and Feminine in *er, ris* (v. § 58), as, acer, acris; pedester, pedestris, have Stems ending in *eri*. In such forms as acer and pedester, the *is* is

dropped altogether; while in acri-s and pedestr-is, the *e* disappears before the *r* as in the oblique cases.

§ 850. *First or A Declension.*—The Nominative of Masculine nouns of the A Declension must have originally ended in Latin in *s*, as they do in Sanskrit and Greek; but the frequent disappearance of *s* at the end of Latin words has been already pointed out (v. § 835, No. 5). S appears never to have been added to form the Nominative of Feminine Nouns of this Declension, as it is not found either in Sanskrit or Greek in Feminine Nouns in A. The final *a* of Feminine Stems was originally long in the Indo-European languages, as it is always in Sanskrit, and usually in Greek. In Latin it is short in the latter time of the Republic, and in the Augustan age; but it was long in the earlier poets, as in Ennius (*Annal.* 484, ed. Vahlen)—

Multo foro ponit et agĕā longa repletur.

§ 851. *Second or O Declension.*—The Nominative originally ended in *o-s*, whence we find in inscriptions such forms as *filios* and *primos* in the Nominative. Subsequently this *o* was softened into *u*; but since the combination *vu* and *uu* was avoided in Latin, the final *o* was retained, when preceded by *v* or *u*, even in the time of Augustus: as *Nom.* avos, servos, mortuos, &c.

§ 852. If an *r* precedes the final *o* of the Stem, both the *o* and *s*, the sign of the Nom., are usually dropped: as puer for puerus (comp. *Voc.* puere, Plaut. As. 2, 3, 2).

§ 853. The same omission takes place in one instance, where the *o* is preceded by *l:* as, *famul* instead of *famulus* (Enn. *Ann.* 317; Lucret. iii. 1035, ed. Lach.). Compare the omission of *is* in I nouns, when the final *i* of the Stem is preceded by *r* or *l* (§ 848).

Obs. Only a few Substantives and Adjectives retain *us* after *r:* as numer-us humer-us, vesper-us as well as vesper, uter-us (Gr. οὔθαρ), moriger-us (as compared with laniger, armiger, opifer).

§ 854. In some of the pronominal Stems in *o*, the Nom. *s* is omitted, and the *o* or *u* is softened into *e*. In this way came *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, from *illus* (*ollus*), *ipsus*, *istus*. In like manner the *o* of the Vocative is softened into *e* (v. § 859)

B. Neuter Nouns.

§ 855. All Neuter Nouns have the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative cases alike in each number. There are three forms for these cases in the Sing.: they are either (1) the same as the Stem; or (2) formed by adding *m;* or (3) by adding *d*, which is confined to pronouns.

§ 856. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., the same as the Stem.*—This is the case with Nouns of the Consonant and U Declensions: as, Stem and

Nom. *fulgur, genu.* In such Nominatives as *corpus* and *crus*, the *s* is part of the Stem and not the sign of the Nom., as is proved by the Gen. *corpor-is* and *crur-is*, in which the *r* represents the original *s* (v. § 832, No. 1). In *corpus*, the *o* of the Stem is softened into *u* as in the Nom. of the O Declension. In like manner, in such words as, *genus, gener-is*, the original Stem was *genos* as in Greek (γένος, softened γενες-), the *o* being softened into *u* in the Nom., and into *e* in the oblique cases. In Greek, the σ disappeared between two vowels, which then were contracted into one. Thus from an original Dative form *genos-i*, we have Lat. *gener-i*, and Gr. γένει.

So also the *o* has been softened into *u* in *ebur, femur*, the suffix *-ur* being a weakened form of *-os* and *-us*.

Obs. In such Adjectives as *capax, amans*, the Neuter, contrary to all analogy, retains in the Nom. the sign of the Masc. and Fem. Nom.; and the same form is used for the Neut. Acc.

In Stems in I, the final *i* either sunk into *e:* as, *mare, facile;* or, it was dropped altogether, especially in the terminations *ali* or *ari*. In the following words both forms occur:

animal	animale	cochlear	cochleare
tribunal	tribunale	torcular	torculare
puteal	puteale	exemplar	exemplare
pulvinar	pulvinare	lacunar	lacunare.

§ 857. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., with the case-ending* **m**.—This occurs only in the 2nd or O Declension: as, *dono-m* or *donu-m*. It is evidently the sign of the Accusative transferred to the Nominative; probably on the ground that a Neuter Substantive cannot be a true Subject, but is naturally regarded as Object.

§ 858. *The Nom., Acc., and Voc.*, with the *case-ending* **d**. This is confined to pronominal stems, ending both in *o* and *i:* as, *istu-d, illu-d, quo-d, aliu-d, i-d, qui-d*. By comparing the similar forms in Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination; and even in Latin these Neuters are frequently written with a final *t* instead of *d* (v. § 830, No. 1).

2. The Vocative Singular.

§ 859. The Vocative seems to have been originally the same as the stem, since in merely calling a person there was no occasion for a case-suffix to mark the relation of the word to other words in the sentence. But this form of the Vocative is retained only in the 2nd or O Declension, in which, however, the *o* ordinarily sinks into *e:* as, eque, lupe. In all the other Declensions the Voc. is the same as the Nom.; and even in the 2nd Declension the old Latin often exhibits the termination *us* in the *Voc.:* as, Populus Albanus, *O thou*

people of Alba. Also, deus is used as a *Voc.* (comp. Gr. Θεός, Voc. Θεός · later, Θεέ · N. Test.).

3. The Accusative Singular.

§ 860. The suffix of the Accusative Singular of all masculine and feminine nouns is m. When the stem ends in a vowel, the m is added to it immediately; when in a consonant, a connecting vowel (ĕ) is used: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-m	avo-m	reg-em	gradu-m	re-m
	dominu-m	navi-m.		

Obs. On the change of *o* into *u* in the 2nd Declension, see § 851.

§ 861. In the I Declension the old form *-im* is for the most part softened into *em*, though some words always, and others generally, retain the *i* (v. § 31).

Obs. 1. The termination *im* is almost always retained in Accusatives in *tim* and *sim*, used as adverbs: as,

conjunctim,	praesertim,
strictim,	cautim,
punctim,	gregatim,
partim,	acervatim, &c.

The suffix *tim* is softened into *sim*, when preceded by a dental or a liquid: as,

caesim (caedo),	sensim (sentio),
divisim (divido),	sparsim (spargo),
cursim (curro),	expulsim (expello).

In one adverbial accusative the *im* becomes *em*; namely, *saltem*.

Obs. 2. In the Accusative of consonant stems, the Latin preserves an older form than the Greek. Cf. Lat. *dentem*, Sansk. *dantam*, with Gk. ὀ-δόντ-α. The Greek sometimes even drops the *n* after stems in ο or ω of the 3rd Declension: as, *αἰδώς, shame;* Acc. *αἰδόα* (contr. *αἰδῶ*).

4. The Genitive Singular.

§ 862. The Suffix of the Genitive Singular was originally *is* for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-is	avo-is	reg-is	manu-is	re-is
musa-i	avo-i	nav(i)-is	manūs	re-i
musae	avi			

§ 863. There was, however, a still older form, *os*, answering to the Greek *ος*, which is found in inscriptions in some nouns of the 4th or U Declension:

senatu-os, magistratu-os, domu-os.

The form domu-os was used by Augustus (Suet. Oct. 87 · vulg. domos).

In inscriptions down to the time of Marius, we also find Genitives in *us:* as,

nomin-us	Vener-us
Castor-us	Cerer-us.

We may therefore conclude that the original form was *-os*, first softened into *-us* (v. § 851), and then into *-is:* e. g. Κάστορ-ος, Castor-us, Castor-is.

Obs. The reason of the retention of the *o* in *senatu-os, magistratu-os, domu-os,* is because the combination *uu* was avoided in Latin (v. § 851).

§ 864. The ancient form of the Suffix *-us* is retained in such words as:

istius	illius	ipsius
unius	totius	alius
ejus	cujus	hujus, &c.

Obs. The reason for the retention of the *u* in such words is that the combination *ii* was avoided in Latin.

§ 865. *Third or Consonant and I Declension.*—In Consonant Stems the *-is* is added to the Stem unaltered; in I Stems the *i* is dropped, but the vowel is not lengthened: as, navĭs.

Obs. In the oldest inscriptions we also find a *Gen.* in *es:* as,

Salut-es Apollon-es;

but the form in *is* was in all periods of the language the usual one in this Declension. In later times the popular dialect returned to the form in *es:* hence we find Caesar-es, campestr-es, pag-es (A.D. 508) for paçis.

§ 866. *First or A Declension.*—In the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions the final *s* of the termination *-is* is dropped, as is so frequently the case with a final *s* (v. § 835, No. 5). Then from the original form *a-is*, as musa-is, arose two sets of forms:

(i.) āī, a͡ī, ae (-e).

Or retaining the *s:*

(ii.). aes, as (es).

(1) The final *s* was dropped, whence the forms which frequently occur in the old poets and even in Virgil:

vitäi, pictäi, acquäi.

Both syllables were originally long, *āī*, which were first contracted into *a͡ī* and subsequently softened into *ae*.

(2) Or the final *s* of *ais* was preserved, and *ai* was then softened into *ae*, as dimidiaes: or the *i* was dropped, as terras.

The form in *aes* frequently occurs in both the Republican and Imperial inscriptions, especially in the names of females: as,

Pesceniaes,	dimidiaes,
Heraes,	suaes.

The form in *as* is frequently found in the older poets: as,

terras	fortunas
vias	escas.

It is retained in later writers in the common word paterfamilias.

Obs. The further softening of *ae* into *e* occurred in the third century A.D., and is found frequently in inscriptions of that period: as,

bone (for bonae)	provincies (for provinciae).
mire (for mirae)	victories (for victoriae).

§ 867. *Second or O Declension.*—After dropping the *s* of *o-is*, the diphthong *oi* was contracted into *ī*. This ī forms an intermediate sound between the E sound and I sound, and was represented by EI. Thus we find in inscriptions such forms as:

Romanei	agrei
populei	vinei.

Obs. As this intermediate sounded EI was sometimes pronounced like I and sometimes like E, we find it represented by both I and E. Hence we have in the *Nom. Pl.* of the O Declension the ancient forms, magistreis, magistris, magistres = magistri (v. § 885); and in the *Acc. Pl.* of the I Declension, naveis, navis, naves.

§ 868. Stems in *io* form the Genitive in *i*, not *ii*, in order to avoid the combination of two similar vowels: as,

praemi	Septimi
mancipi	Virgili, &c.

This is the correct orthography even in the Augustan age, though in later writers we find *ii*. The Single *i* is often written taller than the rest of the word: as, VIRGILI.

§ 869. *Fourth or U Declension.*—The oldest form was *u-os*, afterwards *u-is*, contracted usually into *ūs*, sometimes into *i*, with the final *s* omitted. Genitives in *u-os* have been already mentioned (v. 863): as, senatu-os, magistratu-os, domu-os.

Genitives in *u-is* occur in the ancient writers: as,

anu-is,	fructu-is	quaestu-is,
senatu-is,	domu-is	exercitu-is.

The diphthong *ui* is not only contracted into *u*, whence the common form senatūs, but also into *i*, as senati: just as *oi* is contracted into *i* in the O Declension (v. 867). The form in *i* is found in writers down to the time of Caesar: as,

victi	tumulti	fluctı
gemiti	sumpti	soniti
quaesti	strepiti	exerciti.

§ 870. *Fifth or E Declension.*—From the original form *e-is*, as die-is, we have the forms:

-es, -ei, -e, -ii.

§ 871. The *Gen.* in *-es* is found in the old writers and grammarians: die-s (Enn. Annal. 401, Vahlen), facie-s (Claudius Quadrig. in Gell. ix. 14, § 6), rabie-s (Lucret. iv. 1083, Lachmann); and Gellius (*l.c.*) also found die-s in old MSS. of Cicero and Virgil. We likewise find in other old writers quoted by grammarians:

pernicie-s, luxurie-s.

§ 872. The form in *-e* occurs in Plautus, Sallust, and even in the poets of the Augustan age: as,

die	requie
acie	fide.

§ 873. There was also in ancient times a form in *-ii*. Gellius (*l. c.*) quotes the following instances:

facii	dii
progenii	pernicii
fami	acii
luxurii	specii.

5. The Dative Singular.

§ 874. The Suffix of the Dative Singular was *-ī* for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-i	avo-i	reg-i	manu-i	re-i
musae	avō	nav(i)-i		

There was, however, a still older form *-bi*, which appears in

ti-bi	u-bi	i-bi
si-bi	alicu-bi	i-bi-que
	u-bi-que	i-bi-dem
	u-bi-cunque	

This Suffix corresponds to the Sanskrit *-bhyam*, to the Greek *-φι* or *-φιν*, and the Oscan *fe* (v. § 828, 2). The same Suffix appears in mi-hi. It has been already seen that, as the aspirate has been lost in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c., so the labial has disappeared in mi-hi (v. § 828).

This old Suffix has been retained in the *Dat Pl. -bus.*

§ 875. *Consonant or I Declension.*—Instead of i we also find in old inscriptions:

(1) *-ei*: as,

virtut-ei	Quirit-ei
Mart-ei	action-ei
Junon-ei	urb-ei

(2) *-e*: as,

patr-e	jur-e
Junon-e	Jov-e

Even in the flourishing period of Roman literature we find the datives aer-e and jur-e.

§ 876. *First or A Declension.*—The original form *a-i* was softened into *ae*, as in the Genitive. But the form *ai* frequently appears in inscriptions even in the time of Augustus and subsequently: as,

colonia-i	Julia-i
dea-i	Agrippina-i.

§ 877. *Second or O Declension.*—The lengthened ō (cf. Greek ω) is the only remaining trace of the original Suffix.

(1) But *o-i* is preserved in inscriptions and by the grammarians: as,

populo-i	quo-i (for cui)
Romano-i	ho-i-c (for hui-c).

Obs. *Quoi* and *hoi-c* became *cui* and *hui-c*, because the U sound is more nearly related to *i* than to *o*.

(2) The form *ei* occurs in inscriptions in words which form their genitives in *-ius:* as,

quoiei = cui
eiei = ei
ipsei = ispi.

§ 878. *Fourth or U Declension.*—(1) Instead of the common form in *u-i* we find in an inscription senatu-ei.

(2) As *ui* passed easily into *u*, we find the latter form, which Caesar declared the preferable one (Gell. iv. 16), in all periods of the language. Thus it occurs in:—

Sallust.	Virgil.	Livy.	Tacitus.
luxu	metu	exercitu	luxu
exercitu	victu	usu	
usu	concubitu.		

It is the regular form in the Neuters: as,

cornu, gelu.

§ 879. *Fifth or E Declension.*—In the same way in this Declension *ei* passed into *e*. Thus we find in the classical writers:

facie, fide, pernicie.

§ 880. In the first three Declensions, which include all names of places, the Dative has in almost every instance been confused with the old

Locative Case.—This case, which in Sanskrit is most frequently marked by the Suffix *i*, no doubt originally existed in Greek and Latin with the same termination. The Greek οἴκοι and χαμαί are genuine Locatives; and such Latin forms as Romae (= Romai), *at Rome*,

Mileti, *at Miletus*, are strictly Locatives and not Genitives (v. § 257, *Obs.*). In the same way, domi, *at home*, and humi, *on the ground*, are Locatives.

6. The Ablative Singular.

§ 881. The oldest Suffix of the Ablative in Latin was **d** or **ed**, a softened form of *t*, the termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit. We find on the Columna Rostrata and in other ancient inscriptions the following forms:

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.
Hinnad	poplicod	dictatorid	senatud
ead	Gnaivod	conventionid	
sententiad	altod	marid	

The *d* was subsequently dropped and the final vowel of the Stem lengthened: as,

musā, avō, navī. manū, rē.

Though the final *e* of the 3rd Declension is short in the poets of the Augustan age, it is long in Ennius, and is represented by *ei* in the earlier inscriptions. Thus we find:

virtutei
partei
fontei.

In Greek this Ablative Suffix is preserved in Adverbs in -ως (= ωτ), as *ὁμῶς* from the Stem *ὁμο*, where we also find the long vowel.

Obs. 1. This old Ablative form is preserved in Latin in other words. *Mēd* and *tēd* are found in Plautus as Ablatives of *ego* and *tu*. *Sed* is also an Ablative of *sui*, signifying originally "by one's self," and then "apart," "but:" in composition the *d* is dropped, as *sē-cerno*, *sē-cedo*, &c. In the same way *pro*, originally *prod* (cf. *prod-eo prod-igus*), was an Ablative.

Obs. 2. Adverbs in *e* formed from Stems in O were originally Ablatives, which have lost their final *d*. This appears from the form *facilumed*, which we find in the Senatusconsultum de Bacchanalibus.

7. Nominative and Vocative Plural.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

§ 882. The Suffix of the *Nom. Pl.* is **s**, with some connecting vowel, which was probably added to the Nom. Sing.: as avi-s, *pl.* avis-ĕs contracted into avēs; rex (i. e. reg-s), *pl.* regs-ĕs, contr. regēs; gradu-s, *pl.* gradŭs-ĕs, contr. gradūs.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or I Decl.
musa-is	avos-is	regs-es	gradus-es	res-es.
musai	avis	reg-es	gradū-s	re-s.
musae	avi	avis-es		
		av(i)-es		

§ 883. *Consonant and I Declension.*—In both these classes of Stems, besides the Suffix *es* we have *eis* and *is*, though these terminations are more common in the Accusative than in the Nominative. Thus Varro (L. L. viii. 66, Müller) expressly says that the *Nom. Pl.* puppis and restis were used as well as puppes and restes; and we also find the *Nom. Pl.* in *is* in the best MSS.

§ 884. *The First or A Declension.*—The Suffix **s** was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was musa-is. We find in the Senatus-consultum de Bacchanalibus and in a few old inscriptions, a *Nom Pl.* in *ai*: as,

tabulai	eāī
datai	litterai, &c.

This diphthong *ai* was, however, early softened into *ae*. Though the form *a-is* as a *Nom. Pl.* is not found, the *s* must have originally existed, since it occurs in the O Stems down to the time of the Social War (v. § 885), and in all the other Stems down to the latest period of the language.

§ 885. *The Second or O Declension.*—The Suffix **s** was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was (avos-is) avo-is. The **s** is preserved in inscriptions down to the time of the Social War, and the diphthong *oi* underwent the following changes, of all which we have examples in inscriptions:

oe=oi.	e.	ei.	i.
pilumnoe	magistre-s	magistrei-s	magistri-s
poploe	duomvire-s	gnatei-s	ministri-s
(both in	modie-s	liberei-s	magistri
Carmen	ploirume	filiei	ministri
Saliare)	plurume	oinvorsei	universi.

Obs. From the diphthong OI arose the sound EI, which was intermediate between ī and ē, and which was sometimes written I, and sometimes E (v. 867, *Obs.*).

8. The Accusative Plural.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

§ 886. The Accusative Plural appears to have been originally formed by the addition of **s** to the Accusative Singular, before which the nasal (*n* or *m*) was elided.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musam-s	avom-s	regem-s	manum-s	rem-s
musā-s	avō-s	regē-s	manū-s	rē-s.
		avim-s		
		avī-s		

Obs. In Gothic the Suffix *ns* of the Acc. Pl. has remained entire: as, *vulpa-ns* (= lupō-s), *gasti-ns* (= hostī-s), *sunu-ns* (= pecū-s). Compare in Greek the *Acc. Pl.* ἀγρούς (for ἀγρον-ς), where the diphthong compensates for the omission of the final *n*: so, τύπτουσι, ὀδούς, for τυπτοντ-σι, ὀδοντ-ς.

§ 887. In the Consonant and I Stems the Acc. Pl. was also written *eis* or *is* as well as *es*, as in the Nom. (v. § 883). From Stems in *i* the form in *is* was common, along with that in *es*, in the best periods of the language.

Neuter Nouns.

§ 888. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plural of all neuter nouns end in ă: as,

corpor-ă regn(o)-ă cornu-ă
mari-ă.

In Zend, Greek, and Gothic we have the same Suffix for these cases in the Neuter. The Sanscrit suffix is *-ni*.

Obs. The origin of this Suffix is doubtful. It is perhaps a vocalization of the *n*, which appears in Sanscrit; as in Herodotus, Καμβύσεα for Καμβύσην. The light vowel ĭ would then be readily absorbed.

9. The Genitive Plural.

§ 889.—(1) The original Suffix of the Genitive Plural was **-sum**, softened into **-rum**; the *s* or *r* is usually dropped in the Consonant, I and U Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musā-rum	avō-rum	bov-ĕ-rum (v. § 390.)	arcu-um	die-rum
		reg-um		
		navi-um.		

Obs. The original form of the Genitive Plural in the Indo-European languages is *-sâm* or *-sôm*. In Sanskrit *-sâm* is the Suffix of the *Gen. Pl.* of pronouns: as, *tâ-sâm* = *istā-rum*. In Greek the *s* is dropped, but the long ō preserved: as, μουσά-ων for μουσά-σων. In Latin the *s* is changed into *r* (v. § 832, No. 1), and the *-rom* softened into *-rum*.

§ 890. Even in the Consonant Declension the *r* of the Suffix is preserved in some ancient forms, as bov-e-rum, Jov-e-rum (Varr. L. L. viii. 74, Müller), and nuc-e-rum, reg-e-rum, lapid-e-rum (Charis. i. p. 40, P.). On the other hand, the early poets frequently dropped

the *r* in the A and O Declensions: as, meûm factûm for meorum factorum, duûm virûm for duorum virorum (Cic. Or. 46, § 155, who quotes other instances). Even in later times, the *-um* was the more usual form in many nouns of the A and O Declension, especially with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades, as drachmûm for drachmarum, nummûm for nummorum (v. § 17, *Obs.* 3; § 19, *Obs.* 4).

§ 891. Genitives in *-i-um*, as a general rule, come from Stems ending in I, and Genitives in *-um* from Stems ending in a *Consonant*. Such forms as mentium, sortium, animalium, are no exceptions to this rule, as the Stems of those words originally ended in *i* (v. §§ 847, 848). But there appears to have been some confusion between the Stems in I and those ending in a Consonant, probably arising from the omission of the *i* in the Nom. Sing. Thus we find civitat-ium from a *Consonant* Stem, and canum, panum, juvenum from I Stems. In the same way Cicero has in one place (Sext. 20) sedum for sedium; Virgil (Aen. iv. 464), vatum for vatium; and Ovid (Met. viii. 500), mensum for mensium.

10. The Dative and Ablative Plural.

§ 892. The original Suffix of these cases appears to have been **-bius**, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyas*. From the contraction of the vowels arose the two forms **-bīs** and **-būs**, afterwards **-bŭs**. The form *bīs* occurs in no-bis, vo-bis, and in the A and O Stems, with elision of the *b*, as in the A Stems in Sanskrit. The form *bus* occurs in the other Stems.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-(b)is	avo-(b)is	reg-ĭ-bus	manŭ-bus	rē-bus
musīs	avīs	navĭ-bus	manĭ-bus.	

Obs. 1. The long *u* in *būs* is found in omnibūs, Plaut. Aulul. ii. 8, 8; pectoribūs, Virg. Æn. iv. 64.

Obs. 2. The form -bus occurs in some A Stems, as dea-bus, filia-bus, &c. (v. § 17, *Obs.* 4.)

Obs. 3. In the A and O Stems the vowels *a-is* and *o-is* have undergone several of the changes already mentioned (v. §§ 866, 885). In A Stems we find in inscriptions *eis* for the ancient *ais*: as,

incoleis, vieis, tabuleis.

In O Stems the old forms,

suo-is, gnato-is,

are still preserved in inscriptions. Besides these we find *eis* for *ois*: as,

amiceis, sueis, agreis.

CHAPTER LXXI.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 893. There are two forms of the Comparative in Latin: (1) **-ior** (originally **-ios**) *Neut.* **-ius** and (2) **-ter**; the former corresponding to the Gr. *ιων, ιον*, and the latter to the Gr. *τερος*.

§ 894. The suffix **-ios** (*-ior*) is sometimes shortened into **-us** and **-is**, just as from **-bius**, the original termination of the Dat. and Abl. Pl. arose the two forms *-bus* and *-bis* (v. § 892).

(1) The form in **-us** from **-ius** is seen in

minus, plus.

(2) The form in **-is** from **-ius** is seen in *magis;* also in the following adverbs, which appear to have been originally Comparatives:

nimis,
aliquantisper,
paullisper,
pauxillisper,
tantisper.

§ 895. The suffix **-ter** appears only in words not usually recognised as Comparatives: as,

al-ter, u-ter, neu-ter, dex-ter.

Also in the following words, which contain a double comparative suffix:

mag-is-ter, min-is-ter, sin-is-ter.

§ 896. The common suffix of the Superlative in Latin is **-issimus**, which appears to have arisen from a combination of the Comparative suffix *-is* (*ios, ior*) with the Superlative suffix *-timus* (Sanskrit *-tamas*): i. e. **is-timus**, by assimilation **issimus**.

The Superlative suffix **-timus** appears in

op-timus (rt. OP: cf. op-es, *good things, riches*),
in-timus,
ul-timus,
ci-timus,
ex-timus,
dex-timus,
sin-is-timus (Fest. p. 74, Superlative of sinister, like dextimus of dexter).
soll-is-timus (Fest. p. 289, Superlative of sollus).

To this head may also be referred the forms in **-llimus** and **-rrimus**, by assimilation from *-ltimus* and *-rtimus:* as,

facil-limus = facil-timus,
simil-limus = simil-timus,
pulcher-rimus = pulcher-timus,
veter-rimus = veter-timus.

Obs. Also perhaps maximus = mag-ti-mus.

§ 897. The suffix **-timus** itself appears to be a combination of the suffixes *-tus* and *-mus*.

(1) **-tus** appears as a Superlative suffix in:

quan-tus, quin-tus, sex-tus, quo-tus.

(2) **-mus** appears as a Superlative suffix in:

pri-mus, min-i-mus, supre-mus, infi-mus.

CHAPTER LXXII.

FORMATION OF THE PERSONS AND TENSES OF THE VERBS.

(A) ACTIVE VOICE.

Personal Endings.

§ 898. *Personal Endings of Singular.*—It has been already pointed out (§ 105) that these are the Personal pronouns in a mutilated form (**m, s, t**). These characteristic consonants are in Greek in the Present Tense (of verbs in μι), and in Sanskrit in the Present and Future Tenses of all verbs, followed by a short vowel. Compare the following:—

Present.

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.
da-dâ-mi.	δί-δω-μι.	do.
da-dâ-si.	δί-δω-σ(ι).	da-s.
da-dâ-ti.	δί-δω-τι (old form).	da-t.

In Latin the final short vowel has everywhere fallen away; and it has been followed by the *m* of the first person in all Present Tenses except sum, inquam, and those of the Subjunctive Mood; and in the Future Tenses without a single exception.

§ 899. *Personal Endings of Plural.*—These are perhaps derived from the corresponding forms of the Singular, by the use of a plural suffix: namely, **s** in the first and second persons, and **n** in the

third. Thus, amamus = ama-*mi* + s; amatis = ama-*ti* + s (the original form of the second personal pronoun being in *t* not *s*); amant = ama-n-t (the plural sign preceding the *t* for the sake of euphony).

Formation of the Tenses.

§ 900. *Present Indicative.*—The present Indicative has ordinarily no tense suffix. Thus the forms am-o, ama-s, ama-t, are formed immediately from the stem ama. In this respect the Latin differs from the Greek and Sanskrit, in which languages the tense prefixes and suffixes are constant. The following are the cases in which tense elements of formation have been either retained or added:—

(1) *Reduplication:* as,

gi-g'n-o (Gr. γι-γ'ν-ο-μαι),
si-st-o (Gr. ἵ-στη-μι, Sanskr. si-stâ-mi).

(2) The liquid **n** after r: as,

ster-no (Gr. στορέ-ννυ-μι),
cer-no (Gr. κρί-νω).

(3) A liquid (**m** or **n**) before a mute: as,

fra(n)go,	rt. frăg-,
ta(n)go,	„ tăg- (Gr. θιγ),
pa(n)go,	„ păg- (Gr. παγ),
fi(n)go,	„ fĭg-,
pi(n)go,	„ pĭg-,
ju(n)go, *I join*,	„ jug- (Gr. ζυγ),
fi(n)do, *I cleave*,	„ fĭd-,
sci(n)do, *I rend*,	„ scĭd-,
ru(m)po, *I burst*,	„ rup-,
[cu(m)bo, *I lie*],	„ cŭb-.

(4) The lengthening of the root vowel: as,

dūco,	rt. dŭc-,
fīdo, confīdo,	„ fĭd- (as in fĭd-es),
dīco,	„ dĭc- (as in male-dĭcus, in-dĭc-o, etc.).

Obs. Compare Gr. λείπω, rt. λἰπ-; σπείρ-ω, rt. σπερ- (as in σπερ-μα). The process is rare in Latin.

(5) The inceptive suffix **-sco**: as,

cre-sco,	rt. cre- (as in cre-o),
adol-e-sco,	„ (ad)-ol-,
re-min-i-scor,	„ (re)-men- (as in men-s).

(6) The letter **t** after c: as,

plec-to,	rt. plec- (Gr. πλέκ-ω),
plec-tor,	„ plēc- (Gr. πλήττω).

The stem of the Present Indicative is used in forming the other Imperfect Tenses: as, fi-n-do, *Past-Imperf.* find-e-bam, ster-n-o, *Fut.* ster-n-am.

§ 901. *Past-Imperfect Tense Indicative.*—The suffix of this Tense is **-bam**, added to the stem of the Present: as, ama-bam. Before it a short vowel is lengthened: as, amā-bam, monē-bam, reg-ē-bam, audi-ē-bam. The long connecting vowel in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, is probably owing to analogy with verbs of the second conjugation. Verbs of the fourth conjugation originally ended in *-i-bam*, without the connecting vowel: thus we find in the older poets, and sometimes in the poets of the Augustan age, such forms as,

sci-bam,	nesci-bam,
ai-bam,	exaudi-bam,
muni-bam,	poli-bam, &c.

I-bam from eo is the regular form in all writers.

The suffix *-bam* is probably a shortened form of fu-am, *I was*, from the root FU, like er-am from the root ES (sum). The aspirate is dropped in *-bam*, as explained in § 828.

Obs. 1. The Imperfect er-am (es-am) is the only remaining instance of the original formation of the tense. Compare Sanskr. as-am, from rt. AS (*to be*); Gr. *ἔ-τυπτ-ον*, from *τύπτω*.

Obs. 2. The form *fu-am*, assumed as formative element above, corresponds with Gr. *ἔ-φυ-ν*.

Obs. 3. No trace remains in Latin of the Augment of the Greek and Sanskrit Past Tenses.

§ 902. *Future Tense Indicative.*—The suffix of this tense is **-bo**, added to the stem of the present: as, amā-bo, monē-bo, It is probably a shortened form of *fuo*, the future of the stem FU, like *ero* from the root ES (sum).

The third and fourth conjugations had originally the same suffix as the first and second: besides *i-bo* from *eo*, and *sci-bo* from *scio*, we frequently find in the older language the suffix **-bo** in the fourth conjugation: as.

nesci-bo,	audi-bo,	expedi-bo,
aperi-bo,	oboedi-bo,	servi-bo,
saevi-bo,	grandi-bo,	operi-bo,
veni-bo,	subveni-bo,	dormi-bo.

This form is rarer in the third conjugation, but we find the following Futures in the older writers, the **-bo** being affixed by means of the connecting vowel *e*: as,

viv-e-bo	instead of	viv-am,
dic-e-bo	,,	dic-am,
exsug-e-bo	,,	exsug-am.

§ 903. But in the third and fourth conjugation the formation in *-bo* was in course of time lost, and the defect supplied by the substitution of the Potential form

a-m,	e-s,	e-t,
e-mus,	e-tis,	e-nt.

The formative element is **-ya** or **-ia**, the suffix of the Optative. The suffix is contracted into **ê**, except in the first person, which follows the first person of the Present Subjunctive. See further, § 907.

§ 904. *Perfect Tense Indicative.*—There are four ways of forming the Perfect:

(1) By added **-vi** and **-ui** to the stem, which is the most common form, and the usual way of forming the Perfects of the first, second, and fourth conjugations: as, ama-vi, mon-ui, audi-vi. This suffix is the same as the Perfect *fui* of the auxiliary verb, the *f* disappearing before the *v* and the *u*, like *d* before the *v* in viginti, and *g* before the *v* in nives: v. § 827, No. 2; § 824, No. 2. In some of the kindred Italian dialects we find the full form of the auxiliary verb preserved: as in the Umbrian perfects *piha-fei* and *ambre-furent*.

Obs. 1. The Perfect of the root FU was probably formed by adding the Present tense of sum, as the Past-Perfect, and Future-Perfect of FU were formed by adding the Imperfect and Future tenses of the same verb: as, *fu-eram*, *fu-ero*. The root of *'s-um* is ES, which appears in the Perfect of FU in the shortened form IS (comp. English *is*). We may, therefore, suppose the oldest form to have been:

fu-is-(m) (Comp. Gr. ἐσ-μί),
fu-is-ti („ ἐσ-σί),
fu-is-t,
fu-is-mus,
fu-is-tis,
fu-is-unt.

This accounts for the forms fu-**i**, fu-**is**-ti, and fu-**er**-unt, where the *er* represents *is*, as in pulv*is*, pulv*er*-is. It also accounts for the fact that the final vowel of the third person singular of the Perfect is often long in the poets, since *-it* was originally *-ist*.

(2) By adding **-si** to the stem, which corresponds to *-σα*, the characteristic of the Greek First-Aorist: as, scrip-si, plexi (cf. Gr. ἔ-πλεξ-α).

Obs. 2. The original form of this suffix is seen by comparison of the parallel forms in Greek and Sanskrit, *-σα* and *-sam*. It is the Imperfect tense of the verb *'s-um*, namely, *es-am* (*er-am*); which was added to the stem, with elision of the initial vowel. Compare Lat. scrip-s-i, with Gr. ἔ-δειξ-α, and Sanskr. *a-dik-sham*.

(3) By *Reduplication*, which is the regular mode of forming the Perfect in Greek: as, te-tend-i.

Obs. 3. The most ancient form of the Reduplication was probably a repetition of the root syllable of the verb, denoting completeness of action.

(4) By *lengthening the vowel* of the stem: as, mōvi from mŏveo.

Obs. 4. This may have been also a reduplicated form originally: mŏ-mŏvi becoming mōvi.

§ 905. *Past-Perfect and Future-Perfect Indicative.*—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect, the Imperfect and Future of sum: as, amav-eram, amav-ero (v. § 904, *Obs.* 1). But in the Future-Perfect there was a still older suffix **-'so** instead of *eso = ero.* This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in *faxo* = fecero; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled, hence it appears in the forms *asso* and *esso:* as,

amasso	= amavero,	prohibesso	= prohibuero,
indicasso	= indicavero,	capso	= cepero,
enicasso	= enicavero,	accepso	= accepero,
levasso	= levavero,	occepso	= occepero,
liberasso	= liberavero,	recepso	= recepero,
peccasso	= peccavero,	rapso	= rapuero.
observasso	= observavero,		

In the same way *-sim* occurs instead of *-erim* in the Perfect Subjunctive: v. 909.

§ 906. *Imperative Mood.*—(1) The short (Present) form of the Imperative Singular anciently ended in **s** (softened form = Sanskr. *-dhi*; Gr. *-θι*), which was subsequently dropped: as ama-s, mone-s, audi-s, reg-e-s, afterwards ama, mone, audi, reg-e: v. § 835, No. 5. In like manner *τύπτ-ε* was originally *τύπτ-ε-ς.*

(2) The longer (Future or Emphatic) form of the Imperative is strengthened in the second and third Persons Singular by the suffix **-to** (Sanskr. -tu; Gr. *-τω*), originally **-tod.** *Es-tod* occurred in the laws of the kings (Festus, p. 230, Müller). This suffix corresponds to the Oscan *-tud:* as, *es-tud, ac-tud, fac-tud,* &c.: v. § 830, No. 3.

§ 907. *Present Subjunctive.*—In Latin the Subjunctive and Optative are united in one mood. The formative element of the Subjunctive appears to be **-a** in the Aryan languages: and this is the sign of the Present Subjunctive in Latin, in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations: as, mone-a-m, reg-a-m, audi-a-m. This vowel element also accounts for the length of the final syllable in the Greek Subjunctive: as, *τύπ-τω, -ῃς, -ῃ,* &c.

The formative element of the Optative appears to be **-ya** or **-ia,** and sometimes simply **-i.** In Greek it appears in the form *-ι.*

Thus from the Sanskrit AS, "to be," and the Greek τίπτω, "I strike," we have:

Sing. 1.	s-*yâ*-m from as-yâ-m,	τύπτο-ι-μι,
2.	s-*yâ*-s,	τύπτο-ι-ς,
3.	s-*yâ*-t,	τύπτο-ι.
Plur. 1.	s-*yâ*-ma,	τυπτο-ι-μεν,
2.	s-*yâ*-ta,	τύπτο-ι-τε,
3.	s-*yus*,	τύπτο-ι-εν.

In Latin we have the formative element of *i* in the Subjunctives:

sim (old form siem),	duim,
velim,	adduim,
nolim,	interduim,
malim,	perduim,
edim,	creduim.
comedim,	
exedim,	

Also in the first conjugation:

amem = ama-im,
ames = ama-is,
amet = ama-it, &c.

The same formative element appears in the Future Indicative of the third and fourth conjugations: v. § 903.

§ 908. *Imperfect Subjunctive.*—The suffix of this tense is **-rem** (originally **-sem**), and with the connecting vowel **-ĕ-rem**: as, ama-rem, mone-rem, audi-rem, reg-ĕ-rem.

The form *-sem* is seen in es-sem; and in the following words the *s* assimilates to the preceding liquid:

vel-lem = vel-sem,
mal-lem = mal-sem,
nol-lem = nol-sem,
fer-rem = fer-sem,

§ 909. *Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctives.*—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect **-erim** and **-issem**, which are the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive respectively of the verb sum: *-erim* being the same as *esim* or *'sim*, and *-issem* as *essem*.

In the Perfect Subjunctive the suffix *-sim* is used in some older forms, like *-so* instead of *-ero* in the Future-Perfect Indicative. This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in faxim = fecerim, and ausim from audeo; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled. Several of these

verbs are given in § 905. The following are a few more examples :—

appellassis = appellaveris,	habessit = habuerit,
amassint = amaverint,	prohibessint = prohibuerint,
intrassis = intraveris	serpsit = serpserit.

§ 910. *Imperfect Infinitive.*—The suffix is **-re** (originally **-se**), and with connecting vowel **-ĕ-re**: as, ama-re, mone-re, audi-re, leg-e-re. The *s* of the original suffix appears in *es-se*.

This suffix differs not only from the Greek and Sanskrit, but also from the Oscan. The Greek Infinitive ends in *-μεναι* or *-μεν*, in some cases shortened into *-ναι*, in others into *-ειν*; the Sanskrit Infinitive is the Accusative of a verbal substantive, and ends in *-um*; also the Oscan Infinitive ends in *-um*. This corresponds to the Latin first supine.

§ 911. *Perfect Infinitive.*—The suffix is **-isse** added to the Stem of the Perfect, and is the same as *esse*, the Infinitive of sum: as, amav-isse.

§ 912. *The Imperfect Participle.*—The suffix is **-nt**, or with connecting vowel **e-nt**, of course in the Nom. *-ns*: as, ama-n-s, ama-nt-is. It is the same with the Sanskr. *-ant* (Nom. masc. *-an*); Gr. *-ο-ντ*; Germ. *-end*; Anglo-Sax. *-and*; Eng. *-ing*.

§ 913. *The Gerund and Gerundive.*—The suffix is **-undo, -endo, -ndo.** The oldest form of the suffix is *-undo*, of which there was a still more ancient form *-ondo*, which occurs in inscriptions: for instance, faci-ondam and vere-c-ondus. The form *-undo*, except in the case of a few words, was supplanted by that of *-endo*.

There have been various conjectures as to the origin of this suffix, but that of Corssen is the most probable; that it consists of two parts, *un-do*, of which the *-un*, originally *-on*, is the same as the *-on* in the verbal nouns:

ger-on,	*Nom.* gero,
ed-on,	„ edo,
com-bib-on,	„ combibo.

From this the gerund was perhaps formed by adding the passive adjectival suffix do-s: whence

ger-on-do-s,	afterwards	ger-un-du-s,
ed-on-do-s	„	ed-un-du-s,
com-bib-on-do-s,	„	com-bib-un-du-s.

Corssen shows clearly that the notion of necessity or duty does not

belong originally to the gerund, but that it is a verbal adjective or noun: for instance, ori-un-dus signifies simply *rising from*, sec-un-dus (from sequor), *following*. (Compare § 714.)

§ 914. *The Future Participle.*—The suffix is **-turu-s**, which is probably the same as the suffix *-tor*, with an adjectival termination: as, da-tor, da-tur-u-s, ama-tor, ama-tur-u-s.

Obs. From the Future Part. is formed the Desiderative suffix *-tŭrio*, in which the addition of a new formative element (*ya*, § 907), has caused the shortening of the antepenultima.

§ 915. *The Supines.*—The suffixes are **-tum**, **-tu**, sometimes **-sum**, **-su**, which are verbal substantives in the Accusative and Ablative Case respectively. (Compare § 910.)

(B) Passive Voice.

§ 916. The Latin Passive Verb is formed in a totally different way from the Greek and Sanskrit. Those languages exhibit in the Middle (or Passive) a double form of the Personal Pronouns: thus, Gr. *τύπτομαι* = *τυπτ-ο-μα-(μ)-ι*, *I strike myself*; *τύπτεσαι* (old form of *τύπτει* or *η*) = *τυπτ-ε-σα-σι*, *Thou strikest thyself*; &c. In Latin, the Passive (or Reflective) is formed by adding to the corresponding forms of the Active the Reflective Pronoun **se**, *oneself*. Thus amor = amo-se (*s* becoming *r*, according to § 832); amaris (afterwards shortened into amare) = amas-(i)-se; amatur = amat-u-se. Similarly, in the plural, amamur = amamus-se; amantur = amant-(u)-se. The form amamini (estis) has been already explained (§ 105, note).

Similarly in the Past-Imperf. and Future, amabar = amabam-se, *m* being lightly sounded in Latin, and therefore readily elided (cf. § 834, No. 3); amabaris = amabas-(a)-se; amabatur = amabat-(u)-se; &c.

In the Imperative Mood, amare is equivalent to ama-se. The second pers. plur. amamini is used with an ellipsis of the Imperative Mood este. The form **ĭnor** (second pers. plur.) is obscure, but is probably formed from an archaic second pers. sing. in **ino**, according to the analogy of amato-r, amanto-r, etc. Comp. praefamino (= praefaminŏs esto), Cato, R. R. 141.

§ 917. *Infinitive Passive.*—The original termination of the Imperfect Infinitive Passive was in **-ier** (see § 111, 1), a form difficult to analyse. But the double vowel (*ie*) is probably due to the originally long final of the Infinitive Active (ê). Thus perhaps amar-ê-r may have resolved itself into amar-ier. The common form in i is an abreviation of this.

§ 918. *Perfect Participle.*—The participial ending in **-minus** (Gr. *-μενος*) has ceased in Latin to retain its original function. Instead of it is used the suffix **-tus** (Sanskr. *-ta-s*, with same function; Gr. *τός*, usually with force of a Latin adjective in *-bilis*).

Obs. 1. But the participial termination *minus*, *menus*, has left various traces of itself: as,

(1.) In the second pers. plur. of all uncompound tenses in the Passive Voice (§ 105, note): as, amamini, amabamini (formed after the analogy of the Present), etc.

(2.) In a few substantives in **-umnus** (syncopated for Gr. *-όμενος*); as, alumnus (from alo), *one who is being nurtured, a nursling;* Vertumnus (vertor), *the deity who constantly turns and changes, the god of the seasons.*

(3.) In a large number of substantives in **-men** (§ 181, 7), some of which have retained their passive force, while in others it can no longer be traced: as, ag-men (ago), *that which is being led, an army in motion;* gesta-men (gesto), *anything that is wont to be carried;* se-men (sero), *that which is sown, seed:* also, flu-men, *that which flows;* ful-men, *that which flashes*, etc.

Obs. 2. The termination **-men** is further lengthened by the addition of the element **-tum**: as, monu-men-tum, from moneo; in-cre-mentum, from cre-sco: Also probably we may recognise the same element in such words as matri-*mon*-ium, patri-*mon*-ium. (Schleicher.)

Another passive participial suffix is **-nus** (Sanskr. *-nas*), equivalent to **-tus**. This is found after only a few verbal roots in Latin: as, dig-nus, lit. *shown, pointed at* (rt. dig—Gr. *δεικ*, *to show, point*), hence, *worthy;* mag-nus, (*made*) *great* (rt. mag-).

Obs. But the same suffix is probably to be recognised in adjectives in **-i-nus** (Gr. *ινος*), **-a-nus**, **-nus**: as, quer-nus, *made of oak;* salig-nus, *made of willow-wood;* human-a-nus, *of the nature of man, human;* femin-i-nus, *of woman*, etc.

Appendix I.—Latin Authors.

§ 919. A. *Prae-classical Period* (B.C.).

Cn. Naevius (3rd cent.):—Epic poem on the First Punic War; and other poetry.

Q. Ennius (239-169); born at Rudiae in Calabria:—Epic poem on Roman History; Dramas, Satires, etc.

M. Pacuvius (cir. 220-130); probably born at Brundusium:—Tragedies.

L. Attius or Accius (170-cir. 90); son of a freedman:—Tragedies.

M. Porcius Cato (234-149):—History of Rome (*Origines*); Treatise *De Re Rustica*.

Caecilius Statius (ob. 168); born at Mediolanum (Milan), and a slave by birth:—Comedies.

Lucilius (148-103); Satires.

L. Afranius (flor. 94):—Comedies.

T. Accius (more properly Maccius) Plautus (254-184, B.C.); born at Sarsĭna in Umbria:—Comedies, twenty in all extant, besides fragments.

P. Terentius Afer (195-159, B.C.); a freedman, and said to have been a native of Carthage:—Comedies (*six*).

Obs. With the exception of the treatise on farming (De Re Rustica) by M. Porcius Cato, and the Comedies of Plautus and Terence, only fragments of the works of the above authors have come down to us.

§ 920. B. *Golden Age.*

M. Terentius Varro (116-28, B.C.); born at Rome:—wrote De Lingua Latina, and De Re Rustica; besides a work on Roman History and some Satires, not extant.

M. Tullius Cicero (106-43, B.C.); born at Arpīnum:—Rhetorical works; Speeches in private and public cases; philosophical and ethical works; Letters.

C. Julius Caesar (100-44, B.C.); born at Rome:—Commentaries or memoirs of his own times, viz., the Gallic and Civil Wars.

T. Lucretius Carus (95-52, B.C.); born at Rome:—Poem in six books, expounding the Epicurean philosophy ("De Rerum Natura").

C. Valerius Catullus (87-47, B.C.); of Verona:—Lyric and elegiac poetry.

C. SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS (86-35, B.C.); born at Amiternum:—Historical works; of which the Catiline and Jugurtha are extant.

P. VERGILIUS (or VIRGILIUS) MARO (70-19, B.C); born at Andes near Mantua:—Bucolics, Georgics; Aeneid; also some short pieces.

Q. HORATIUS FLACCUS (65-8, B.C.); born at Venusia:—Odes, Satires, familiar and critical Epistles in Verse.

CORNELIUS NEPOS (flor. cir. 30, B.C.); of Verona; Lives of eminent men.

ALBIUS TIBULLUS (? 54-18, B.C.); born at Pedum near Tibur:—Elegiacs.

SEX. AURELIUS PROPERTIUS (? 51-19, B.C.); born in Umbria:—Elegiacs.

T. LIVIUS PATAVINUS (59-19, B.C.); of Patavium (Padua):—History of Rome; of which only about one-fourth part is extant.

P. OVIDIUS NASO (43 B.C.-18 A.D.); born at Sulmo:—Elegiacs; "The Metamorphoses," a poem in 15 books, and other works.

M. VITRUVIUS POLLIO (? temp. August.):—work on architecture.

M. MANILIUS (? temp. August.):—Astronomical poem.

T. PHAEDRUS (flor. cir. 15, A.D.); freedman of Augustus:—Fables.

§ 921. C. *Silver Age.*

M. ANNAEUS SENECA, father of L. Seneca (60 B.C.-15 A.D.); born at Corduba (Cordova), in Spain:—Rhetorical works.

L. ANNAEUS SENECA (? 5 B.C.-65 A.D.); born at Corduba:—Philosophical and ethical works: also Tragedies; unless the author of these be a third Seneca.

C. VELLEIUS PATERCULUS (cir. 19 B.C.-31 A.D.); probably born at Rome:—Roman History.

L. JULIUS MODERATUS COLUMELLA (flor. cir. 20 A.D.); born at Gades (Cadiz):—Agriculture.

A. PERSIUS FLACCUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Volaterrae in Etruria:—Satires (*six*).

C. SILIUS ITALICUS (A.D. 25-100):—Epic poem ("*Punica*").

M. ANNAEUS LUCANUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Corduba:—Epic poem ("*Pharsalia*").

C. PLINIUS SECUNDUS (A.D. 23-79); born either at Verona or Comum:—Natural History (37 books).

C. PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, nephew of the foregoing (61- ?); probably born at Comum :—Epistles and Oration.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS (1st cent. ?) :—Historical Anecdotes.

C. VALERIUS FLACCUS (1st cent.); born at Padua :—Poem ("Argonautica").

Q. CURTIUS RUFUS (date and place of birth unknown) :—History of Alexander the Great.

M. FABIUS QUINTILIANUS (ob. 88 A.D.); born at Calagurris in Spain :—Work on Rhetoric.

P. PAPINIUS STATIUS (ob. A.D. 95); born at Naples :—Poetry.

M. VALERIUS MARTIALIS (A.D. cir. 43-105); born at Bilbilis in Spain :—Epigrams (14 books).

JUNIUS JUVENALIS (latter part of 1st cent. A.D.); born at Aquīnum :—Satires.

L. ANNAEUS FLORUS (?) :—Summary of Roman History.

C. CORNELIUS TACITUS (cir. A.D. 60-120); place of birth unknown :—History of Rome from Augustus; Life of Agricola; Treatise on Germany; Dialogue on Oratory.

C. SUETONIUS TRANQUILLUS (latter part of 1st and beginning of 2nd cent. A.D.); place of birth not known :—Lives of the Caesars, and others.

POMPONIUS MELA (latter part of 1st cent.); born in Spain :—First systematic writer on Geography in Latin.

T. PETRONIUS ARBITER (ob. 66, A.D.) :—Satiric Romance.

AULUS GELLIUS (fl. 150, A.D.) :—"*Noctes Atticae*," a kind of literary miscellany.

L. APULEIUS or APPULEIUS (2nd cent.); born at Madaura in Africa :—Philosophical and imaginative works.

GAIUS or CAIUS (fl. 160, A.D.) :—Law.

D. MAGNUS AUSONIUS (4th cent.); born at Burdigăla (Bordeaux) : Poetry.

JUSTINUS (?) :—History.

AUR. THEODOSIUS MACROBIUS (ob. 395) :—Critical and antiquarian works.

Appendix II.—The Calendar.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

(1.) Kălendae, arum; *the Kalends:* being the 1st day of the month.

(2.) Nōnae, arum; the Nones: being in certain months the 5th and in others the 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.*

(3). Īdūs, uum (*f.*); *the Ides;* being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

"In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day."

In the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its "Kalends," the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (prĭdie Kălendas). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January:* often written pridie Kal. Jan. Then the day before that, is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

Calendar for the Month of December.

1. Kalendis Decembribus.	17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18. XV. „ „
3. III. „ „	19. XIV. „ „
4. Pridie Nonas Decembres.	20. XIII. „ „
5. Nonis Decembribus.	21. XII. „ „
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22. XI. „ „
7. VII. „ „	23. X. „ „
8. VI. „ „	24. IX. „ „
9. V. „ „	25. VIII. „ „
10. IV. „ „	26. VII. „ „
11. III. „ „	27. VI. „ „
12. Pridie Idus Decembres.	28. V. „ „
13. Idibus Decembribus.	29. IV. „ „
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30. III. „ „
15. XVIII. „ „	31. Pridie „ „
16. XVII. „ „	

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them

Obs. Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both die and ante were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with ante, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under the government of the preposition: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias, usually written ad. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction, the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by ante.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante diem octāvum et septĭmum Kălendas Octōbres cŏmĭtiis dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplĭcātio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Kalendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (bis-sextus). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th Februàry) appear to have been distinguished as prior and posterior.

Note.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page :—

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.
2.	VI. }	IV. }	IV. }	IV. }
3.	V. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
4.	IV. }	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III. }	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VIII.
7.	NONIS.	VII. }	VII. }	VII.
8.	VIII. }	VI. }	VI. }	VI.
9.	VII. }	V. } ante Idus.	V. } ante Idus.	V.
10.	VI. } ante Idus.	IV. }	IV. }	IV.
11.	V. }	III. }	III. }	III.
12.	IV. }	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III. }	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX. }	XVIII. }	XVI. }
15.	IDIBUS.	XVIII. }	XVII. }	XV. }
16.	XVII. }	XVII. }	XVI. }	XIV. }
17.	XVI. }	XVI. }	XV. }	XIII. }
18.	XV. }	XV. }	XIV. }	XII. }
19.	XIV. }	XIV. }	XIII. }	XI. }
20.	XIII. }	XIII. }	XII. }	X. }
21.	XII. }	XII. }	XI. } Ante Kalendas (of	IX. } Ante Kalendas
22.	XI. } Ante Kalendas	XI. } Ante Kalendas (of the	X. } the month following).	VIII. } Martias.
23.	X. } (of the month following).	X. } month following).	IX. }	VII. }
24.	IX. }	IX. }	VIII. }	VI. }
25.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VII. }	[bis sextus] }
26.	VII. }	VII. }	VI. }	V. }
27.	VI. }	VI. }	V. }	IV. }
28.	V. }	V. }	IV. }	III. }
29.	IV. }	IV. }	III. }	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
30.	III. }	III. }	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	
31.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).		

Appendix III.—Money.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the as (assis), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the as were designated as follows :—

Uncia,	*one ounce;*	$\frac{1}{12}$		of an as.
Sextans, ntis,	*two ounces;*	$\frac{2}{12}$,	that is, $\frac{1}{6}$	,,
Quadrans, ntis,	*three* ,,	$\frac{3}{12}$,	,, $\frac{1}{4}$	,,
Triens, ntis,	*four* ,,	$\frac{4}{12}$,	,, $\frac{1}{3}$	,,
Quincunx, ncis,	*five* ,,	$\frac{5}{12}$		,,
Sēmis, issis,	*six* ,,	$\frac{6}{12}$,	,, $\frac{1}{2}$	,,
Septunx, ncis	*seven* ,,	$\frac{7}{12}$		,,
Bes, bessis,	*eight* ,,	$\frac{8}{12}$,	,, $\frac{2}{3}$	,,
Dodrans,* ntis	*nine* ,,	$\frac{9}{12}$,	,, $\frac{3}{4}$	,,
Dextans,† ntis,	*ten* ,,	$\frac{10}{12}$,	$\frac{5}{6}$	,,
Deunx, ncis,	*eleven* ,,	$\frac{11}{12}$		,,

* = de-quadrans † = de-sextans.

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus terna jūgĕra et septunces (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)* : hēres ex asse, *heir to the entire estate*, ex dodrante, *to three-fourths*, etc. So fēnus ex triente factum ĕrat bessĭbus (Cic.), *interest had risen from* $\frac{1}{4}$ *per cent.* (*per month*) *to* $\frac{2}{3}$; or *from* 4 *to* 8 *per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the as was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (comp. "*vilem* redigatur ad assem," Hor. Sat. 1, 1, 43). The **dēnārius** was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the **sestertius** (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, or a little more than 2*d*. The sesterce was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. Sestertius is a contraction for sēmis tertius, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e. $2\frac{1}{2}$. This was often written IIS, whence the common abbreviation HS or $\overline{\text{HS}}$.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 sesterces and under are counted regularly: as, mille sestertii, 1000 *sesterces;* trecenti sestertii, 300 *sesterces.* But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural **sestertia** was employed, with which millia must be understood, unless expressed: as duo sestertia or duo millia sestertiūm, 2000 *sesterces.*

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, dĕcies, &c., are used with sestertium or HS., the words, "centēna millia" being understood. Thus

dĕcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sertertii dĕcies in aerārium rettŭlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.—Liv. 45, 4.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margarītam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—Suet. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement; as, accēpi vīcies dūcenta trīginta quinque millia quadringentos dĕcem et septem nummos, 2,235,417 *sesterces*.—Cic. *Verr.* 2, 1, 14.

Appendix IV.—Roman Names.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called nōmen, being *the name of his* gens; the third, cognōmen, being that *of his family* (fămĭlia); the first, praenōmen, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called agnōmen, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 1, 3) is called M. F., *i. e.* Marci filius; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. (nepos) Strabo; i.e. *son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus*.

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Semprōnia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

Appendix V. —Abbreviations.

§ 936. A. Praenomina.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

§ 937. B. Titles, &c. (Ancient).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus (surnames of Jupiter).
Cos.	Consul.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Coss.	Consules.	Quir.	Quirites.
Des.	Designatus.	S.P.Q.R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
Imp.	Imperator.*		
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

938. C. Miscellaneous (Ancient).

A.	Absolvo,[1] Antiquo.[2]	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno.[1]		
N. L.	Non liquet.[1]	H. C. S. E.	Hic conditus, situs est.[3]
U. R.	Uti Rogas.[2]	H. M. H. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur.[3]
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus.[3]	N.	Nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	Obiit.
F.	Filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or S. only.	Salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
		S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo.[4]
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit.[4]	Pot.	Potestas.
F. C.	Faciendum curavit.[3]	V.	Vixit.[3]

[1] Judicial formula. [2] Used in voting (with respect to laws).
[3] Sepulchral. [4] Epistolary.

§ 939. D. Modern.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
		LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cet.	cetera.		
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices.	MS., MSS	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.		
del.	dele, deleatur.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.B.	Nota bene.
e.g.	exempli gratiâ.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
etc.	et cetera.		
h.e.	hoc est.	Obs.	Observa.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
		q.v.	quod vide.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	sc.	scilicet.
		sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
I. etus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.		
ibid., ib.	ibidem.		
id.	idem.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.	V.D.M.	Verbi Divini Minister.
l.c., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.

N.B.—A doubled letter denotes the plural: see examples given above.

INDEX.

(The Numbers indicate the Sections. The Words in Italics are contained in the Accidence.)

A changed to e in comps., 206, 1, 2.
to i „ 206, 1.
to u „ 206, 3.
a, ab, 557, 1;—in sing., 715.
abhinc, constr. 323, *obs.* 2.
abbreviations, 936.
ablative, of 1st Decl., in *abus*, 17, *obs.* 4.
of 3rd Decl., in *i*, 32.
of 3rd Decl., in *i* and *e*, 33.
of 3rd Decl. (pl.), in *is*, 45.
Ablative, syntax of, 302, *sqq.*; of Separation, 303, *sqq.*: of motion from, 261; after opus, 308; of Origin, 309, *sq.*; after ortus, etc., 310; of Cause, etc. 311, *sqq.*; after pass. verbs, without ab, 311, *obs.*; after verbs denoting feelings, 313; of Price, 316; of duration, 249, *obs.* 2; Absolute, 332, *sqq.*: absol. without subs., 333; without participle, 334; of Quality, 318; of comparison, 319; of comparison, after alius, 670, *obs.*; measure, 321; Time when, 322; Time, within which, 323; Time, how long ago, 324; Place, 326, *sqq.*
formation of, 881 (*sing.*), 892 (*pl.*)
Absque, 537, 2.
Abstract subs. in plur., 593, 594;—in Tac., 721, 6.
Abstract, expr. by *plur.* of concrete, 591.
for concrete, 592; 610, *obs.*; in Tac. 724, 1.
ac, atque, 563.
acatalectic verse, 782, *obs.*
accènt, where placed, 8.
accusative of 3rd Dec., in *im*, 31.
(pl.), in *is* and *es*, 37.
Greek, in *a*, 40, 1.
in *in*, 40, 2.
in *en* (3rd Dec.), 40, 3.
(pl.), in *as*, 44.
syntax of, 234, *sqq.*: cognate, 235, double, 243; after intrans. verbs, 236; 253; after passives, 243, *obs.* 4; 244, *obs.* 3; 253, *obs.* 1 after verbs comp. with prep 239; factitive, 245; of motion towards, 259; in Tac. 729, 1; of time, space, 249., in exclamations, 250; of closer definition, 251; Greek. 252; of neuter prons., 253; used adverbially. 254; after verbs of remembering, etc., 278, *obs.* 1.
and infinitive, 507. *sqq.*
formation of, 860 (*sing.*), 886 (*pl.*)
acer, acris, acre, 18
-aceus, term of adj., 187 2 *obs.*
acuo, 163. 1.
ad, 556, 1; in Livy, 715; used adverbially, 556, 1, *obs.*
adeo, emphatic, 614, 3; 653.
adipiscor, 171, 16.
p. part. in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.
Adjectives, 55, *sqq.*
in *er* (*e*)*ra*, (*e*)*rum*, 56, *obs.* 1.
in *ur*, 56, *obs.* 2.
derivative, 186, 190.
governing genitive: of capacity, 276; of guilt. 279. *obs.* 3; of fulness, etc., 276, 317; of price, 316; of origin, 310; of feeling, 314.
governing dative; of advantage, etc., 298.
peculiarities of: equiv. to subs. (imus, summus), 341; equiv. to genitive case, 611, 1; in Tac., 721, 5; in neuter = abstract subs. 342; with force of adverbs, 343; neuter = adverbs, 344.
compared together, 350.
position of, 671; when emphatic, 672.
two, requiring conjunction, 340.
Adonian verse, 791.
adulor, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 3.
Adverbs, termin. of, 196, *sqq.*
compared, 129; irregular, 130.
classified, 133.
derivative, 196.
derived from numerals, 72, 73.
pronouns, 133.
joined with subs., 546; compared together, 549.
position of, 678.
adversus (prep.), 536, 2.
ae (diphthong), 6, *obs.*
changed to *i* in compounds, 206, 5.
aedes, sing. and pl., 51.
aemulor, constr. 291, *obs.* 4.
agnomen, 913.
agnosco, 167.
ago and comps., 158, 41
ago, agito, in Sall., 694.
aio, 121.
-al term. of subs., 182, 6.
Alcaic verse, 802.
algeo, 154, 13
alienus, constr. of, 298, *obs.* 3.
aliquis, 82, *obs.* 3.
aliquis and quis, 383.

-alis, term of adj., 187, 5.
alius, 57.
alius . . . alius, 390, 629.
alius in diff. cases, 629.
sequence of, 630; foll. by abl., 630, *obs.*
alo, 160, 1.
Alphabet, 819, *sqq.*; whence derived, 820.
alter, 57.
alternating verse, 804.
alteruter, 82, *obs.* 6.
ambage, 52, 3.
ambio (irr.), 116, *obs.* 5.
amicio, 168, 13.
amphibrachys, 763.
amphimacer, 763.
amplexus in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.
amplius, constr. of, 349.
-anus, term. of adj., 187, 8; 188; 189, 3; 190, *obs.*
an, in direct double questions, 414.
in simple questions, 415.
after haud scio, etc., 438.
anacrusis, 794.
anapaest, 763; anapestic verse, 789.
ango, 158, 21.
anhelo, with acc., 236.
animi, constr. of, 237, *obs.*
ante, 556, 3.
verbs comp. with, 292, *obs.* 3.
or post, constr. of, 325, *obs.* 1.
antequam, 500, 501.
antibacchius, 763.
antispastus, 763.
antithesis, in Sallust, 692.
apage, 124.
aperio, 168, 14.
apiscor, 171, 16.
apodosis, what, 424: expr. by debeo, etc., 428, *obs.*; suppressed, 426.
apposition, 214; of adjectives, 216; in case of urbs, civitas, 215 (comp. 229); equiv. to *as*, *when*, 217.
apud, 556, 4; = *at*, *ib.*, *obs.*
aqua, -ae, 51.
-ar, term. of subs., 182, 6.
ar = ad, 832, 2.
arceo and comps., 156, 1.
arcesso, 162, 6.
Archilochus, imitated by Hor., 807, *sqq.*
ardeo, 154, 4.
arguo, 163, 2.
-aris, term. of adj., 187, 5. *obs.*
-arium, term of subs., 182, 2.
-arius, term. of adj., 187, 9.
of subs., 182, 1.
arsis, 762.
Article, none, 10.
Arval brothers, chant of, 817.
Aryan family of lang., 819.
-as, term. of adj., 189, 4.
as, parts of, 929.
Asclepiadean verse, 794, *obs.*
asking, verbs of, 244.
assentior, 172.
assis, 281, *obs.* 2.
assuefacio, assuesco, constr. of, 292, *obs.*
asynartete metre, 799.
asyndeton, 565. *obs.* 2; in Sall. 689.
at, 575: in sudden transitions, 576.
atque, ac, 563.
after compar., 352.
atqui, 577.
attraction of dative, 295, *obs.*; 296. *obs.* 1, 2.
of relative (in gender), 380: in case, 380, *obs.*
after infinitives, 513.
-atus, term. of subs., 182, 4.
of adj., 187, 12.
audeo, 119, B.
augeo, 154, 1.
ausim, 111, 3.
aut and vel, 570.
autem, 572.
authors, Latin, 919, *sqq.*
auxilium, -a, 51.
ave, 124.
aveo, 156, 2, 1.
-ax, term. of adj., 186, 4.
B, power, and changes of, 827.
bacchius, 763.
Barbaria, *-ies*, 53, 3.
being, verbs of, constr., 232.
belli, constr., 258; bello, 328.
bene (compar.), 131.
bibo, 157, 13.
-bilis, term of adj., 186, 3.
bonus (compar.), 66.
bos, 30.
-bulum, *-brum* } term. of subs., 181, 9.
-bundus, term. of adj., 110, 3.
C, original power of, 822; lost before *n*, *nt*, etc., 822, 2; = *t* before *ia*, *io*, etc., *ib.* 3.
Cado and comps., 159, 13.
caedo and comps., 159, 14.
Caesar, style of, 695; his commentaries, 695, *obs.*; his freq. use of abl. absol., 698; long periods, 699.
caesura, in hexameter, 771; penthemimeral, etc., 773; in pentameter, 773; in iambic trimeter, 783. (See under the diff. metres.)
calendar, Roman, 922, *sqq.*
calleo, 156, 2.
calling, verbs of, in passive, 232.
callus, *-lum*, 53, 1.
calveo, 156, 2, 2.
cando and comps., 159, 20.
caneo, 156, 2, 3.
cano and comps., 160, 14.
capesso, 162, 7.
capio and comps., 157, 11.
capite, capitis, constr., 280.
carbasus, *-a*, 54.
carcer, *-eres*, 51.
cardinal numerals, 69, 71.
carpo and comps., 157, 1
Cases, meanings of, 15; formation of, 841, *sqq.*
castrum, *-a*, 51.
catalectic verse, 783, *obs.*
cause, in abl., 311.
caveo, 153, 1.
caveo, constr of, 291, *obs.* 7.
-ce, with prons., 78, *obs.* 1.
cedo, *cette*, 124.
cedo, 159, 10.
celo, constr. of, 241: see *obs.* 3.
censeo and comps., 150, 6.
cerno, 161, 1.
certe and certo, 659.
ceterum, 573.
change of *a* to *i*, *e*, *u*, in comp., 206.

change of *ae* to *ī* in comp., 206, 5.
au to *o* in comp., 206, 6.
e to *i* in comp., 206, 4.
e to *i* in subs, 21. *obs.* 2.
e to *u* in subs., 28, *obs.* 2.
i to *e* in subs., 29, *obs.* 3.
o to *i* in subs., 25, *obs.* 1.
o to *u* in subs., 28, *obs.* 2.
u to *i* in subs., 28, *obs.* 3.
consonants: see the several letters.
choliambus, 786.
choriambic metre, 794, *sqq.*; the foot, 763.
ci, how pronounced, 822, 3.
Cicero, style of, 700. *sqq.*; doubles words, 701; uses abstr. subs. for concrete, 702; his diminutives, 703; various senses of *versor*, ratio, 704, 705.
cieo, 151, 6.
cingo, 158, 4.
circa, circum, 556, 5.
circiter, 556, 7.
circum, in comp., 240, 246.
circumdo, constr., 272, *obs.* 3.
cis, citra, 556, 8.
citerior, compar., 66.
civitas, constr. of, 215; 257, *obs.* 2.
clam, 558, 5.
Claudius, adds to alphabet, 824.
claudo and comps., 159, 1.
coelum, *-i*, 54.
coeno, *-atus*, 119, B. *obs.*
coepi, 120.
cognate accusative, 235.
cognosco, 167.
collective subs., constr., 222.
collective use of sing., 590.
colo, 160, 2.
comic tetrameter, 787.
commentarius, *-um*, 53, 1
comminiscor, 171, 17.
como, 160, 14.
comparative degr., 63; formation of, 893, *sqq.*
of adj. in *-ius*, 64, IV.
=" too" or "somewhat," 351.
of adv., constr. of, 548.
comparison of adject. and adv. together, 350, 549; in Tac., 720, 2.
composition of words, 204-208.
concealing, verbs of, 243.
concord, 218.
of Verb, 219, *sqq.*; of Adj., 223, *sqq.*; of Rel., 228.
concrete for abstr. subs., 589.
conditio, etym. of, 822, *obs.* 4.
congruo, 163, 15.
conjugations, how distinguished, 89.
1, 2, 3, 4, 92-98; 3 and 4, 100.
periphrastic, 102.
conjunctions, 439.
with subj., 483, *sqq.*
connective, 561, *sqq.*
adversative, 571. *sqq.*
hypothetical, 579.
causal, 581.
conclusive, 582.
final, 586.
temporal, 587.
as particles, 652.
conniveo, 153, 8.
consonants classified, 821.
consulo, 160, 3.
consulo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.
contentus, with *abl.*, 314.
contio, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 1.
contra, 556, 8.
contracted verbs, 104, 106.
syllables; quant. of, 728.
copula, 213, *obs.*; omitted in Sall., 689, *obs.*
coquo, 158, 3.
coram, 557, 3.
correlatives, 83; syntax of, 379.
credo, 159, 18.
crepo and comps., 149, 1.
cresco, 167, 1.
creticus (foot), 763.
cubo and comps., 149, 2.
cudo, 159, 21.
cujas, 77, *obs.* 4.
cujus, *-a*, *-um*, 77, *obs.* 3.
(*cumbo*) and comps., 157, 9; 149, 2
-cundus, term. of adj., 186, 4, *obs.*
cupio, 157, 16.
cupressus, *-i and -us*, 53, 4.
cum, 557, 4; plural Verb after, 220, *obs.* 3; denoting manner, 312.
cunque, 661; tmesis of, 661, *obs.*
cur, 133.
curo takes *acc.*, 291, *obs.* 2.
curro and comps., 161, 6.
D, lost before *s*, 23, *obs.* 1.
final, nearly = *t*, 830.
final often lost, 830, 3.
termination of Abl., etc., 881.
changed to *l*, 831, 2.
changed to *r*, 832, 2.
dactyl, 763.
dactylic hexameter, 768.
pentameter, 779.
tetrameter, 812.
(*daps*), 52, 1.
dative in *-abus*, 17, *obs.* 4.
-is for *-ibus*, 45.
dative, syntax of, 287, *sqq.*: of remoter object, 287, 292; of advantage, 288; after Adjectives, 298; *dativus ethicus*, 290; after various Verbs, 291, *sqq.*; after sum = habeo, 296, denoting agent after Passive Verbs, 293; esp. after gerundive, 294; after Impers. Verbs, 295; double, after licet, etc., 295, *obs.*; of names, by attraction, 296, *obs.* 1; of purpose or result, 297; esp. in Tac. 721, 2; after idem, 620; after adverbs, 299; exceptional uses of Greek dative, 300; denoting *motion towards*, 301; of reference, 288, *obs.* 3.
formation of, 874, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 892 (*pl.*).
dativus ethicus, 290.
de, 557, 5.
decet, 126; constr. of, 242.
declensions, 17, *sqq.*
dedecet, constr. of, 242.
defective comparison, 66.
substantives, 52.
verbs, 120.
defetiscor, 171, 19.
definition, genitive of, 275.
accus. of closer, 251
deleo, 151, 1.
demo, 160, 16.
demonstrative pronouns, 364, *sqq.*

demum, 660.
denarius, 930.
dentals, 829, *sqq.*
deponents, what, 84.
conjugated, 101.
derivative, 192.
lists of, 169-172.
deponents, p. part. of, in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.
semi, 101, *obs.* 3; 119.
depso, 162, 1.
derivation of subs., 181, *sqq.*
desideratives, 194, 3.
deterior, 66.
determinative prons., 79; constr. of, 370, *sqq.*
deus, 19, *obs.* 6.
dextra, 328.
di, sibilitated, 836, *obs.*
diaresis, 767.
diastole, 762.
dico, 158, 1.
dies, *m.* and *f.*, 54.
stem of, 892, *obs.*
different forms of same word placed together, 674.
digamma, how represented, 839, 2.
dignus, with abl., 320; foll. by qui, 480; by infin. mood, 480, *obs.*
dimeter, etc., 764.
diminutive subs., 183.
verbs, 194, 4.
diminutives, use of, 620, 703.
diphthongs, short, 765, 7.
disco, 138, 39.
dissyllable pret. and supine, quant. of, 735.
distributives, 71, 73.
use of with plurals differing in sense from sing., 71, *obs.* 1.
(*ditio*), 52, 1.
diu (compar.), 133.
dives, 60, *obs.* 2.
divido, 159, 2.
do and comps., 149, 3, 1; 159, 18.
doceo, 150, 1.
constr. of, 243, *obs.* 2.
domi, constr. of, 258.
dominor, constr. of, 291; *obs.* 6.
domo, 149, 3.
domum, constr. of, 260.
domus, 53, 4.
donec, constr. of, 499.
double or alternating verse, 804.
du becomes *b*, 810, 4.
dubito, constr. of, 438.
duco, 158, 2.
duim (from do), 111, 2.
dum with pres. Indic., 393, *obs.* 2; with Indic. or Subj., 497.
dummodo, 498.
duntaxat, 658.
duo (num.), 68.
dupli, etc., constr. of, 280, *obs.* 2.
E changed to *i*, etc.: see CHANGE.
-e term. of adj., 196.
e, ex, 557, 6.
ecastor, *edepol*, 133.
ecca, *eccum*, 79, *obs.* 1.
ecce, en, constr. of, 250, *obs.* 1.
ecastillum, 78, *obs.* 2.
ecquid as interr. particle, 413.
ecquis, 82, *obs.* 2.
editus, with abl., 310.
edo, 115.
subj. edim, 141, 2.
ado, 159, 18.
egeo, 156, 3.
elision, 765.
ellum, 78, *obs.* 2.
ellipsis, of *son* or *daughter*, 266, *obs.* 3; of aedes, 266, *obs.* 4; of various substantives, 601; of verb, 635.
emo and comps., 160, 15, *sqq.*
en and ecce, constr. of, 250, *obs.* 1.
enim and nam, 501.
enim as particle, 654.
-ensis, term. of adj., 189, 1; 190, *obs.*
eo, 116.
comps. of, 116, *obs.*
pass. of, 116, *obs.*
epicenes, 141.
epistolary style, 398, 404.
epitritus, 763.
estur (from edo), 115, *obs.* 1.
equidem, 656, *obs.* 3.
eram in aor. sense, 397.
erga, 536, 9.
ergo, with genitive, 264.
as conjunction, 583.
est mihi = habeo, 296.
et, 561; et ..et, 562; et ... neque, 564.
ethicus: see dativus.
etsi, etiamsi, 503.
-etum, term. of subs., 182, 7.
eumpse, etc., 79, *obs.* 2.
-eus, term of adj., 187, 1; 188, *obs.*
eus, 188, *obs.*
eventus, *-um*, 53, 4.
expedit, constr. of, 295.
expergiscor, 171, 20.
experior, 172, 7.
expers, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 2.
exterior (compar.), 66.
extra, 556, 10.
exuo, 163, 5.
F peculiar to Italian language, 828; its power and changes, *ib.*
Facesso, 162, 8.
facio and comps., 158, 42; (also 205, *obs.*).
pass. of, 119, *obs.* 1.
factitive accusative, 245.
fallit, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
fallo and comps., 160, 12.
farcio and comps., 168, 1.
fari, 123.
fateor and comps., 170, 1.
p. part. in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.
feet, metrical, 763.
ferveo, 153, 7.
fetialis, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 3.
ficus, *-i*, and *-us*, 53, 4.
fido, 119, B.
fido, with dat., 291; with abl., 313.
figo, 158, 30.
final consonants, quant. of, 750, *sqq.*
vowels, quant. of, 745.
findo, 159, 32.
fingo, 158, 23.
fio, 119.
quantity of, 119, *obs.*
first word, emphatic, 666.
first person, precedence of, 221, *obs.*
flaveo, 156, 2, 4.

flecto, 158, 31.
fleo, 151, 2.
(*fligo*) in comps., 158, 5.
flocci, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
floreo, 156, 4.
fluo, 158, 51.
fodio, 159, 24.
foeteo, 156, 2, 5
foras, 132.
(*fors*), 52, 2.
fortuna, sing. and pl., 51.
foveo, 153, 3.
frango and comps., 158, 43.
fremo, 160, 7
frendo, *-eo*, 159, 34.
frenum, *-i* and *-a*, 54.
frequentative verbs, 194, 1.
fretus, with abl., 314.
frico, 149, 9.
frigeo, 154, 14.
frigo, 158, 6.
fruor, with abl., 315.
(*frux*), 52, 1.
frugi (as adj.), 60, *obs.* 3.
compared, 66.
fruor, 171, 1.
fugit, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
fulness, or want, Adjectives denoting, 276, 317.
fungor, with abl., 315; with acc., 315; *obs.* 3.
future tense, 390; = imperative, 420, obs. 2.
future Infinitive, how expr., 518.
future-perfect, 405; of what is to be done instantly, 406; sign of often not expr. in English, 407.
G, when added to the alphabet, 820, *obs.* 3; when elided, 824, 2.
Galliambic verse, 797
gaudeo, 119, B.
gemo, 160, 8.
genders of subs., 141.
generalization with rerum, 595.
generic plural, 593.
genitive sing. -as, -ai (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 2.
pl. -ûm (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 3.
pl. -ûm (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 4.
sing. -i = ii (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 2.
pl. -ôn, 20, 4; 43.
-ium and -um, 21, *obs.* 1; also 35, 36; and 891.
(Greek), -i, 39; 1.
-os, 39, 2.
-ûs, 39, 3.
genitive, constr. of, 263, *sqq.*; after substantives, 263; of the possessor, 265; after sum, 266; Subjective, 267; Objective, 268; Objective, after Adjectives, 276, *obs.* 1; Partitive, 269; of Quality, 274; of Definition, 275; after Adjectives, 276, *sqq.*; after Verbs, 278, *sqq.*; after *to accuse*, etc., 279; Genitive of price (tanti, etc.), 281; (flocci, etc.), 281, *obs.* 2; after verbs of feeling, etc., 282; with interest and refert, 283. Exceptional uses of, 284; of separation, 284; Greek genitive, 285; in apposition with possessive Pronoun, 267, *obs.* 2; in Tac. after Adjectives, 721, 1; in Livy, 708.
genitive, formation of, 862, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 889, *sqq.* (*pl.*).
gero 161, 4.
gerund, 86, 3.
gerund, constr. of, 532; governs a case, 533; foll. by genitive, 540; converted to Gerundive, 537; where preferred to Gerundive, 537, *obs.* 2; as abl. absol., 541.
Gerundive in undus, 110, 3.
gerundive, ord. use of, 534; as imperf. part. pass. 522, *obs.* 2; with est, impers., 536; of Purpose or Result, in dat., 538; also in gen., 539.
gerundive and gerund, freq. use in Livy, 714.
gignentia, intrans. in Sall., 694, 2.
gigno, 160, 11.
glisco, 167, 2.
gloria, etym. of, 824, No. 2, *obs.*
glubo, 157, 2.
Glyconian metre, 795.
government, syntactic, 217.
gradior and comps., 171, 3.
grandinat, 126.
gratia, sing. and pl., 51.
gratia, constr. of, 264, *obs.*
gratis, 132.
Greek Subs. (1 Dec.), 18.
(2 Dec.), 20.
(3 Dec.), 38.
Greek usage of Genitive, 284, 285.
of Dative, 300; (296, *obs.* 2).
guberno, governs acc., 291, *obs.* 6.
gutturals, 822, *sqq.*
H, power and uses of, 825.
habeo in Sall., 694.
haereo, 154, 5.
haurio, 168, 3.
hebeo, 156, 2, 6.
haud scio an, 438.
hei and vae, with dat., 250, *obs.* 2.
Hendecasyllabics, 792.
hendiadys, 602.
in Tac., 714, 2.
heteroclita, 53.
heterogenea, 54.
hexameter verse, 768.
endings of, 776.
hic (pron.), use of, 364.
hic and ille, 366, 367.
Hipponactean verse, 786 (*note*), 806, *obs.* 1.
historical present, 393; foll. by past Subj., 423, *obs.*
historical Infinitive, 517; in Sall., 691; in Tac., 721, 7.
horreo, 156, 5.
humeo, 156, 2, 7.
humi, constr. of, 258.
hypercatalectic verse, 782, *obs.*
hypermeter lines, 778.
hypothetical sentences, 424, *sqq.*; with Indic., 424, 1; with Subj., 424, 2, *sqq.*; and Indic. in apodosis, 428, *obs.*; without regular protasis, 429.
I as vowel of connexion, 207.
changed to e, 29, *obs.* 1.
dropped in stems in *-al*, *-ār*, 29, *obs.* 2.
-ia, term. of subs., 185, 1.
Iambic trimeter, 781, 807; *scazon*, 786.
dimeter, 784, *obs.* 2.
iambus, 763.
-ianus, term. of adj., 188.
-icius, or *-itius*, do., 187, 2.
ico, 158, 45.

-icus, term. of adj., 187, 3; 188, *obs.*; 190.
-icus, do., 187, 3, *obs.*
id quod, constr. of, 230.
idem, 79.
idem, attendant of qui, 372, 379, *obs.* 3; emphatic after Relative, 373; = *also, and yet*, 375; sequence of, 620; foll. by dat., 620.
-idus, constr. of, 186, 2.
-ies, term. of subs., 181, 10.
igitur, 584; often first in its sentence in Sall., 693.
-ile, term. of subs., 182, 8.
-ilis, term. of adj., 186, 3; 187, 4.
ille, of celebrity, 365; distinguished from hic, 366, 367; repeated pleonastically, 615; with adj. or adv., 616; position of, 675.
-im, term. of adv., 861, 8; *obs.*
imbuo, 163, 3.
impedimentum, -*a*, 51.
Imperative, Pres., 417.
Future, 418.
imperfect: see Past-imperf.
imperfect part., 523; as substantive, 638.
impero, foll. by acc. and infin., 451, 3.
impersonal verbs, 125.
impersonal verbs, with acc., 241, 242; with dat., 295.
in, prep., 558, 1.
-ina, term. of subs., 182, 3.
inceptives, 164-167; 194, 2.
indeclinable subs., 48; gender of, 141, 3.
indef. pronouns, use of, 383, *sqq.*
Indicative, used predicatively, 392, *sqq.*; interrog., 408; for Subj. in oratio obliqua, 710.
indirect questions, 434.
Indo-European lang., 819.
indulgeo, 154, 2.
induo, 163, 4.
indutiæ, orthog. of, 822; *obs.* 3.
inferior, 66.
Infinitive in ier, 111, *n.*
Infinitive, as Subject, 505; as Object, 506; Accusative and Infinitive, 507, *sqq.*; after verbs of *willingness, ability, etc.*, 512, *sqq.*; in exclamations, 516; Historical, 517; circumlocution for future Inf., 518; in *oratio obliqua*, 465; in questions in oratio obl., 469; after adjectives, 506, *obs.* 2.
infra, 556, 11.
ingratis, 132.
inquam, 122.
inquit, ellipsis of, 635, 2.
instar, constr. of, 264, *obs.* 3.
instrument, in abl., 341.
inter, 556, 12; repeated, 650.
interest, constr. of, 283 (see *obs.*).
interior, 66.
interjections, 140.
internecio, 52, 1.
interrogative particles, 409.
sentences: see questions.
intra, 556, 13.
intransitive verbs, of 2nd Conj., 193.
of 3rd Conj., 195.
in pass., 84, *obs.* 2; 234, *obs.* 2.
with trans. sense, 236.
-inus, term. of adj., 187, 7; 188; 189, 2.
invideo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 5.
invitus, used adverbially, 343.
-io, term. of subs., 181, 3.
Ionicus a minori, 796.
ipse = *very just*, 376.
ipse, constr. of, 377, 617.
(et) ipse, 618.
is, ea, id, use of, 370; dative and acc. of, omitted, 371; the attendant on qui, 372, 379, *obs.* 3; et is, isque, 374, 619.
iste, force of, 368; used contemptuously, 369.
ita, use of, 551; = *very*, 644, 1; in adjurations, 644, 2.
itaque, 585.
J, power and changes of, 838.
Jacio and comps., 158, 46.
jam dudum, pridem, with pres., 392, *obs.* cf. 394, *obs.*
Janus = Dianus, 841.
jocus, -*i* and -*a*, 54.
Jovis = Diovis, 841.
jubeo, 154, 6.
Jubeo, takes acc. and infi., 451, *obs.* 2.
jugerum, 53, 6.
jungo, 158, 7.
Jupiter, 30.
juro, -*atus*, 119, B. *obs.*
jussive: see Imperative.
Jussu, etc., 313, *obs.* 1.
juvat, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
juvenis (compar.), 66, *obs.* 1.
juvo, 149, 2, 1.
juvo, takes acc., 291, *obs.* 2.
juxta, 556, 14.
K, when used, 5, *obs.*
L, power of, 831, changed to r after another l, 831, 2.
labials, 827, *sqq.*
labor, 178, 4.
laccsso, 162, 9.
lacio and comps., 158, 20.
lacto and comps., 159, 3.
lambo, 137, 14.
last word in sent. emphatic, 667.
lateo, 156, 6.
latet, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
Latin, when and where spoken, 1.
languages derived from, 819.
Latin authors, lists of, 919, *sqq.*
laurus, -*i* and -*us*, 53, 4.
lavo, 149, 2, 2; 163, 12.
lego and comps., 158, 47.
-lentus, term. of adj., 187, 11.
letters introduced by Claudius, 820, *obs.* 4.
libens, used adverbially, 343.
liber, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 2.
libet, 126.
liceor and comps., 170, 2.
licet, 126.
licet, libet with dat., 295.
conj. with Subj., 502.
lingo, 158, 9.
lino, 160, 26.
linquo, 158, 48.
liquet, 126.
liquids, 807, *sqq.*
liquor (depo. verb), 171, 5.
littera, sing. and pl., 52.
live, 136, 2, 8.
Livy, style of, 706, *sqq.*; his Patavinity, 706.

obs.; his use of metonymy, 707; of the Genitive, 708; of collective singular, 709, of Indic. in *oratio obl.*, 710; of fut. part. hypothetically, 713; of Gerund and Gerundive, 714.
ll, power of, 831, 3.
locative, 256, *obs.* 1.
locus, -i and *-a*, 54.
locus, vin, in abl., 329.
logaoedic verse, 798.
longe, with superlative, 354.
loquor, 173, 6.
luceo; 154, 16.
lucescit, 126.
ludo, 159, 4.
ludus, sing. and pl., 51.
lugeo, 154, 17.
luo, 163, 16.
luxuria, -ies, 53, 3.
M, power and changes of, 834.
macreo, 156, 2, 9.
magni, parvi, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 1; 316, *obs.* 2.
magnopere, (compar.) 131.
magnus (compar.), 66.
Maius, etym. of, 838, 3.
male (compar.), 131.
male = non, 646.
malim, mallem, 446, *obs.*
malo, 143.
malo, with subj., 447.
malus (compar.), 66.
mando (3 Conj.), 159, 26.
maneo, 154, 7.
manner, abl. of, 311.
materia, -ies, 51, 3.
meā, tuā, etc., 283, *obs.* 1.
medeor, 170, 3.
medeor, medicor, with dat., 291, *obs.* 3.
medioeris, in Sall., 694.
medius fidius } 133.
mehercle }
mei, tui, use of, 268, *obs.* 4.
memini, 120.
memini, constr. of, 278, *obs.* 1.
-men, term of subs., 181, 7.
menda, -um, 53, 2.
-mentum, term of subs., 181, 8.
mercor (-eo), and comps., 170, 4.
mergo, 158, 27.
-met, with prons., 77, *obs.* 2; 614, 1.
metior, 172, 7.
meto, 159, 35.
metonymy, 604; also, 592, 2; in Livy, 707.
metres, 764.
metuo, 163, 18.
meus, tuus, position of, 673.
mico and comps., 149, 7.
middle use of verbs in Latin, 252.
militiae, constr. of, 258.
mille, 69.
millia, orthog. of, 831, 3.
mingo, 158, 24.
minuo, 163, 6.
minus = non, 646.
misceo, 150, 3.
miserear, 170, 5.
miseret, 126.
miseret constr. of, 241; 282.
miseror, with acc., 282, *obs.* 3.
mitto, 159, 14.
modal subs., constr. of in abl., 312, *obs.*
moderor, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6.
(non) modo...sed etiam, 569.
mollitia, -ies, 53, 3.
molo, 160, 4.
money, Roman, 939, *sqq.*
-monia, term. of subs., 185, 5.
monometer, 764.
moods, 85.
mordeo and comps., 152, 5.
morior and comps., 171, 7.
mortales, in Sall., 694, 1.
motion towards, in acc., 259; in dat., 301.
moveo, 153, 4.
mulceo, 154, 8.
mulgeo, 154, 9.
multiplicative numerals, 71, *obs.* 2.
multum-(compar.), 131.
multum, etc., with gen., 270.
multus (compar.), 66.
(mungo), emungo, 158, 9.
N, power and changes of, 833.
nam, namque, 581; used elliptically, 581, *obs.* 1; = *namely*, 654, *obs.* 2; second in sentence, 581, *obs.* 2.
names, Roman, 933, *sqq.*
names of towns, constr. of, 256, *sqq.*
nanciscor, 171, 22.
nascor, 171, 23.
national names used adject., 608.
natus, with abl., 210: with *acc.*, (annos), 249, *obs.* 3.
nauci, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
-nĕ, in single direct questions, 410; in double, 414, 416; in indirect questions, 436.
nĕ, neve, with imperat., 417, *obs.*; with subj., equiv. to imperat., 420.
nĕ, after verbs of *commanding*, etc., 452; of purpose, 454; combined with ut, 455.
ne...quidem, 656.
necne, 414, *obs.*
neco, 149, 11.
necto, 158, 32.
nemo = nullus, 599.
neo, 151, 3.
nequam, 60, *obs.* 3.
compared, 66.
neque, nec, 568; with plur. verb, 569.
nequeo, 118.
nequis, 82.
nescio an, 438.
nescio quis, 626.
neuter, tra, trum, 57.
neuter of adj. as adv., 199.
neuter adj. in predicate, 227.
neuter-passives, 119.
neut.-pl. in -la (3 Decl.), 34.
ni (nisi), 425.
nihil, as adv., 254; of persons, 624, *obs.*
ningit, 126; 158, 22.
niteo, 156, 7.
nitor (dep. verb), 171, 8.
nitor, foll. by infin., 451, *obs.* 2.
nix, stem of, 22, *obs.*; 824, 2.
"*No*"; how expr. in Lat., 133, C. *obs.*
noctu, 132.
noli, periphr. for imperat., 420, *obs.* 1.
nolo, 113.
nolo, foll. by subj., 447 2.
nom. pl. in -ēs, 42.
nominative, as subject, 232; after Infin.,

233; by attraction with Infin., 507, *obs.*
nominative, formation of, 844, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 882, *sqq.* (*pl.*).
non, position of, 678, *obs.*
non modo (solum)...sed, 567.
nonne, 401.
nos, precise meaning of, 221.
nos, noster = ego, meus, 358.
nosco and comps., 167.
nostras, 77, *obs.* 4.
nostri, nostrûm, 359.
nŏvi, 120.
novus (compar.), 66.
nubo, 157, 3.
nubo, with at., 289.
nullus, 57; gen. of in -i, 82, *obs.* 6.
nullus = non, 612.
num, in direct questions, 133; in indirect, 413; in double questions, 416, *obs.* 2.
numerals, 73.
numeral adverbs, 72, 73.
nuntius, etym. and orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 2.
nuo and comps., 163, 17.
nuper (compar.), 131.
nuper, etym. of, 839, 4.
O, lighter than a, 987; changed to u, 28, *obs.* 2; dropped in carnis, 25, *obs.* 2; 848, *obs.*
-o, term. of adv., 197.
ob, 556, 15.
object, case of, 234.
objective genitive, 268; combined with subjective gen., 268, *obs.* 3.
obliqua oratio, 464, *sqq.*
obliviscor, 171, 24.
ocior (compar.), 66.
odi, 120.
oe (diphthong), 6, *obs.*
oleo (to *smell*), 156, 8.
oleo, constr. of, 237.
oleo (to grow), in comps. 151, 5; see also, 165, *obs.*
olli = illi, 78, *obs.* 3.
omnis = ullus, 386.
opera, sing. and pl., 51.
operio, 168, 15.
opis, sing. and pl., 51.
oportet, 126.
oportet, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
opperior, 172, 4.
(*ops*), 52, 2.
opto, constr. of, 447, 1.
opus, with abl., 308; as adj., 308, *obs.*
-or, term. of subs., 181, 1.
oratio obliqua, 464, *sqq.*; questions in, 468.
order of words, 662, *sqq.*
ordior, 172, 9.
ordinals, 70, 73.
orior (3 and 4 Conj.), 100, *obs.* 3; 172, 10.
oriundus, with abl., 310, *obs.*
ortus, with abl., 310.
-osus, term. of adj., 187, 10.
otium, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 3.
P, power and changes of, 826.
paciscor, 171, 25.
paeon, 763.
pando, 159, 27.
pango and comps., 158, 35.
parco, 158, 36.
pario, 161, 8.
pars, sing. and pl., 51.
particip. form in *-bundus*, 110, 4.
participles, 86.
fut. act., how formed, 109; irreg., 109, *obs.* 2.
deficiency of in Lat., 522; how supplied, 526; frequent use of, 530; used substantively, 637, *sqq.*; become adjectives, 277.
imperf. act., 523.
future act., 527.
perfect: see perfect participle.
gerundive: see gerundive.
particles, 652, *sqq.*
partim...partim, 547.
partitive genitive, 269.
parts of speech, 9.
parum = non, 646.
parvus, comp., 66.
pasco, 167, 5.
passive voice, inflected, 95, *sqq.*
followed by a, ab, 234, *obs.* 1; used reflect., 252, 633.
passive of intrans. verbs, 234, *obs.* 2; when used, 632.
past tenses foll. by pres., 473, 2.
past-imperf. tense Indic., 394; of what is customary, 395; of what is attempted, 396; epistolary, 398.
past-imperf. of sum = perf., 397.
past-imperf. Subj. = past-perf., 429, *obs.*
past-perfect or pluperfect Indic., 402; for Subj., 403; epistolary, 404.
past-perf. Subj. in hypoth., 427; cf. 473, 1.
pateo, 156, 9.
patior, 171, 9 (see comps.).
patronymics, 184.
patronymics, use of, 609.
pause, in Hexameter, 775.
paveo, 153, 6.
pecto, 158, 33.
pello and comps., 160, 13.
pendeo and comps., 132, 6.
pendo and comps., 159, 45.
penes, 556, 16.
pentameters, 779.
per, 556, 17.
percello, 160, 20.
perfect Indic., its twofold meaning, 400; after postquam, simul atque, 401; for pluperf. subj., 428; used Aoristically, 634.
perfect Subj. after past indef., 423 (note); in Livy, 712.
perfect participles with act. sense, 524; of deponents, with pass. sense, 525; equiv. to verbal subs., 596; used substantively, 640, *sqq.*; neuter of = abstract subs., 528.
personal ending, formation of, 898, *sqq.*
Phalaecian metre, 792.
Pherecratian metre, 795.
piget, 126.
piget, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
pinso, 162, 2.
pinus, *i* and *us*, 53, 4.
piso, 162, 3.
placet, 126.
plango, 158, 10.
plaudo and comps., 159, 5.
plebs, *plebes*, 51, 5.
plecto, 158, 34; see also 171, 15.
pleo and comps., 151, 4.

plico and comps., 149, 8.
pluit, 126; 163, 19.
plural of 5th Decl., 47, *obs.* 4.
with diff. meaning from sing., 51.
pluperfect, see past-perfect.
plural of concrete subs. for abstr. sing. 491.
of abstr. subs., 593, 594.
for singular, 603.
nos = ego, 358.
of verb after sing. subject, 222 (see *obs.*)
pluris, minoris, constr. of, 281.
plus, amplius, constr. of, 349.
poenitet, 126.
poenitet, constr. of, 241, 282
polleo, 156, 2, 10.
polysyndeton, 565, *obs* 2.
pone, 556, 18.
pono, 162, 4.
popina = coquina, 823.
populares, in Sall., 694.
posco, 158, 40.
position, syll. long by, 729.
possessive pronouns, 77.
poss. prons., constr. of, 363.
possum, 112.
post, 556, 19.
posterior, compar., 66.
postquam, with perf., 401; with pluperfect, 401, *obs.*; with Indic. and Subj 501.
potential, Subj., 429.
potior, constr., 315.
potus, part., 119, B., *obs.*
prae, 557, 7.
quant. of in comp., 727.
praedicate, 213; concord of, 215
praenomen, 933.
praeter, 556, 20.
praeterit, constr of, 242, *obs.*
prandeo, 152, 1
pransus, 524.
precis (*prex*), 52, 2.
prefixes, 178.
prehendo, 159, 28.
premo, 160, 25.
prepositions, 134, *sqq.*; inseparable, 138.
prepositions, gov. of, 553, *sqq.*; separated from case, 680; two prep., constr. of, 649; repeated before 2nd *subs.*, 652; government in comp., 238, *sqq.*; repeated after comp. verb, 329, *obs.* 2; 648.
present tense, 392; historical, 393; after dum, 393, *obs.* 2; with jam dudum, 392, *obs.*
present Subj. in hypoth. 426
priapean verse, 814.
primary words, 180.
primus, constr. of, 341.
prior, compar., 66.
prior, primus, with verb, 345
prius, compar., 131.
priusquam, constr. of, 500, 501.
pro, 557, 8.
quant. of, in comp., 737.
proficiscor, 171, 26.
promo, 160, 17.
pronouns, 74, *sqq.*
pronouns, uses of, 357, *sqq.*; personal, not expr., 357; reflective, 360; possessive, 363; often not expr., 363, *obs.*; demonstrative, 364; determinative, 370; relative, 378, indefinite, 383.
peculiarities in use of, 614, *sqq.*
prope, compar., 131.
prope, prep., 556, 21.
proper names, peculiarities in use of, 606.
propior, compar., 66.
proportionals, 71, *obs.* 3.
propter, 556, 22.
prosody, 725, *sqq.*
prospicio, provideo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.
protasis, 424; not fully expr., 429.
psallo, 160, 21.
pyrrhic foot, 763.
Pythiambic metre, 813, *obs.*
Q, power of, 823; without u, 823, *obs.* 2.
quaero and comps., 161, 9.
quaeso, 124.
quality, gen. of, 274; abl. of, 318.
quam qui, with superl., 355.
quamvis with Subj., 502; with Indic., 502, *obs.*
quando (causal), 495.
quanquam, with Indic., 503; with Subj., 503, *obs.*
quantity, 726; of contracted syllables, 728; of radical vowels, 731; of connecting vowels, 733; of derivatives and compounds, 734; of the reduplication of verbs, 736; of final vowels, 745, *sqq.*; of final consonants, 750.
quantity, marks of, 7.
-que, diff. from et, 563.
questions, direct simple, 408, *sqq.*; direct double, 414, *sqq.*
indirect, 434; appy. so, 437.
in *oratio obliqua*, 468, 469.
qui, 81.
comps. of, 82, *obs.* 5.
qui, concord of, 228.
with Subj.: hypothetical, 475; causal, 476, 477; of purpose (= ut), 478; after dignus, etc., 480; after is, talis, tantus, 481; in such phr. as, sunt qui, 482; in parenthetical clauses, 621.
qui, adv., 81, *obs.* 2.
quia, with Indic. and Subj., 486.
quicumque, 80, *obs.* 2.
quid = "*and then*," 623; referring to persons, 624.
quidam, use of, 385; as softening an expr., 385, *obs.*
quidem, 656; after ille, 616.
(ne) quidem, 656.
quiesco, 167, 6.
quin, 401, *sqq.*
quippe, 492; ironical, 493.
quis and *qui*, 81, *obs.* 1.
quis, comps. of, 81, *obs.* 3; 82, *obs.* 2.
quis, as enclit., 383, 625; nescio quis, 623, si quis, 627; used impatiently, 622.
quisnam, 81, *obs.* 3.
quispiam, 384.
quisquam, 82, *obs.* 4.
quisquam and ullus, 386, 387.
quisque, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2; with superl., 356; used distributively, 388.
quisquis, 80, *obs.* 2.
quo, conj., 453; in connexion with comp., 453.
quod, a quasi Rel., 491; after verbs, 488; after impers. expressions, 489; hypoth., with subj., 490.

(non) quod (quo), 497.
quod sciam, 475, *obs.*
quodsi, quodni, 491, *obs.*; 578.
quoi, quoius, 80, *obs.* 1.
quotus, use of, 628.
quum with Subj., of historical sequence, 484; causal, 483, with Indic., 485.
quum . . tum, 566.
R, power and changes of, 832.
radical vowels, quant. of, 731.
rado, 159, 6.
rapio and comps., 157, 8.
ratio, in Cic., 705.
rastrum, i and *a*, 54.
re-, quant. of, 738.
rĕfert, constr. of, 283.
reflect. pronouns, 360, *sqq.*
verbs, 84, *obs.* 1: comp. 252.
rego and comps., 158, 11.
rego, with acc., 291, *obs.* 6.
relative, concord of, 228; govt. of, 228, *obs.*; diff. gender from anteced., 229; with superl. clause, 381; has its ant. in a poss. pron., 267, *obs.* 3; attraction of, 380
relative adj., govt. of, 382.
reliquus, constr. of, 341.
remembering, verbs of, 278.
reminiscor, 171, 18.
remideo, 156, 2, 12.
reor, 170, 7.
repetition of verb, 636; in part. form, 636, 3.
repo, 157, 4.
requies, 53, 5.
result, dat. of, 297.
rhythm, 761.
rideo, 154, 10.
rigeo, 156, 10.
ringor, 171, 11.
rodo, 159, 7.
roots, 176.
rostrum, -*a*, 51.
ruling, verbs of, 291, 17.
rumpo, 157, 12.
ruo, 163, 7.
rure, ruri, rus, 258, *sqq.*
S, power and changes of, 835.
saepe, compar., 131.
saepio, 168, 7.
salio and comps., 168, 10.
Sallust, style of, 687, *sqq.*; brevity of, 687; asyndeton, 689; antithesis, 690; use of hist. inf., 691; of alius. . .alius, 692; begins sentences with igitur, etc., 693; favourite words, 694: archaisms, 695.
salve, 124.
sancio, 168, 4.
Sapphic metre, 800; long, 805; joined with Adonian, 801, *obs.* 4; in Sappho and Hor., 801, *obs.* 5.
sapio and comps., 157, 17.
sarcio, 168, 5.
satis = admodum, 645.
Saturnian verse, 815.
satus, with abl., 310.
scabo, 157, 15.
scalpo, 157, 5.
scando and comps., 159, 29; *scateo*, 156, 2, 12.
scazon, Iambus, 786.
scindo, 159, 33.
scribo, 157, 6.
se, sui, 360; in subord. propositions, 362
seco, 149, 10.
secundum, 556, 23.
secus, compar., 131.
sed, autem, 572.
sedeo and comps., 152, 2.
semideponents, 101, *obs.* 3.
semivowels, 838, *sqq.*
senarius, 782.
senex, decl., 30; compar, 66.
sentio, 168, 6.
separation, abl. of, 303 gen. of, 284.
sepelio, 168, 11.
sequence of tenses, 423.
sequor, 171, 12.
sero, 161, 10.
serpo, 157, 7.
sestertius, 930.
seu, sive, 570, *obs.* 3.
sexcenti, indef., 613.
si, 425, *sqq.*
si quis, force of, 627.
sibilants, 835, *sqq.*
sic, 558; in adjuration, 644, *obs.*
sido, 159, 17.
sileo, 156, 11.
similis, constr. of, 298, *obs.* 2.
simul atque, with perf., 401.
sine, 557, 9.
singular, wanting in subs., 50.
after two or more subs., 220, *obs.*; equiv. to plur., 590, 607.
sino, 160, 27.
sino, with Subj., 447, *obs.* 1.
sis = si vis, 113, *obs.* 3.
sisto and comps., 159, 19.
sitio, with acc., 236.
sivo, seu, 570, *obs.* 3.
soleo, 119, B.
solus, 57.
solvendo esse, 538, *obs.* 2.
solvo, 163, 13.
sono, 149, 4.
sorbeo, 150, 5.
spargo, 158, 28.
specio and comps., 158, 12.
sperno, 162, 2.
spondaic lines, 770.
spondee, 763.
spondeo and comps., 152, 7.
sponte, 52, 4.
spuo, 163, 8.
squaleo, 156, 2, 13.
statuo, 163, 9.
stems, 104, 179.
sterno, 161, 3.
sternuo, 163, 20.
sterto, 159, 38.
(*stinguo*), 158, 17.
sto and comps., 149, 3, 2.
strepo, 157, 10.
strideo, 152, 4; and -*o*, 159, 30.
stringo, 158, 26.
struo, 158, 52.
studeo, 156, 12.
styles of prose authors, 687, *sqq.*
suadeo, 154, 11.
subject and pred., 210, 211; enlargement of, 210, *obs.*; ease of, 234; position of, 3.

subjective gen., 367; 368, *obs.*
Subjunctive, 421; = Imperat., 419; hypothetical, 425; potential, 429; *optativus*, 430; 443. *sqq.*; *concessivus*, 432; *dubitativus*, 440; after ut, ne, 449. *sqq.*; in oratio obliqua, 467, *sqq.*; how translated, 85, *obs.*; of repetition, 481.
subord. clauses, position of, 682.
substantives, peculiarities in use of, 589, *sqq.*; concr. for abstr., 589; abstr. for concr., 592; used collectively, 590; plur. = abstr., 391; governing case of verbs, 597; used adject., 598; repeated after 2nd prep., 649.
subter, 558, 4.
suesco, 167, 7.
suffixes, 177.
suggestus, *-um*, 53, 4.
sugo, 158, 13.
sui, suus, 360. 361.
sum, 90; stem of, *obs.* 2; comps. of, *obs.* 3.
sumo, 160, 18.
suo, 163, 10.
super, 558, 3.
superior, compar., 66.
superlative, 62; formation of, 896.
superlatives, use of, 353, *sqq.*; with quam, quantus, 353; with unus, 354; with quisque, 356; with rel., 381.
supines, 86, 2; 108.
supines, constr. of, 542.
supplico, constr., 289.
supra, 556, 24.
synaeresis, 766.
synaloepha, 765.
syncope in perf., 110, 11.
synecdoche, 605.
SYNTAX, 209, *sqq.*; of concord and govt., 218.
SYNTAXIS ORNATA, 588, *sqq.*
T, power of, 829; sibilated before i and vowel, 822; lost in 3rd pers. sing., 829.
Tacitus, style of, 717; its variety, 720; peculiar idioms, 721; abruptness, 722; suggestiveness, 723; poetical complexion, 724.
taedet, 126.
taedet, constr. of, 241, 282.
tango, 158, 38.
tanti, etc., constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
tantum, etc., gen. after, 270.
Tartarus, -a, 54.
-tas, term. of subs., 185, 3.
-te, suffix of prons., 614, 2.
teaching, verbs of, 243.
tego, 158, 14.
teliambic verse, 818.
temno, 160, 19.
temperi, compar., 131.
tempero, constr. of, 295, *obs.* 6, 7.
tempestas, in Sall., 694.
tempto, orthog. of, 826, *obs.* 2.
tendo and comps., 159, 16.
teneo and comps., 152, 2.
tenses, formation of, 900, *sqq.*
sequence of, 423.
-ter, term. of adv., 198, 196, *obs.* 2.
tergeo, 154, 12.
tergo, 158, 29.
tero, 161, 12.
tetrameter, trochaic, 787.
tetrameter, dactylic, 812.
texo, 158, 50.
thesis, 762.
-tia, term. of subs., 185, 2.
-tim, term of adv., 200.
timeo, 156, 23.
tingo, *tinguo*, 158, 15.
-tio, term. of subs., 181, 3.
tollo, 160, 33.
tonat, 126.
tondeo and comps., 152, 8.
tono, 149, 6.
-tor, *-trix*, term. of subs., 181, 2.
torqueo, 154, 23.
torreo, 150, 4.
totus, 57.
towns, constr. of names of, 256, *sqq.*
tribrach, 763.
trimeter, Iambic, 782, 807.
trochaic dim., 806.
tetram., 787.
trochee, 763.
-tudo, term. of subs., 185, 4.
tueor and comps., 170, 8.
tundo and comps., 159, 17.
tum. . .tum, 566.
-tura, term of subs., 181, 5.
turgeo, 156, 18.
-tus, term. of subs., 181, 4.
traho, 158, 18.
tremo, 160, 9.
tribuo, 163, 14.
trudo, 159, 8.
-trum, 181, 9.
u interchanged with *i*, 918.
ulciscor, 171, 27.
ullus, 57.
ultra, 556, 26.
ulterior, compar., 66.
-ulus, adject. term., 186, 4, *obs.*
ungo, *unguo*, 158, 16.
unus, 68; in *plur.*, 68, *obs.*
-ura, term. of subs., 182, 4.
urgeo, 154, 19.
uro, 161, 5.
ut, of purpose, etc., 450, *sqq.*; concessive, 432.
ut non, 456.
ut qui, utpote qui, 477.
uter, 57.
utercunque, 80, *obs.* 3.
uterque, plur., after, 222, *obs.* 2.
utinam, 444.
utique, 657.
utor, 171, 3.
utor, with abl., 315.
V, power and changes of, 839.
vaco, with dat., 289.
vacuus, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 7
vado, 159, 9.
vae, with dat., 250, *obs.* 2.
vapulo, 119, 2.
vas, 53, 6.
-ve, vel, 568.
veho, 158, 19.
vello, 160, 22.
veneo, 119, 3.
venio, 168, 12.
venit in mentem, constr. of, 278, *obs.*
verb, 84; irreg., 111; defect., 120; impers., 125; derivative, 191, *sqq.*
verbs, of being, etc., constr. of, 232; teaching, 243; concealing, 243; asking, 244; remembering and forgetting, 278; of ac-

cusing, etc., 279, of assisting, resisting, favouring, envying, etc., 291 (and see the several cases) of fulness, want, 317.
verbs with diff. constr., 271, *obs.*
repetition of, 636.
verbere, 52, 3.
vereor and comps. 170. 9.
vero, verum, 573: tum vero, 660; vero affirmative, 574.
verro, 161, 13.
versor, in Cic., 705.
versus, prep., 556, 27
versus, Hipponacteus, 786 (*note*).
octonarius, 787.
verum and vero, 573.
vescor, 157, 28.
vescor, with abl., 315: with acc., 315, *obs.* 3
vesper, vespera, 52, 2.
vesperascit, 126.
vestras, 77, *obs.* 4.
vestri and -um, 273, *obs.* 2.
veto, 149, 5.
veto, with inf., 451, *obs.* 2
vicis, 52, 2.
video, 152, 3.
videor, constr. of, 232, *obs.*; redundant, 704.
vigeo, 156, 14.
vincio, 168, 8.
vinco, 158, 49.
vireo, 156, 15.
vis, 52, 2.
viso, 162, 4.
vivo, 158, 53.
vocative of 2nd decl. in i, 19, *obs.* 3.
vocative, synt. of, 335; same as nom., 337 with O, 336; formation of, 848.
volo, 113.
volo, foll. by subj., 447, 2.
vomo, 160, 10.
voveo, 153, 5.
vowels, 840.
wish, subj. of, 443, *sqq.*
X, an addition to alph., 820; where first found, 837, *obs.*; its changes, ib. 2.
yes, how expr., 133, *obs.*; 574.
Z, found in earliest alph., 820, *obs.*; its power and uses, 836.
zeugma, 643.

THE END.

LONDON: PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

00048108

ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY

Acc. No. Class No. 0

Please return the book on or before the last date stamped. A fine will be charged if the book is not returned in time.

-7 JUN 1997
2 4 MAY 2001
1 1 APR 2004
2 2 MAR 2006

ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018